

THE OLD MAN & THE SEA

FIRST TERM

**20
26**

1st SEC

Contents

Module 1

Unit 1 Egypt's Heritage

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	9
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	32
Part 3 (Skills)	48
General Exercises	56

Unit 2 Hands Help, Hearts Care

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	60
Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)	79
Part 3 (Skills)	96
General Exercises	104
Units 1&2 Module (1) General Exercises	107

Module 2

Unit 3 Truth Vs. Lies

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	112
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	131
Part 3 (Skills)	150
General Exercises	158

Review

Units 1, 2, & 3	161
-----------------	-----

Unit 4 Save and Shine

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	171
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	190
Part 3 (Skills)	208
General Exercises	216
Units 3&4 Module (2) General Exercises	219

Module 3

Unit 5 Using Technology at School

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	224
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	240
Part 3 (Skills)	257
General Exercises	265

Unit 6 Job Hunting

Part 1 (Lessons 1&2)	269
Part 2 (Lessons 3&4)	289
Part 3 (Skills)	303
General Exercises	311
Units 5&6 Module (3) General Exercises	314

Review

Units 4, 5, & 6	317
-----------------	-----

Story The Old Man and the Sea

Introduction	326
Chapter (1)	329
Chapter (2)	339
Chapter (3)	348
Chapter (4)	356
Chapter (5)	365
Chapter (6)	373

Dictionary	382
------------	-----

Module 1



Unit 1

Egypt's Heritage

Unit 2

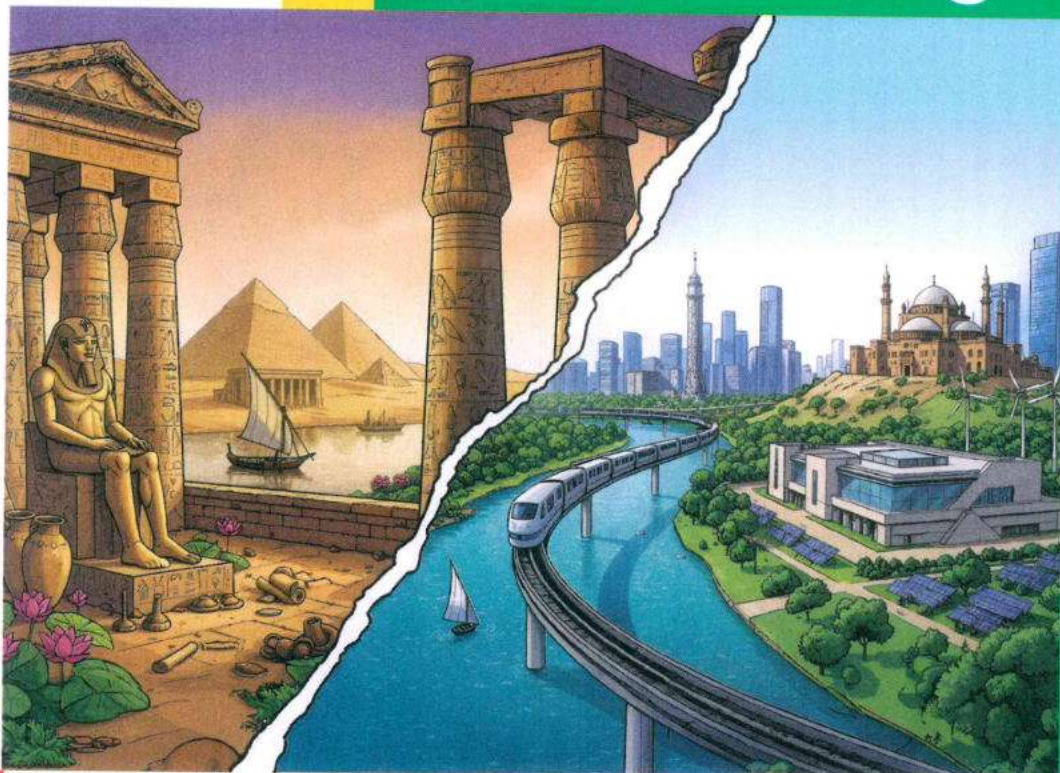
Hands Help, Hearts Care

Module (1) General Exercises

Units 1 & 2

Unit 1

Egypt's Heritage



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Identify the gist in a text about Egypt's heritage.
- Recognize specific details in a text about Egypt's heritage.
- Listening** - Identify the main ideas from audio texts about cultural heritage and its preservation.
- Language** - Use the past simple for completed past actions.
- Use the past continuous to show that an action was in progress.
- Writing** - Write a short narrative paragraph about "a strange day in my life" using the past simple and the past continuous.
- Speaking** - Describe a longer, ongoing action in the past using the past continuous and a shorter action in the past simple.

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

civilization (n)	حضارة	merchant (n)	تاجر	restore (v) (d)	يرمم / يسترجع
crossroads (n)	ملتقى طرق / موقع ذو أهمية	neighborhood (n)	حي سكني	trade (n) (v) (d)	تجارة / يتاجر
heritage (n)	تراث	preserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على		
identity (n)	هوية	pride (n)	فخر		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ancestors (n)	أجداد	developing country	دولة نامية	inspiration (n)	إلهام
anxiety (n)	قلق	development (n)	تنمية	invent (v) (ed)	يخترع
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	economy (n)	اقتصاد	legacy (n)	إرث / ميراث
art (n)	فن	encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	knowledge (n)	معرفة
awareness (n)	وعى / إدراك	exchange (v) (d)	يتبادل	material (n)	مادة (للبناء مثلاً)
beat (v)	ينبض	face (v) (d)	يواجه	mathematics (n)	الرياضيات
beloved (adj)	محبوب	flood (n)	فيضان	medicine (n)	الطب
bridge (n)	جسر / كوبري	gather (v) (ed)	يجمع	nation (n)	أمة / دولة
building (n)	مبنى	generation (n)	جيل	national (adj)	وطني / قومي
carve (v) (d)	ينحت	grains (n)	الحبوب	papyrus (n)	ورق البردي
center (n)	مركز	harmony (n)	تناغم / انسجام	preserving (n)	الحفاظ على
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدي / يتحدى	hieroglyphs (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية / الحروف الهيروغليفية	privilege (n)	امتياز
citizen (n)	مواطن	historian (n)	مؤرخ	profession (n)	مهنة
context (n)	نص / سياق	historical (adj)	تاريخي	progress (n) (v) (ed)	تقدم / يتقدم
core (n)	جوهر / نواة / لب	historical figure	شخصية تاريخية	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
culture (n)	ثقافة	homeland (n)	أرض الوطن	protectors (n)	حُمَاة / مدافعون
decoration (n)	تزيين (ديكور)	honor (v) (ed)	يكرم	proud (adj)	فخور
demonstrate (v) (d)	يوضح / يظهر	host (n)	مقدم برامج / مضيف	record (v) (ed)	يسجل
determination (n)	عزيمة	immense (adj)	هائل / ضخم	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكِّر

rise (v) ينهض / يرتفع / تشرق (الشمس)	source (n) مصدر	treasures (n) كنوز
role (n) دور	spices (n) توابل	urban (adj) حضري / مدني
sacrifice (n) (v) (d) تضحية / يضحي	stones (n) حجارة	value (n) قيمة
sense (n) شعور / احساس	superior (adj) متفوق / رفيع	way (n) وسيلة / طريقة / طريق
shape (v) (d) (n) يشكل / شكل	symbol (n) رمز	will (n) إرادة
site (n) موقع	temple (n) معبد	worry (n) (v) (y) قلق / يقلق

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ancient Egypt is known as one of the oldest human in world history.
a) civilizations b) languages c) religions d) monuments
- There's an honest who sells clothes and bags in the city center.
a) host b) archaeologist c) merchant d) historian
- Many people prefer the quiet life of the countryside over life.
a) urban b) ancient c) village d) industrial
- We respect our because they built the traditions and values we still follow today.
a) ancestors b) descendants c) historians d) children
- Before exams, many students might feel great because they're afraid of failure الفشل.
a) anxiety b) pride
c) harmony d) determination
- Ancient Egyptians used stone to pictures of people and animals on the walls of temples.
a) call b) carve c) invent d) develop
- Music, stories, and monuments are important treasures that form part of our cultural
a) heritage b) generation c) homeland d) crossroads
- Climbing the highest mountain in the world is a very big for modern climbers today.
a) knowledge b) heritage c) challenge d) generation

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

agree on	يتفق على	generations to come	الأجيال القادمة	lead a team	يقود فريقًا
along the Nile	بمحاذاة النيل	have a deep feeling of	لديه شعور عميق بـ	reconnecting with our past	إعادة الاتصال بماضيها
belong to	يخص	home to	موطن لـ	remind us of	يُذكّرنا بـ
capable of	قادر على	interested in	مهتم بـ	result of	نتيجة لـ
carve into	ينحت في	it sounds like	يبدو وكأنه	share with	يشارك مع
contribute to	يساهم في	I see your point	أتفهمك	source of	مصدر لـ
effect of	تأثير لـ	keep ... alive	يحافظ على بقاء ...	stand with	يقف بـ/مع
feel the connection	نشعر بالترابط	make it easier	يجعله أسهل	take pride in	يفخر بـ
feel proud of	يشعر بالفخر بـ	play a role	يلعب دور	take time	يستغرق وقت
focus on	تركيز على / يركز على	prevent ... from	يمنع ... عن	type of	نوع من
form of	شكل من	lack of awareness	نقص الوعي	work on	يعمل على

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
demonstrate	يوضح / يبين	demonstration	عرض / توضيح / مظاهرة	demonstrative	تعبيري / توضيحي
		demonstrator	عارض / متظاهر		
determine	يحدد / يقرر	determination	عزيمة / إصرار / تحديد	determined	عازم / مُصر
develop	يطور / ينمي	development	تنمية / تطوير / نمو	developed	متطور / متقدم
		developer	مطور	developing	نام
host	يستضيف	host	مضيف	hosted	مستضاف
		hostess	مضييفة	hospitable	مضياف
identify	يحدد	identity	هوية	identifiable	يمكن التعرف عليه
		identification	مستند إثبات شخصية / تحديد	unidentified	غير متعرف عليه
invent	يخترع	invention	اختراع	inventive	مبتكر
		inventor	مخترع		
preserve	يحفظ / يصون	preservation	الحفاظ / الصون	preservable	قابل للحفظ
		preserver	حافظ / محافظ		
restore	يعيد / يسترجع / يرمم	restoration	ترميم / إعادة	restored	تم ترميمه
		restorer	المرمم	restorable	قابل للاستعادة

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The teacher asked the students to **identify** the main idea in the text. (v)
- A passport is a document used to prove your **identity** when traveling. (n)
- The stolen car was easily **identifiable** because of its bright red color. (adj)
- You need to show a form of **identification** before entering the building. (n)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
anxiety	قلق	worry/tension		relaxation/calmness	استرخاء/هدوء
development	تنمية	progress/advancement		decline/decrease	تدهور/تراجع
gather	يجمع	collect/bring together		scatter/separate	يفرق/يفصل
harmony	تناغم/انسجام	consistency/understanding		disagreement/incompatibility	اختلاف/تضارب
inspiration	إلهام	encouragement/enthusiasm		discouragement/despair	إحباط/يأس
preserve	يحافظ على	keep/maintain/protect		endanger/neglect	يعرض للخطر/يهمل
pride	فخر	self-esteem/dignity		misery/humiliation	بؤس/ذل
restore	يرمم/يسترجع	fix/renew/renovate		destroy/damage	يدمر/يتلف
superior	متفوق/رفيع	remarkable/exceptional		normal/unremarkable	عادي/غير مميز

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Egyptians always feel proud their football team when it wins important matches.
a) on b) in c) of d) at
- Parents always have a deep of love when they see their children succeed.
a) record b) falling c) feeling d) culture
- Museums help to Egypt's culture alive by showing ancient statues and traditions.
a) stay b) keep c) go d) appear
- With great, the athlete finished the race although he was sick and tired.
a) determine b) determined c) determination d) determining

5. She was very to succeed in the exam, so she studied every night.
 a) determination b) determined c) determining d) determinate
6. Those who are of solving complex problems can achieve a great success.
 a) interested b) capable c) able d) full
7. The organization managed to restore the ancient temple. The synonym of the word "restore" is ".....".
 a) replay b) renew c) reinvent d) repeat
8. In order to succeed, students must focus their studies and work hard every day.
 a) in b) on c) at d) of

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Taking Pride in Our Beloved Egypt

Egypt is a land with a heart that has been beating for thousands of years. We are proud to call it our home. It is a place where the past and the present meet in harmony.

Egypt has always played an important role in the world. Our ancestors built one of the greatest civilizations in history. They gave the world knowledge in writing, mathematics, and medicine. The hieroglyphs carved into temple walls were not just beautiful art; they were a way to record history. The Library of Alexandria once gathered knowledge from all over the world, making Egypt a center of learning.

Egypt was also a crossroads for trade. Merchants traveled along the Nile and across the deserts, carrying goods such as gold, spices, papyrus, and grain. Our land was a bridge where people met and exchanged ideas, making Egypt a source of inspiration for many civilizations.

Today, Egypt continues to grow. Our cities rise with modern buildings, while our historical monuments still stand with pride. We are building new roads, bridges, and neighborhoods that show the world our determination to progress. From the Pyramids of Giza to the Grand Egyptian Museum, we continue to honor our history while shaping our future.

We take pride in our country, not only for its beauty, but also because we understand the sacrifices of our ancestors. We work hard to make it greater for generations to come. Every citizen has a role to play - protecting our heritage, contributing to our economy, and sharing our culture with the world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. In what ways did Ancient Egyptians contribute to world knowledge?
 - a) By building modern bridges and roads.
 - b) By writing mathematics, art, and medicine.
 - c) By trading oil and with other countries.
 - d) By inventing computers and mobile phones.
2. What specific action is mentioned that demonstrates Egypt's focus on modern development?
 - a) Protecting its heritage.
 - b) Building new roads, bridges, and neighborhoods.
 - c) Recording history with hieroglyphs.
 - d) Traveling along the Nile.
3. The main idea of this passage is to show
 - a) how Egypt's ancient civilization was superior to all others
 - b) the challenges Egypt faces with modern development
 - c) the proud link between Egypt's ancient past and its modern progress
 - d) the sacrifices made by Ancient Egyptians
4. Which of the following is the best summary of the passage?
 - a) Ancient Egypt was a great civilization that built pyramids and temples.
 - b) Modern Egypt is a developing country that is building new roads and museums.
 - c) Egypt is continuing to build and progress today, and is a source of pride for its citizens.
 - d) Egyptians should be proud of their country's past for it was once a center of trade and learning.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



- Host** : Welcome back to our story. Today, we're talking to Dr. Mona Hassan, an archaeologist who recently led a team to restore parts of the Philae Temple.
- Host** : Dr. Mona, thank you for joining us.
- Dr. Mona** : Thank you. It's a privilege to be here.
- Host** : Your work on Philae is a powerful symbol. Can you tell us why preserving our heritage is so important?
- Dr. Mona** : Of course. When we restore a historical site, we're not just fixing old stones; we're reconnecting with our past. Our ancestors left us a rich legacy, from the pyramids to the temples of Upper Egypt. This heritage is the core of our national identity. It reminds us of who we are, where we came from, and the greatness we are capable of. It's a source of immense pride for every Egyptian.

Host : It sounds like more than a job; it's a mission. What do you think is the biggest challenge to preserving our heritage today?

Dr. Mona : The challenges are many—from urban development to climate change. But perhaps the biggest is the lack of awareness among our youth. Many young people don't realize the value of these treasures. Our job is to inspire them, to make them see that a thousand-year-old temple is not just a tourist attraction—it's a living part of our story. We need to encourage them to visit these sites, to learn the stories, and to feel the connection.

Host : That's a great point. You're inspiring them to become the next generation of protectors. Thank you for your valuable work, Dr. Mona.

Definitions

التعريفات

civilization	حضارة	a group of people in history with their own cities, culture, and way of life
crossroads	مفترق طرق / موقع ذو أهمية	a place where two or more roads meet or an important or central place
heritage	إرث / تراث	the history, traditions, and culture passed from the past to the present
identity	هوية	who you are; the qualities, culture, or values that make a person or group special
merchant	تاجر	a person who buys and sells goods, especially in trade
neighborhood	حي سكني	an area where people live near each other
preserve	يحفظ	to keep something safe from damage or loss
pride	فخر	a good feeling of respect and satisfaction about yourself, your family, or your country
restore	يرمم / يسترجع	to repair or bring something back to its original condition
trade	تجارة	the activity of buying and selling goods; (v) to exchange goods or services

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

profession

مهنة تحتاج تعليم أو تدريب متخصص
(الاسم من الوظيفة)

Teaching is a noble **profession** that shapes the future of children.

job

وظيفة (اسم يعد)

He got a **job** as a driver in a big company.

work

عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)

- She stayed at the office late to complete her **work**.
- She left her **work** early because she wasn't feeling well.

لاحظ:

من الممكن استخدام **work** كاسم يعد بمعنى عمل أدبي أو فني أو هندسي.

- Shakespeare wrote many famous **works** of literature.
- The museum displayed several **works** by Picasso.

career

الحياة المهنية (على المدى الطويل)

She built a successful **career** in education over thirty years.

invent

يخترع (شيئاً لم يكن موجوداً من قبل)

Edison **invented** the electric light bulb.

discover

يكشف (شيئاً كان موجوداً بالفعل لكن لم يكن معروفاً من قبل)

They **discovered** gold in the mountains many years ago.

explore

يستكشف (مكان)

The astronauts **explored** the surface of the moon.

rise

ينهض / يرتفع / تشرق (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)

- The sun **rises** in the east every day.
- Prices are expected to **rise** next year.

raise

يرفع / يزيد / يجمع ما لا يأتي بعدها مفعول

- The teacher asked the students to **raise** their hands.
- They want to **raise** money for charity.

arise

ينشأ / يحدث (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)

- A serious problem may **arise** if we don't act quickly.
- New opportunities will **arise** with modern technology.

arouse

يثير (مشاعر أو اهتمام أو شكوك) (يأتي بعدها مفعول)

- His speech **aroused** great interest among the audience.
- The strange sound **aroused** my suspicion yesterday.

historical

تاريخي (متعلق بالتاريخ)

It is important to look at the novel in its **historical** context.

historic

تاريخي (قديم / حدث مهم)

The government restored some **historic** buildings.

along (adv) (prep)

على طول / بمحاذاة / تُستخدم مع الأماكن أو الطرق

We walked **along** the river and enjoyed the view.

5

(a) long (adj)

طويل (فترة زمنية أو مسافة)

- It's been **a long** day, and I'm very tired.- They walked **a long** distance to reach the village.**work with**

يعمل مع

All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to **work with** children.**work for**

يعمل لدى / يعمل لصالح

- My brother **works for** a big company in the city.- Egypt always **works for** peace in the Middle East.**work in**

يعمل في (مكان / مجال)

- I hope to **work in** medical research when I'm older.- I **work in** Al-Salam Company, which is in October City.**work as**

يعمل (بوظيفة)

My grandfather **worked as** a journalist in Al-Ahram Newspaper.**work on**

يعمل على (مشروع / إنجاز)

The writer said that he was **working on** a new novel.**Vocabulary Checkpoint 3****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- Smoke began to from the factory after the fire started.
a) raise b) rise c) arise d) arouse
- The manager decided to salaries to keep the employees motivated.
a) arise b) arouse c) rise d) raise
- My brother found a new as a driver in a big company.
a) function b) job c) career d) work
- There are many trees planted the main street in our town.
a) alone b) belong c) a long d) along
- Did you know that Graham Bell the telephone?
a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) built
- Children often like to caves and forests when they go camping.
a) invent b) discover c) explore d) explain
- When we fix an old building and make it strong again, we it.
a) preserve b) restore c) trade d) protect
- I really enjoy my job because I work children who need extra help.
a) on b) at c) with d) for
- Dr. Maha works the field of biology and does many experiments in the lab.
a) in b) for c) on d) with

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

- The gas station was built at the where two important ancient roads meet.
a) crossroads b) crosswords c) site d) neighborhood
- Wearing traditional clothes and speaking Arabic are strong ways of showing our national
a) wealth b) homeland c) economy d) identity
- Technology is one of the benefits of modern
a) homeland b) language c) civilization d) school
- Egyptians showed great when their football team won the African Cup last year.
a) pride b) conflict c) career d) warning
- Painting, music, and sculpture are all forms of that express ideas and feelings.
a) art b) medicine c) tradition d) knowledge
- My heart was fast while going up the stairs.
a) shaping b) beating c) recording d) playing
- All the of any country should follow the laws, pay taxes, and work hard to protect their country.
a) neighbors b) merchants c) historians d) citizens
- To understand a new word, try to guess the meaning from the of the sentence.
a) culture b) context c) site d) heritage
- The festival included flowers, lights, and other beautiful for the celebration.
a) record b) knowledge c) decorations d) civilizations
- With strong, the student passed the exam although he was sick.
a) disability b) determination c) wealth d) economy
- Most countries work hard to build schools, hospitals, and new roads.
a) historical b) national c) local d) developing
- In the library, students like to ideas and books to help each other study better.
a) invent b) exchange c) record d) charge
- After the heavy rain, a terrible covered the streets and destroyed many houses in the village.
a) wood b) flood c) cloud d) roof
- The Arab should unite متحد in order to face the future challenges.
a) cultures b) nations
c) areas d) neighborhoods

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

15. I found this wallet. Does it belong you?
 a) of b) with c) to d) for
16. Modern technology it easier for doctors to treat patients and save their lives.
 a) makes b) takes c) does d) has
17. Teachers play a in preparing students for the future and society.
 a) game b) role c) generation d) match
18. Employees may enjoy the of working from home two days a week.
 a) problem b) privilege c) difficulty d) weakness
19. Medicine is a respected that requires many years of study and training.
 a) job b) work c) profession d) works
20. In my opinion, the of any strong relationship is trust and loyalty.
 a) edge b) distance c) end d) core
21. I couldn't the driver of the car which hit my sister.
 a) identify b) identity c) identifiable d) unidentified
22. The presentation العرض was and clear to understand.
 a) demonstration b) demonstrative c) demonstrator d) demonstrate
23. The at the exhibition explained the benefits of the new product.
 a) demonstrative b) demonstrate c) demonstration d) demonstrator
24. Social media can help people reconnect old friends they haven't seen for years.
 a) on b) with c) to d) in
25. All citizens must contribute keeping the streets clean and protecting the environment.
 a) with b) on c) to d) for
26. The Pyramids are a special form ancient Egyptian architecture admired all over the world.
 a) at b) in c) of d) on

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. The government plans to restore the old castle to attract tourists. The antonyms of the word "restore" are
 a) destroy b) separate c) fix d) damage e) renovate
28. She felt great anxiety before her operation عملية جراحية. The antonyms of the word "anxiety" are
 a) wealth b) calmness c) encouragement
 d) relaxation e) tension
29. The children tried to gather flowers from the garden. The synonyms of the word "gather" are
 a) collect b) bring together c) scatter d) separate e) join
30. The rapid development of technology has changed the way people live and work. The antonyms of the word "development" are
 a) progress b) difference c) decline d) decrease e) advancement

1

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

The past simple tense is used to talk about actions completed at a certain time in the past.

FORM التكوين

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject + فعل + v + d/ed/ied (التصريف الثاني للفعل)

- I/He/They **attended** the party yesterday.

في صيغة الإثبات، استخدم:

Negative

النفي

Subject + فعل + didn't + inf. مصدر

- I/He/They **didn't attend** the party yesterday.

أما في النفي، فاستخدم:

Question

السؤال

Wh- word + فعل + inf. مصدر + did + subject + أداة استفهام

- What **did** you **attend** yesterday?

Did + subject + فعل + inf. مصدر

- Did** he **attend** the party yesterday?

وفي حالة السؤال، استخدم:

Passive

المبنى للمجهول

Object + was/were + P.P. التصريف الثالث للفعل + مفعول

- The party **was attended** by me/him/them yesterday.

وفي صيغة المبنى للمجهول، استخدم:

The past simple is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع هذه التعبيرات الزمنية:

yesterday	أمس	in the ancient times	في العصور القديمة
from ... to ...	من عام ... إلى ...	once (upon a time)	ذات مرة (كان يا ما كان)
How long ago ...?	منذ متى ...؟	the other day	منذ فترة قريبة / في ذلك اليوم / اليوم السابق
ago	منذ	last	السابق
just now	توًا / حاليًا	in the past	في الماضي
First ..., Then ...	أولًا ...، ثم بعد ذلك ...	in + a period in the past	في + فترة في الماضي

Examples

- I **ate** my food ten minutes **ago**.
- We **lived** in Tanta **from** 2000 **to** 2010.

الاستخدام USAGE

لأحداث اكتملت في الماضي.

For completed actions in the past:

She **studied** all her lessons **yesterday**.

لسرد سلسلة من الأحداث وقعت في الماضي.

Events that happened in sequence:

Yesterday, I **got up** early, **had** breakfast, **drank** milk, and **went** to school.

أحداث قطعت أخرى أثناء حدوثها في الماضي.

Short actions that interrupt longer actions:

I was studying when the lights went out.

Language Checkpoint 4

Checkpoint

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- [illegible]

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. When the police came, the thief runs away immediately. (.....)
2. Mazen didn't drank coffee when he came back. (.....)
3. We wear a uniform when we were in school. (.....)
4. Why you didn't tell me the truth? (.....)
5. Last Friday, I went out, played a game, and have a drink. (.....)

Expressing Past Habits Using Used to:

التعبير عن العادات في الماضي:

كما استخدمنا الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن العادات نستخدم أيضًا **used to** بمعنى اعتاد على:

used to

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subj. فاعل + **used to** + inf. مصدر

He **used to smoke**, but now he cares about his health.

Negative

النفي

Subj. فاعل + **didn't** + **use to** + inf.

He **didn't use to smoke**, but now he does.

Subj. فاعل + **never** + **used to** + inf.

He **never used to smoke**, but now he does.

Question

السؤال

Did + subj. فاعل + **use to** + inf.?

Wh- word أداة الاستفهام + did + subj. فاعل + **use to** + inf.?

A: Did he **use to smoke**?

A: Yes, he **did**. / B: No, he **didn't**.

A: What **did** he **use to do**?

B: He **used to smoke**.

Usage

الاستخدام

For habits and situations in the past that don't exist in the present.

عادات ومواقف كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث في الحاضر.

Other ways to express past habits:

طرق أخرى للتعبير عن العادات التي لم تعد تحدث:

1 Subj. فاعل + **no longer** + present simple

He **no longer smokes** a lot.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى لم يعد
لم يعد يدخن بشراهة.

2 Subj. فاعل + negative form + **any longer/any more**

He **doesn't smoke** a lot **any longer/any more**.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى لم يعد يحدث ثانية/بعد.
لم يعد يدخن بشراهة ثانية.

لاحظ أنه تم استخدام المضارع البسيط مع **no longer/any longer/any more**

3 It was + (someone's/صفة ملكية) + habit to + inf.

It was **his habit to smoke** a lot.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى كانت عادة شخص أنه يفعل كذا.
كانت عادته أن يدخن كثيرًا.

4 Subj. فاعل + (was/were) + in the habit of + (v-ing) ...

He **was in the habit of smoking** a lot.

تستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى أن شخصًا كانت له عادة.
كان منخرطًا في عادة التدخين.

5 Subj. فاعل + got into the habit of + (v-ing)

تُستخدم هذه الصيغة بمعنى أن شخصًا انخرط في عادة ما.
اعتاد على التدخين بكثرة.

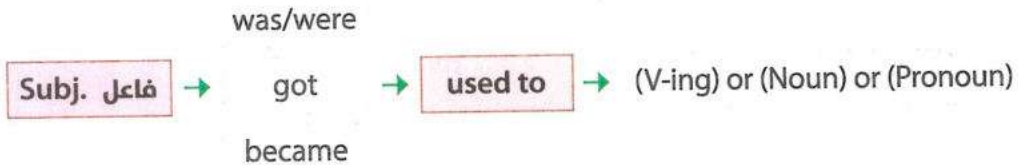
He **got into the habit of smoking** a lot.

NOTE THE FOLLOWING:

لاحظ التالي:

عند استخدام بعض الأفعال (be/get/become) قبل **used to** يصبح الفعل بعدها مضافًا له **ing** كالتالي:

1



Examples

He **was used to smoking**. كان معتادًا على التدخين.

They **got used to going** to the club. اعتادوا على الذهاب إلى النادي.

Amal **became used to riding** horses. أصبحت أمل معتادة على ركوب الخيل.

The children **were used to playing** in the garden. اعتاد الأطفال على اللعب في الحديقة.

2

لا تستخدم **used to** مع فترات الوقت القصيرة.

I **used to** visit my uncle **last week**. (X)

I **visited** my uncle **last week**. (✓)

3

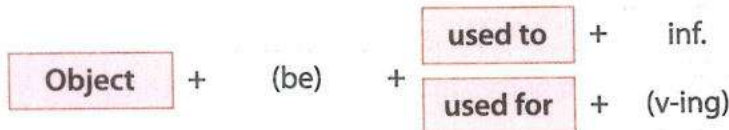
يمكن استخدام ظروف التكرار (... **always/usually/often**) مع الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن مدى تكرار الحدث:

I **always** went to school early.

دائمًا ما كنت أذهب إلى المدرسة مبكرًا.

4

يمكن استخدام **be used to/for** بمعنى يُستخدم لـ - من أجل:



The camera **is used to take** photographs.

تستخدم الكاميرا لالتقاط الصور.

The camera **is used for taking** photographs.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When I was a child, I used to my grandparents every summer.
 - a) visiting
 - b) visit
 - c) visited
 - d) was visiting
2. Ahmed eat meat, but he likes it now.
 - a) used
 - b) used to
 - c) didn't use
 - d) didn't use to
3. Did Reda to sleep early when he was young?
 - a) used
 - b) using
 - c) use
 - d) be used
4. They no longer friends after the disagreement they had.
 - a) used to be
 - b) are
 - c) were
 - d) do
5. A knife is used vegetables and other things.
 - a) for cut
 - b) to cutting
 - c) cutting
 - d) for cutting

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning:

1. It was my habit to wake up early. (used)
.....
2. I used to do exercise in the morning. (no longer)
.....
3. Amal had a habit of drinking soda a lot. (used)
.....
4. We used to swim in the river when we were young. (habit)
.....
5. In the past, people used horses to travel to other countries. (were)
.....

2

The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

The past continuous tense is used to talk about actions in progress at a specific duration in the past.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة في فترة محددة في الماضي.

I **was watching** TV at 8 yesterday.

FORM التكوين

Affirmative
الإثبات

Subject + (was/were) + v-ing

في صيغة الإثبات، استخدم:

I/He/She/It + was + v-ing

• He **was playing** games all day yesterday.

They/We/You + were + v-ing

• They **were playing** games all day yesterday.

Negative
النفي

I/He/She/It + wasn't + v-ing

أما في النفي، فاستخدم:

• I **wasn't playing** games all day yesterday.

They/We/You + weren't + v-ing

• They **weren't playing** games all day yesterday.

Question
السؤال

Was/Were + subject + v-ing?

وفي حالة السؤال، استخدم:

• **Was** Samy **playing** games all day yesterday?

• **Were** you **playing** games all day yesterday?

Wh- word + was/were + subject + v-ing?

• **Where were** you **playing** all day yesterday?

Passive
المبنى للمجهول

Object + was/were + being + P.P.

وفي صيغة المبني للمجهول، استخدم:

• Games **were being played** all day yesterday.

The past continuous is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع هذه التعبيرات الزمنية:

while

بينما

when

عندما

as

بينما

just as

في اللحظة التي

all (day, night, ...)

طوال ... (مدة زمنية في الماضي)

USAGE الاستخدام

To show that an action was in progress at a certain time in the past.

لوصف حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي.

At 6 o'clock yesterday, I **was doing** my homework.

- 2** To show that a shorter action interrupted another longer action.
(with the past simple)
لوصف حدث كان مستمراً وقطعه حدث آخر.
I **was leaning** out of the boat **when** I **dropped** my camera.
- 3** To describe two actions that were in progress at the same time.
للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر.
Just as I **was sleeping**, my father **was doing** his work.
- 4** To describe an event in progress, at some time between its beginning and its end.
لوصف حدث كان مستمراً في وقت ما بين بدايته ونهايته.
From nine to eleven yesterday, I **was writing** some important essays.

Language Checkpoint 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ramy all day yesterday.
a) was sleeping b) had slept
c) is sleeping d) was being slept
- Yesterday, from 10 to 12, my brothers playing an interesting game.
a) was b) were c) wasn't d) aren't
- the boys painting the room when you entered?
a) Do b) Did c) Were d) Are
- My car all day yesterday.
a) repaired b) was repairing
c) was repaired d) was being repaired
- What at 8 p.m. yesterday?
a) were you doing b) are you doing
c) had you done d) have you done

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- I was play all day yesterday. (.....)
- I seeing a movie with my family at 7 p.m. (.....)
- Manal didn't going to the market when I saw her. (.....)
- The children were playing in the garden when I pass. (.....)
- While Dad worked on his laptop, my uncle knocked on the door. (.....)

لاحظ استخدامات الروابط التالية:

- للتعبير عن حدثين قطع أحدهما الآخر (الأحدث قطع الأقدم الذي بدأ أولاً).

While/As/Just as/When

Past continuous

Past simple

While he **was playing** the game, it **rained**.

Past simple

while/as/just as/when

Past continuous

The phone **rang** while he **was studying** his lessons.

- للتعبير عن حدثين استمررا في نفس الوقت بدون قاطع.

While/As/Just as/When

Past continuous

Past continuous

As I **was studying** my lessons, my sister **was watching** TV.

Past continuous

while/as/just as/when

Past continuous

He **was eating** his food **just as** his mother **was ironing** his clothes.

Language

Checkpoint 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher was writing the lesson the students were discussing some questions.
a) while b) during c) on d) because
- While I was helping my mother, my father TV.
a) watched b) watching c) was watching d) watches
- When Ali me, I was reading a new book.
a) was calling b) called c) calls d) calling
- Mona was going to her work while her husband to Alex.
a) traveled b) traveling c) was traveling d) travels
- Just as dinner, my brother was watching a play.
a) was preparing b) was being prepared c) was prepared d) is preparing

2 Choose the correct tense:

- I (**met / was meeting**) Ahmed while I (**walked / was walking**) in the street.
- When the match (**started / was starting**), I (**did / was doing**) my homework.
- While I (**explored / was exploring**) the desert, I (**saw / was seeing**) a snake.
- Mom (**lived / was living**) in Luxor 10 years ago.
- As I (**watched / was watching**) the match, my brother was playing video games.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I on a picnic with my family two days ago.
a) go b) goes c) went d) was going
2. We usually our grandfather when we were on holiday.
a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
3. Ayman climbed the tree, but then he afraid to get down.
a) was b) is c) has been d) was being
4. Did Amany to cook the food well?
a) used b) using c) use d) uses
5. My bag yesterday, so I called the police.
a) stole b) was stolen c) steals d) is stolen
6. How long ago in Luxor?
a) have you stayed b) have you been staying
c) did you stay d) both a & b
7. I was having my lunch when the phone
a) ring b) had rung c) is rung d) rang
8. What when the lights went out last night?
a) you were doing b) were you doing
c) are you doing d) have you done
9. My brother his lessons when he heard a cry in the street.
a) studied b) studying c) was studying d) was studied
10. When I was young, I on my father's farm.
a) was worked b) work c) have worked d) worked
11. While Ashraf was trying to catch the bus, he his phone.
a) was dropping b) dropped c) has dropped d) was dropped
12. The manager arrived just as we our problems.
a) were discussing b) discussed
c) have discussed d) used to discuss
13. From 6 to 8 last Friday, an important match
a) was watching b) had watched
c) watched d) was being watched
14. When I went to my friend's house, he his room, so he asked me to help him.
a) painted b) had painted c) is painting d) was painting
15. Khaled became used up in the early morning.
a) get b) to get c) to getting d) to be got

- ▶ 16. While I was driving along this morning, I about what they had said.
 a) was thinking b) was thought c) had thought d) am thinking
17. Rasheed watch Egyptian movies, but now he does.
 a) used to b) didn't use to c) wasn't used to d) use to not
18. The police arrested him as he the scene of the crime.
 a) had left b) was leaving c) was left d) has left
19. Nora late when she was young. She no longer does that now.
 a) usually sleeps b) is used to sleeping
 c) used to sleep d) is usually sleeping
20. Sameh save money. Now, he does as he wants to buy a car.
 a) used to b) didn't use to c) uses to d) is used to
21. Our lunch while I was doing my school homework.
 a) was preparing b) is prepared
 c) was being prepared d) has been prepared
22. He to the beach when he was younger.
 a) is used to going b) was going c) always goes d) usually went
23. He to prison as a result of his crimes.
 a) was taken b) took c) was taking d) had taken
24. Youssef sleeps early as he to do when he was young.
 a) never / is used b) no way / was used
 c) no longer / used d) any longer / was used
25. They were in the habit out every Friday night.
 a) to eat b) of eating c) eat d) eating
26. Which of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
 a) She didn't met her friends yesterday. b) He didn't got my email last week.
 c) I used to go out last night. d) We didn't go out last night.
27. Which of the following is NOT grammatically correct?
 a) Did you use to sleep early?
 b) I was watching the match when you called.
 c) Did you liked my present?
 d) I used to study my lessons at night.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I visited Rami while he was watching TV.
2. A week ago, I was in the club.
3. We watched TV and my brother read a short story at that time.
4. Huda was playing video games when the telephone rang.
5. A stranger knocked on the front door while I was at home.

(When I ...)

(... last ...)

(While ...)

(Just as ...)

(When)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Egypt was a for trade. It attracted merchants from all over the world.
a) nation b) news c) bridge d) crossroads
2. Schools must teach students about their national because it connects them strongly to past traditions.
a) generation b) center c) heritage d) harmony
3. We should our ancient culture because it keeps the spirit of our ancestors alive.
a) contribute b) think c) preserve d) shape
4. Ancient Egypt grew rich because it was a center for, encouraging merchants to sell gold, wheat, and spices.
a) trade b) economy c) heritage d) culture
5. Families will in the park to celebrate the national day with food and music.
a) gather b) invent c) carve d) shape
6. Every has a duty to protect the environment and keep it clean for the future.
a) homeland b) heritage c) citizen d) generation
7. Farmers store different kinds of such as rice, wheat, and corn for the winter season.
a) stones b) monuments c) grains d) materials
8. Ancient Egyptians wrote their history using pictures and symbols called on the walls of temples.
a) hieroglyphs b) history c) records d) knowledge
9. Good understanding creates among people and makes them feel happy, peaceful, and close together.
a) neighborhood b) pride c) harmony d) identity
10. A studies old documents and writes about the history of ancient civilizations carefully.
a) historian b) citizen c) merchant d) neighbor
11. The Pyramids are monuments that attract millions of tourists to Egypt every year.
a) proud b) historical c) unidentified d) developing
12. Many Egyptians living abroad dream of returning to their beloved to see family and friends.
a) homeland b) site c) center d) crossroads
13. Schools must raise students' about protecting the Nile and keeping the environment clean.
a) importance b) heritage c) awareness d) age

14. We must our teachers because they guide us with patience, knowledge, and kindness every day.

- a) honor b) protect c) preserve d) restore

15. Dr. Zewail left us a remarkable in the field of chemistry.

- a) mercy b) legacy c) system d) policy

Language

16. When Adel arrived home, his brother

- a) was slept b) is sleeping c) sleeping d) was sleeping

17. She used to tell lies, but now she no longer

- a) doesn't b) isn't c) does d) has

18. Did Ali to smoke?

- a) used to b) use c) use to d) uses

19. I used to ride a bike. This means

- a) I ride a bike b) I didn't ride a bike
c) I no longer ride a bike d) I never rode a bike

20. Salma when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.

- a) slept b) was slept c) was sleeping d) has slept

21. you out yesterday? I tried to phone you, but there was no answer.

- a) Had b) Were c) Did d) Was

22. When I went to the workshop, the mechanic my car, so I had to wait.

- a) repaired b) is repairing c) had repaired d) was repairing

23. It was not polite of him to interrupt what I

- a) was saying b) am saying c) will say d) says

24. watching TV, someone knocked on the door and asked for our help.

- a) Having b) As c) While d) Just as

25. The Second World War from 1939 to 1945.

- a) will last b) has lasted c) had lasted d) lasted

26. I enjoyed seeing the view of the Nile while the plane

- a) lands b) landed c) is landing d) was landing

27. I had to wait impatiently while lunch

- a) is being prepared b) was being prepared
c) was preparing d) preparing

28. We were doing our homework while our little brother TV.

- a) is watching b) was watching c) has watched d) watches

29. Just as I to school, I saw a policeman helping an old woman cross the street.

- a) was going b) have gone c) going d) am going

30. My brother was leaning out of the balcony when he his cell phone.

- a) has dropped b) drops c) was dropping d) dropped

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

heritage (n)	تراث	monuments (n)	آثار	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم
mighty (adj)	شامخ / ضخم	magnificent (adj)	عظيم / رائع		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

achievement (n)	إنجاز	farming (n)	الزراعة	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
admiration (n)	إعجاب	fishing (n)	الصيد	roots (n)	جذور
advanced (adj)	متقدم / متطور	gift (n)	هدية	route (n)	طريق / مسار
amaze (v) (d)	يدهش / يذهل	greatness (n)	عظمة	scientific (adj)	علمي
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر	grow (v)	ينمو	share (v) (d)	يشارك
author (n)	مؤلف	history (n)	تاريخ	shared (adj)	مشتركة
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	human (adj) (n)	بشري / إنسان	show (v)	يظهر
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل	idea (n)	فكرة	slowly (adv)	ببطء
connection (n)	ارتباط	improve (v) (d)	يُحسن / يتحسن	society (n)	مجتمع
construction (n)	مبنى	influence (v) (d)	يؤثر على	stand (v)	يقف
continue (v) (d)	يستمر	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث	story (n)	قصة
convenient (adj)	مناسب / ملائم	leader (n)	قائد	strength (n)	قوة
creativity (n)	إبداع	learn (v)	يتعلم	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح
cultural (adj)	ثقافي	medical (adj)	طبي	strong (adj)	قوي
deep (adj)	عميق	metal (n)	معدن	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
depend (v) (ed)	يعتمد	produce (v) (d)	يُنتج	thinker (n)	مفكر
distant (adj)	بعيد	poet (n)	شاعر	united (adj)	مُتحد
develop (v) (ed)	يطور / ينمي	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي	vision (n)	رؤية
entire (adj)	بالكامل	prove (v) (d)	يثبت	wisdom (n)	الحكمة
embrace (v) (d)	يعتنق / يحتضن	reflect (v) (ed)	يعكس	wisely (adv)	بحكمة
expression (n)	تعبير	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام / يحترم		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It is advisable for all of our youth to every opportunity that comes their way.
a) embrace b) leave c) miss d) refuse
- Many people to balance their work and family life.
a) arrest b) struggle c) affect d) refuse
- With his army, the king won many battles and protected his nation from enemies.
a) mighty b) medical c) deep d) cultural
- Tourists looked with great at the Pyramids because they are huge and beautiful monuments.
a) wisdom b) vision c) progress d) admiration
- Today we use technology like computers and satellites to make life easier and faster.
a) mighty b) deep c) advanced d) cultural
- The magician could the children with his clever tricks and surprising movements on the stage.
a) learn b) grow c) amaze d) respect
- We respect our ancestors because they us to be successful in our modern age.
a) protected b) inspired c) appeared d) amazed
- Naguib Mahfouz was a famous Egyptian who wrote many important novels and won the Nobel Prize.
a) poet b) thinker c) author d) leader

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

access information with a single click الوصول إلى المعلومات بنقرة واحدة	connection to ارتباط بـ	for survival من أجل البقاء
build through يبني عبر / خلال	continue to يستمر في	give respect يُكسب / يعطي احترام
center for مركز لـ	create for يصنع من أجل	give strength يعطي قوة
communicate across the world التواصل عبر العالم	depended mainly on يعتمد بشكل أساسي على	home for مكان لـ
compare to يشبه بـ	entire world العالم أجمع	move forward يمضي قدماً

passed down through انتقلت عبر/توارثت عبر	run deep تمتد لعمق بعيد	stop thinking يتوقف عن التفكير
raising animals تربية الحيوانات	stay united يبقى متحدين	the key to مهم لـ / مفتاح لـ
responsibility for مسئولية عن	step by step خطوة بخطوة	writing system نظام الكتابة

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
civilize يُمَدِّن		civilization حضارة		civilized متحضر	
achieve يُحَقِّق / يَنْجِز		achievement إنجاز		achievable قابل للتحقيق	
admire يُعْجِب بـ		admiration إعجاب admirer المُعْجِب		admirable جدير بالإعجاب	
amaze يدهش / يثير الدهشة		amazement دهشة		amazing مدهش amazed مندهِش	
believe يؤمن / يعتقد		belief إيمان / اعتقاد believer مؤمن		believable قابل للتصديق	
create يُخْلِق / يُنْشِئ		creation خلق / إبداع creator خالق / مبتكر		creative مبدع / ابتكاري	

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The Romans hoped to **civilize** all the tribes of Europe. (v)

The Ancient Egyptian **civilization** is one of the oldest in the world. (n)

A **civilized** society respects human rights and values. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
mighty	شامخ / ضخم	towering/massive/strong		little/minute/weak	صغير الحجم / ضعيف
convenient	مناسب / ملائم	appropriate/suitable		inappropriate/unsuitable	غير مناسب / غير ملائم
deep	عميق	deep-seated/rooted		shallow/superficial	ضحل / سطحي
strong	قوى	forceful/powerful		weak/powerless	ضعيف / بلا قوة
wisdom	الحكمة	common sense/insight		stupidity/thoughtlessness	غباء / عدم حكمة

Vocabulary

Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Healthy food and regular exercise can strength to the body and help students succeed.
a) make b) give c) borrow d) do
2. Hieroglyphics were the first writing in Egypt, used to record history and culture.
a) type b) system c) idea d) form
3. The tourists were when they saw the huge pyramids shining brightly under the morning sun.
a) amaze b) amazing c) amazed d) amazement
4. The scientists made an discovery that helped doctors cure a dangerous disease for the first time.
a) amazement b) amazed c) amaze d) amazing
5. To be always successful, we need to move and leave the past behind.
a) forward b) back c) down d) around
6. Every citizen is responsible protecting the environment and keeping the streets clean.
a) in b) at c) with d) for
7. With the help of the internet, it's easy to information quickly.
a) exceed b) join c) charge d) access

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

Where Pride Begins

Pride is not something that appears in a single day. It grows slowly, like a tree, from strong roots of history, culture, and shared values. For Egyptians, these roots run deep and continue to give us strength. Our country is one of the oldest and greatest **civilizations** in the world, and its story continues to inspire not **only** Egyptians, but people everywhere. True pride is built through connection to the past and responsibility for the future.

In ancient times, Egypt was a leader in human progress and knowledge. Our ancestors built the **mighty** pyramids and the **magnificent** temples along the Nile - **monuments** that still amaze the world today. They developed writing systems, advanced mathematics, and important medical knowledge. These achievements were not only for Egypt; they became gifts to the entire world, proving the greatness and creativity of our people.

Their **heritage** shows that Egyptians have always worked with vision and determination. Egypt was also a center for culture and learning. Great authors, poets, and thinkers shared their ideas and recorded their knowledge in writing. Their works reflected the values, traditions, and beliefs of the Egyptian society and influenced people for generations. Through stories, wisdom, and art, Egypt became a place where culture was preserved and celebrated. This role, as a home for creativity and expression, gave our nation respect and admiration from other civilizations. True pride begins when we understand our history, protect our culture, and work hard for the future. It is not only about what we have inherited, but also about what we create for the generations to come. When we honor our past, stay united, and build our tomorrow with determination, we stand exactly where pride begins.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In the passage, the pyramids and temples are examples of
 a) modern construction
 b) gifts from other civilizations
 c) ancient achievements
 d) tourist attractions only
- Ancient Egyptians developed knowledge in
 a) music and painting
 b) writing, mathematics, and medicine
 c) fishing and farming only
 d) science and technology only
- The phrase "True pride begins when we understand our history" means
 a) we should only think about the future
 b) knowing and valuing our past makes us proud
 c) history is more important than the present
 d) the future is less important than the past
- The writer compares pride to a
 a) river
 b) mountain
 c) tree
 d) star

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





Listening Text



Long ago, people lived in ways very different from today. They depended mainly on the land, growing crops and raising animals for survival. Families lived close to nature, often using simple tools and working together to produce what they needed. Communities were small, and traditions were passed down through stories, songs, and daily practices. As time moved forward, inventions began to change human life. The discovery of writing allowed people to record knowledge and history. The use of metal tools made farming and building easier. Great civilizations rose, building cities, temples, and trade routes that connected distant lands. While our ancestors were struggling hard to survive, their minds never stopped thinking till progress happened step by step. Now, life has become much faster and more complex. Technology allows us to communicate across the world in seconds, travel long distances in hours, and access information with a single click. Yet, the wisdom and lessons from long ago still shape who we are. By remembering the past and learning from it, we can build a future that respects history while embracing progress.

Definitions

التعريفات

heritage	تراث	history, traditions, and values passed down
monuments	آثار	historical buildings or structures of importance
inspire	يلهم / يحث	something that motivates and encourages others

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	society	المجتمع (ككل بكل طوائفه)	We live in a modern society .
	community	فئة من المجتمع مرتبطة ببعضها (بمكان أو مهنة مشتركة أو ثقافة أو هواية)	- She is very active in her local community . - The scientific community welcomed the new discovery.
2	teach	يُعلم / ينقل معرفة أو مهارة لشخص آخر	She teaches English at school.
	learn	يتعلم / يكتسب معرفة أو مهارة.	He learned a lot from his mistakes.

human (adj)

إنساني / متعلق بالإنسان.

Human rights are important and must be respected.

humane (adj)

رحيم / عطوف / فيه شفقة

She is a very **humane** person who cares about others.

humanity (n)

الإنسانية

We want a clean, healthy environment for all **humanity**.

compare to

يشبهه شيئاً بشيء آخر لتوضيح أوجه الشبه
(يُستعمل عادةً في الأسلوب الأدبي أو البلاغي)

My father cannot be **compared to** any other man.

compare with

يقارن بين شئين أو أكثر بهدف إيجاد أوجه
الشبه والاختلاف (يستخدم في الدراسات،
التحليل، الإحصاءات)

Compared with last year, sales have increased.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a large-scale, self-sufficient group of people sharing a common culture and institutions.
a) society b) community c) district d) area
2. All people must respect basic rights such as freedom, education, and safety.
a) humane b) human c) humans d) humanity
3. The kind teacher was very when she helped her students with love and patience.
a) human b) humanity c) humane d) inhumane
4. Showing kindness to the poor and helping the sick are examples of true
a) human b) humane c) humanity d) humans
5. He made many mistakes last year, but he could important lessons from them.
a) teach b) educate c) learn d) compare
6. In literature, a poet may compare a beautiful face the moon in a love poem.
a) to b) on c) in d) for

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

- Old like statues and tombs tell us about the beliefs of ancient Egyptians.
a) poems b) monuments c) gifts d) stories
- The Nile is a river that helped Egyptians build their civilization.
a) short b) cultural c) mighty d) modern
- Our music, language, and traditions are a part of our great Egyptian
a) wisdom b) heritage c) belief d) kingdom
- The factory can over 1000 items per hour due to the new machines.
a) fix b) reduce c) produce d) save
- Egyptians felt great when Ahmed El Gendy won an Olympic medal.
a) wisdom b) respect c) vision d) pride
- Winning the gold medal was a great that made the athlete proud.
a) idea b) achievement c) story d) failure
- The Ancient Egyptians had strong in the powers of nature.
a) beliefs b) values c) roots d) stories
- Sometimes clouds suddenly in the sky, bringing rain to the lands.
a) disappear b) show c) grow d) appear
- Great inventions always need because scientists must think of new ideas and solutions.
a) creativity b) history c) roots d) beliefs
- Music and traditions are part of the life of every country in the world.
a) mighty b) medical c) cultural d) practical
- Scientists work hard to new machines that help people.
a) grow b) develop c) amaze d) protect
- I've always learned from my grandfather's in different situations.
a) expression b) vision c) gift d) wisdom
- Many people in villages still depend on for a living.
a) fishing b) technology c) progress d) farming
- Every invention starts with a/an that grows in the mind of a person.
a) idea b) belief c) gift d) expression
- Parents can their children by teaching them respect and hard work.
a) inherit b) amaze c) influence d) protect
- Great leaders can young people to work hard and achieve big dreams.
a) inspire b) protect c) respect d) share



Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17. The teacher asked the students to answer the questions in
 a) speech b) talk c) writing d) voice
18. Egyptians' love for their homeland will always run in their hearts.
 a) wide b) deep c) far d) strong
19. The workers decided to stay during difficult times to develop their company.
 a) open b) strong c) united d) proud
20. Many doctors help their local by giving free medical care.
 a) society b) community c) civilization d) nation
21. The engineer is very busy working a new bridge project this month.
 a) in b) on c) for d) with
22. My manager had a strong in my abilities and skills.
 a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believer
23. The story he told was not because everyone knew he was joking.
 a) belief b) believer c) believe d) believable
24. Cairo is a big cultural center art, music, and learning in the Arab world.
 a) off b) on c) for d) with
25. The teacher explained that history has a connection our daily lives.
 a) at b) on c) to d) with
26. Scientists try to create new machines helping people live more easily.
 a) on b) for c) to d) with

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. Online shopping is convenient مناسب because people can buy things from home at any time. The synonyms of the word "convenient" are
 a) inappropriate b) appropriate c) unsuitable d) superficial e) suitable
28. We believe that honesty is important in life. The nouns of the verb "believe" are
 a) believable b) believer c) belief d) believing e) believed
29. Scientists must prove their ideas with facts so people can trust their discoveries. The synonyms of the word "prove" are
 a) confirm b) demonstrate c) conceal d) confuse e) improve
30. The old man was respected for his wisdom; he always gave fair and helpful advice. The antonyms of the word "wisdom" are
 a) stupidity b) common sense c) insight
 d) powerful e) thoughtlessness

B

Language

Notes on the past simple and past continuous:

ملاحظات على الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر:

1

يمكن أن يأتي بعد هذه الروابط (v-ing) أو noun ، لاحظ التالي:

While بينما

When عندما

During أثناء

On عند

+ (v-ing) بدون فاعل

+ (noun) اسم

+ (noun)/(v-ing)

While playing, he fell down.

When arriving, I had a shower.

During my stay in England, I learned English.

On seeing the police, the thief ran away.

لا بد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الأولى هو نفسه فاعل الجملة الثانية عند استخدام (While/When + v-ing).

While staying in Alexandria, I visited a lot of places.

2

من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضي المستمر مع all إذا جاءت بمعنى طوال وجاء بعدها مدة زمنية في الماضي.

(all day/all night/all morning/all evening yesterday)

I was watching television all day yesterday.

لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين:

She was studying all night.

هنا التركيز على مدة الحدث.

She studied all night.

هنا التركيز على اكتمال الحدث.

3

بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم في الماضي المستمر ولكن تستخدم في الماضي البسيط حتى مع علامات الماضي المستمر وهي:

١- أفعال الحواس see – hear – smell – taste – touch – feel

٢- أفعال العاطفة love – like – hate – dislike – prefer

٣- أفعال التفكير understand – forget – remember – know – remind

٤- أفعال التملك owe – own – possess – have – belong – want

When my teacher was revising the lesson, I heard some noise outside.

ومن الممكن استخدامها مع الأزمنة المستمرة إذا جاءت بمعنى آخر.

While I was having lunch, the doorbell rang.

لاحظ الفعل have هنا بمعنى يتناول وليس بمعنى يمتلك.

4

من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط للإشارة إلى حدث تم في الماضي لم يذكروا وقت وقوعه ولكن معروف

(كمعلومة) أنه تم في الماضي (الماضي البديهي).

The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to stop the enemies' attacks.

5 While + (حرف جر) = While + subject فاعل + v. to (be) + (حرف جر)

While on holiday, I had a great time.

= While I was on holiday, I had a great time.

6

لاحظ استخدام While في المبني للمعلوم والمبني للمجهول عند عدم وجود فاعل للجملة الأولى.

While { (active) معلوم — v-ing — While studying my lessons, I slept.
(passive) مجهول — being + P.P. — While being repaired, my car exploded.

7

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع هذه التعبيرات ولكن المعنى يكون مضارعًا.

It's (high) time

'd rather

Suppose

subject فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

Examples

It's time I traveled abroad.

حان وقت السفر للخارج.

Suppose you found a wallet in the street, what would you do?

افترض أنك وجدت محفظة في الشارع، ماذا كنت ستفعل؟

I'd rather you left the car key before going out.

أفضل أن تترك مفتاح السيارة قبل أن تخرج.

أما إذا وجدنا كلمة دالة على الماضي مع 'd rather/I wish نستخدم زمن الماضي التام.

Examples

I'd rather I had traveled abroad two years ago.

أتمنى لو كنت سافرت للخارج منذ سنتين.

I wish I had attended the party yesterday.

أتمنى لو كنت حضرت الحفلة بالأمس.

التعبيرات السابقة إذا لم يأت بعدها فاعل تصبح قاعدتها كالآتي:

I wish + (to + inf.) مصدر

I'd rather + inf. مصدر

It's time + (to + inf.) مصدر

Examples

It's time to travel abroad.

I wish to attend the party.

8

يمكن استخدام مصدر did + inf. للدلالة على التأكيد.

I visited him yesterday. = I did visit him yesterday.

9

كلمة **for** كلمة دالة على زمن المضارع التام ولكن من الممكن استخدامها في الماضي البسيط عند وجود ما يدل على انتهاء الحدث.

My father **worked** for this company **for** 20 years. Now, he has his own company.

10

استخدام **am/is/are** أو **do/does** مع **used to**:

لنفي الجملة الثانية أو إثباتها هنا يوجد **be** بعد **used to** لذا نستخدم **am/is/are**.

He used to **be** careless, but now he **isn't**.

- She didn't use to **be** active, but now she **is**.

- لنفي الجملة الثانية أو إثباتها مع أى فعل آخر نستخدم **do/does**.

He didn't use to **sleep** early, but now he **does**.

- He used to **study** hard, but now he **doesn't**.

Language

Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. While the match, I fell asleep.

- a) was watching b) watched c) had watched d) watching

2. Omar was my only Egyptian friend my stay in France.

- a) on b) when c) while d) during

3. hearing a cry for help, we rushed to check what was wrong.

- a) While b) As soon as c) By d) On

4. It's high time you your work.

- a) starting b) started c) start d) had started

5. Nora used to be a teacher, but now she

- a) isn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) didn't

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. When Ahmed returned home, his mother was baking a cake.

(While)

2. When I saw Ali in the street, I waved to him.

(On)

3. He was watching a movie, and he fell asleep suddenly.

(When)

4. Esraa rang me during my sleep.

(While)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. the flight, I felt sick.
a) While b) When c) During d) As soon as
2. running down the road, I crashed into a tree.
a) While b) As c) As soon as d) By
3. doing my homework, my brother was playing computer games.
a) While I was b) After c) During d) While
4. My uncle for the police for twenty years before he retired.
a) works b) worked
c) has worked d) is used to working
5. During to Sharm, I swam in the sea every morning.
a) visit b) visited c) my visit d) being visited
6. While we on holiday in Alexandria, we met many of our old friends.
a) were being b) are c) have been d) were
7. While, the baby smiled at the doctor.
a) examining b) was examining
c) being examined d) was being examined
8. When dinner, a stranger knocked on the door by mistake.
a) am having b) having c) I was having d) had
9. at the zoo, I saw many animals.
a) Just as b) Which c) During d) While
10. I didn't accept my friend's invitation to dinner as I for my exam.
a) revised b) are revising c) was revising d) had revised
11. Suppose you a bag of money, what would you do?
a) found b) have found c) will find d) was finding
12. I couldn't go out with my friends because I my mother with the housework.
a) was helped b) was helping c) had helped d) helping
13. I was having a shower, so I the telephone.
a) didn't hear b) wasn't hearing c) haven't heard d) hearing
14. It's high time I a new pair of jeans.
a) buy b) had bought c) bought d) was buying
15. While, the criminal was shot by the police.
a) he was chasing b) being chased c) was chasing d) chasing

- ▶ **16.** I'd rather my son hard last year.
 a) studied b) had studied c) study d) to study
- 17.** Yousra used to live in Cairo, but now she
 a) hasn't b) didn't c) isn't d) doesn't
- 18.** While by his mother, the baby gave a loud cry.
 a) having bathed b) he was bathing c) was bathed d) being bathed
- 19.** My father used to be a heavy smoker when he was young, but now he
 a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) won't
- 20.** Hesham us to the public library when the car broke down.
 a) is taking b) had taken c) was taking d) has taken
- 21.** While I sick, I lost a lot of weight and became very thin.
 a) was b) was being c) am d) had been
- 22.** I hurt my arm while a tree in the garden.
 a) climbing b) was climbing c) climbed d) is climbing
- 23.** When I met Ali yesterday, he to the hospital. I offered to go with him.
 a) went b) was going c) had gone d) going
- 24.** I wish I hadn't got up late. This means the speaker up early.
 a) got b) didn't get c) has got d) never gets
- 25.** Salwa always set the table for lunch. This sentence
 a) is a present habit b) was a past habit
 c) always takes place d) never took place
- 26.** I worked for the army for a long time. This means
 a) I no longer work for it b) I still work for it
 c) I didn't work for it d) I have always worked for it
- 27.** Mom the food earlier in the morning and added salt.
 a) was tasting b) tasted
 c) has tasted d) was being tasted

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- ▶ **1.** While I did the shopping, I met one of my old friends. (.....)
- 2.** First, we prepared for the party, then we invite a lot of guests. (.....)
- 3.** We listened carefully as the manager's presentation. (.....)
- 4.** While my illness, a lot of my friends visited me. (.....)
- 5.** While I was cleaning the house, my mother prepared lunch. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

- Schools should teach students about their national, so they feel proud of their ancestors.
a) heritage b) mathematics c) foods d) society
- The government works hard to restore ancient because they are important for Egypt's history.
a) values b) monuments c) roots d) stories
- Egyptians usually national holidays with music, flags, and beautiful decorations in the streets.
a) respect b) protect c) show d) celebrate
- Mr and Mrs Fahmy gave their son a wonderful for his birthday.
a) gift b) story c) belief d) value
- Modern schools help to education and give more children the chance to study and succeed.
a) amaze b) share c) improve d) stand
- Books are a great source of because they give us facts, stories, and many useful ideas.
a) knowledge b) values c) roots d) history
- A good guides people, protects the nation, and makes fair decisions.
a) author b) poet c) citizen d) leader
- Doctors and nurses give people care in hospitals to help them recover quickly.
a) medical b) scientific c) cultural d) cultural
- A/An is a large group of people who share the same language, culture, and land together.
a) nation b) citizen c) civilization d) area
- Ahmed Shawqi is a famous Egyptian who wrote many poems that still inspire people today.
a) actor b) author c) thinker d) poet
- Due to traffic jam, the driver decided to take a different
a) steep b) route c) root d) edge
- New inventions are the result of research that uses experiments and tests to find facts.
a) scientific b) medical c) unknown d) cultural
- The island was so that it took two days to reach it by boat.
a) close b) distant c) near d) wide

- 14. The mirror can your face clearly, just like water shows the image of the sky above.
 a) share b) respect c) stand d) reflect
15. Students should spend their time by studying hard and reading books.
 a) wisely b) slowly c) deeply d) proudly

Language

16. While, he fell in a hole.
 a) run b) running c) was running d) has run
17. All the emails three days ago.
 a) are sent b) sent
 c) were sent d) have been sent
18. When I was young, I my relatives every now and then.
 a) visit b) have visited c) visited d) was visiting
19. the movie, Mahmoud fell asleep because it was a boring one.
 a) While b) During c) On d) When
20. We met a lot of our friends our stay in Austria.
 a) while b) when c) since d) during
21. Who?
 a) were the complaints made by b) did you make the complaints
 c) were the complaints made d) were you made the complaints
22. My brother usually to school when he was young.
 a) walks b) was walking c) walked d) has walked
23. He visited a lot of interesting places his visit to London.
 a) during b) while c) when d) just as
24. I met a lot of my old friends my cousin's wedding party.
 a) since b) during c) when d) while
25. I would rather he my camera.
 a) haven't broken b) hadn't broken c) didn't break d) not break
26. My uncle as a shop assistant for ten years only. He is now a worker in a factory.
 a) has worked b) had worked c) worked d) works
27. I'd rather you out alone at night.
 a) not going b) didn't go c) not to go d) haven't gone
28. While I at home, my uncle suddenly knocked on the door.
 a) will be b) was being c) am d) was
29. watching TV, my brother visited us. It was a good surprise.
 a) While I was b) As c) While d) Just as
30. Don't make a noise while your father
 a) is sleeping b) was sleeping c) was asleep d) had slept



Writing Skill

Writing

tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Essay Structure بناء المقال

An essay is a piece of writing with a clear beginning, middle, and end, written to explain or support an idea. It is like a journey with three main stages:

المقال عبارة عن قطعة كتابية ذات بداية ووسط ونهاية واضحة، مكتوبة لشرح أو دعم فكرة ما. إنه مثل رحلة مكونة من ثلاث مراحل رئيسية:

Introduction

المقدمة

Introduces the topic, grabs attention, shows the main idea, and includes the (Thesis Statement (جملة الموضوع) which is the main sentence of the essay as it shows what the topic is about.

في المقدمة يتم تقديم الموضوع بشكل عام وجذب انتباه القارئ وتوضيح الفكرة الرئيسية، ويتضمن المقدمة الـ Thesis Statement وهي جملة الموضوع أو الفكرة التي يدور حولها المقال.

Body Paragraphs

فقرات الموضوع

Explain and support the idea with details and examples.

في هذا الجزء يتم تدعيم الفكرة الرئيسية للموضوع عن طريق الأمثلة وإعطاء التفاصيل.

Conclusion

الخاتمة

Summarizes, restates the main idea, and gives a final thought.

وهنا يتم تلخيص الموضوع وإعادة صياغة الفكرة الرئيسية وإعطاء رأى أخير حول الموضوع.

START

Introduction

(The opening paragraph)

Body Paragraphs

The main part (usually 2 - 3 paragraphs)

Conclusion

(The final paragraph)

FINISH

Essay about Learning English

كتابة مقال عن تعلم الإنجليزية

Introduction:

المقدمة:

Start with a hook (question/fact).

ابدأ بجملة افتتاحية جاذبة للانتباه.

State your opinion.

اذكر رأيك تجاه الموضوع.

Body Paragraphs:

فقرات الموضوع:

Show your reasons that support your opinion.

وضح أسبابك التي تدعم رأيك.

Provide examples, statistics, or quotes.

اذكر أمثلة أو إحصائيات أو اقتباسات.

Conclusion:

الخاتمة:

Summarize your points, make a recommendation, or give advice.

لخص النقاط المذكورة وقم بعمل توصيات أو قدم نصائح.

MODEL ESSAY

Introduction

Have you ever thought about why English is so important? English is the most common international language. I believe learning English is very useful today because it helps us in school, at work, and in life.

Body Paragraphs

First, English is important for education. Many books, websites, and scientific articles are written in English. If students learn English, they can understand more information and improve their knowledge. This makes studying easier and more enjoyable.

Second, English is important for jobs and travel. Many companies need workers who can speak English. Also, when people travel, English helps them communicate in other countries. This makes life more exciting and successful.

Conclusion

In conclusion, English gives us education, better jobs, and chances to connect with the world. Every student should work hard to learn English because it is the key to the future.

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الشهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The human body is like a machine that is moving and working all the time. All machines need fuel to give them energy. The fuel for the human body is food, and most of the energy comes from two substances in our food; they are carbohydrates and fats. They are found in food like potatoes, bread, rice, wheat, corn, and sugar. Fats come from food like cheese, butter, oil, and meat.

Energy in food is measured in calories. For example, an apple has about 40 calories, an egg has about 80, a fresh date has 15, and a tomato has around 12.

Carbohydrates and fats have a lot of calories. For instance, a tin of soft drinks and a spoonful of cooking oil have 120 calories.

You need about 40 calories a day for each kilo that you weigh. So, if you weigh 60 kilos, you need about 2400 calories per day. If a person eats more calories than they need, their body stores the extra calories as fat. A person who gets all the calories they need in their meals but, in addition, drinks only one tin of soft drink a day may gain five kilos per year.

Unfortunately, food which contains carbohydrates is usually cheaper than other food, and it is often convenient and attractive. All 'junk food' contains lots of carbohydrates and fats. If your diet contains a lot of junk food, you will probably get fat.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the best title for the passage? - ".....".
 a) Carbohydrates and Fats b) Fuel for the Human Body
 c) Human Body and Machines d) Energy in Food
- According to the passage, what happens if a person eats more calories than they need?
 a) They lose weight.
 b) Their body stores the extra calories as fats.
 c) They become more energetic.
 d) Their body burns the extra calories.
- How many calories does a person need per day if they weigh 60 kilograms?
 a) 60 calories. b) 1200 calories. c) 2400 calories. d) 3600 calories.
- Which of the following statements is NOT supported by the passage?
 a) All junk food contains carbohydrates and fats.
 b) Carbohydrates and fats are the main sources of energy in food.
 c) Eating only junk food can lead to weight gain.
 d) Fats are more harmful than carbohydrates.

5. What is the main source of energy for the human body?

- a) Water. b) Carbohydrates. c) Meat. d) Fiber.

6. What happens if a person drinks only one tin of soft drink a day in addition to their meals?

- a) They lose weight. b) They gain five kilos per year.
c) Their body burns extra calories. d) They become more energetic.

7. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

- a) Sugar. b) Carbohydrates and fats.
c) Cheese and butter. d) Oil and meat.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Each year, millions of tourists rush to see Venice, the unique city in Italy, before it disappears into the sea. The travelers themselves are probably unaware that their weight is adding to the problem. Venice has suggested imposing a tax on all visitors to help pay for the restoration of the ancient buildings and do research into ways of preventing further sinking. There are 1.6 billion tourists going around the world, and the impact of tourism can be serious. Some say that tourism is destroying the planet, while others say that it benefits countries. New groups of "green" tourists or "eco-tourists" are upset by the effects of mass tourism on coastal regions such as those of the Mediterranean. They suggest that only a few tourists should be allowed. For instance, they don't want people who visit the Galápagos Islands in Ecuador to affect the ecological balance.

Local people should enjoy the economic benefits of tourism. In many places, it's tourism that actually supports the local traditions and crafts, as well as the economy. The travel industry—airlines, hotels, and cruise companies—should work with local councils and governments to agree upon some rules for planning and development in tourist areas. A lot of little steps can help to ensure that the earth's clean travel destinations remain clean for future generations of tourists.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following would be the best title for the passage? - ".....".

- a) The History of Venice b) How to Travel Cheaply
c) Tourism: Benefits and Dangers d) Famous Tourist Attractions in Italy

2. Which of the following best represents a balanced view of tourism?

- a) All tourism should be banned immediately.
b) Tourism only helps poor countries.
c) Tourism has benefits and risks, and must be managed carefully.
d) Tourism always destroys local cultures.

- 3.** The main idea of the passage is
a) how to visit Venice
c) restoring ancient buildings
b) the pros and cons of tourism
d) the Galápagos Islands
- 4.** Venice has suggested imposing a tax on all visitors to
a) gain lots of money
c) help restore the old buildings
b) import goods
d) build another city
- 5.** There are opinions about tourism mentioned in the passage.
a) two
b) three
c) four
d) more than four
- 6.** The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) green companies
c) Venice people
b) eco-tourists
d) the Galápagos Islands
- 7.** The airlines and hotels should work with for developing tourist areas.
a) local councils
b) governments
c) eco-tourists
d) both a & b

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. لكي نساعد في حل مشكلة التلوث من الممكن أن نستخدم السيارات التي تعمل بالكهرباء ونزيع المزيد من الأشجار ونستخدم وسائل المواصلات العامة.

- a) In order to help in solving the problem of pollution, we can use solar cars, plant more trees and use public transportation.
- b) In order to help in solve the problem of pollution, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use general transportation.
- c) In order that help in solving the problem of population, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use general transportation.
- d) In order to help in solving the problem of pollution, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use public transportation.

5. تعتبر السياحة العمود الفقري للاقتصاد المصري، لذا يجب علينا أن نجذب المزيد من السياح إلى مصر.

- a) Tourism considers the backbone of the Egyptian economy, so we must attract more tourists to Egypt.
- b) Tourism is considered the backbone of the Egyptian economy, so we must attract more tourists to Egypt.
- c) Tourism is considered the backbone of the Egyptian economy, so we must attack more tourists to Egypt.
- d) Tourism considered the backbone of the Egyptian income, so we must attract more tourists to Egypt.

6. من المحتمل أن تتحقق في المستقبل سياحة الفضاء والتي ستجذب الكثير من الناس وستحقق أرباحاً خيالية.

- a) It is probably that space tourist will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.
- b) It is possible that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make proper profits.
- c) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract lots of people and make huge profits.
- d) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will pull many people and make huge profits.

(C) Writing**4 Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:**

"Why learning English is important today"

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

spare time	وقت الفراغ	profits	مكاسب / أرباح	public transportation	المواصلات العامة
national income	الدخل القومي	participate in	يساهم في	terrorism	الإرهاب



Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences using words from the box below:

preserves – identity – heritage – restoring – pride

1. The Aswan High Dam helps to control the Nile, but it also many historical sites from floods.
2. The Great Pyramids are an amazing part of our historical that we must protect.
3. The government is working on the old Islamic buildings in Cairo.
4. A strong sense of national is important for a country to feel united.
5. Egyptians have a deep feeling of when they see their ancient monuments.

2 Complete the following sentences with words from the box:

civilization – heritage – achievements – monuments

1. Egypt is one of the oldest and greatest in the world.
2. Our ancestors' in writing and medicine were gifts to the world.
3. The pyramids and temples are examples of ancient
4. Modern museums protect our cultural

Language

3 Fill in the blanks with Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1. While I (walk) home, I (see) a shooting star.
2. They (play) football when it (start) to rain.
3. I (not hear) the phone because I (listen) to music.
4. She (write) a poem when her pen (break).
5. We (watch) TV all evening yesterday.

4 Choose the correct tense:

1. I (was reading / read) a book when the doorbell (rang / was ringing).
2. They (were dancing / danced) when the music (stopped / was stopping).
3. He (was driving / drove) to work when he (had / was having) an accident.
4. We (played / were playing) chess while our parents (talked / were talking).
5. I (was sleeping / slept) while my mom (cooked / was cooking).

5 Correct the mistakes:

1. She was go to school when it rained. (.....)
2. I didn't watching TV at 7:00 last night. (.....)
3. Were you studied at 9 p.m. yesterday? (.....)
4. They was playing football yesterday. (.....)
5. He didn't went to the party. (.....)



1 Finish the following dialog:

Ahmed is returning the TV set he bought.

Assistant : (1).....?

Ahmed : Yes, I want to return the TV set I bought yesterday.

Assistant : Okay. (2).....?

Ahmed : Certainly. My name's Ahmed Ali.

Assistant : What's wrong with it?

Ahmed : (3).....?

Assistant : (4).....?

Ahmed : No, thank you. I want my money.

Assistant : Okay. Give me a few seconds, please.

Ahmed : OK. I'll wait.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. religions are Judaism, Christianity, and Islam.

a) Divine

b) Non-divine

c) Spiritual

d) Worship

2. There are religions in the world.

a) no

b) two

c) four

d) various

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think culture affects religious practices?

.....

4. When does religion bind society?

.....

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Religion regulates the relationship between mankind and God and among people.

.....

(B) Translate into English:

لدى البشر عقائد مختلفة ترجع إلى اختلاف حضاراتهم.

.....

1. The company's profits began to last year after losing many of its main customers.

- a) increase b) decline c) decrease
d) raise e) maintain

2. The Great Pyramids are an inspiration for architects because they show amazing skill and creativity. The synonyms of the word "inspiration" are

- a) encouragement b) tension c) discouragement
d) despair e) enthusiasm

3. The ancient temples should be preserved as an important part of the country's

- a) economy b) tension c) heritage d) knowledge

4. The Silk Road was an important ancient route used for goods like spices and silk.

- a) hiding b) trading c) storing d) farming

5. The skilled artist carefully managed to a beautiful statue out of the marble block. كتلة رخامية.

- a) carve b) mold c) stick d) paint

6. We will my grandchildren's birthday with a big party tonight.

- a) forget b) influence c) celebrate d) encourage

7. After any failure, it's important to learn from mistakes and move to achieve success.

- a) up b) back c) for d) forward

8. As a parent, teaching children about for their actions is an essential part of their upbringing **التربية**.

- a) freedom b) pride c) responsibility d) affection

9. For a long time yesterday, my father in his office.

- a) working b) has worked c) was worked d) was working

10. Smoke out of the farm yesterday morning.

- a) was come b) was coming c) is coming d) comes

11. the meeting, we discussed all the urgent topics.

- a) When b) During c) While d) Until

12. When I first met Ali, I he was a good person.

- a) thought b) was thought c) was thinking d) have thought

13. I was talking on the phone, the lights went out.

- a) Since b) During c) While d) After

14. While the old town, we came across a group of Japanese tourists.

- a) visited b) were visiting c) being visited d) visiting

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the most famous monuments in the world. It was built more than 4,000 years ago during the reign of King Khufu. At that time, it was the tallest building in the world, and it amazed everyone who saw it. The pyramid was made of huge limestone blocks; each one was carefully cut and moved. Historians still wonder how the Ancient Egyptians managed to build such a great structure without modern machines.

The pyramid was originally built as a tomb for King Khufu, but it became much more than that. It became a symbol of Egypt's power, intelligence, and determination. It showed that the Egyptians were skilled in engineering, mathematics, and teamwork.

Today, the Great Pyramid is the last of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World still standing. Tourists from around the globe come to Egypt to visit it and learn about its history. Some scientists study the pyramid to understand the methods used in construction. Others believe the pyramid still hides secrets inside, waiting to be discovered.

The Great Pyramid is not only a building from the past; it is also a lesson for the present and the future. Egyptians today feel proud of their ancestors and continue to protect this monument as part of their national **heritage**. All of those great monuments remind us that hard work and determination can make anything possible.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The passage is mainly about

- a) King Khufu's family life
- b) how the Great Pyramid was built and why it is important
- c) how tourists travel in Egypt
- d) the Pyramids of Giza and their value

16. The Great Pyramid was built as

- a) a library
- b) a tomb for King Khufu
- c) a palace for tourists
- d) a school for children

17. Which is the best summary of the passage?

- a) The Great Pyramid is an old building that nobody visits today.
- b) The Great Pyramid is a wonder of the world, showing the skills of the Ancient Egyptians.
- c) The Great Pyramid was built quickly and without effort.
- d) The Great Pyramid is only a mystery with no clear history.

18. What does the Great Pyramid show about Ancient Egyptians?

- a) They were skilled in engineering and teamwork.
- b) They were rich and strong.
- c) They only worked for tourists.
- d) They built monuments for money.

- 19. How is the Great Pyramid different from modern buildings?
- It was built with machines, while modern buildings are built with hands.
 - It is taller than all modern buildings today.
 - It was built without modern technology, while modern buildings use advanced machines.
 - There is no difference between them.
20. The writer thinks Egyptians today should feel proud because
- they discovered gold inside the pyramid
 - they no longer build monuments
 - the pyramid is used as a tomb
 - their ancestors built something that still amazes the world
21. The underlined word "heritage" in the passage means
- something passed down from the past
 - something we buy in shops
 - a modern invention
 - a kind of building material

► 22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

تشتهر سواحل البحر الأحمر بالشعاب المرجانية فائقة الجمال التي تجذب السياح للاستمتاع برؤيتها.

- The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for their beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy seeing them.
- The shores of the Red Sea are famous for their beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy seeing them.
- The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for its beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy seeing them.
- The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for its beautiful coral reefs, which attracts tourists to enjoy their viewing.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Our need for water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we must rationalize our use of water, or we will face serious problems.

- من المتوقع أن تتضاعف حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
- يتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل البعيد، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
- حاجتنا للمياه في مصر من المتوقع أن تزداد في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل جادة.
- من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

► 24. Answer the following questions:

- How does Santiago show strength even though he is old and poor?
- How does baseball, especially Joe DiMaggio, inspire Santiago?
- Why is the sea described as Santiago's companion? What does this mean?

► 25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"A strange day you had in your life"

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

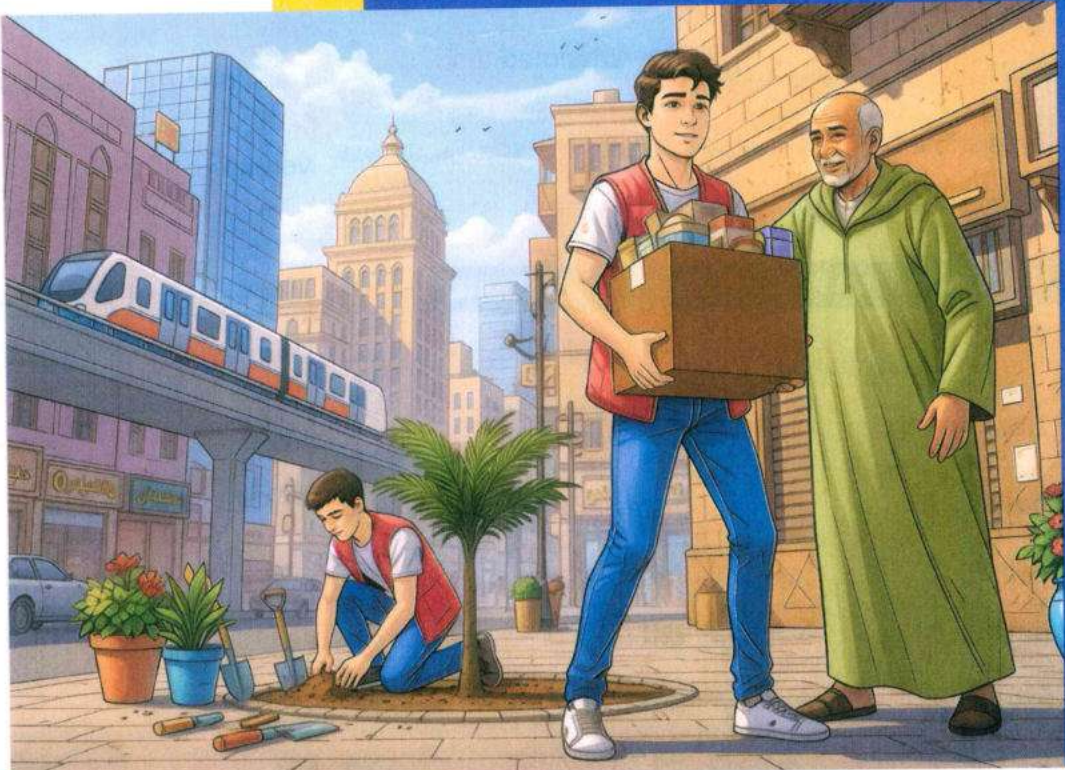
50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Unit 2

Hands Help, Hearts Care



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Reading short texts about helping others and community.
- Identifying key details of a text about volunteering and serving communities.

Language - Using modal verbs for suggestion, advice, invitations, and prohibition.

- Listening** - Identifying the main idea of a text.
- Identifying specific details of a text.

Writing - Writing a descriptive essay.

Speaking - Expressing varied social roles in community service.

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

community (n)	مجتمع	light up (v)	ينير/يشرق الوجه	stare (v) (d)	يدقق النظر/يحملق
confidence (n)	الثقة	optimism (n)	تفاؤل	support (v) (ed) (n)	يدعم/دعم/تأييد
fade (v) (d)	يتلاشى/يختفي	overwhelmed (adj)	مُثقل/مرهق	transform (v) (ed)	يتحول/يتغير
irresistible (adj)	لا يقاوم	saplings (n)	شتلات (أشجار صغيرة)	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
isolated (adj)	معزول/منعزل	slip (v) (ped)	يتراجع/ينزلق		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

act (n) (v) (ed)	تصرف/فعل/يمثل/يتصرف	dig (v) (ged)	يحفر	kindness (n)	عطف/طيبة
area (n)	منطقة	encouragement (n)	تشجيع/تحفيز	knock (n) (v) (ed)	طرق/يطرق
basket (n)	سلة	fresh (adj)	طازج	lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة/دائم طوال الحياة
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان	friendly (adj)	ودود	mirror (v) (ed) (n)	يعكس/مرآة
bitter (adj)	مر/لاذع	gift (n)	هبة/منحة/هدية	neighbor (n)	جار
campaign (n)	حملة/يقوم بحملة	grade (n)	درجة/تقدير	oven (n)	فرن
change (v) (d) (n)	يغير/تغيير	grey (adj) (n)	رمادي	pay (v) (n)	يدفع/راتب
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يحدث/دردشة	grow (v)	ينمو/يزرع	personal (adj)	شخصي
cloth (n)	قماش/قطعة قماش	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن	personality (n)	شخصية
conflict (n)	صراع	heavy (adj)	ثقل	positive (adj)	إيجابي
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل/اتصال	held (v)	يمسك/ينتظر	prevent (v) (ed)	يمنع
cousin (n)	ابن/ابنة العم	hug (n) (v) (ed)	حضان/يحضان	project (n)	مشروع
difference (n)	اختلاف	ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل	quality (n)	جودة/صفة

realize (v) (d)	يدرك	shade (n)	ظل	teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي
relationship (n)	علاقة	soft (adj)	ناعم	upstairs (adv)	بالطابق العلوي / بالأعلى
require (v) (d)	يتطلب	sound (n) (v) (ed)	صوت / يبدو	warm (adj)	دافئ
respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام / يحترم	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح / يصارع	worry (n) (v) (y) (ied)	يقلق / قلق
schoolwork (n)	عمل / واجب مدرسي	tap (v) (ped)	ينقر / يضرب بخفة	wrap (v) (ped)	يلف / يغلف

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The storm made the village for a few days as the roads were blocked.
a) irresistible b) positive c) isolated d) private
- While I was climbing down the ladder, I lost my balance and began to
a) require b) slip c) change d) fade
- She bought a nice present and made sure to it in colorful paper.
a) cut b) isolate c) tap d) wrap
- Over time, the colors of the old clothes began to
a) worry b) fade c) light d) realize
- After a long day in the hot weather, nothing is better than a glass of cold water.
a) irresistible b) warm c) bitter d) fresh
- Without, students may have no desire to join in school activities.
a) community b) shade c) confidence d) quality
- Be careful when opening the; it's extremely hot.
a) oven b) fan c) window d) fridge
- Our new warmly greeted us when we moved into the building.
a) student b) doctor c) neighbor d) housekeeper

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a knock at the door طريقة على الباب	chat about يدردش بخصوص	give a speech يلقي حديثاً
ask for يطلب	cover with يغطي بـ	grows bigger ينمو أكبر
at first في البداية	feel better يشعر بتحسن	have something in common لديهم شيء مشترك
by the window بجوار النافذة	for the first time لأول مرة	His words stayed in my mind. بقيت كلماته في ذهني
care more about يهتم أكثر بـ	get volunteering hours الحصول على ساعات تطوع	isolated from منعزل عن

learn from	يتعلم من	speak to	يتحدث إلى	tap on	ينقر على
make a difference	يصنع الفارق	speak up	يتحدث بصراحة / يتكلم بجرأة	working together	العمل معًا
mirror for mood	يعكس الحالة المزاجية	stare at	يحملق في	wrap around	يلتف حول

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer volunteering	متطوع تطوع	voluntary	تطوعي
isolate	يعزل	isolation	عزل / فصل	isolated	معزول / منعزل
confide	يثق	confidence	ثقة	confident	واثق
transform	يتحول / يتغير	transformation transformer	تحول محول (كهربائي)	transformational transformed	تحويلي متحول
-----		neighbor neighborhood	جار منطقة سكنية	neighboring neighborly	مجاور ودود
wrap	يلف	wrap/wrapper wrapping	غلاف تغليف	wrapped	ملفوف
optimize	يتفأّل / يحسّن	optimism optimist	تفاؤل شخص متفائل	optimistic	متفائل
resist	يقاوم	resist/resistance	مقاومة	irresistible resistible	لا يقاوم ممكّن تجنّبه

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

They need to **optimize** the use of available resources. (v)

Despite the challenges, he never lost his **optimism**. (n)

Even in hard times, my grandfather stays **optimistic** and kind. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
positive	إيجابي	effective/good		negative/harmful	سلبي / مؤذ
support	يؤيد / يساند	reinforce/encourage		oppose/neglect	يعارض / يهمل
overwhelmed	مثقل	stressed/frustrated		calm/relaxed	هادئ
isolated	منعزل / معزول	remote/detached		connected/sociable	متصل / اجتماعي

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن
الأسئلة لتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

It was a difficult week for Sama. Her grades were slipping, and she felt overwhelmed by all her schoolwork. On Thursday afternoon, she sat by her window, staring at the grey sky that seemed to mirror her mood. She hadn't spoken to many people lately and felt isolated from her friends. Then, there was a knock at the door, it was Mrs. Aya, the friendly neighbor who lived upstairs. She held a small basket covered with a clean white cloth, still warm from the oven, "I baked some fresh bread this morning," Mrs. Aya said warmly. "I thought you might like some." The smell was irresistible, wrapping around Sama like a gentle hug. Sama smiled for the first time in days and invited her in for tea. They sat together, chatting about small things—school, plants, and Mrs. Aya's garden, while the soft sound of rain tapped on the window. Slowly, Sama felt her worries began to fade. Before leaving, Mrs. Aya said, "Sometimes, the smallest kindness can make a big difference." Sama kept thinking about those words. She decided to help her younger cousin with homework that evening. Seeing her cousin's face light up filled her with optimism. She realized that kindness doesn't just make others feel better; it can change your own heart, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Sama felt isolated because she
 - a) moved to a new city
 - c) was preparing for a celebration
 - b) had little contact with friends
 - d) didn't like her neighbors
2. Mrs. Aya brought Sama
 - a) a basket of fruit
 - b) freshly baked bread
 - c) some flowers
 - d) a book to read
3. The smell of the bread was described as
 - a) ordinary
 - b) bitter
 - c) irresistible
 - d) strange
4. What did Sama do after Mrs. Aya's visit?
 - a) She went shopping.
 - c) She baked a cake.
 - b) She helped her cousin with homework.
 - d) She studied all night.



Listening Text



My name is Ahmed, and I'm 17 years old. Last year, I joined a community tree-planting project in my village. At first, I only wanted to get volunteering hours for school, but what happened during the project truly transformed me.

We worked in teams to dig holes, plant saplings, and water them. It was hard work under the hot sun, but we laughed a lot and supported each other. That's when I learned the meaning of real teamwork—not just working together, but caring if someone was tired or needed water.

One day, an old farmer came to watch. He said, "I haven't seen green like this in 20 years." His words stayed in my mind. I realized we weren't just planting trees; we were making a difference to the environment and to people's lives.

After three months, I felt different. I had more confidence to speak up, and I cared more about my community. Volunteering taught me responsibility—those trees depend on us. I even started a recycling corner at school.

Now, I believe volunteering isn't only about helping others—it's also about personal growth. You give time, but you get so much more: skills, friends, and pride. I will continue volunteering because it has become a lifelong habit. And yes, it's meaningful. When you serve others, your heart grows bigger.

Definitions

التعريفات

community	مجتمع	people who live in the same area or have something in common
volunteer	متطوع	a person who works without pay to help others
transformed	متغير بشكل إيجابي	completely changed
saplings	شتلات	young trees
support	يدعم	to give help or encouragement to someone
confidence	ثقة	belief in your own abilities
overwhelmed	مرهق	feeling like something is too much to handle, whether it's emotions, work, or stress
isolated	منعزل / معزول	separated from other people or places; feeling alone or cut off
optimism	تفاؤل	a feeling or belief that good things will happen or that the future will be positive

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

grade

1

علامة / نتيجة في الاختبار / تقدير

I got a high **grade** in my final exam.

degree

مؤهل أكاديمي يتم الحصول عليه بعد الجامعة

You need a **university degree** to apply for this job.

isolated

2

معزول / بعيد عن الآخرين (شخص / مكان)

The village was **isolated** due to the earthquake.

insulated

معزول / محمي (مع الحرارة / الكهرباء / الصوت)

The electric wires must be **insulated** to prevent electric shock.

cloth

قماش / قطعة من القماش

This **cloth** is made of pure cotton.

clothes

ملابس (يتم ارتداؤها) ودائمًا جمع ليس لها مفرد

I packed my **clothes** for the trip.

3

clothing

الكسوة / الملابس (نوع معين من الملابس) (اسم لا يعد)

We need light **clothing** during the day; it is very hot.

clothe

يُلبس / يكسو

They **clothe** their children in the latest fashions.

another

آخر يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد / فترات زمنية / كميات / مسافات

- I like this cake. Can I have **another** piece?

- This pen is broken. Give me **another** one, please.

- I want to stay in this hotel for **another** 6 days.

other

4

آخر ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع

Some people like English. **Other** people don't like it.

others

الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم وتفيد الجمع وتحل محل الفاعل)

Some people like English. **Others** don't like it.

the other

الآخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد أو جمع)

I'd like to watch the **other** film/films.

- 5 **too** أيضًا تأتي في نهاية الجملة المثبتة She can speak Spanish and her brother can **too**.
- either** أيضًا تأتي في نهاية الجملة المنفية She can't speak Spanish and her brother can't **either**.
- 6 **help مفعول inf.** He **helped me study**.
- help مفعول to inf.** He **helped me to study**.
- help مفعول with اسم** He **helped me with my homework**.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- After studying for 5 years at university, Leila finally received her in engineering.
a) grade b) class c) mark d) degree
- Modern buildings are often to reduce noise.
a) isolated b) insulated
c) overwhelmed d) transformed
- The charity provided food and for the victims.
a) cloth b) clothing c) clothe d) dresses
- She didn't understand the question. He didn't
a) too b) either c) also d) so
- means a belief in your own ability to do things and be successful.
a) Community b) Confidence
c) Optimism d) Report

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The gardener cares greatly for the newly planted
 a) saplings b) branches c) grades d) leaves
2. My lovely wife volunteered to help the elderly in her local
 a) contact b) relationship c) community d) population
3. The smell of freshly baked cake was so that I couldn't help tasting it.
 a) irresistible b) bitter c) positive d) respected
4. Our local hospital is looking for a to help patients with no families.
 a) manager b) baker c) volunteer d) director
5. It is so rude to try to at people's phone screen.
 a) slip b) see c) guess d) stare
6. The leader spoke with great about the future. He thinks everything will be OK.
 a) pessimism b) optimism c) worry d) sorrow
7. Education is considered a journey, not just a short task.
 a) lifelong b) slow c) private d) basic
8. It is polite to on the door before you enter the office.
 a) knock b) mirror c) sound d) guess
9. Amira didn't her mistake until her parents had explained it to her.
 a) realize b) hold c) grow d) require
10. The child ran to his mother kindly when she came home.
 a) grab b) push c) hug d) clothe
11. In sports, winning often depends on and good planning.
 a) teamwork b) selfishness
 c) deadline d) individual work
12. Haidi was praised for her when she gave the poor man 5 pounds.
 a) neighborhood b) kindness c) quality d) struggle
13. I always have a quick with my close friend before class.
 a) chat b) conflict c) belief d) change
14. We need better and strict laws to accidents on our roads.
 a) prevent b) transform c) hold d) isolate
15. His appearance shows that he's quiet, but his strong shines when he speaks.
 a) grade b) optimism c) personality d) change
16. The speaker's voice was so that I could hardly hear her.
 a) loud b) soft c) fresh d) kind

17. We should all try to have a good with our colleagues at work.
 a) difference b) shade c) relationship d) history
18. Some kinds of medicine might have a taste, yet we must take them to feel better.
 a) better b) cold c) bitter d) warm
19. My grandfather's health began to after the new medicine the doctor gave him.
 a) charge b) encourage c) improve d) guess
20. A faithful teacher is a true to their students.
 a) skill b) gift c) worry d) memory
21. Our relatives always give us a smile that makes us feel at home.
 a) worried b) warm c) hidden d) wrapped
22. We must have a strong that education can change our lives.
 a) quality b) irrisistance c) worry d) belief

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23. I tried sushi the first time during my trip to Japan.
 a) for b) at c) in d) of
24. Teachers students to ask questions and think critically.
 a) encourage b) encouragement c) encouraging d) discourage
25. I was surprised to find out we have something, like our taste in music.
 a) in common b) with common c) for usual d) in conflict
26. If you work hard enough, you can truly make a in your community.
 a) different b) differ c) differently d) difference

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. She was overwhelmed by the amount of work she had to finish before the deadline. The synonyms of "overwhelmed" are
 a) stressed b) calm c) anxious d) relaxed e) peaceful
28. Her smile began to fade when she heard the bad news. The opposites of "fade" are
 a) brighten b) weaken c) disappear d) appear e) neglect
29. My family always supports me in everything I do. The word "support" gives the same meaning as
 a) encourage b) lend c) reinforce d) reject e) oppose
30. My teacher asked me to give him answer to the question.
 a) other b) another c) others d) the other e) the others
31. He lived in an isolated village. The antonyms of "isolated" are
 a) remote b) unavoidable c) connected d) hopeless e) near

(should/shouldn't) (must/mustn't)

الأفعال الناقصة (للتعبير عن النصيحة أو الإلزام)

1

Subject الفاعل (should = ought to) + inf./ (shouldn't = oughtn't to) + inf.

To give and ask for advice:

إعطاء أو طلب النصيحة:

You **should/ought to wash** your hands after you touch animals.You **shouldn't/oughtn't to sleep** late. It is bad for you.What **should** I **do** to join the Faculty of Medicine?

Important Notes

Should/Shouldn't بدائل

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة بنفس معنى **should/shouldn't** لاحظ التالي:

should

had better + inf.

My students **had better** study hard.

I advise ... to ...

I **advise** my students **to** study hard.

It is advisable ... to ...

It is advisable for my students **to** study hard.

If I were you, I would ...

If I were you, I would study hard.

It is important to ...

It is important to study hard.

It would be a good idea to ...

It would be a good idea to study hard.

shouldn't

had better not + inf.

You **had better not** walk alone in uninhabited places. أماكن غير مسكونة.

I advise ... not to ...

I **advise** you **not to** walk alone in uninhabited places.

It is inadvisable to ...

It is inadvisable to walk alone in uninhabited places.

If I were you, I wouldn't ...

If I were you, I wouldn't walk alone in uninhabited places.

It is important not to ...

It is important not to walk alone in uninhabited places.

It wouldn't be a good idea to ...

It wouldn't be a good idea to walk alone in uninhabited places.

2 Subject + must + inf. ...

استخدامات must

Strong advice and warm invitation:

قوية ودعوة حارة:

- 1 You **must stop** smoking to keep healthy.
You **must visit** me so we can have lunch together.

Laws:

القوانين:

- 2 Drivers **must wear** seatbelts.
Passengers **must wear** life jackets on small boats.



Important Notes

بدائل Must

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة بنفس معنى **must** لاحظ التالي:

must + inf.	It is a necessity to + inf.	It is a necessity to get up early.
You must get up early.	It is a must + to + inf.	It is a must to get up early.
	It is necessary to + inf.	It is necessary to get up early.
	Obj. (اسم شخص) (am/is/are) obliged to + inf.	Ali is obliged to get up early.

3 Subject + mustn't + inf. ...

استخدامات Mustn't

Prohibition:

للتعبير عن التحريم (شيء خطير أو ضد القانون):

- 1 You **mustn't park** your car here. It is not allowed.
You **mustn't smoke** in petrol stations. It is against the law.

Strong advice:

للتعبير عن النصيحة القوية:

- 2 You **mustn't stay** up late as it is bad for your health.
You **mustn't waste** your time in vain.



Important Notes

Mustn't بدائل

يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة بنفس معنى **mustn't** لاحظ التالي:

It is (forbidden/banned/prohibited/illegal) to + inf.

It is (forbidden/banned/prohibited/illegal) to smoke in hospitals.

It is not permitted to + inf.

It is not permitted to smoke in hospitals.

mustn't + inf.

You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.

Subject + (am/is/are) not allowed/permitted to + inf.

You **are not allowed/permitted to smoke** in hospitals.

Subject + (am/is/are) (banned/prohibited/forbidden) from + v-ing

You **are (banned/prohibited/forbidden) from smoking** in hospitals.

لاحظ

من الممكن استخدام **can't + inf.** بدلاً من **mustn't + inf.** للتعبير عن المنع.

You **can't smoke** in hospitals.

Language

Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eman's marks on the exams are not good. She study her lessons hard.
That's my advice.

- a) needs b) ought c) shouldn't d) should

2. This suit is very tight, you to try another one.

- a) should b) must c) ought d) a & c

3. I advise you food that contains a lot of fats.

- a) not eating b) to not eating c) not to eat d) don't eat

4. It would be a good idea to go to the park together, so we do that.

- a) need b) should c) mightn't d) mustn't

5. Nora, you go out now. It's raining cats and dogs!

- a) had better not b) had better
c) had better not to d) not had better

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. You should to wear a helmet when riding a bike. (.....)
2. Students mustn't using their phones during the exam. (.....)
3. She should not to be late for the meeting. (.....)
4. She must follows school rules. (.....)
5. You shouldn't make noise in a hospital; it isn't allowed. (.....)

4

Subject (I/We/You/They) + have to + inf. ...

Subject (He/She/It) + has to + inf. ...

Necessity:

الضرورة:

1

I **have to work** from 8:30 to 5:30 every day.

External rules:

القواعد الخارجية (المفروضة من الآخرين):

2

You **have to wear** the school uniform when you go to school.
Do we **have to come** early every day?

The difference between **must** & **have to**

الفرق بين **have to** و **must** للتعبير عن الإلزام:

must:

الإلزام ومشاعر داخلية من المتكلم:

1

I **must study** my lessons to get high grades.
I **must train** well to win the match.

have to:

الإلزام خارجي مفروض على الشخص في موقف معين وليس لديه خيار:

2

Visitors **have to show** their ID before entering the building.
All members **have to sign** the agreement before joining.

- لاحظ الفرق بينهم في السؤال:

Must + subject + inf. + ...?

Must I turn right here?

Do/Does + subject + have to + inf. + ...?

Do you **have to** wear a tie?

Wh- word + must + subject + inf. + ...?

What **must** I do **to** avoid traffic jams?

Wh- word + do/does + subject + have to + inf. + ...?

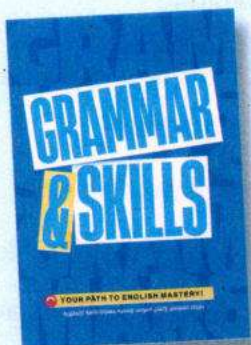
What **does** he **have** to do to avoid traffic jams?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You talk to your parents kindly. It is polite to do so.
a) must b) 're necessary c) mustn't d) may
2. You try this cake. It is really delicious.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) better d) must
3. Does my son take this medicine, Doctor?
a) has to b) must c) have to d) should
4. All citizens pay their taxes every year as it is the country's law.
a) has to b) don't have to c) must d) should
5. It is a to sleep early to be able to get up early.
a) necessity b) necessary c) prohibition d) a & b

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It's important to drink enough water every day. (should)
.....
2. Wearing a helmet is required when riding a motorcycle. (Riders must)
.....
3. It is against the rules to use your phone during class. (mustn't)
.....
4. It's obligatory for primary school students to wear a uniform. (have to)
.....
5. It's not safe to swim alone in the sea. (shouldn't)
.....



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This film is fantastic, you watch it.
a) have to b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) should
2. To get good grades on the exam, you to revise regularly.
a) should b) had better c) must d) ought
3. The train is about to **على وشك** leave. We hurry to catch it.
a) must b) mustn't c) may d) necessary
4. Do you wear those shoes at work? Are they part of the dress code?
a) should b) must c) have to d) could
5. You drive very carefully near schools as there are a lot of children.
a) must b) are advisable c) shouldn't d) ought
6. When you come to Alexandria again, you come and see us.
a) should b) must c) has to d) ought
7. Menna and Marwan be home before eight. That's a family rule.
a) has to b) can c) have to d) could
8. You shouldn't waste your time watching too much TV; it's to do so, or you will harm your eyes.
a) inadvisable b) advisable c) necessary d) allowed
9. Students forget their teacher's instructions, or they will be punished.
a) oughtn't b) mustn't c) don't have to d) should
10. Oh! It is midnight, I go now, or I will not find any means of transportation.
a) should b) need c) mustn't d) must
11. The sign says, "No smoking!". This means you smoke.
a) oughtn't b) can c) mustn't d) shouldn't
12. If you are not well, you sleep early.
a) mustn't b) ought c) had better d) would better
13. The baby is asleep and I want to do some housework. You shout.
a) should b) must c) had better not to d) mustn't
14. It is to sleep early and get up early to improve your health.
a) not allowed b) advisable c) forbidden d) banned
15. You drink water which smells bad; it is harmful.
a) mustn't b) must c) should d) shouldn't
16. You to wear your shoes inside the mosque.
a) need b) are not allowed c) shouldn't d) hadn't better
17. You walk off when the teacher is speaking to you; it's impolite.
a) should b) are prohibited c) had better d) mustn't

18. What I do if I have a problem? Really, I need your advice.
 a) might b) should c) ought d) ought to
19. The deadline for university applications is next week. I finish my papers as soon as possible.
 a) needn't b) must c) have to d) need
20. No one to smoke in public places: it is forbidden.
 a) isn't allowed b) is allowed c) is banned d) are allowed
21. It's said here in the law book, "Cars be checked before the license can be renewed".
 a) must b) needn't c) have to d) need to
22. You mustn't eat too much sugar. This sentence shows
 a) an obligation b) a suggestion c) strong advice d) a rule
23. Students mustn't use their cell phones during the lessons. This means it's
 a) forbidden b) not necessary c) necessary d) optional
24. I advise my brother not to eat a lot of carbohydrates. This means he eat a lot of carbohydrates.
 a) would rather b) should c) ought not d) had better not
25. You mustn't park your car here. This means that
 a) you are allowed to park here b) you have to park here
 c) parking is banned here d) you are free to park here
26. It is forbidden to leave school early without permission. This means that
 a) you mustn't leave school early without permission
 b) you shouldn't leave school early without permission
 c) you should have left school early without permission
 d) it is permitted to leave school early without permission
27. Which one of the following sentences doesn't show advice?
 a) It's advisable to wear cotton clothes in the winter.
 b) You should follow these tips to avoid making mistakes.
 c) It's necessary to follow the coach's instructions.
 d) You ought to be more careful when crossing the street.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It's advisable to take a shower every day, especially in hot weather. (You ...)
2. Don't touch the objects inside the museum. (mustn't ...)
3. You shouldn't eat too much meat. (I advise ...)
4. I invite you to have dinner with me. (You must ...)
5. If I were you, I wouldn't punish that little boy. (shouldn't ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. A strong education can a person's future completely.
a) pay b) realize c) transform d) replace
2. During the trip, the students moved as a group to avoid getting lost.
a) backside b) together c) equally d) separately
3. I like to sit in the of trees especially in hot weather.
a) shade b) campaign c) community d) roof
4. My email address is for use only. It is not public.
a) heavy b) personal c) daily d) friendly
5. I don't like cold weather, and my friend doesn't
a) too b) also c) either d) again
6. Our school joined a global to fight climate change.
a) kindness b) campaign c) relationship d) contact
7. We had to a big and wide hole in the garden to make a pool.
a) fix b) paint c) dig d) drive
8. Students must show for their teachers at all times.
a) hatred b) respect c) difference d) belief
9. The meal looked absolutely, so I had to try it.
a) optimistic b) irresistible c) delicious d) improved
10. You need to find simple way to solve this problem.
a) another b) other c) others d) else
11. I'm trying to help my brother for his test.
a) studying b) to study
c) on study d) for studying
12. The meeting was, but most employees attended.
a) required b) necessary c) voluntary d) realized
13. Mohammed didn't pass the course because his final was too low.
a) support b) grade c) confidence d) degree
14. The retired employee lived in a/an house far from any city or town.
a) insulated b) covered c) isolated d) resistible
15. This table is covered with a piece of fine
a) clothes b) clothing c) cloth d) clothe

Language

16. You go to bed early since you are traveling early in the morning.
a) would like b) need c) prefer d) had better
17. You keep away from uncovered electric wires or you will be electrocuted تصعق.
a) ought not b) mustn't c) ought d) must
18. It is compulsory إجباري to follow school rules. It is to do this.
a) unimportant b) inadvisable c) necessary d) forbidden
19. Is it a/an to wear gloves before I start work in this factory?
a) necessary b) must c) advisable d) advice
20. Your paragraph must because it has so many mistakes.
a) to be rewritten b) be rewriting c) rewrite d) be rewritten
21. It is a must hard if you want to go to a good university.
a) to study b) study c) studying d) studied
22. You to wash your hands before meals.
a) should b) ought c) mustn't d) ought not
23. You to eat a lot of vegetables in order to be healthy.
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) don't have to
24. You to finish your homework before you go out to play.
a) ought b) must c) shouldn't d) mustn't
25. Driving very fast inside towns is for people's safety.
a) forbidden b) necessary c) advisable d) allowed
26. I leave now so that I can catch the bus.
a) would like b) had to c) had better d) ought
27. It is to evacuate your old house now.
a) must b) mustn't c) a necessity d) a necessary
28. The sign "NO SMOKING" in closed places means
a) it's allowed to smoke. c) it's acceptable to smoke.
b) it's forbidden to smoke. d) it's a must to smoke.
29. You drive a car without a driving license. It is against the law.
a) should b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't
30. Is it a/an to take this medicine?
a) advice b) unnecessary c) necessary d) must

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

emergency (n)	حالة الطوارئ	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى	risky (adj)	خطير/محفوف بالمخاطر
obligation (n)	إلزام/فرض	rescue (v) (d)	ينقذ	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

accident (n)	حادثة	efforts (n)	جهود	law (n)	قانون
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	elections (n)	الانتخابات	leadership (n)	قيادة
background (n)	خلفية	empathy (n)	تعاطف	lifeguard (n)	منقذ
breathe (v) (d)	يتنفس	environment (n)	بيئة	lose (v)	يخسر/يفقد
burning (adj)	مشعل	essential (adj)	أساسي/ضروري	moment (n)	دقيقة/لحظة
cheat (v) (ed) (n)	يفش/غشاش	experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة حياتية	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
choice (n)	اختيار	fear (v) (ed) (n)	يخاف من/خوف	national (adj)	قومي/محلي
citizen (n)	مواطن	financial (adj)	مادي/مالي	obey (v) (ed)	يطيع/يتبع
classmate (n)	زميل الفصل	firefighter (n)	رجل المطافي	paid employment (n)	وظيفة مدفوعة
comfort (n)	راحة	floods (n)	فيضانات	park (v) (ed) (n)	يركن/منتزه
connection (n)	وصلة/علاقة/اتصال	forever (adv)	للأبد	participate (v) (d)	يشارك
contribution (n)	مساهمة	gain (v) (ed)	يكتسب	partner (n)	شريك
cooperate (v) (d)	يتعاون	healthy (adj)	صحي	patience (n)	صبر
cost (n) (v)	تكلفة/يكلف	heat (n)	حرارة	politely (adv)	بأدب
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	helmet (n)	خوذة	practical (adj)	عملي
danger (n)	خطر	hope (v) (d) (n)	يأمل/أمل	property (n)	ممتلكات
drown (v) (ed)	يغرق	injured (adj)	مصاب	proud (adj)	فخور
duty (n)	واجب/مسئولية	ladder (n)	سلم	reach (v) (ed)	يصل إلى

recycle (v) (d)	يعيد التدوير	skills (n)	مهارات	treat (v) (ed)	يعالج/ يعامل
retire (v) (d)	يتقاعد	skin (n)	بشرة/ جلد البشرة	truth (n)	حقيقة/ صدق
retired professionals (n)	محترفون متقاعدون	smoke (n)	دخان	valuable (adj)	قيم
reward (v) (ed) (n)	يكافئ/ مكافأة	sob (v) (bed)	يبكي	voice (n)	صوت (شخص عادة)
rough (adj)	خشن/ قاس	social (adj)	اجتماعي	voluntary (adj)	تطوعي
satisfaction (n)	رضا	storm (n)	عاصفة	vote (v) (d) (n)	يدلي بصوته/ صوت
scenarios (n)	تصورات/ سيناريوهات	strengthen (v) (ed)	يقوى/ يعزز	waste (v) (d)	يضيع/ يُبذر
serious (adj)	جاد/ خطير	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ	wealth (n)	ثروة
serve (v) (d)	يخدم	traffic rules (n)	قواعد المرور	worth (adj)	مستحق/ جدير
shake (v)	يهتز	training (n)	تدريب	yet (conj)	رغم ذلك
situation (n)	موقف	trap (v) (ped)	يحتجز		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The police came quickly to the people trapped inside the house.
a) hope b) trust c) rescue d) risk
- In case of a/an, call 123 immediately.
a) emergency b) obligation c) choice d) connection
- He was rewarded because he his country in the war.
a) stayed b) served c) reached d) entered
- A good friend is someone you can always
a) trust b) forget c) doubt d) lose
- A is someone whose job is to stop fires from spreading.
a) guide b) firefighter c) classmate d) citizen
- Hend gained a lot of by working as a volunteer in our local hospital.
a) experiment b) experience c) danger d) duty
- We must have a good internet to do our work well.
a) empathy b) connection c) power d) communication
- All teachers must encourage students to in class discussions.
a) delete b) participate c) repeat d) leave

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

across cultures	عبر الثقافات	go out	يخرج	public property	ممتلكات عامة
assisting elderly patients	مساعدة المرضى المسنين	is done freely	يتم طوعاً/بحرية	put out fire	يطفئ النار
believe in	يؤمن بـ	is not only measured in money	لا يُقاس بالمال فقط	stand on	يقف على
build connections	يبني علاقات/روابط	keep safe	يبقى آمناً	stay at work	يبقى في العمل
burning buildings	مبانٍ مشتعلة	no matter the cost	بغض النظر عن التكلفة	stay calm	يظل هادئاً
cheat in	يغش في	on fire	مشتعل	their actions matter	أفعالهم مهمة
do a job	يقوم بوظيفة	participate in	يشارك في	valuable for	قيم لـ
fear of	خوف من/ يخاف من	protect from	يحمي من	waste water	يسرف في المياه
freshly-cut	مقطوع حديثاً	proud to	فخور أن		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
rescue	ينقذ	rescue rescuer	إنقاذ منقذ	rescued	مُنقذ
risk	يخاطر	risk	خطر/مخاطرة	risky	محفوف بالمخاطر
protect	يحمي	protection	حماية	protective	حامٍ/واق
socialize	يختلط اجتماعياً	society	مجتمع	social sociable	اجتماعي (للأشياء) اجتماعي (للأشخاص)
value	يقدر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيم/ثمين
obligate	يلزم	obligation	إلزام	obligatory	إلزامي
finance	يمول	finance	تمويل	financial	مالي
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trustworthy	جدير بالثقة
recycle	يعيد التدوير	recycling	إعادة التدوير	recyclable	قابل لإعادة التدوير
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافأة	rewarding	مجزي

breathe	يتنفس	breath	النفاس	breathless	لاهث الأنفاس
drown	يغرق	drowning	الغرق	drowned	غارق
endanger	يعرض للخطر	danger/endangerment	خطر	dangerous endangered	خطير معرض للخطر
save	ينقذ	safety	أمان	safe	آمن
serve	يخدم	service	خدمة	serviceable	صالح للاستخدام

Examples

We should **recycle** plastic bottles. (v)

Recycling helps the environment. (n)

Glass is a **recyclable** material. (adj)

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
rescue	ينقذ	save/recover/free		abandon/endanger/neglect	يتخلى عن / يعرض للخطر / يهمل
protect	يحمي	defend/guard		attack/harm	يهاجم / يؤذي
valuable	ثمين / هام	important/precious		invaluable / useless/worthless	بلا قيمة
trust	إيمان / ثقة	faith/confidence		distrust/doubt	عدم ثقة / شك
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reclaim/reprocess		lose/waste	يرمي / يضيع
reward	مكافأة	benefit/prize		penalty/punishment	عقاب / جزاء
danger	خطر	risk/threat/hazard		security/safety	أمن / أمان
obligation	مسنولية / إلزام	responsibility/necessity/ commitment		option/irresponsibility	اختيار / انعدام المسنولية
risky	خطير	dangerous/hazardous		safe/secure	آمن

2

- Paper and metal are examples of materials.
a) recycle b) recyclable
c) recycling d) recycles
- Learning a new language can be challenging, but also
a) awarded b) reward
c) rewarding d) rewarded
- Firefighters often face danger to save people's lives. The synonym of "danger" is
a) benefit b) hazard c) prize d) security
- A helmet is worn to protect your head in case of accidents. The opposite of "protect" is ".....".
a) attack b) reclaim c) guard d) defend
- They saw the forest fire and called emergency services.
a) on b) at c) from d) for
- We must respect property and avoid damaging city structures.
a) private b) personal
c) public d) special
- The value of a person is not only in money, but also in their impact on others.
a) measured b) grown
c) hidden d) pressured
- Music is something that brings people together cultures.
a) across b) over c) at d) by

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد للاختبارات الشهور مع الأصواء من خلال تحميل ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.



Reading Text



My name is Radwan, and I work as a firefighter in Alexandria. Many people think our job is just putting out fires, but it's much more than that. We rescue people from car accidents, help during floods, and sometimes save animals trapped in dangerous places. The truth is our work can be risky. I have entered burning buildings where smoke made it hard to see and breathe. I've stood on shaking ladders in the middle of the night, with the heat almost burning my skin. Sadly, I have also seen lives lost before we could reach them. These moments stay with me forever. Yet, we do it because we believe in obligation - the duty to help each other, no matter the cost. In every emergency, we must act quickly, stay calm, and trust our training. We don't think about fear in those moments; we think about the people waiting for us. I am proud to serve my community. I know that my work saves lives, and that is worth every risk. When you help others, you are not just doing a job—you are protecting hope itself.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Voluntary work is an important part of building stronger communities and better societies. Unlike paid employment, voluntary work is done freely without expecting financial rewards. People of all ages can participate—from young students to retired professionals—and their contributions make a visible difference in the lives of others. One of the main values of voluntary work is that it teaches responsibility. When a person gives time to help others, they learn that their actions matter. For example, students who volunteer in hospitals or schools develop empathy and patience. They realize that even simple tasks, like reading stories to children or assisting elderly patients, bring joy and comfort.

Everyone has to remember that helping others is essential. Voluntary work also strengthens social connections. People from different backgrounds meet; they must cooperate and share experiences. This cooperation builds understanding and respect across cultures.

Moreover, volunteering often gives individuals practical skills such as teamwork, problem-solving, and leadership, which later help them in professional life. Finally, voluntary work is a source of personal satisfaction, so we all should participate in it. Knowing that one's efforts have supported others creates pride and motivation. It proves that true wealth is not only measured in money but also in kindness and service.

Definitions

rescue	ينقذ	to save someone from danger
risky	خطير	something dangerous
obligation	إلزام	something you must do
emergency	حالة طوارئ	a sudden, dangerous situation
trust	يثق	to believe in someone or something
protect	يحمي	to keep safe

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

experience

خبرة / تجربة حياتية (شيء يمر به الشخص أو تعلمه من الحياة)

لاحظ أنه إذا كانت بمعنى (خبرة) فهي اسم لا يعد ولا يجمع ويعامل معاملة المفرد
- I gained a lot of **experience** by working in that company.

أما إذا كانت بمعنى (تجربة) فهي اسم له جمع ويعد

- Our childhood **experiences** are very important.

تأتي كفعل بمعنى يمر بتجربة / يجرب بمعنى يواجه

- You can't understand it unless you **experience** it yourself.

- We did a science **experiment** to see how plants grow.

experiment

تجربة علمية (لاكتشاف أو إثبات فكرة أو نظرية)

- Is it really necessary to **experiment** on animals?

تأتي كفعل أيضًا بمعنى يقوم بتجربة أو يجرب (شيئًا ماديًا)

reward

مكافأة على عمل / مجهود / سلوك (مادية أو معنوية)

He received a **reward** for returning the lost dog.

award

جائزة رسمية بناء على تقييم أو مسابقة أو لجنة (جائزة نوبل مثلاً)

She won an **award** for Best Actress.

1

2

gain

يكتسب

تأتي مع الأسماء المعنوية والوزن
(fame, experience, weight, knowledge,
power, weight)

He **gained** a lot of experience from that job.

earn

3

يكتسب شيئاً مادياً مقابل عمل أو مجهود

(money, salary, reward, living)

She **earns** a lot of money from her business.

win

يفوز (التفوق على الآخرين في مسابقة)

(game, prize, match, war, argument)

They **won** the football match.

beat

يهزم (شخصاً/عدوًا/فريقًا)

I always **beat** Ali at chess.

drown

يغرق (كاننات حية)

The child fell into the river and nearly **drowned**.

4

sink

يغوص/يغرق (ينزل إلى القاع) (أشياء غير حية)

The rock **sank** to the bottom of the lake.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People can a lot of knowledge by reading books.

- a) win b) earn c) gain d) beat

2. Maha had a scary when she got lost in the forest.

- a) experiment b) experience c) expert d) error

3. Metals usually in water.

- a) swim b) float c) drown d) sink

4. The scientist received a respectable for his great discovery.

- a) gift b) reward c) award d) certificate

5. To someone means to believe that they are honest and will not do anything bad or wrong.

- a) trust b) gain c) treat d) reach

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Climbing mountains is fun, but it's also a/an hobby.
a) safe b) risky. c) easy d) slow
2. Sama practiced every day to improve her computing
a) environment b) skills c) missions d) answers
3. Time is one of the most things in life—you can't get it back once it's gone.
a) valuable b) common c) obligatory d) valueless
4. Many schools teach students how to materials like glass and metal.
a) waste b) recycle c) store d) protect
5. The honest worker was for returning the lost wallet with all the money inside.
a) blamed b) provided c) rewarded d) taught
6. The school organized a/an event to help students make new friends.
a) social b) private c) crowded d) financial
7. Workers must put on their before entering the site to be safe.
a) socks b) helmets c) watches d) scarfs
8. After losing my job as a teacher, I faced serious problems.
a) local b) recyclable c) financial d) national
9. Those who listen carefully to their friends' problems show great
a) fear b) empathy c) confusion d) silence
10. Wearing gloves protects your from harmful chemicals.
a) skin b) skill c) muscle d) personality
11. Ali fell into a deep hole and was for hours. He was finally rescued with the help of the police.
a) saved b) served c) guided d) trapped
12. The athlete was during the match and had to leave the field.
a) injured b) trained c) rewarded d) relaxed
13. Firefighters receive special before they are allowed to deal with dangerous situations.
a) moments b) clothing c) rewards d) training
14. The movie is definitely watching—it's one of the best this year.
a) worth b) lost c) wasted d) value
15. When something is, you must do it because of a rule or law.
a) obligatory b) sudden c) rough d) trusted

16. Lifeguards are trained well to rescue people who may in the sea.
 a) drive b) drown c) drawn d) sink
17. The financial of pollution is high; governments spend millions cleaning it up.
 a) choice b) cost c) experience d) partner
18. The government works hard to relations with our neighboring countries.
 a) break b) strengthen c) avoid d) limit
19. The building collapsed during the caused by the earthquake.
 a) emergency b) fear c) experience d) shaking

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

20. To means to save someone or something from a situation of danger or harm.
 a) guide b) wait c) protect d) rescue
21. Firefighters wear special masks to help them in smoky areas.
 a) breath b) breathe c) breathing d) breathy
22. Any help that is done is really more appreciated.
 a) freely b) late c) for money d) aimlessly
23. Huda felt a deep sense of after completing her task properly.
 a) fear b) confusion c) satisfaction d) delay
24. I'm really to have achieved my dream this year.
 a) proud b) safe c) valuable d) social
25. Volunteering is a great way to connections within your community.
 a) earn b) build c) give d) take
26. It took them hours to the fire that had spread through the building.
 a) go out b) start up c) turn off d) put out

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. That necklace is very valuable. Which TWO words are synonyms of "valuable"?
 a) precious b) important c) useless d) cheap e) available
28. Instead of throwing bottles away, you can recycle them. The antonyms of "recycle" are
 a) reuse b) lose c) waste d) save e) clean
29. As a citizen, you have an obligation to obey the law. Which TWO words are synonyms of "obligation"?
 a) freedom b) opinion c) duty d) suggestion e) responsibility
30. This is risky situation that needs to be dealt with immediately. The synonyms of "risky" are
 a) relaxed b) dangerous c) funny d) silly e) hazardous

B

Language

1

Necessity

الضرورة

يمكن التعبير عن الضرورة بعدة طرق في المضارع والماضي والمستقبل، لاحظ:

PRESENT المضارع

It is necessary for ... to + inf.

It is necessary for you to wear a helmet.

has/have (got) to + inf.

You have (got) to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.

need(s) to + inf.

You need to wear a helmet when you drive a motorbike.

PAST الماضي

It was necessary for ... to + inf.

It was necessary for them to leave early.

had to + inf.

They had to leave early in order not to miss the train.

needed to + inf.

She needed to wear warm clothes in cold nights.

FUTURE المستقبل

It will be necessary for ... + to + inf.

It will be necessary for you to show your passport.

will have to + inf.

You will have to show your passport to the officer at the airport.

will need to + inf

He will need to leave early to catch the train.

2

Lack of Necessity

غياب الضرورة

يمكن التعبير عن عدم وجود الضرورة بعدة طرق في المضارع والماضي والمستقبل، لاحظ:

PRESENT المضارع

It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.

She isn't late for school, so it isn't necessary for her to hurry.

(don't/doesn't) have to + inf.

She isn't late for school, so she doesn't have to hurry.

(don't/doesn't) need to + inf.

She isn't late for school, so she **doesn't need to** hurry.

needn't + inf.

She isn't late for school, so she **needn't** hurry.

PAST الماضي

It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.

It **wasn't necessary for** him **to** buy a new cell phone.

didn't have to + inf.

He **didn't have to** buy a new cell phone.

needn't have + P.P.

He **needn't have** bought a new cell phone.

didn't need to + inf.

He **didn't need to** buy a new cell phone.

لاحظ الفرق بين التعبيرات التالية:

لم يكن مضطراً ولم يَقم بالفعل

لم يكن مضطراً وقام بالفعل

لم يكن مضطراً والفعل قد يكون تم أو لا

FUTURE المستقبل

It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.

It **won't be necessary for** Ali **to** attend the party next week.

won't have to + inf.

Ali **won't have to** attend the party next week.

won't need to + inf.

Ali **won't need to** attend the party next week.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Tomorrow, I travel to Cairo to meet my boss.
a) will need b) will have to c) had to d) won't have
- I my friend in the hospital before returning home last night.
a) had to visit b) have to visit
c) must be visited d) had to be visited
- You buy a new suit for the wedding. I can give you mine.
a) needn't to b) mustn't c) aren't allowed d) don't have to
- I to school yesterday as it was Friday. I stayed in bed all day.
a) needn't have gone b) must go
c) didn't have to go d) had to go
- It is a national holiday tomorrow, so I to school.
a) needn't have gone b) won't have to go
c) mustn't have gone d) must have gone

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. It was necessary for us to show our ID at the entrance.
2. For safety reasons, all visitors are required to wear helmets.
3. It would be a good idea if you apologized to her.
4. It wasn't necessary for her to attend the meeting yesterday.

(had to)
(necessary)
(should)
(have to)

Regret & Blaming

الندم واللوم

يمكن التعبير عن الندم على فعل شيء أو عدم فعله بالطرق التالية:

كان ينبغي القيام بالفعل ولم يتم

1 should/ought to have + P.P.

You **should have studied** your lessons well.

= It was wrong of ... (not) to + inf.

It was wrong of you **not to study** your lessons well.

2 shouldn't have + P.P.

You **shouldn't have wasted** your time.

= It was wrong of ... to + inf.

It was wrong of you **to waste** your time.

لم يكن ينبغي القيام بالفعل ولكنه تم

Language

Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Mona got a very low grade in the exam. She more.
a) must have studied b) ought to have studied
c) shouldn't have studied d) needn't study
2. They didn't win the match. They hard to win.
a) must have trained b) needn't have trained
c) should have trained d) ought train
3. I traveled by train, but I by car because the train was too late.
a) might have traveled b) could travel
c) should have traveled d) can travel

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. According to the law, you needn't pay taxes for goods you import.
2. Smoking is necessary in petrol stations.
3. You mustn't sleep early. That's my advice to you.
4. You shouldn't come and visit me. It's my wedding party.

(.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. In summer, we use the air conditioner.
a) has to b) mustn't c) need to d) need
2. When we were children, we didn't have emails, so we write letters.
a) had to b) must c) have to d) has to
3. You study history at school this year. It is a basic subject.
a) should b) have to c) mustn't d) need
4. You take that bus. There's another one in ten minutes.
a) don't have to b) mustn't c) can't d) don't need
5. You have got the needed amount of money. You get a loan قرض.
a) should b) doesn't have to c) needn't d) oughtn't
6. We have already cleaned the house. You clean it again.
a) need to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) needed
7. You hit my little boy. I will complain to the security office.
a) can't have b) should have
c) may have d) shouldn't have
8. Young men in Egypt do their military service الخدمة العسكرية. It is their duty.
a) has to b) must c) should d) may
9. I felt a lot better yesterday, so I to see a doctor.
a) needn't b) mustn't c) needn't have d) didn't have
10. I to buy my sister a present as it was her birthday.
a) ought to remember b) should remember
c) should have remembered d) shouldn't have remembered
11. We have a license to drive a car in the city center.
a) should b) mustn't c) don't have to d) must
12. Radwan didn't pass his exams. He hard for them.
a) should study b) had to study
c) should have studied d) can't study
13. You really more bread as we already had enough.
a) needn't have bought b) didn't have to buy
c) had to buy d) mustn't buy
14. You really more bread as we already have enough. Now, there is too much.
a) needn't have bought b) didn't have to buy
c) had to buy d) mustn't buy

15. It for all of our students to come to school last week to join the fun day.
 a) had to b) was necessary c) is necessary d) was must
16. It was of you to sleep late. You should have slept early.
 a) forbidden b) necessary c) advisable d) wrong
17. You had a lot of problems as I told you. You to my advice.
 a) have listened b) ought not to have listened
 c) should have listened d) mustn't have listened
18. I really out yesterday. It was raining heavily and I got wet.
 a) didn't have to go b) needn't go
 c) can't have gone d) needn't have gone
19. You go to the party if you don't feel like it.
 a) unnecessary b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to
20. You here. It is a military area so you have to pay a fine.
 a) had to park b) mustn't have parked
 c) shouldn't have parked. d) didn't have to park
21. Kamal has plenty of time, so he hurry.
 a) doesn't need b) don't need to
 c) hasn't got d) needn't
22. It's a residential area منطقة سكنية; you driven slowly.
 a) should have b) shouldn't have
 c) must d) mustn't have
23. I before the exam. I studied well, but it's normal to feel nervous.
 a) didn't have to worry b) can't have worried
 c) could have worry d) needn't have worried
24. I ran to catch the school bus, which was late, and I waited for long. I
 a) didn't have to hurry b) needn't hurry
 c) shouldn't have hurried d) should have hurried
25. Your essay is full of mistakes. You it carelessly.
 a) should have written b) shouldn't have written
 c) could have written d) will have to write

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. You don't allow to smoke in public places.
2. It's necessity to follow school rules strictly.
3. You had better not to repeat these silly mistakes.
4. Hatim mustn't do that task. It had already been done.
5. Mr. Ahmed has to leave the meeting as he was ill.

(.....)
 (.....)
 (.....)
 (.....)
 (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The employee made a mistake that cost the company a lot of money.
a) worth b) serious c) valuable d) recycled
2. He felt very after winning first place in the competition.
a) social b) shaken c) proud d) polite
3. The teacher's in teaching helped him manage the class well.
a) experience b) situation c) fear d) excuses
4. Breaking the can lead to serious consequences عواقب.
a) empathy b) law c) connection d) fear
5. You must keep public like parks or gardens in good condition.
a) property b) culture c) history d) language
6. The was praised for saving people from the burning house. It was his job to do so.
a) gardener b) nurse c) firefighter d) engineer
7. The teacher warned the class that anyone who tried to would be punished.
a) write b) finish c) cheat d) answer
8. Vaccines اللقاحات protect you serious diseases and help save lives.
a) from b) with c) of d) at
9. The teacher asked me to help my next to me understand the homework.
a) lifeguard b) guide c) enemy d) classmate
10. The player's to the team was the reason for their success.
a) contribution b) argument c) solution d) direction
11. I have too much to finish today before I leave.
a) career b) work c) profession d) job
12. The students performed a/an to see how elements react تتفاعل العناصر.
a) experience b) experiment c) career d) exam
13. When you hear the fire alarm, the best thing to do is to calm and follow the evacuation plan.
a) take b) do c) stay d) hide
14. The employee couldn't the meeting because he was feeling unwell that day.
a) attend b) go c) cheat d) pretend
15. The teacher asked us to write different possible for how the story could end.
a) series b) scenarios c) messages d) beginnings

 Language

16. It necessary to check out before 12 p.m., so I had to leave on time.
a) is b) will be c) was d) wasn't
17. They all be careful to avoid danger on the working site last time.
a) have to b) had to c) needed d) should
18. Which of the following doesn't show lack of necessity?
a) You needn't hurry; you aren't late.
b) It isn't important to rewrite your composition.
c) We don't have to sleep early; tomorrow is a holiday.
d) He had to tell the police about that accident.
19. Which of the following isn't structurally correct?
a) You ought to not neglect your work.
b) What should I do to improve my language skills?
c) Do I have to finish the task before Monday?
d) You mustn't smoke in a public place.
20. He looks very happy. He have failed his exams.
a) must b) can't c) might d) shouldn't
21. Mr. Hassan have traveled abroad. I've just seen him in his office.
a) mustn't b) should c) must d) can't
22. "I needn't have bought sweets." This means that the speaker sweets.
a) bought b) didn't buy
c) had to buy d) should have bought
23. I insulted my friend. I done that.
a) should have b) shouldn't have c) can't have d) must have
24. She the race to please her family and her friends:
a) need to win b) have to win c) mustn't win d) must win
25. My teeth hurt so much, so I go to the dentist's.
a) have to b) must c) has to d) had to
26. You go shopping with me if you don't feel like it.
a) don't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) need to
27. I've already watered the plants; you do it again.
a) needn't b) shouldn't c) don't need d) mustn't
28. Yesterday, they meet our boss to discuss the company's problems.
a) must b) needn't c) have to d) had to
29. You to go to school tomorrow; it's a national holiday.
a) needn't b) needn't have c) don't need d) didn't have
30. You climb trees. It is dangerous.
a) must b) needn't c) oughtn't d) mustn't



Writing Skill

Writing

tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Descriptive essay المقال الوصفي

A descriptive essay is a piece of writing where you use words to create a picture for the reader. It's like painting a picture, but with words instead of paint! You describe a person, a place, an object, or an experience in a way that makes the reader feel like they are there.

المقال الوصفي هو نموذج من الكتابة تستخدم فيه الكلمات لرسم صورة للقارئ. فهو مثل رسم صورة، ولكن بالكلمات بدلاً من الألوان! فأنت تصف شخصاً أو مكاناً أو شيئاً أو تجربة بطريقة تجعل القارئ يشعر وكأنه هناك.

To do this, you need to use your five senses:

Try to answer these questions to help you write a good essay:

What do you see? ماذا ترى؟ What do you hear? ماذا تسمع؟ What do you smell? ماذا تشم؟ What do you taste? ماذا تتذوق؟

ما الذي تشعر به؟ ماذا تتذوق؟

How to write a Descriptive Essay

A simple descriptive essay has three main parts:

كيفية كتابة مقال وصفي

يتكون المقال الوصفي البسيط من ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية

Paragraph 1

Introduction:

Start by introducing the person, place, or thing you will describe. Give a general idea of why it is important to you.

المقدمة:

ابدأ بتقديم الشخص أو المكان أو الشيء الذي ستقوم بوصفه. أعط فكرة عامة عن سبب أهميته بالنسبة لك.

Paragraph 2

Body Paragraphs:

In the middle, you will have two or more paragraphs. Each paragraph should focus on a different aspect or sense. For example, one paragraph can describe what you see, and another can describe what you hear and smell.

الموضوع:

سيكون لديك فقرتان أو أكثر. يجب أن تركز كل فقرة على جانب أو حاسة مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، يمكن أن تصف إحدى الفقرات ما تراه، ويمكن أن تصف فقرة أخرى ما تسمعه وتشمه.

Paragraph 3

Conclusion:

Finish by summarizing the main ideas and sharing your overall feeling about the topic.

الخاتمة:

اختتم بتلخيص الأفكار الرئيسية ومشاركة شعورك العام حول الموضوع.

MODEL ESSAY

My Grandpa's House

My grandpa's house is small and old, but it's one of my favorite places in the world. It's in a quiet village, surrounded by tall palm trees and a green garden full of roses and flowers.

When I arrive, he always welcomes me with a warm smile and a big hug. The house smells like fresh bread, sweet tea, and the flowers outside. Inside, it's simple but comfortable. There's an old clock that ticks on the wall and lots of family photos. On the ground, there is a soft carpet my grandma made years ago. I love sitting with my grandpa on the roof in the evening. We drink tea, watch the sunset, and talk about school, life, or his childhood. He tells funny stories, and I never get tired of listening.

It's not a modern house, but it feels peaceful and full of love. I feel safe there. My grandpa's house is more than just a building; it's a reflection of love, wisdom, and experiences of generations.

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الشهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Japanese are one of the healthiest peoples in the world. It's their healthy diet that's responsible for this. Compared with others, they eat twice the amount of cereals, less than one-fifth the amount of meat, and only a small amount of dairy products. They also eat much more fish. Although the Japanese and the British both live on islands, statistics show that they eat three times more fish and seafood than the British, with raw or cooked oily fish featuring in most meals. Fish has many beneficial fats. Studies show that **these** help to reduce the stickiness of the blood, regulate blood pressure, and have many other benefits.

One way to enjoy the classic Japanese love of fish and rice is to eat more sushi, which helps to protect bones later in life. The term "sushi" refers specifically to a sticky ball of vinegared rice, but it's usually used as a **generic** term for all types of rice topped with raw or cooked fish or wrapped in seaweed with a fish or vegetable center. Scientists believe that the Japanese love for seaweed is another reason why they have a better health record than Westerners.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The best title for this passage is ".....".
 a) The Japanese and the British live on an island
 b) Sushi is the best healthy food
 c) Eating a healthy diet is important
 d) Fats cause thickness of blood
- According to the passage, the Japanese eat more than others.
 a) meat b) cereal c) dairy products d) fats
- Sushi is important for
 a) protecting bones b) protecting blood
 c) casing inflammation d) protecting from cancer
- The word "**generic**" in the passage best means
 a) general b) generous c) quality d) restricted
- The underlined word "**these**" refers to
 a) minerals b) fish c) benefits d) fats
- The Japanese have health than the Westerners.
 a) less b) best c) better d) least
- The Japanese and the British are in the geography they live in.
 a) similar b) different c) unique d) great

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man cannot live in society without considering the interests of others as well as their own. The word "society" means a group of people with the same laws and the same way of life. People in society may make their own decisions, but these decisions should not be harmful to others. One man's decisions may so easily harm another person. For example, a motorist may be in a hurry to get to a friend's house. He sets out, driving at full speed. One careless motorist hits another car. Too many road accidents happen because of the thoughtlessness of selfish drivers. We have governments, the police, and the law courts to prevent or punish such criminal acts. But in addition, all people ought to observe specific rules of conduct.

People ought not to steal, cheat, or destroy the property of others. There is no place for this sort of behavior in a civilized society. Men in a free society may think as they please. In return for these privileges, they ought not to act selfishly. They ought to respect the rights of others. The happiness of a community depends on the behavior of its members.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage clearly shows that
 - a) people ought to behave as they like
 - b) men ought to act selfishly
 - c) no one can have their own way all the time
 - d) many road accidents happen because of careful drivers
2. In a free society,
 - a) people usually want to have their own way
 - b) a man never considers the interests of others
 - c) people are told what to think
 - d) everyone ought to behave selfishly
3. It is to respect the rights of others.
 - a) right and thoughtless
 - b) not really necessary
 - c) very selfish
 - d) right and thoughtful
4. Members of a civilized society usually
 - a) steal and cheat
 - b) harm the interests of others
 - c) behave in a responsible way
 - d) disrespect the rights of others
5. The underlined word "its" refers to
 - a) happiness
 - b) behavior
 - c) community
 - d) village
6. There is no place for in a civilized society.
 - a) development
 - b) accidents
 - c) bad behavior
 - d) happiness
7. To stop criminal acts and punish those who do them, we must have
 - a) governments
 - b) the police
 - c) law courts
 - d) all mentioned

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Governments should increase food production to put an end to the problem of starvation by reclaiming vast areas of desert land.

- (a) يجب على الحكومة زيادة إنتاج الطعام لوضع حد لمشكلة المجاعة عن طريق استغلال مساحات واسعة من الأراضي الصحراوية.
 (b) على الحكومات أن تقوم بزيادة إنتاج الطعام لوضع حد لمشكلة المجاعة عن طريق استصلاح مساحات واسعة من الأراضي الصحراوية.
 (c) يجب على الحكومات زيادة إنتاج الطعام لوضع حد لمشكلة الفقر عن طريق استصلاح مساحات واسعة من الأراضي الصحراوية.
 (d) يجب على الحكومات مضاعفة إنتاج الطعام لوضع حد لمشكلة المجاعة عن طريق استصلاح مساحات معقولة من الأراضي الصحراوية.

2. Freedom is considered one of the main demands from all peoples all over the world.

- (a) تُعتبر الحرية واحدة من المطالب الرئيسية لكل الدول في كل أنحاء العالم.
 (b) تُعتبر الحرية واحدة من المطالب الرئيسية لمعظم الشعوب في كل أنحاء العالم.
 (c) تُعتبر الحرية واحدة من المطالب الرئيسية لكل الناس في كل أنحاء القارة.
 (d) تُعتبر الحرية واحدة من المطالب الرئيسية لكل الشعوب في كل أنحاء العالم.

3. Volunteers often work quietly behind the scenes to address local needs and promote social well-being through cleaning campaigns or educational programs.

- (a) المتطوعون يعملون غالباً بهدوء خلف الكواليس لتلبية الاحتياجات الإقليمية وتعزيز الرفاهية الاجتماعية من خلال حملات التنظيف أو البرامج العلمية.
 (b) غالباً ما يعمل المتطوعون بهدوء خلف الكواليس لتلبية الاحتياجات المحلية وتعزيز الرفاهية الاجتماعية من خلال حملات التنظيف أو البرامج التعليمية.
 (c) غالباً ما يعمل المتطوعون بهدوء خلف الكواليس لتلبية الاحتياجات الإقليمية وتعزيز الرفاهية الاجتماعية من خلال حملات التنظيف أو البرامج التعليمية.
 (d) المتطوعون يعملون عادة بهدوء خلف الكواليس لتلبية الاحتياجات المحلية وتعزيز الرفاهية الاجتماعية من خلال حملات التنظيف أو البرامج العلمية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. يجب أن نزرع المزيد من الأشجار للحفاظ على البيئة والقضاء على مشكلة التلوث والتي تعتبر واحدة من أهم المشاكل التي تهدد حياتنا.

- (a) We should plant more trees to protect the environment and eliminate the problem of pollution, which is considered one of the most important issues threatening our lives.
 (b) We must plant very trees to protect the environment and solve the problem of pollution, that is one of the major issues endangering our lives.
 (c) We need to plant trees to help the environment and solve the problem of population, one of the key issues that affect us.
 (d) We should plant trees to protect the environmental and address pollution, one of the critical problems of today.

5. إن مساعدة أطفال الشوارع والمشردين هو واجب كل من الحكومة والأفراد.

- a) Helping street children and the homeless are the responsibility of both the government and individuals.
- b) Helping street children and the homeless is the responsibility of either the government and individuals.
- c) Helping street children and the homeless is the responsibility of both the government and individuals.
- d) Helping street children and the homeless is the aim of both the government or individuals.

6. لكي نعيش الحياة بسعادة وارتياح، هناك سبيل واحد وهو أن يتم منحنا الفرصة الحقيقية للحصول على تعليم جيد.

- a) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way, which is to be given the real opportunity to get a good education.
- b) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we give the real opportunity to get a good education.
- c) In order to live happily and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the new opportunity to get a good education.
- d) To live happy and comfortably, there is only one way that we are given the real opportunity to get a serious education.

(C) Writing

4 Write a paragraph of (120-150) words on the following:

"The responsibilities of a good citizen"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

eliminate	يُحذف من / يقضى على	homeless	مشرّد	critical cases
threaten	يهدّد	starvation	مجاعة	
issues	قضايا	demands	مطالب	



Vocabulary

1 Complete the following sentences with words from the box:

fade – irresistible – isolated – light up – optimism – overwhelmed – slip

1. Sama felt by her schoolwork and falling grades.
2. Spending so much time alone made her feel
3. The smell of the bread was so that she smiled immediately.
4. Her worries began to as she talked with Mrs. Aya.
5. Helping her cousin filled her with a sense of about the future.
6. Sama's help caused her cousin's face to
7. Sama wasn't happy to see her grades

2 Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box:

transformed – volunteer – saplings – confidence – support – community

1. After the project, Ahmed felt completely.
2. The helped clean the park without asking for money.
3. Planting more will help the village have more shade in the future.
4. My has grown since I started giving speeches in class.
5. Good friends always each other in difficult times.
6. The whole joined the campaign to save water.

Language

3 Complete the sentences with the correct modal verb (must/have to):

1. Citizens respect the national laws.
2. We stay late at work. The manager orders us.
3. You vote in elections if you want your voice to be heard.
4. Students treat their teachers and classmates politely.
5. People recycle to protect the environment.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. You wear a helmet when riding a motorbike. It's the law.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) mustn't
2. You eat so much sugar. It's not healthy.
a) have to b) must c) should d) shouldn't

3. Drivers use their phones while driving.
 a) mustn't b) should c) have to d) must
4. You take an umbrella. It's going to rain.
 a) should b) mustn't c) has to d) shouldn't
5. I finish this report by 5 pm.
 a) have to b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) has to

5 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. You must to wear a uniform at school.

2. She should calling her mother more often.

3. She don't have to worry. Everything is fine.

4. He mustn't attend the party. He promised to go.

5. All must park their car here. There is a "No Parking" sign.

6 Rewrite the sentences using the correct modal verb:

1. It's important to protect public property.

2. It's a good idea to learn about your country's history.

3. It is necessary to obey traffic rules.

4. It's not allowed to cheat in exams.

5. It's not a good idea to waste water.



1 Finish the following dialog:

Basant asks her father some questions.

Basant : Hi, Dad. How long have you worked at the bank?

Father : (1).....

Basant : 10 years! (2).....?

Father : I first lived in Cairo.

Basant : (3).....?

Father : Yes, I traveled to the USA.

Basant : Did my brother travel with you?

Father : (4)..... . I went alone.

Basant : Do you like your job?

Father : Yes, I like it very much.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Bad acts of people are because

- a) they follow the rules of a true religion
- b) they don't follow the rules of a true religion
- c) all people are originally bad
- d) a religion states rituals only, no morals

2. Every religion has its

- a) holy places b) texts c) rituals d) all mentioned

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does a religion include?

.....

4. How does a religion affect the society?

.....

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

You can make a difference in the community according to the abilities and the skills you have.

.....

(B) Translate into English:

مما لا شك فيه أن الدين الصحيح يؤثر بشكل إيجابي على حياة الناس والمجتمعات.

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

- Over the years the green paint had faded. The synonyms of "fade" are
a) appear b) vanish c) oppose d) damage e) disappear
- We must protect the environment from pollution. The opposites of "protect" are
a) save b) rescue c) attack d) produce e) harm

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The road was closed for hours due to a serious car near the highway exit.
a) event b) accident c) incident d) injury
- She found herself in a difficult where she had to choose between honesty and loyalty.
a) station b) task c) situation d) dream
- Firefighters used a tall to rescue the cat from the roof.
a) bridge b) ladder c) wire d) gate
- My sister was in a terrible after failing her driving test.
a) emotion b) empathy c) attitude d) mood
- Many students to join the clean-up campaign that the school started. They did a wonderful task.
a) refused b) denied c) volunteered d) waited
- The patient must be as he has a serious infection.
a) isolated b) related c) insulated d) closed
- I type this report now?
a) Ought b) Ought to c) Did d) Must
- I was very nervous before the interview, though I Everyone was so friendly and I got the job.
a) shouldn't have worried b) didn't have to worry
c) can't have worried d) could have worry
- We have a ten-day holiday. I wake up early for ten days!
a) needn't b) must c) have to d) don't need
- Is it a/an to wear gloves before I start work in this factory?
a) necessary b) must c) advisable d) advice
- I leave now so that I can catch the bus.
a) would like b) would prefer c) prefer d) had better
- You shouldn't waste your time playing video games; it's to do so.
a) inadvisable b) advisable c) necessary d) allowed

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Octopuses are extremely intelligent. They have even learned a few tricks to get them out of sticky situations. For example, they are afraid of a predator. As octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves, they hide in the sand on the bottom of the ocean floor. The octopus is like a chameleon because it can change the color of its skin to match the sand.

Some octopuses like to stay in shallower water where there are rocks and coral. However, octopuses can squeeze themselves into small spaces between the rocks to get out of reach of predators. Another way an octopus can hide is by shooting ink. An octopus uses a part of its body called a siphon to shoot ink into the water. The ink forms a cloud that hides the octopus. It's like a magician doing a vanishing act.

If an octopus is being attacked, it can actually make itself look like a venomous sea snake. It will bury itself in the sand, keeping two arms visible. If an octopus is in trouble, it can break off one of its arms. The arm will then change colors and squirm around in the water to distract the predator while the octopus swims away to safety. Amazingly, the octopus's arm will grow back.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. A is an animal that attacks and kills octopuses.

a) prey	b) predator
c) chameleon	d) magician
16. When an octopus is in a sticky situation, that means it's

a) easy	b) in danger
c) covered in sticks	d) unable to move
17. The octopus and the chameleon are similar as both

a) swim in the same way	b) eat the same food
c) catch small fish	d) can change their skin color
18. The octopus can separate one of its arms to

a) distract the predator	b) renew it
c) catch a prey	d) lay eggs
19. The octopus can shoot ink into the water which

a) kills the attackers	b) helps it hide from the attackers
c) pollutes the water	d) attracts preys

► 20. Octopuses don't have teeth or sharp claws to defend themselves;

- a) so, they are eaten easily
- b) however, they have other ways to keep enemies away
- c) moreover, they are not brave
- d) that's why they are about to become extinct

21. The best title for this passage is ""

- a) The Magician Octopuses
- b) The Sea World and the Predator
- c) The Seabed
- d) The Sea Ink

► 22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– على كل فرد في مجتمعنا أن يشارك في تحمل المسؤولية للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصادية والاجتماعية والبيئية لكي يتقدم البلد.

- a) Everyone in our society should participate in bearing responsibility to overcome our economic, social, and environmental problems to develop our country.
- b) Everyone in our society should participate in bearing responsibility to overcoming our economic, sociable, and environmental problems to develop our country.
- c) Everyone in our society should participate in bearing responsibility to overcome our economical, sociable, and environmental problems to develop our country.
- d) Everyone in our society has to participate in bearing responsibility to overcome our economic, sociable, and environment problems to develop our country.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Wasting water is a big problem that has appeared recently. Some careless people use it foolishly without any sense of duty or responsibility.

- (a) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.
- (b) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.
- (c) إن ضياع الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس الحريصون يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو المسؤولية.
- (d) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو المسؤولية.

► 24. Answer the following questions:

1. What does the patched sail symbolize about Santiago's life?
2. Do you think Santiago is being brave or foolish by going so far out alone? Explain.
3. Why do you think Santiago refuses to take Manolin with him, even though he cares for him?

► 25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Volunteering as a way of serving communities."

.....

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. This relationship was built on mutual trust. The antonyms of "trust" are
 a) doubt b) agreement c) confidence d) faith e) mistrust
2. Egypt has always been a for trade and cultural exchange.
 a) crossroad b) line c) farm d) center e) corner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The Nile made Egypt a for people to meet and exchange ideas.
 a) heritage b) crossroads c) pride d) monument
4. The Pyramids and temples are important parts of our cultural
 a) heritage b) identity
 c) trade d) neighborhood
5. We must our history to keep it safe for the future.
 a) preserve b) restore c) inspire d) determine
6. Engineers are working hard to old mosques in Cairo to be available for visitors.
 a) hold b) trade c) inspire d) restore
7. Inside the Grand Egyptian Museum, there are lots of great that tell about the greatness of our past.
 a) monuments b) civilizations c) merchants d) identities
8. They began a to encourage people to save water.
 a) campaign b) contact c) connection d) hope
9. Children pick flowers or roses in the public gardens.
 a) mustn't b) should c) haven't d) must
10. One drive more slowly to avoid accidents.
 a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) ought d) should
11. You get closer to this horrible lion.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) oughtn't to
12. When I met my friend, he a tour in El-Alamein.
 a) was taken b) was taking c) taking d) has taken
13. the flight, I was reading a novel called "Al-Ayam".
 a) While b) During c) Just as d) When
14. The police arrested the thief while he the scene of the crime.
 a) had left b) was leaving c) was left d) has left

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

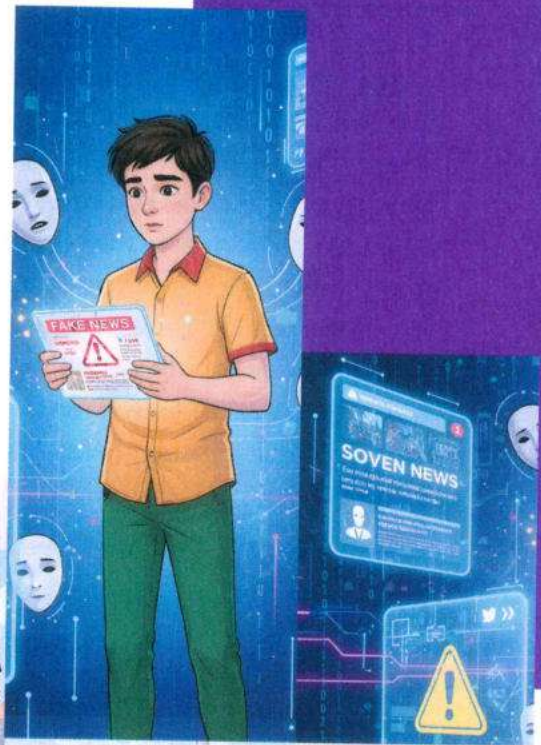
Millions of people are attacked by a secret enemy, which causes more harm and greater suffering than any other disease. Its name is "worry". According to doctors, worry can actually cause organic disease. And even when it does not, it can eat up our energy in many ways, ruin our health, and make life miserable.

Worry is a very dangerous enemy. The stress and strain of life may make us worry about silly, trifling things. Worry affects nearly everybody in society, from teenagers to elderly people. Students worry about their exams. Parents worry about their children. Young men and women worry about their future lives. Needless to say, worry is the result of thinking in the wrong way. It is a fact that thinking over worries brings about more worries. We must face life as it is, boldly and bravely. The problems a worrier faces are the same that others face. To overcome worry, cultivate different interests, develop contact with a large number of people, and spend your leisure time on a useful hobby. When feeling worried, retire to a quiet corner and relax.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The problems a worrier faces are
a) different from those others face b) not the same as those others face
c) similar to what others face d) different from what teenagers face
16. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) worry b) life
c) a problem d) energy
17. Teenagers are
a) young people above 21 or 22 b) elderly people who suffer from worry
c) usual people who suffer from worry d) young people who are in their teens
18. A hobby helps you
a) to communicate with a large number of people
b) to spend your leisure time in a useless way
c) to retire to a quiet corner and relax
d) to overcome worry
19. The synonym of the word "cultivate" is
a) grow b) develop c) decrease d) stand again
20. Worry can our health.
a) improve b) destroy c) prove d) benefit
21. The best title for the passage is ".....".
a) Life difficulties b) The interests of life
c) The cons of worry d) How to overcome worry

Module 2



Unit 3

Truth Vs. Lies

Unit 4

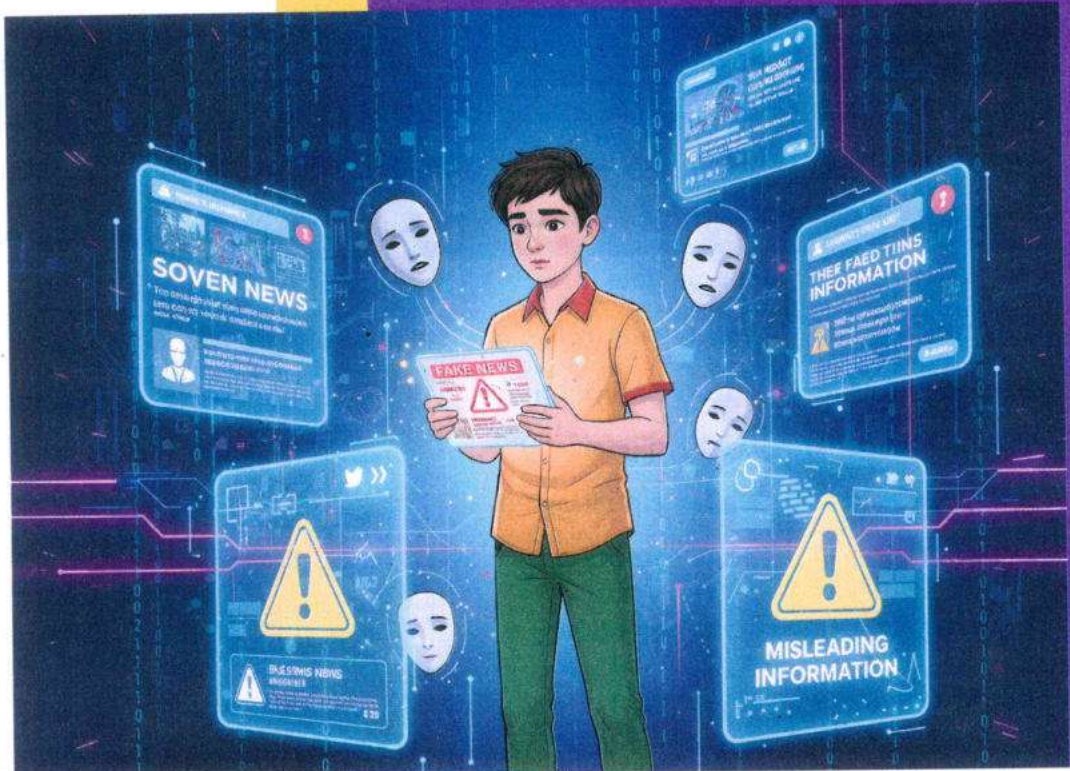
Save and Shine

Module (2) General Exercises

Units 3 & 4

Unit 3

Truth Vs. Lies



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - Reading short texts and conversations about:
- Truth trap.
 - False news and ideas.
- Language** - Conditional zero, first, and second.
- Listening** - Listening to a text about wise choice in a world full of traps.
- Writing** - A paragraph about fake news and fake platforms.
- Speaking** - Talking about real-life and online situations.
- Giving advice for a friend who is in a trouble.

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

betray (v) (ed)	يخون / يغدر	interaction (n)	تفاعل / رد فعل	supportive (adj)	داعم
deceive (v) (d)	يخدع	reputation (n)	سمعة / شهرة	tactics (n)	تكتيكات / أساليب
exploit (v) (ed)	يستغل	scam (n)	احتيال		

Key Expressions

تعابير رئيسية

too good to be true	جيد جدًا لدرجة يصعب تصديقها	caught in a trap	محاصرون في فخ
wolves in sheep's clothing	ذئاب في ثياب حملان	trust, but verify	ثق، ولكن تأكد

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

act (v) (ed) (n)	يتصرف / فعل	data (n)	بيانات	healthy (adj)	صحي
advisor (n)	مستشار	deal (n)	صفقة / اتفاق	hide (v)	يخفي
apology (n)	اعتذار	deception (n)	خداع	honesty (n)	صدق / أمانة
appearance (n)	مظهر	digital (adj)	رقمي	intention (n)	نية
apply (v) (yied)	يطبق	embarrassed (adj)	مُحرج	lie (n)	كذبة / يكذب
behavior (n)	سلوك	emotionally (adv)	عاطفيًا	limited (adj)	محدود
boundary (n)	حد	emotions (n)	عواطف	paperwork (n)	أوراق رسمية / معاملات
bright (adj)	لامع / مشرق	exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	patience (n)	صبر
cautious (adj)	حريص / حذر	fake (adj)	مزيف	pause (n) (v) (d)	توقف مؤقت / يتوقف
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	favor (n)	معروف / خدمة	payment (n)	دفع (مال)
confirm (v) (ed)	يؤكد	goodness (n)	خير	platform (n)	منصة
contract (n)	عقد	grand (adj)	كبير	practical (adj)	عملي
create (v) (d)	ينتج / يبدع	guard (v) (ed)	يحمي / يحرس	pressure (n) (v) (d)	ضغط / يضغط
damage (v) (d) (n)	يضر / يفسد / ضرر	guilty (adj)	مذنب	pretend (v) (ed)	يتظاهر

profit (n)	ربح	shine (v)	يلمع / لمعان	trick (v) (ed)	يخدع
provide (v) (d)	يوفر	sign (n) (v) (ed)	إشارة / علامة / يوقع	trustworthy (adj)	جدير بالثقة
psychologist (n)	عالم نفس / أخصائي نفسي	socially (adv)	اجتماعيًا	truthful (adj)	صادق
real-life (adj)	واقعي (في الحياة الحقيقية)	spread (v) (n)	ينشر / انتشار	valuable (adj)	قيم / ثمين
realize (v) (d)	يدرك	suspicious (adj)	مريب / مرتاب	victim (n)	ضحية
red flag	علم أحمر (نذير خطر)	talks (n)	محادثات / مناقشات	warning (adj)	تحذيري
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	teenagers (n)	مراهقون	workplace (n)	مكان عمل
risky (adj)	مغامره مخاطرة	theft (n)	سرقة		
rushed (adj)	مستعجل	topic (n)	موضوع		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The dishonest salesperson tried to customers by telling them that the fake perfume was original.
a) provide b) deceive c) confirm d) trust
- Social media platforms make easier between people from all over the world.
a) isolation b) confidence c) interaction d) honesty
- Banks warn customers to never give their PIN numbers to strangers, as this is a common technique.
a) scam b) scan c) safety d) intention
- During her recovery استشفاء from surgery, Maria was grateful for her family who helped with daily tasks.
a) limited b) relaxed c) risky d) supportive
- Parents should teach their children the importance of from an early age and that they should never lie.
a) economy b) deception c) honesty d) ability
- The thief used to trick people into giving him money.
a) deception b) truth c) support d) care
- The manager asked his assistant to complete the before the meeting.
a) paperwork b) homework c) teamwork d) artwork
- Many books are now available in format for reading on tablets and phones.
a) intended b) suspicious c) valuable d) digital

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

agree to	يوافق على	in fact	فى الواقع	put on a friendly face	يتظاهر بالود
apply/put pressure on	يمارس / يضع ضغطًا على	in return	فى المقابل	rely on	يعتمد على
ask for	يطلب	in trouble	فى مأزق	speak to	يتحدث إلى
aware of	على علم بـ	keep his promises	يفى بوعوده	stop ... from	يمنع ... من
believe in	يؤمن بـ	learn from	يتعلم من	take advantage of	يستغل (استغلال سلبي)
build/make strong friendships	يبني صداقات قوية	limited to	محدود / مقتصر على	take control of	يسيطر على
face-to-face interactions	التفاعلات وجهًا لوجه	make a promise	يقدم وعدًا	trying to use you	يحاول استغلالك
give a truthful answer	يعطي إجابة صادقة	make quick money	يربح مالا سريعًا	work for free	يعمل مجانًا
healthy boundaries	حدود صحية / سليمة	pressured into doing things	مضغوط للقيام بأشياء		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
apply	تطبيق	application	تطبيق	applicable	قابل للتطبيق
betray	يخون	betrayal	خيانة	betrayed	مُخَوَّن
create	يبتدع / يبدع	creation/creativity creator	إبداع مبتدع	creative	مبتدع
deceive	يخدع	deceit/deception deceiver	خداع مخداع	deceitful deceptive	مُخْتَال مخداع
embarrass	يحرج	embarrassment	إحراج	embarrassed	مُحْرَج
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing existent	موجود
exploit	استغلال	exploitation	استغلال	exploitable	قابل للاستغلال
interact	يتفاعل	interaction	تفاعل	interactive	تفاعلى

support	دعم	support supporter	دعم مؤيد	supportive	داعم
suspect	مشتبه به	suspicion	شك	suspicious	مريب / مرتاب
trick	خدعة	trickery trickster	خداع مخادع	tricky	مخادع

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- The teacher **suspected** that the students had cheated on the test. (v)
- Her strange behavior raised my **suspicion**. (n)
- There was a **suspicious** package left alone in the hallway. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
betray	يخون	deceive/mislead/cheat		assist/support	يساعد / يدعم
confirm	يؤكد	verify/prove		deny/disprove	ينكر / يدحض
deception	خداع	trickery/fraud/deceit		truth/honesty	الحقيقة / الصدق
exploit	يستغل	abuse/misuse		protect/help	يحمي / يساعد
fake	مزيف	counterfeit/false		authentic/genuine	أصيل / حقيقي
honesty	صدق / أمانة	integrity/truthfulness		dishonesty/deceit	عدم الصدق / الخداع
interaction	تفاعل	communication/collaboration		isolation/separation	عزل / انفصال
profit	ربح	gain/benefit		loss/debt	خسارة / دين
reliable	موثوق	dependable/trustworthy		unreliable/deceitful	غير موثوق / مخادع
spread	ينتشر	circulate/distribute		contain/gather	يحتوي / يجمع
supportive	داعم	encouraging/helpful		unhelpful/discouraging	غير مفيد / مثبط
suspicious	مريب	doubtful/distrustful		trusting/reliable	ثقة / موثوق
truthful	صادق	honest/sincere		dishonest/deceptive	غير أمين / مخادع
valuable	قيم / ثمين	precious/priceless		worthless/useless	عديم القيمة / عديم الفائدة

1. Sarah lent me her book, so in I offered to help with her math homework.

- 116 Part 1

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

When Appearances lie

Trust is one of the most valuable things in our lives, yet it is not always easy to know whom we can rely on. While many people act with honesty and kindness, there are also those who hide their true intentions behind a friendly smile.

In life, not everyone we meet is truly honest. Some people put on a friendly face, but are in fact "wolves in sheep's clothing". They may deceive us to gain money, favors, or private information. This can happen anywhere—at school, in the workplace, or even among people we once considered close friends.

For example, someone might act supportively just to borrow money, with no intention of returning it. Another might spread false stories to damage someone's reputation. Such behavior can leave us feeling betrayed, embarrassed, and unsure whom we can trust.

This type of dishonesty is not limited to face-to-face interactions. In the digital world, fake platforms and social media scams copy these same tactics. They make grand promises—such as free prizes, dream jobs, or fast profits—only to exploit our personal data or disappear with our money. It is like being caught in a trap you did not realize was set.

Whether in daily life or online, there are warning signs:

- The person or platform applies pressure to make you act quickly.
- The story changes when you ask for details.
- The promises seem too good to be true.

To protect yourself, pause before acting, ask careful questions, and confirm the facts from reliable sources. As the old saying goes: "Trust, but verify".

Although dishonesty exists, it should never stop us from believing in the goodness of people. By being cautious, wise, and aware of warning signs, we can protect ourselves and still enjoy healthy, trustworthy relationships. In the end, honesty and kindness always shine brighter than lies and deception.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the primary theme of the provided text?
 - a) The different types of social media platforms.
 - b) How to identify friends and close relationships.
 - c) The importance of making a lot of money.
 - d) The value of trust and how to protect oneself from dishonesty.

2. The phrase “wolves in sheep’s clothing” is used in the text to describe people who
- are honest and reliable in all their dealings
 - work in the movie industry and are very creative
 - appear friendly and harmless, but have bad intentions
 - are shy and quiet in a crowd
3. What is the best way to protect yourself from a potential scam, based on the text?
- Only trust people you have known for a long time.
 - Immediately share your personal data to get a prize.
 - Be cautious, ask questions, and verify facts from reliable sources.
 - Ignore all online platforms and social media.
4. What is one danger of fake online platforms mentioned in the text?
- They always offer genuine prizes.
 - They can exploit personal data.
 - They provide free services without risk.
 - They never use pressure to act.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



- Host** : Welcome back to Life Talks. Today, we’re joined by Dr. Sarah Al-Haddad, a social psychologist who’s been studying how people—young and old—can be tricked or pressured into doing things they don’t want to do. Welcome, Dr. Sarah!
- Dr. Sarah** : Thank you. It’s an important topic because exploitation can happen in ways many people don’t expect. We often think of scams or theft, but it can also mean pushing someone to work for free, share personal secrets, or support harmful ideas.
- Host** : So, it’s not just about money.
- Dr. Sarah** : Exactly. For teenagers, pressure might come from friends who want them to join in risky behavior so they can fit in. For older people, it might be someone pretending to help with paperwork but really trying to take control of their property.
- Host** : That sounds worrying. How can people avoid such traps?
- Dr. Sarah** : First, notice your feelings. If you feel rushed, guilty, or afraid, stop and ask yourself: Why am I feeling this way? People who exploit others often create strong emotions so you don’t think clearly. Second, get a second opinion. Talk to a friend, family member, or trusted advisor before agreeing to anything important. And third, learn to say no without apology. You don’t owe an explanation to someone who is trying to use you.
- Host** : That’s great advice. Do you have a final message for our listeners?
- Dr. Sarah** : Yes, your time, energy, and trust are valuable. Guard them carefully. If something feels wrong, it probably is.

Definitions

betray	يخون	to be disloyal to someone who trusts you, so that they are harmed or upset
deceive	يخدع	to make someone believe something that is not true
exploit	يستغل	to treat someone unfairly by asking them to do things for you, but giving them very little in return
interaction	تفاعل / رد فعل	the activity of talking to other people or working together with them
supportive	داعم	providing encouragement, help, or emotional strength to someone
reputation	سمعة / شهرة	the beliefs or opinions that people generally have about a person's or thing's character or qualities
scam	احتيال	a dishonest trick, often to take money from someone
tactics	تكتيكات / أساليب	the specific methods or short-term strategies used to achieve a goal, especially in a conflict, competition, or negotiation مفاوضات
wolves in sheep's clothing	ذئاب في ثياب حملان	someone who seems to be friendly or harmless, but is in fact dangerous, dishonest etc
caught in a trap	محاصرون في فخ	to be stuck in a bad situation that is difficult to escape from, like a lie you can't get out of or a bad contract
too good to be true	جيد جدًا لدرجة يصعب تصديقها	so good that you cannot believe it is real, or you expect something bad to happen
trust, but verify	ثق، ولكن تأكد	it's wise to trust people, but you should always make sure what they say is true

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

platform

- رصيف القطار.
- منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث).
- منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعي).

pavement

رصيف الشارع

- The Aswan train leaves from **platform** six.
- He stepped up onto the **platform** and looked out into the audience.
- Since COVID-19, many educational **platforms** have emerged to help students study online.
- He sat on the **pavement**, waiting for the bus to arrive.

boundary

- حد (الخط الذي يحدد حافة منطقة من الأرض يملكها شخص ما، أو أحد أجزاء بلد ما)
- حد فاصل بين اتجاهين أو شعورين

2

border

- حد (الخط الرسمي الذي يفصل بين بلدين، أو المنطقة القريبة من هذا الخط، تقع المدينة على الحدود).

- A wire fence marked the **boundary** between the two farms.
- There's a fine **boundary** between confidence and arrogance.

Passengers waited for hours to cross the **border** between Egypt and Libya.

sign

- لافتة (ورقية / معدنية لمعلومة / تحذير / تعليمات).
- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة).

3

signal

- إشارة (تليفون / إذاعة / تليفزيون).
- إشارة (ضوئية / صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء).

- You must take care of traffic **signs** while driving on the road.
- Do you see any **signs** of improvement in the patient's condition?

- The satellite is used for transmitting **signals** around the world.
- The siren was a **signal** for everyone to leave the building.

landmark

- علامة بارزة (تميز مكانًا) مثل برج أو مبنى.

The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous **landmark** in Paris.

scam

- غش (عملية احتيال) / يحتال

skim

- يقرأ أو يتصفح سريعًا لمعرفة الفكرة الرئيسية فقط دون تفاصيل

- The email was only a **scam** to take my money.
- He was arrested for **scamming** people out of their savings.

I usually **skim** the newspapers in the morning.

scan

- يفحص أو يتصفح بدقة للبحث عن شيء محدد

We **scanned** the list until we found our friend's name.

تطبيق الأضواء



إجابات 100 %: راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is the activity of talking to other people or working together with them.
 a) Intention
 b) Interaction
 c) Perception
 d) Detection
- are the methods that you use to achieve something.
 a) Interactions
 b) Objectives
 c) Tactics
 d) Scams
- Many are designed to steal your personal information, so always be careful when giving out details online.
 a) skims
 b) scans
 c) skills
 d) scams
- The Ministry of Education has set up a special for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.
 a) platform
 b) pavement
 c) station
 d) building
- Many experts believe that social media has broken the between public and private lives.
 a) border
 b) boundary
 c) edge
 d) cliff
- There was a big above the entrance of the metro station.
 a) signal
 b) landmark
 c) sign
 d) message

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
 لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
 ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

- When Eyad's friend revealed كشف his secret, he felt deeply
a) pressed b) supported c) reacted d) betrayed
- The company was accused of its workers by paying them low wages أجور.
a) exploiting b) rewarding c) guarding d) interacting
- The restaurant's has improved significantly since they changed their menu.
a) trap b) reputation c) tradition d) deception
- The football coach studied the other team's before developing the game plan.
a) sales b) costs c) tactics d) boundaries
- After the accident, he became much more when driving in bad weather.
a) cautious b) careless c) risky d) social
- The hotel requires guests to their reservation 24 hours in advance.
a) deny b) confirm c) think d) change
- Online systems have made shopping much more convenient مناسب for customers.
a) entertainment b) interactions c) payment d) production
- This brand of washing machine is known for being and long-lasting.
a) digital b) suspicious c) tricky d) reliable
- The police arrested the tourist on discovering his passport was
a) renewed b) truthful c) fake d) genuine
- Unluckily, the old woman became a of a telephone scam and lost her money.
a) reason b) victim c) volunteer d) merchant
- The company opened a new office that became a pleasant for all employees.
a) workplace b) classroom c) playground d) platform
- The security guard became when he noticed someone going around the building.
a) embarrassed b) ashamed c) suspicious d) shy
- The charity work revealed the true of human nature during a crisis.
a) trust b) donation c) profit d) goodness
- At airports, access to the VIP lounge استراحة is to first-class passengers only.
a) limited b) reliable c) readable d) valuable
- Nader sent a written for being late to the important meeting.
a) apology b) blog c) post d) tale

- 16. Yasser felt when he fell off his chair in the conference room.
 a) deceived b) shy c) embarrassed d) delayed
17. The actor's performance was so powerful that it moved deep in the audience الجمهور.
 a) deception b) reflection c) disease d) emotions

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18. She claimed to be a vegetarian, but in she ate meat and chicken.
 a) return b) advance c) fact d) fiction
19. The bank applied on the company by threatening to cancel the contract.
 a) relaxation b) pressure c) deception d) interaction
20. Despite feeling nervous, he tried to on a friendly face during the interview.
 a) put b) make c) dress d) rely
21. The teacher asked Ahmed to a truthful answer about who broke the window.
 a) need b) do c) take d) give
22. After much consideration, the manager finally decided to agree the new offer.
 a) in b) to c) at d) for
23. You can always rely your cousin Karma to help you when you're in trouble.
 a) out b) at c) on d) to
24. Facebook has become the most important social media all over the world.
 a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal
25. An imposter sent an e-mail that I won an award, but I think it was just a
 a) skimming b) scan c) scale d) scam

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. The antique vase was extremely valuable. The antonyms of the word "valuable" are
 a) precious b) worthless c) costly d) useless e) helpless
27. Effective networking is key to successful interaction between team members. The synonyms of the word "interaction" are
 a) communication b) isolation c) intention d) application e) collaboration
28. I felt hurt by my friend's deception when I discovered the lies. The noun "deception" is similar in meaning to
 a) honesty b) deceit c) trickery d) impatience e) perfection
29. Social media platforms help people relationships with others who share similar interests.
 a) give b) afford c) build d) make e) take
30. Parents should know if the babysitter is enough to be left alone with their children.
 a) trustworthy b) tricky c) truthful d) determined e) suspicious

If Conditionals (zero – first – second – third)

حالات if الشرطية

تعتبر **if** ومعناها (إذا/لو) رابطًا يربط بين جملتين (جملة **if** وجملة جواب الشرط) وتكون العلاقة بينهما شرطية، ولا تأتي في جملة منفردة مطلقًا. ويمكن أن تأتي في البداية ونفصل بين الجملتين بـ (,) **comma** ويمكن أن تأتي بين الجملتين ولا نفصل بينهما بـ (,) **comma**. لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- If you **heat** ice, it **melts**. (It is a fact.)
- You **will meet** the manager if you **come** early. (It is probable.)
- If Ali **arrived** early, he **would catch** the bus. (It is not possible.)

حقيقة

محتمل

غير محتمل

وهناك 4 حالات لـ **if** وكل حالة لها استخدام معين، لاحظ التالي:

1

Zero Conditional

الحالة الصفيرية

If

+

Present Simple

مضارع بسيط

+

Present Simple

مضارع بسيط

تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق والأشياء المنطقية والعادات الشخصية:

Examples

- If we **freeze** water, it **turns** into ice.
- If I **wake** up early, I **feel** more energetic.
- If wood **is burnt**, it **gives** off much smoke.

لاحظ

من الممكن استخدام **When** بدلًا من **if** في الحالة الصفيرية.

- When** you **heat** ice, it **melts**.

تستخدم الحالة الصفيرية في حالة وجود ظروف التكرار مثل:

(always/usually/sometimes/often/...) في جملة جواب الشرط.

- If I **feel** hungry, I **usually eat** something till I arrive home.

2

First Conditional

الحالة الأولى

If

+

Present Simple

مضارع بسيط

+

will/can/may + inf.

تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من الممكن أو من المحتمل حدوثه في الحاضر أو المستقبل.

- If you **study** hard, you **will get** high marks.
- Dalia is sick. If she **is** better tomorrow, she **will come** to school.

If

+

Past Simple

ماضٍ بسيط

+

would/could/might + inf.

تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف غير محتملة (صعبة/مستبعدة) الحدوث في الحاضر أو المستقبل.

If Radwa **treated** her students well, they **would love** her.

- هذا يعني أن رضوى لا تعامل تلاميذها جيداً، وبالتالي لا يحبونها، ولكن هناك احتمال ضعيف بحدوث العكس.

If Sleem **slept** early, he **could get** up early.

- هذا يعني أن سليم لا ينام مبكراً ولا يستيقظ مبكراً، ولكن هناك احتمال ضعيف أن يحدث ذلك.

تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة.

If I **were** you, I **would (n't) + inf. = You should + inf.**

If I **were** you, I **would accept** the job. = You **should accept** the job.

If I **were** you, I **wouldn't waste** my money like that. = You **shouldn't waste** your money like that.

تستخدم للتعبير عن المواقف التخيلية (الأحلام مستحيلة الحدوث).

If I **were** a superman, I **would fly** to Europe to attend the final match.

If you **found** one million pound in the street, dad, what **would** you **do**?

في الحالة الثانية يمكن استخدام **were** مع جميع الضمائر (المفرد والجمع).

لاحظ

If she **were** a princess, she **would be** much happier.

If I **were** rich, I **would build** a palace.

Language

Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If Noha the game, she would be happy.

a) was winning

b) won

c) wins

d) has won

2. If he were taller, he a good basketball player.

a) be

b) will be

c) would be

d) were

3. Soha to lunch if we invited her.

a) will come

b) would come

c) has come

d) comes

4. What if Rashed told them about our problems?

a) will happen

b) would happen

c) have happened

d) has happened

5. If I him yesterday, I would ask him to come with me.

a) have seen

b) saw

c) was seeing

d) had seen

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. I (be) richer if I (work) abroad.

2. If I (be) you, I'd never tell lies.

3. If water (heat), it boils.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If you add six to eight, you fourteen.
a) would get b) might get c) get d) got
2. I always tired if I spend too much time on the computer.
a) feel b) felt c) am felling d) will feel
3. You would feel healthier if you smoking.
a) stop b) stopped c) didn't stop d) had stopped
4. If Wafaa has a baby girl, she her Sara.
a) would call b) call c) calls d) will call
5. If we hard, we will win next week's match.
a) train b) will train c) trained d) had trained
6. When you put water in the freezer, it into ice.
a) turned b) turns c) would turn d) would have turned
7. If you reached your goals, very happy?
a) you would be b) you will be c) would you be d) would you have been
8. They the first prize if they had another chance.
a) would get b) will get c) may get d) would have got
9. If you throw that stone into water, it
a) should sink b) would sink c) will sink d) would have sunk
10. If I they were honest, I would gladly lend them the money.
a) know b) knew c) had known d) have known
11. I wouldn't achieve my dreams if she me.
a) had helped b) helped c) hadn't helped d) didn't help
12. If they another chance, they would get the first prize.
a) gave b) are given c) had given d) were given
13. If I spend too long playing video games, I usually a headache.
a) will get b) would get c) got d) get
14. The river if it went on raining for much longer.
a) would flood b) will flood c) floods d) flooded
15. If you see our teacher, to ask him about the date of the exam.
a) will remember b) remembered c) remembers d) remember

- ▶ **16.** Maha wouldn't come with us if her mother well.
 a) didn't feel b) felt c) hadn't felt d) doesn't feel
- 17.** Ramy would be better if he his medicine regularly.
 a) has taken b) took c) had taken d) hadn't taken
- 18.** If a plant regularly, it dies.
 a) doesn't water b) isn't watered c) wasn't watered d) don't water
- 19.** What will you do if you by a snake?
 a) bite b) will bite c) are bitten d) were bitten
- 20.** Would Rania understand the lesson if she the summary?
 a) reads b) read c) had read d) will read
- 21.** If Huda beat her friend at chess, she very happy.
 a) is b) will be c) would be d) would have been
- 22.** If Ragaa a necklace, she wouldn't have to buy one.
 a) has b) had had c) had d) has had
- 23.** If you Ali, could you tell him to come to the wedding party?
 a) ring b) rang c) had rung d) rings
- 24.** I'd refuse to go to the club if I had a lot of work to do. This means that I much work.
 a) don't have b) had c) have d) didn't have
- 25.** I will do the homework tomorrow if I have time. This means
 a) there is a possibility to do the homework
 b) I am busy, so I will do the homework
 c) I won't do the homework because I don't have time
 d) it is impossible to do the homework
- 26.** Sherif isn't a good player because he doesn't train well. This means that if Sherif trained well,
 a) he would be a good player b) he will be a good player
 c) he is a good player d) he should be a good player

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Revise your lessons carefully to do well in the final exam. (If ...)
2. Add white to black to get gray. (If ...)
3. I'm not free to go to the club with my friends. (... would ...)
4. If I were free, I'd spend the weekend outside Cairo. (... should ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. is the opinion that people have about a person's character or qualities.
a) Patience b) Reputation c) Intention d) Creativity
2. He was worried about his before the job interview, so he made sure to dress well.
a) movement b) location c) appearance d) sense
3. The journalist refused to reveal the of her information about the crime جريمة.
a) source b) cause c) result d) reason
4. Menna chose to study engineering because she wanted a/an career that would help people.
a) risky b) available c) healthy d) practical
5. Most companies make huge from selling their products online.
a) pressures b) careers c) profits d) materials
6. The news about the celebrity's wedding began to quickly on social media.
a) spread b) spray c) sign d) hide
7. The two companies signed a which will last for 2 years.
a) sentence b) contract c) report d) trap
8. After the accident, Kamal visited a/an to talk about his fears and emotions.
a) psychologist b) engineer c) mechanic d) geologist
9. Many companies and newspapers are moving to systems to reduce paper usage.
a) helpless b) suspicious c) traditional d) digital
10. I didn't how expensive living in the city would be until I had moved here.
a) realize b) organize c) deceive d) rely
11. Ali has improved his since he joined the summer camp.
a) boundary b) payment c) behavior d) charity
12. Scientists are still searching for evidence that life exists on other planets.
The adjective of the verb "exist" is
a) existed b) existent c) existence d) exits
13. The journalist's honesty earned her the respect of her colleagues. The antonym of the word "honesty" is
a) integrity b) deceit c) weakness d) loyalty
14. Wafaa felt like she was caught in a between her job and her family responsibilities.
a) terminal b) trial c) trip d) trap

► 15. To means to be disloyal to someone who trusts you, so that they are harmed or upset.

- a) confirm b) act c) betray d) consider

Language

16. If you see an accident, the police at once.

- a) telephone b) will telephone
c) should telephone d) must telephone

17. If he cut his finger with that knife, it terribly.

- a) hurts b) will hurt c) would hurt d) hurt

18. If I wasn't busy, I would come to your party. This means that I busy.

- a) am not b) am c) was not d) was

19. If I help in my homework, I'll ask my teacher.

- a) need b) needs c) needed d) would need

20. He will achieve a great success he works to a plan.

- a) if b) unless c) without d) in case of

21. Call the ambulance if there an emergency.

- a) is b) was c) had been d) will be

22. If the temperature is zero or below, water

- a) freezes b) could freeze c) would freeze d) will freeze

23. He abroad if he gets the visa in time.

- a) would travel b) would have travelled
c) won't travel d) will travel

24. If I not enough time, I'd have the chance to visit my sick friend.

- a) have b) had c) had had d) will have

25. If anyone my cell phone, take it to the manager's office, please.

- a) finds b) will find c) found d) had found

26. Metal expands if it

- a) heat b) is heated c) heated d) heating

27. What you do if you got a bad grade on the test?

- a) will b) would c) can d) would have

28. If the money he had enough, he would buy his needs.

- a) had been b) been c) had d) were

29. I always a lot of money if I work overtime in my company.

- a) will get b) get c) am getting d) got

30. If I enough money, I would help you.

- a) have b) have had c) had had d) had

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

awareness (n)	وعى / معرفة	ruin (v) (ed) (n)	يدمر / يخرّب / دمار
defense (n)	دفاع / حماية	rumors (n)	شائعات
invisible (adj)	خفي / غير مرئي	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة / يثق
misinformation (n)	معلومات مضللة		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

advertisement (n)	إعلان	edited (adj)	مُحرّر	popular (adj)	شائع / محبوب
affect (v) (ed)	يؤثر على	encourage (v) (d)	يشجّع	pour (v) (ed)	يسكب
appreciate (v) (d)	يقدر	fight (v)	يقاثل / يحارب	press (v) (ed)	يضغط
attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم / يهاجم	followers (n)	متابعون	process (n)	عملية
authentic (adj)	أصلي / حقيقي	genuine (adj)	أصيل / حقيقي	product (n)	منتج
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
battle (n)	معركة	icon (n)	أيقونة / رمز	questioning mind	عقل ناقد
blog post (n)	منشور / مدونة	illusion (n)	وهم	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
bomb (n) (v) (ed)	قنبلة / يقصف	imitation (n)	تقليد	resources (n)	موارد
bullet (n)	طلقة / رصاصة	impression (n)	انطباع	respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
button (n)	زر	individuals (n)	أفراد	role model (n)	قدوة حسنة
combine (v) (d)	يدمج	inspiring (adj)	ملهم	scientific (adj)	علمي
confidence (n)	ثقة بالنفس	luxury (n)	رفاهية	sensational (adj)	مثير
conflict (n)	صراع	misleading (adj)	مضلل	sincerity (n)	إخلاص
confused (adj)	مرتبك	motivate (v) (d)	يحفّز / يشجّع	staged lifestyles (n)	أنماط حياة مرحلية
creativity (n)	إبداع	news story (n)	خبر صحفي	tank (n)	دبابة
critical (adj)	حرج / نقدي	openness (n)	انفتاح	teens (n)	مراهقون
curious (adj)	فضولي	perfect (adj)	مثالي / كامل	violence (n)	عنف
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	perfection (n)	كمال	weapons (n)	أسلحة

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Good habits such as eating healthy food can us from many diseases.
a) hurt b) cause c) protect d) damage
2. Parents often their children to follow their dreams.
a) avoid b) motivate c) confuse d) destroy
3. People should not believe without proof. دليل.
a) rumors b) impressions c) ruins d) attacks
4. Some gases are to the human eye, so we cannot see them.
a) positive b) critical c) invisible d) colorful
5. The teacher encouraged the students to use their when designing the project.
a) creativity b) questioning c) misinformation d) failure
6. The museum displays only paintings, not copies.
a) scientific b) fake c) popular d) authentic
7. The internet can spread very quickly if people don't check the facts.
a) awareness b) misinformation c) honesty d) truth
8. The jeweler confirmed that the gold necklace was, not false.
a) genuine b) forged c) fake d) copied

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

as long as we remember ما دمنا نتذكر	click an icon ينقر على أيقونة	how hard it is كم هو صعب
at a national level على مستوى وطني	combine ... with يدمج... مع	in a positive way بطريقة إيجابية
at least على الأقل	create lasting impressions يترك انطباعات دائمة	protect from يحمي من
avoid scams يتجنب الاحتيال	fight back يقاوم	reflect on يتأمل في
become easier to يصبح أسهل أن	fight over يتقاتل على	send a strong message يرسل رسالة قوية
benefit from يستفيد من	find it exciting يجده مثيراً	share with يشارك مع
cause ... to stop يتسبب في توقف ...	gain more followers يكسب المزيد من المتابعين	show perfect images يعرض صوراً مثالية
cause violence يسبب العنف	get sunlight يحصل على ضوء الشمس	spread across ينتشر عبر
check sources يتحقق من المصادر	give us the chance يمنحنا الفرصة	spread through ينتشر عبر
children in need أطفال محتاجون	hide behind illusions يختبئ وراء الأوهام	supported by facts مدعوم بالحقائق

المشتقات

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير / نتيجة	affected effective	متأثر / مصطنع فعال
attack	يهاجم	attack attacker	هجوم مهاجم	attacking	هجومى / مهاجم
combine	يدمج	combination	دمج / مزيج	combined	مدمج
defend	يدافع	defense defender	دفاع / حماية مدافع	defensive	دفاعى
destroy	يُدمر / يُخرب	destruction	دمار / تخریب	destructive	مُدمر / تخریبى
encourage	يشجّع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجّع
improve	يُحسن / يُطور	improvement	تحسن / تطوير	improved	مُحسن
protect	يحمى / يقي	protection	حماية / وقاية	protective protected	وقائى / حامى محمى
ruin	يُدمر / يخرب	ruin ruins	دمار / خراب بقايا / الأطلال	ruined	مدمر
trust	يثق	trust	ثقة	trusted trustful	موثوق / معتمد واقف

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Fast food can **affect** your health badly. (v)
- The new teacher had a positive **effect** on all students. (n)
- Exercise is an **effective** way to stay healthy. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
awareness	وعى / إدراك	consciousness/knowledge		ignorance/unawareness	جهل / عدم إدراك
destroy	يُدمر	ruin/smash/demolish		construct/repair	يشيد / يصلح
improve	يُحسن / يُتّحسن	develop/boost		worsen/decline	يزداد سوء / ينهار
invisible	غير مرئى	unseen/hidden		visible/obvious	مرئى / واضح
luxury	رفاهية /ترف	comfort/wealth		poverty/deprivation	فقر / حرمان

popular	مشهور/محبوب	famous/admired	unpopular/unknown	غير معروف
protect	يحمي	secure/defend	endanger/harm/attack	يعرض للخطر/يضر/يهاجم
support	يدعم/يساند	assist/help/encourage	oppose/weaken	يعارض/يضعف
trust	ثقة	faith/confidence	doubt/distrust	شك/ريبية
violence	عنف	cruelty/aggression	peace/gentleness	سلام/لطف

Vocabulary

Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Employees benefit the training programs that develop their skills.
 - a) from
 - b) about
 - c) on
 - d) to
2. Rumors about the new movie are spreading the internet quickly.
 - a) beside
 - b) over
 - c) about
 - d) across
3. The location of the treasure was invisible in the forest. The synonym of the word "invisible" is
 - a) visible
 - b) hidden
 - c) obvious
 - d) closed
4. The storm has destroyed several houses along the coastline. The adjective of the word "destroy" is
 - a) destruction
 - b) destructively
 - c) destructs
 - d) destructive
5. Our great army protects our country. The word "protect" gives the same meaning as
 - a) defeat
 - b) open
 - c) defend
 - d) oppose
6. She always gives feedback a positive way to encourage her team.
 - a) on
 - b) in
 - c) about
 - d) from
7. The villagers had to when the wild animals attacked their farms.
 - a) fight back
 - b) give up
 - c) run away
 - d) hide up

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

In the past, wars were fought with soldiers, tanks, and planes. Today, a new kind of war is spreading across the world, it does not use bullets or bombs. Instead, it uses words — lies, half-truths, and rumors. Experts call this the "war of the new generation".

In this kind of war, the goal is not to destroy buildings, but to damage trust. Lies can be used to make people angry, afraid, or confused. A rumor can spread quickly through social media, making millions believe something that is not true. When people no longer know what to believe, it becomes easier to control them.

The victims of these "information attacks" can be individuals, companies, or even whole countries. A false story about a famous person can ruin their career. A rumor about a company can cause customers to stop buying its products.

One dangerous thing about this invisible weapon is how hard it is to fight back. Once a lie is shared online, it can travel faster than the truth. People may share it without checking if it is correct. Some do it because they are angry, others because they find it exciting.

Protecting ourselves from this new kind of war requires awareness. We must think before we believe or share a story. We should ask: "Where did this information come from? Is it supported by facts? Who might benefit from me believing this?" In the war of the new generation, the most powerful defense is a careful and questioning mind.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. How does social media help rumors spread?

- a) By deleting them quickly.
- b) By sharing them slowly.
- c) By allowing millions to hear about them instantly.
- d) By stopping people from talking.

2. What can a false story about a company cause?

- a) More sales of products.
- b) Customers stop buying its products.
- c) A new advertisement.
- d) A stronger economy.

3. What happens when a lie is shared online?

- a) It disappears quickly.
- b) It travels faster than the truth.
- c) It always gets deleted.
- d) It never spreads.

4. How can individuals defend society from misinformation?

- a) By sharing without checking.
- b) By questioning and checking facts.
- c) By ignoring the truth.
- d) By spreading rumors.

Listening Text



Scan & Listen



In modern life, appearances can sometimes be misleading, but they also remind us of the importance of being genuine. Social media and advertisements may show perfect images, yet they give us the chance to reflect on what really matters. Instead of comparing ourselves with edited pictures or staged lifestyles, we can use them as motivation to appreciate honesty and real achievements, which would be great if we did. Throughout history, people have enjoyed expressing themselves through clothes, makeup, and style. This creativity can be fun and inspiring as long as we remember that true worth does not depend on looks alone. If we combine appearance with sincerity, we send a powerful message of confidence. Many influencers and role models today are turning towards authenticity—they share their daily struggles, simple routines, and true feelings. Their openness encourages others to value honesty more than perfection. If they do so, many will follow. The bright side is clear: genuine appearance builds trust, respect, and stronger connections. Real smiles, acts of kindness, and sincere words create lasting impressions. Confidence grows when we celebrate who we truly are—not when we try to hide behind illusions. By choosing truth over imitation, we inspire both ourselves and others.

Definitions

التعريفات

awareness	وعى / معرفة	knowledge or understanding of a situation or fact/ being conscious of something and understanding it
defense	دفاع / حماية	the act of protecting someone or something from harm or danger
invisible	خفى / غير مرئي	something that cannot be seen
misinformation	معلومات مضللة	false or incorrect information that is spread, whether on purpose عمدًا or by mistake
rumors	شائعات	stories or information that are spread by people but are not verified as true لم يتم التحقق من صحتها
trust	ثقة	a feeling of confidence in someone or something; believing that they are honest or reliable

Notes

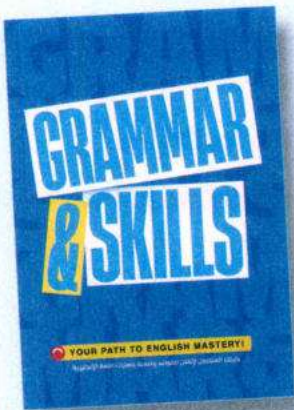
on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	require	يحتاج / يتطلب	This job requires 5 years' experience.
	acquire	يكتسب / يحصل على	She acquired new skills at her last work.
	inquire	يستفسر	The journalist is inquiring about the cause of the accident.
2	battle	معركة أو قتال محدد بين مجموعتين أو جيشين في مكان وزمن معين	The soldiers fought a fierce battle at the river.
	war	حرب طويلة بين دولتين أو أكثر وتشمل عدة معارك صغيرة	The World War II was a global destruction.
	conflict	صراع بين شخصين، جماعات، أو دول، قد يكون مسلحاً أو غير مسلح	The two countries are in a conflict over the oil issues.
3	curious	فضولي / مهتم بالاستطلاع	The child was very curious about the new toy.
	interferer	متدخل / متطفل	He is an interferer who always gives advice when it's not needed.
4	respect	احترام / يحترم	We should show respect to our teachers.
	respectable	شخص أو شيء جدير بالاحترام	This school has a respectable library with many books.
	respected	محترم من الآخرين	She is a highly respected scientist.
	respectful	مehذب (يظهر الاحترام)	The students were very respectful to their teacher.
5	sensational	مثير أو جذاب	Nadia told a sensational story about her trip.
	sensitive	حساس (يتأثر بسهولة)	She is very sensitive to criticism.
	sensible	عقلاني أو معقول	It is sensible to save money for emergencies.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My cousin is an engineer who works for a company in the city.
a) respect b) respectful
c) respectable d) respected
- The journalist wrote a article that attracted thousands of readers online.
a) sensitive b) sensational
c) sense d) sensor
- can spread when people share information that may not be true.
a) Awareness b) Knowledge
c) Rumors d) Trust
- The child was very and asked many questions about space.
a) curious b) interferer
c) careless d) sensitive
- Some courses students to have basic knowledge of mathematics.
a) ignore b) acquire
c) inquire d) require



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

**دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. During the war, soldiers have to courageously بشجاعة to protect their lands from attack.
a) combine b) fight c) hide d) ignore
2. This castle was built as a strong against the enemy عدو.
a) escape b) confidence c) offense d) defense
3. Mona's story was and made me want to be a businesswoman, too.
a) inspiring b) confused c) curious d) lasting
4. Teachers encourage students to avoid spreading without proof.
a) misinformation b) knowledge c) experience d) wisdom
5. The writing on the document was confirmed as, not a copy by the expert.
a) imagined b) sensational c) fake d) authentic
6. There was a serious between the employees that affected teamwork badly.
a) perfection b) conflict c) respect d) battle
7. The influencer had thousands of after posting helpful tips online.
a) followers b) articles c) posts d) enemies
8. Some jobs specialized skills and years of experience to perform well.
a) require b) avoid c) protect d) trust
9. The company encourages to develop innovative solutions.
a) misinformation b) confusion c) friendship d) creativity
10. The program focuses on developing the skills of every rather than بدلاً من training the whole class.
a) team b) individual c) collection d) society
11. A good teacher knows how to students to work hard and achieve their goals.
a) motivate b) avoid c) prevent d) discourage
12. Many people change their many times to find a job that suits them best.
a) diet b) routine c) career d) neighborhood
13. Regular exercise has many effects on both physical and mental health.
a) curious b) harmful c) critical d) positive
14. The movie left a lasting on the audience because of its great message.
a) confusion b) impression c) creativity d) mark
15. Using strong passwords and not sharing them online helps you scams.
a) avoid b) create c) enjoy d) motivate
16. The movie was so that everyone in the city wanted to watch it.
a) public b) unpopular c) unknown d) popular

- 17. The advertisement was because the product didn't work as promised.
a) misleading b) helpful c) correct d) reliable

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18. The teacher asked the students to write three paragraphs for the assignment.
a) at last b) in return c) at least d) for least
19. The designer decided to combine traditional styles modern ones.
a) at b) with c) by d) for
20. Social media rumors can easily violence among young people.
a) cause b) stay c) do d) delete
21. Friends like to share funny videos and memes each other on social media.
a) before b) against c) with d) from
22. Countries are often natural resources like water and oil.
a) fighting over b) failing in c) carrying out d) sharing with
23. In football, a tries to stop the opposing team from scoring goals.
a) defender b) defenses c) defending d) defensive
24. The teacher praised the student for showing great in mathematics this semester.
a) improvement b) decline c) failure d) carelessness
25. The police chased the through the crowded streets until he was captured.
a) defender b) attacker c) attack d) defense

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. People should not destroy nature because it is important. The synonyms of the word "destroy" are
a) construct b) ruin c) oppose d) repair e) demolish
27. People can support charities by giving money or time. The antonyms of the word "support" are
a) oppose b) help c) report d) weaken e) assist
28. That singer is popular because she sings well. The word "popular" gives the same meaning as
a) admired b) unknown c) famous d) failure e) wealthy
29. Awareness of traffic rules can prevent accidents. The opposites of the word "awareness" are
a) consciousness b) unawareness c) ignorance d) knowledge e) poverty
30. It is hard to regain trust once it is broken. The synonyms of the word "trust" are
a) doubt b) suspicion c) faith d) confidence e) cure

B

Language

Third Conditional

الحالة الثالثة

If

+

Past Perfect
ماضي تام

+

would/could/might + have + P.P.

تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف حدثت / لم تحدث في الماضي. (الندم / اللوم)

If you **had gone** to the cinema with us, you **would have enjoyed** your time.

هذا يعني أن الشخص لم يذهب للسينما؛ لذا لم يستمتع بوقته.

If she **hadn't passed** the exam, she **wouldn't have gone** to university.

هذا يعني أنها اجتازت الاختبار بالفعل؛ ولذا التحقت بالجامعة.

عند وجود كلمة تدل على الماضي فلا بد من استخدام الحالة الثالثة حتى وإن كانت الجملة فيها حقيقة.

لاحظ

If you **had put** water in the freezer **yesterday**, it **would have turned** into ice.



Important Notes

نقاط هامة على قاعدة If

1 يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط في صيغة سؤال في الحالات الأربع، لاحظ التالي:

What **do you do** if you **feel** worried?

(الحالة الصفريّة)

What **will you do** if you **feel** worried?

(الحالة الأولى)

What **would you do** if you **felt** worried?

(الحالة الثانية)

What **would you have done** if you **had felt** worried?

(الحالة الثالثة)

2 حالات **If** جميعها تشير للحاضر والمستقبل ماعدا الحالة الثالثة فقط فإنها تشير إلى مواقف انتهت في الماضي.

لاحظ هذه الأمثلة:

If you **studied** hard, you **would pass** the exam.

(الحالة الثانية)

هنا استخدام الماضي البسيط (**studied**) يجعلك تعتقد أن الحدث انتهى ولكن مع وجود **If** فإن الموقف يشير إلى احتمال ضعيف في المستقبل.

If you **had studied** hard, you **would have passed** the exam.

(الحالة الثالثة)

هنا استخدام **If** وبناء الحالة الثالثة فإن الجملة تشير لحدث انتهى في الماضي.

"If" Alternatives

بدائل "if"

هناك تراكييب مختلفة تعطى نفس معنى جمل **if** في الحالات الأربع، لاحظ التالي:

1 Unless لولم + جملة مثبتة = If + جملة منفية

Unless he **ran** fast, he would miss the bus.
= If he **didn't run** fast, he would miss the bus.

2 Without بدون + noun/v-ing = But for لولا + noun

Without **studying** hard, you will fail.
Without/But for **his cleverness**, he wouldn't succeed.

3 In case of/In the event of في حالة + noun

In case of **emergency**, call 122.

- أما **in case** فقط فيأتي بعدها جملة كاملة بمعنى (خشية أن /لربما).

I'll prepare the food **in case** your father comes early.

4 If = Provided (that) بشرط أن = Providing (that) بشرط = As long as طالما = On condition (that) بشرط أن

I will get high marks (**provided/as long as/if**) I study hard.

5 If it weren't for لولا + noun , subj. + would + inf.

If it weren't for **doctors**, many people **would die**.

(الحالة الثانية)

= Without **doctors**, many people would die.

6 If it hadn't been for لولا + noun , subj. + would + have + P.P.

If it hadn't been for **his help**, I **would have failed** the exam.

(الحالة الثالثة)

= Without **his help**, I **would have failed** the exam.

7 Suppose (that) افترض أن , past simple ماضٍ بسيط , would + inf.

Supposing (that) افترض أن
Imagine (that) تخيل أن

(Suppose/Supposing/Imagine) **that you won** the prize, **what would you do?**

Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Choose the correct answer from a), b), c) or d).**
1. If I had known more about computers, I you with your problem.
a) help b) will help
c) wouldn't help d) would have helped
 2. If he at the meeting early, he would have the chance to meet the boss.
a) had arrived b) has arrived
c) didn't arrive d) arrived
 3. you had finished the project, you wouldn't have been free to travel.
a) If b) Without
c) Unless d) Provided that
 4. You can't go into the museum buying a ticket first.
a) unless b) without
c) in case d) in case of
 5. You can borrow this book as you look after it.
a) provided b) if
c) as long d) on condition
 6. If it for your help, I wouldn't have succeeded.
a) hadn't b) isn't
c) hadn't been d) weren't
 7. that you lived by the sea; what would you do every day?
a) Condition b) As long
c) Imagine d) Supposed

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning:

1. He may come early. In that case, I will contact you. (as long as)
2. If he behaved badly, he would be punished. (In case of)
3. If Menna didn't get up early, she would go to school late. (Unless)
4. Hurry up or you will miss the train. (Without)
5. But for his help, I wouldn't get high grades. (If it ...)



Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على بدائل If:

1

من الممكن استخدام **Should** بدلاً من **If** في بداية الجملة في الحالتين الأولى والثانية، وتكون القاعدة كالآتي:

Should + subj. + inf. ... subj. + will/can/may + inf.

Should Mona **come** early, I **will tell** her the news.

= **If** Mona **comes** early, I **will tell** her the news.

Should + subj. + inf. ... subj. + would/could/might + inf.

Should Sara **sleep** early, she **would get** up early.

= **If** Sara **slept** early, she **would get** up early.

2

من الممكن استخدام **Were** بدلاً من **If** في بداية الجملة في الحالة الثانية، وتكون القاعدة كالآتي:

Were + subj. + to + inf. ... subj. + would/could/might + inf.

Were Rania **to run** faster, she **would catch** the bus.

= **If** Rania **ran** faster, she **would catch** the bus.

Were + subj. + adj./n. ... subj. + would/could/might + inf.

Were he **clever**, he **would get** high marks.

= **If** he **were** clever, he **would get** high marks.

Were I a **doctor**, I **could save** my mother's life. = **If** I **were** a doctor, ...

3

من الممكن استخدام **Had** بدلاً من **If** في بداية الجملة في الحالة الثالثة، وتكون القاعدة كالآتي:

Had + subj. + (not) P.P. ... subj. + would/could/might + have + P.P.

Had I **trained** hard, I **would have won** the cup.

= **If** I **had trained** hard, I **would have won** the cup.

4

الفرق بين **if** و **in case**

I will buy extra bread **if** Ali joins us.

هنا شراء الخبز لن يتم إلا بعد مشاركة علي.

I will buy extra bread **in case** Ali joins us.

هنا سيتم شراء الخبز أولاً تحسباً لمشاركة علي.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sameh find a good job, he will move to a new flat.
 a) If b) Were
 c) Should d) When
2. your son a doctor, he could help us.
 a) If b) Should
 c) Had d) Were
3. Were Ashraf hard, he would get the full mark.
 a) studied b) studying
 c) to study d) study
4. Ramy missed the bus, he would have taken a taxi.
 a) If b) Were
 c) Unless d) Had
5. We will take Mostafa with us a player gets injured.
 a) unless b) without
 c) in case d) in case of

2 Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. If she studied hard, she will get high marks. (.....)
2. Had he travel abroad, he would have been happy. (.....)
3. Were Mazen studying hard, he wouldn't fail. (.....)

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
 تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
 لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



- 1.** Unless he had joined university, he a good job.
a) would find b) wouldn't have found
c) would have found d) will find
- 2.** Without our best, we wouldn't pass our exams with high grades.
a) we did b) doing
c) to do d) we have done
- 3.** Mom says we can watch TV on that we do our homework first.
a) condition b) provided c) long as d) if
- 4.** They will lose the match they train hard.
a) unless b) as long as c) without d) in case of
- 5.** If it for your help, I would find it difficult to understand my lessons.
a) had been b) hadn't been c) were d) weren't
- 6.** They won't come to the party we invite them; they need to be invited.
a) without b) unless c) in case of d) if
- 7.** I a millionaire, I'd start projects to employ young people.
a) If b) Unless c) Were d) Had
- 8.** If it hadn't been for doing your best, you got the job.
a) won't have b) will have c) wouldn't have d) would have
- 9.** heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on earth.
a) But for b) With c) In case of d) Unless
- 10.** He the job if he had prepared well for the interview.
a) would get b) got c) would have got d) gets
- 11.** we gone to the club, we would have been happier.
a) If b) Unless c) Were d) Had
- 12.** We will start painting the house tomorrow it doesn't rain.
a) unless b) provided c) without d) but for
- 13.** Supposing you won the prize, how feel?
a) would you b) will you c) you would d) you will
- 14.** If Adel read the news, he all about the accident.
a) would know b) knows
c) will know d) will have known
- 15.** Unless he had followed my advice, he all his money.
a) would have lost b) wouldn't have lost
c) wouldn't lose d) won't lose

16. for the Nile, Egypt would be a desert land.
 a) If it were b) If it had been c) If it hadn't been d) If it weren't
17. If you what I say, ask your father.
 a) don't believe b) didn't believe
 c) won't believe d) wouldn't believe
18. If you had spoken more clearly, they your idea.
 a) understand b) understood
 c) would understand d) would have understood
19. too much, he would get sick all the time.
 a) If he worries b) Is he to worry
 c) Were he to worry d) Should he to worry
20. I'll swim in the sea today it's windy at the beach.
 a) in case b) provided c) in case of d) unless
21. he found a suitable place, he wouldn't have stayed in this city.
 a) If b) Had c) Should d) Were
22. a car, he would have given me a lift.
 a) Should he have b) Were he to have c) Have he had d) Had he had
23. I wouldn't buy that jacket enough money.
 a) without b) if c) unless d) in case
24. my teachers' support, I wouldn't have come first in the final exam.
 a) Unless b) If c) Without d) In case of
25. I'll take warm clothes with me I feel cold there. I want to be ready for all conditions.
 a) in case of b) in case c) unless d) when
26. I will clean the guest room in case my uncle visits us. This means that
 a) the speaker will clean the guest room after his uncle comes.
 b) the speaker will clean the guest room before his uncle comes.
 c) the speaker will probably not clean the guest room.
 d) the speaker won't clean the guest room until his uncle comes.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

- I advise you to do more sports to keep fit.
- Consult your doctor, or you will get worse.
- If he didn't support me, I'd fail!
- Press this button if there is a fire.
- I wouldn't buy that TV unless you advised me.

(If I were ...)

(Unless ...)

(if it weren't ...)

(... in case of ...)

(But for ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The rapid changes in the environment may biodiversity التنوع البيئي.
a) disappear b) protect c) affect d) reflect
2. Adam fought a long against illness before finally recovering.
a) battle b) race c) game d) conflict
3. The students were by the teacher's sudden change of schedule.
a) confusing b) confident c) prepared d) confused
4. The store offers discounts on every during the vacation.
a) product b) produce c) dream d) event
5. Sportsmen often become a/an for children who admire their dedication and hard work.
a) role model b) troublemaker c) follower d) role-play
6. Some people it exciting to learn new languages.
a) bring b) make c) do d) find
7. Many countries try to manage their natural well to benefit their citizens.
a) weapons b) resources c) tools d) festivals
8. Teenagers sometimes spread online without realizing their impact.
a) rumors b) facts c) instructions d) blogs
9. His sudden illness caused him attending school for a few days.
a) from stopping b) to stopping c) to stop d) for stopping
10. The flu can spread quickly a classroom when students do not wash their hands regularly.
a) in front b) through c) about d) out
11. Building strong relationships depends mainly on between people.
a) protection b) dishonest c) trust d) headline
12. The castle walls were built to the king and his family.
a) protect b) raise c) trust d) require
13. I've read an interesting news about my favorite athlete.
a) book b) novel c) story d) tool
14. Her speech was and inspired everyone of the audience to take action.
a) boring b) sensational c) ordinary d) sensitive
15. Scientists are always to learn new things about the universe.
a) scientific b) disappointed c) critical d) curious

Language

16. You won't be allowed to enter the club you show your membership card.
 a) when b) if c) unless d) without
17. you refused to help me, I wouldn't solve that problem.
 a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Without
18. You will miss the train you arrive at the station in time.
 a) if b) unless c) in case of d) because
19. If she invested her money wisely, she more profit.
 a) makes b) will make c) would make d) made
20. Had the team trained harder, they the championship.
 a) win b) will win
 c) would win d) would have won
21. If I were you, I that opportunity.
 a) take b) would take c) will take d) took
22. If you recharge your phone regularly, it longer.
 a) lasts b) lasted c) will last d) would last
23. proper guidance and direction, it's easy to carry out the task.
 a) Without b) Unless c) In case of d) If
24. you were active, you would lose the job.
 a) If b) Unless c) Should d) In case
25. he rich, he would buy that expensive car.
 a) If b) Unless c) Should d) Were
26. your help, I won't be able to answer these tricky questions.
 a) Without b) If c) Unless d) Until
27. fire, call the emergency number.
 a) If b) unless c) in case of d) Without
28. training hard, you can't win the match.
 a) Without b) Unless c) In case of d) If
29. He abroad if he gets the visa on time.
 a) would travel b) would have travelled
 c) won't travel d) will travel
30. If they found a company of their own, I to work there.
 a) apply b) would apply
 c) will apply d) would have applied



Writing Skill

Writing tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملاحق المهارات.

Writing about fake news and fake platforms

Introduction:

المقدمة:
Begin with a question, fact, or short example (hook).
Explain briefly what fake news and fake platforms are.

اشرح بإيجاز ما هي الأخبار الكاذبة، وما هي المنصات الوهمية.
ضع فكرتك الرئيسية بوضوح (جملة الموضوع).

Body Paragraphs:

فقرات الموضوع:
Introduce your points, give examples, and provide facts or numbers.
قدم نقاط الموضوع وأعط أمثلة واذكر حقائق أو أرقامًا.
Mention the negatives of spreading fake news.
اذكر سلبيات انتشار الأخبار الكاذبة.

Talk about ways to stop people from following fake platforms.

تكلم عن طرق إيقاف الناس عن متابعة المنصات الوهمية.
الخاتمة

Conclusion:

Summarize the main ideas again in new words.
End with advice or a call to action.

لخص الأفكار الرئيسية بصياغة جديدة.
اختم المقال بنصيحة أو نداء لاتخاذ إجراء.

MODEL ESSAY

Fake news and fake platforms

Introduction

Have you ever believed a story online that was not true? Fake news and fake platforms are everywhere today. They often look real, but their purpose is to trick people. I believe they are very dangerous because they can hurt individuals, confuse societies, and destroy trust.

Body Paragraphs

Fake news can damage people's lives. For example, a false story about a student, a teacher, or even a celebrity can spread quickly on social media. When others believe these lies, the victim feels betrayed and loses their good reputation. This shows how harmful fake information can be.

Also, fake platforms harm society. Some websites or social media pages promise jobs, prizes, or easy money. In reality, they only want to steal personal data or money. These scams create fear and mistrust among people.

Conclusion

In conclusion, fake news and fake platforms are traps. We must always check sources, ask questions, and "trust but verify."

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In today's digital world, we see hundreds of messages, stories, and posts every day. Some of them are true, but many are false. Fake news spreads quickly because it is often exciting, emotional, or shocking. If we are not careful, we may believe a lie or even share it with others. This is why learning how to check fake news is very important.

The first step is to look at the source. Is the website or platform **reliable**? Real news usually comes from trusted newspapers, TV channels, or official organizations. Fake platforms often have strange names, many advertisements, or promises that sound too good to be true.

The second step is to check the details. If the story has no date, no writer, or no clear facts, it may not be real. Compare the story with other reliable websites. If only one website shows the news, it may be false.

The third step is to think before sharing. Ask yourself: Who benefits from this news? Does it make people angry or afraid? Fake news often tries to control emotions instead of giving facts.

By stopping, asking questions, and checking carefully, we can protect ourselves and our society from the danger of lies. Fake news is like a trap, but with awareness and responsibility, we can avoid it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The passage is mainly about
 a) how to create shocking stories b) forms of social media
 c) how to design websites d) how to check fake news
- According to the passage, the first step to check news is to look at the
 a) writer b) advertisement c) source d) title
- Which is the best summary of the passage?
 a) Fake news spreads quickly, so we must learn to check sources.
 b) Fake news is always funny and safe to share.
 c) All news on social media is true.
 d) Reliable websites never publish mistakes.
- Why does fake news spread quickly?
 a) Because it is always correct. b) Because it is exciting or emotional.
 c) Because it comes from TV channels. d) Because people ignore it.
- If a story appears only on one strange website, it is probably
 a) fake b) true c) official d) important

► 6. How is fake news different from real news?

- a) Fake news always has dates, real news doesn't.
- b) Fake news comes from books, real news comes from the internet.
- c) Fake news is often emotional, real news is based on facts.
- d) There is no difference.

7. The word "reliable" in the passage means

- a) easy to find
- b) trustworthy
- c) false
- d) popular

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants have been used for treating illnesses since primitive times. Paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs show that plants were being used by the Ancient Egyptians for medicinal purposes. Today, some modern drugs are still based on natural herbs. Aspirin, for example, is based on the bark of the willow tree.

Natural remedies are attracting increasing attention all over the world. The advantage of herbal medicine is that the whole plant can be used; the powerful substance in the plant cures the illness, while the contents of the rest of the plant may help to prevent any harmful side effects. In this way, herbal medicines may be safer than chemical ones. Garlic is just one plant that has been used throughout the world as a cure for diseases, and it is also used to treat hair problems. Similarly, henna, which is known to be good for hair, can also be used in the treatment of cancer.

If you pay a visit to a herbalist shop in Cairo, you will be struck by the different colors and smells. There are jars full of tree bark, roots, powders, oils, and spices. The customer enters the shop and explains his symptoms to the herbalist, who will take notes, study medical reports and check his reference books before writing out a prescription.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Natural remedies are attracting attention because they

- a) are used in Egypt
- b) have side effects
- c) are exported from Egypt
- d) can treat a lot of diseases

2. Garlic is an example of

- a) natural remedies
- b) artificial herbs
- c) chemical medicines
- d) modern drugs

3. The pronoun "his" in the last paragraph refers to the

- a) herbalist
- b) shop
- c) customer
- d) prescription

4. Herbal medicine is more effective than chemical medicine because

- a) it's cheaper and cleaner
- b) it's easily found and easily taken in
- c) it cures and protects from side effects
- d) many local people benefit from selling it

5. The main idea of the passage is ".....".

- a) Herbal Medicine Benefits
- b) Chemical Medicine Disadvantages
- c) The Faculty of Medicine
- d) Trees Can Cure

6. Which sentence is NOT correct about natural herbs?

- a) They've been used for treating illnesses since primitive times.
- b) They were used in the paintings in the tombs of the pharaohs.
- c) They can be fried on fire to be served.
- d) Some drugs are still based on natural herbs.

7. The bark of the is used to make aspirin.

- a) bush tree
- b) shadow plant
- c) palm tree
- d) willow tree

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Terrorism is one of the worst and most complicated problems, and it has a lot of destructive effects on both citizens and society.

- (a) الإرهاب يعتبر من أحدث المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيداً، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
- (b) تعتبر السياحة من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيداً، ولها الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
- (c) الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأشهرها تعقيداً، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.
- (d) يعتبر الإرهاب من أسوأ المشاكل وأكثرها تعقيداً، وله الكثير من الآثار المدمرة على كل من المواطنين والمجتمع.

2. There are a lot of people who are miserable because they don't have enough money to live a decent life or in a good place.

- (a) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البخل؛ لأنهم يملكون ما يكفي من المال للعيش أو مكان للعيش فيه.
- (b) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص البائسين الذين لا يملكون ما يكفي من المال ليحظوا بحياة غالية أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
- (c) هناك الكثير من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البؤس؛ لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفي من المال ليحظوا بحياة كريمة أو مكان جيد للعيش فيه.
- (d) هناك المئات من الأشخاص الذين يعانون من البؤس؛ لأنهم لا يملكون ما يكفي من المال ليعيشوا بكرامة وفي مكان مناسب.

3. Research says that we must have a hobby to refresh ourselves and ease the bad effects of work stress.

- (a) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب ألا تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
- (b) تقول الأبحاث إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
- (c) الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنقاذ أنفسنا وتخفيف الآثار السيئة لضغوط العمل.
- (d) الأبحاث تقول إنه يجب أن تكون لدينا هواية لإنعاش أنفسنا وتسهيل الآثار الصعبة لضغوط العمل.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. يلعب الآباء والمعلمون وكذلك الإعلام دوراً هاماً في تشكيل شخصية الأطفال، وتعديل سلوكياتهم ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين.

- a) Parents, teachers, and the media play an important rule in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviors to be good citizens.
- b) Parents, teachers, and the media play an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviors to be good citizens.
- c) Parents, teachers, and the media play a minor role in forming children's personalities and clarifying their behaviors to be good citizens.
- d) Parents, teachers, and the media make an important role in forming children's personalities and modifying their behaviors to be good citizens.

5. إن الطموح هو الرغبة في تحقيق أشياء عظيمة، وهو يدفعنا للعمل بجد للوصول إلى أهدافنا.

- a) Ambition is the desire to achieve great things. It motivates us to work hard and achieve our dreams.
- b) Ambition is the ability to achieve great things. It motivates us to work quickly to achieve our goals.
- c) Ambition is the desire to achieve great things. It motivates us to work hard to achieve our goals.
- d) Ambition is the desire to get good things. It motivates us to hard work to achieve our goals.

6. إن إنشاء الكثير من مكتبات المدارس والمكتبات العامة ساهم في تحسين العملية التعليمية بوجه عام، وساعد الكثير من الأطفال والشباب على القراءة بحرية.

- a) The establishment of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process in general and helped many children and youths to read freely.
- b) The establishment of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational operation in general and helped some children and youths to read freely.
- c) The building of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improving the educational process with a general face and helped many children and youth to read freely.
- d) The constructing of lots of school libraries and public libraries contributed to improve the educational process in general and helped lots of children and youths to read freely.

(c) Writing

4 Write a paragraph of (120-150) words on the following:

"How to reduce the number of young people who give up education at early ages"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

terrorism	الإرهاب	good citizens	مواطنون صالحون	decent life	حياة كريمة
complicated	معقد	destructive	مدمر	establishment	تأسيس / بناء



Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box:

reputation – interactions – deceive – betrayed – exploit

1. Friendly at school can help build strong friendships.
2. The scammer tried to the elderly woman by pretending to be from the bank.
3. He felt deeply when his best friend shared his secret.
4. He has a very good because he always keeps his promises.
5. Some people will try to others to make quick money.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box:

wolves in sheep's clothing – too good to be true – caught in a trap – trust but verify

1. That deal sounds amazing, but it might be
2. He seemed friendly at first, but later we discovered he was one of those
3. She signed the contract without reading it and soon realized she was
4. My father always tells me, "You should when dealing with strangers."

Language

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. If you eat too much sugar, you (gain weight).
2. If we hurry, we (not/miss) the train.
3. If I had more free time, I (learn) Spanish.
4. If you press this button, the light (come) on.
5. If she (know) his phone number, she would call him.

4 Choose the correct sentence:

1. Giving scientific information about fire:
 - a) If you pour water on fire, will go out.
 - b) If you pour water on fire, it goes out.
2. Talking about an impossible dream:
 - a) If I am a famous singer, I help children in need.
 - b) If I were a famous singer, I would help children in need.

3. Talking about a general truth:

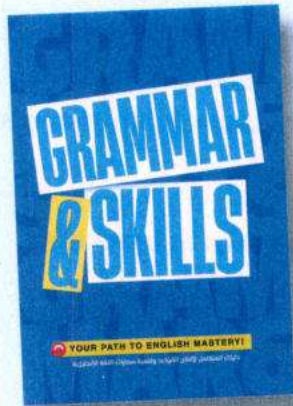
- a) If you click this icon, the program starts.
- b) If you clicked this icon, the program would start.

4. Explaining a natural process:

- a) If plants don't get sunlight, they die.
- b) If plants didn't get sunlight, they would die.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

- 1. If a news story is false, people (stop) trusting the media.
- 2. If he (study) more, would he get better grades?
- 3. If we mix red and yellow, we (got) orange.



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!



1 Finish the following dialog:

A passenger is booking a ticket to Aswan.

Ticket officer: How can I help you?

Passenger: I want to book a ticket.

Ticket officer: Where are you going?

Passenger: (1)..... . When does the train leave?

Ticket officer: (2)..... .

Passenger: (3)..... ?

Ticket officer: Platform 3.

Passenger: (4)..... ?

Ticket officer: The ticket is 150 pounds.

Passenger: OK. Here you are.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. There is only one true coming from Allah.

a) order

b) prophet

c) rule

d) religion

2. The straight is the shortest one to Allah.

a) line

b) path

c) religion

d) person

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who are Muslims?

.....

4. What do divine religions call for?

.....

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

I have been a volunteer at a food bank for a year. It is responsible for poor families in remote villages.

.....

(B) Translate into English:

كل ما يُعبد من دون الله من وثن أو حجر أو شجر هي آلهة باطلة.

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

- Vaccines can protect children from dangerous diseases. The synonyms of the word "protect" are
 a) endanger b) secure c) produce d) defend e) harm
- Watching too much violence on TV can influence children in a negative way. The opposites of the word "violence" are
 a) beauty b) cruelty c) peace d) danger e) gentleness

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The documentary showed a/an story of courage and determination.
 a) inspiring b) dull c) weak d) ordinary
- A leader must have to make important decisions.
 a) doubt b) confidence c) hesitation d) inheritance
- Setting clear goals can help employees to increase productivity.
 a) discourage b) charge c) motivate d) send
- The museum displayed ancient used in wars hundreds of years ago.
 a) furniture b) weapons c) artifacts d) facts
- Students should sources when researching online to avoid using false information.
 a) copy b) ignore c) check d) trust
- Good leaders should show to motivate their teams to be better members.
 a) encourages b) encouraged
 c) encourage d) encouragement
- I would put on protective glasses if I you.
 a) were b) will be c) had been d) am
- you invest your money well, you won't make a profit.
 a) If b) Without c) In case d) Unless
- doing regular exercises, I will be overweight.
 a) Without b) Unless c) In case of d) If
- If it for your tips, I would make more mistakes.
 a) weren't b) hadn't been c) wasn't d) isn't
- If you can't impose your conditions شروط, you negotiate تتفاوض.
 a) would b) should c) need d) ought
- If he had used cars, he us one of them easily. He only deals with new cars.
 a) would have sold b) would sell c) will sell d) may sell

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The internet has become a very important part of our daily lives. People use it for study, work, shopping, and even entertainment. Social media platforms like Facebook, Instagram, and TikTok allow us to connect with friends and family, share photos, and follow the news. However, while the internet can be very useful, it is important to use it wisely.

Spending too much time online can affect your health. For example, sitting in front of a screen for many hours may cause eye problems and reduce the time you spend exercising. In addition, not all the information on the internet is true. Some websites and posts share fake news or misleading ideas. **This** is why we should always check the source of the information before believing it or sharing it with others.

Another problem is online safety. Many people share personal details, such as their phone numbers or addresses, without thinking. This can be dangerous because strangers may use this information in harmful ways. It is always better to keep such details private.

Using the internet and social media wisely means balancing your time. You can enjoy chatting with friends or watching videos, but you should also read books, play sports, and spend time with your family. The key is to use technology as a tool, not as something that controls your life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The main idea of the passage is
 - a) dangers of the internet
 - b) using the internet and social media wisely
 - c) how to shop online
 - d) benefits of technology
16. The word "**This**" in paragraph 2 refers to
 - a) fake news
 - b) checking the source
 - c) misleading ideas
 - d) sharing posts
17. The underlined word "private" most likely means
 - a) secret
 - b) public
 - c) open
 - d) shared
18. We can infer from the passage that people who spend all their time online
 - a) may become healthier
 - b) may lose balance in their lives
 - c) become more intelligent
 - d) never believe fake news
19. Why is it dangerous to share personal details online?
 - a) Because it makes your internet faster.
 - b) Because strangers may use them in harmful ways.
 - c) Because it improves your safety.
 - d) Because it saves your time.

- 20. Which of the following is NOT suggested in the passage?
- a) Reading books.
 - b) Playing sports.
 - c) Watching videos all day.
 - d) Spending time with family.

21. The internet should be used as

- a) something that controls us
- b) a tool to help us
- c) a place for sharing private details
- d) a way to avoid family

► 22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– إن اختيار الوظيفة المناسبة مهم للغاية؛ لأنك تحتاج إلى الاستمتاع بعملك حتى تحقق النجاح. لكن عليك أن تتأكد أن هذه الوظيفة لن تؤثر على حياتك الشخصية.

- a) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.
- b) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not reflect your personal life.
- c) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be successful. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your public life.
- d) Choosing the right job is very important because you need to enjoy your work in order to be success. But you have to be sure that this job will not affect your personal life.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Practicing activities at school is very important, so teachers should encourage their students to take part in various activities.

- (a) تُعتبر ممارسة الألعاب في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تفعيل طلابهم للمشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.
- (b) تُعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.
- (c) تُعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً مهماً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تدعيم طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المشتركة.
- (d) تُعتبر ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة أمراً عادياً للغاية، لذلك يجب على المعلمين تشجيع طلابهم على المشاركة في الأنشطة المختلفة.

► 24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Santiago wasn't afraid when the fish pulled his boat out to sea?
2. How do you feel about the fish? Do you want Santiago to catch it?
3. "Pull the boat, fish. One of us must stop. It will not be me". What does this tell us about the old man?

► 25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"How to avoid fake news in Egypt"

Assess Your Progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the three.**
1. We must ensure that tourism develops in harmony with the environment.
The synonyms of the underlined word "harmony" are
a) conflict b) confusion c) coordination
d) separation e) agreement
 2. There were three large figures carved out of the rock. The synonyms of the underlined word "carved" are
a) painted b) shaped c) written
d) cut e) erased
 3. He tried to impress me with his extensive knowledge of football. The antonyms of the underlined word "knowledge" are
a) wisdom b) ignorance c) learning
d) facts e) illiteracy
 4. I began the book six months ago, but I can't seem to finish it. The antonyms of the underlined word "began" are
a) finished b) invested c) ended
d) launched e) started
 5. Productivity in the factory has slipped quite noticeably in the last year.
The synonyms of the underlined word "slipped" are
a) got better b) got worse c) escaped
d) succeeded e) fallen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**
- is what you do or give to achieve something together with other people, or to help make something successful.
a) Contribution b) Contamination c) Presentation d) Corporation
 - Egypt is a land with a heart that has beaten for thousands of years. The phrase "beaten for" suggests a
a) continuous, ongoing life b) difficult struggle
c) temporary event d) brief history
 - Schools play an important in society.
a) reel b) rule c) roll d) role
 - Egypt was also "a crossroads for trade". This idiom means it was a place where
a) roads crossed
b) merchants argued
c) people and goods from many places meet
d) merchants got lost

5. You should more pride in your work.
 a) drop b) swell c) take d) give
6. Our ancestors worked with vision and determination. They had
 a) clear goals and a strong will to achieve them
 b) poor eyesight and were stubborn
 c) a great imagination and an inability to finish
 d) no goals and a lot of energy
7. I think her kindness is one of her strong points. The antonym of the underlined word "kindness" is
 a) care b) cruelty c) equity d) urgency
8. She showed enormous courage when she him from the fire.
 a) pretended b) reserved c) dropped d) rescued
9. Language games are usually intended to encourage student
 a) interactive b) interaction c) interact d) interactively
10. The news of her acceptance into the program "filled her with optimism" about the future. The phrase "filled her with optimism" means
 a) gave her food b) made her hopeful
 c) made her tired d) gave her money
11. His new book is a/an blend of clever humor and heartwarming characters.
 a) irresistible b) resistible c) urgent d) misfortunate
12. is a sudden and dangerous situation that needs quick action.
 a) Emergency b) Responsibility c) Community d) Reservation
13. The phrase "wolves in sheep's clothing" means
 a) animals that disguise themselves b) people who love animals
 c) brave individuals d) dangerous people who appear kind
14. Earlier today, a young man was arrested for attacking a motorist. The antonym of the underlined word "attacking" is
 a) destroying b) damaging c) defending d) helping
15. Working at home was making her feel increasingly
 a) isolate b) isolation c) isolationist d) isolated
16. They us into thinking they would come back later with our money.
 a) deceived b) deception c) deceptive d) decisive
17. It's a big mistake to share any news without
 a) checking b) sleeping c) running d) eating
18. The internet can sometimes have about health.
 a) misleading b) misfortune
 c) mistake d) misinformation

19. is to look for a long time with the eyes wide open, especially when surprised, frightened, or thinking.
 a) Store b) Steer c) Start d) Stare
20. The firefighters worked quickly to people from the car after the accident.
 a) find b) lose c) rescue d) hide

(B) Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

21. If it rains tomorrow, we the picnic.
 a) cancel b) will cancel c) cancels d) canceled
22. If she harder, she will pass the exam.
 a) study b) studied c) will study d) studies
23. If you don't hurry, you the bus.
 a) miss b) will miss c) misses d) missed
24. What you do if you win the lottery?
 a) do b) will c) did d) would
25. If I you, I would apologize.
 a) am b) was c) were d) will be
26. She'll be sad if you come to her party.
 a) don't b) won't c) didn't d) hadn't
27. If I had time, I with you.
 a) went b) will go c) would go d) went
28. Students wear uniforms at this school.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
29. You smoke here. It's against the rules.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
30. You take an umbrella. It might rain.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
31. You eat fast food every day. It's unhealthy.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
32. Children play near busy roads.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
33. He get more sleep. He looks tired.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't

34. You be late for the interview. It's important.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
35. You ignore your homework.
 a) must b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
36. She to school yesterday.
 a) go b) goes c) went d) going
37. I my homework last night.
 a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) finishing
38. He late for work this morning.
 a) is b) was c) were d) be
39. She her leg when she fell.
 a) break b) breaks c) broke d) broken
40. They the game last Saturday.
 a) win b) wins c) won d) winning
41. She her teeth before bed.
 a) brush b) brushes c) brushed d) brushing
42. They football when it started to rain.
 a) play b) are playing c) played d) were playing
43. He his homework at 8 p.m. last night.
 a) do b) was doing c) did d) does
44. They a movie when the lights went out.
 a) watch b) were watching c) watched d) are watching
45. I for the bus when it began to snow.
 a) wait b) was waiting c) waited d) am waiting
46. They the car when it started to rain.
 a) wash b) were washing c) washed d) are washing
47. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
 a) You must to study if you want to succeed.
 b) You must be study if you want to succeed.
 c) You must study if you want to succeed.
 d) You must to study if you want succeed.
48. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
 a) You should to drink more water.
 b) You should drank more water.
 c) You should drink more water.
 d) You should drunk more water.

49. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) If I had knew, I would come.
- b) If I known, I would have come.
- c) If I knew, I will come.
- d) If I had knew, I would have come.

50. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?

- a) If you eat healthy, you will feel better.
- b) If you eat healthily, you will feel better.
- c) If you ate healthily, you will feel better.
- d) If you eat healthy, you would feel better.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 51. He didn't play tennis at all. | (never) |
| 52. She played the piano when she was a child. | (used to) |
| 53. If it rains, we will cancel the picnic. | (won't) |
| 54. I would help you if I had time. | (have) |
| 55. If they don't hurry, they'll be late. | (won't) |
| 56. It's necessary to wear a seat belt. | (must) |
| 57. It's a bad idea to eat junk food every day. | (shouldn't) |
| 58. It's important to apologize when you're wrong. | (should) |
| 59. It's necessary to lock the door at night. | (must) |
| 60. It's a bad idea to drive without a license. | (shouldn't) |
| 61. Perhaps she has lost her phone. | (may) |
| 62. It's recommended to exercise regularly. | (should) |

(C) Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

63. Egypt's heritage is deeply rooted in its ancient civilization, featuring iconic monuments.

- (a) يتمتع تراث مصر بجذور عميقة في حضارتها القديمة، ويضم آثارًا شهيرة.
- (b) يتمتع مناخ مصر بجذور عميقة في حضارتها القديمة، ويضم آثارًا شهيرة.
- (c) يتمتع طقس مصر بجذور عميقة في حضارتها القديمة، ويضم آثارًا شهيرة.
- (d) يستمتع تراث مصر بجذور عميقة في حضارتها القديمة، ويضم آثارًا شهيرة.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

64. يشهد تاريخ البلاد على ذكاء الفراعنة وقوتهم، الذين لا يزال تأثيرهم حاضراً في مصر الحديثة.

- a) The country's history is residence with the cleverness and power of the pharaohs, whose affection can still be seen in modern-day Egypt.
- b) The country's history is evidence of the clever and power of the pharaohs, whose affection can still be seen in modern-day Egypt.
- c) The country's history is evidence of the cleverness and power of the pharaohs, whose influence can still be seen in modern-day Egypt.
- d) The country's history is residence of the cleverness and powerful of the pharaohs, whose influence can still be seen in modern-day Egypt.

65. تستخدم المدارس التكنولوجيا لتعليم البرمجة والروبوتات والمعرفة الرقمية منذ الصغر.

- a) Schools use technology to teach coding, robotics, and digital illiteracy from an early age.
- b) Technology schools use to teaching coding, robotics, and digital literacy from an early age.
- c) Schools use technology to teaching coding, robotics, and digital literacy from an early age.
- d) Schools use technology to teach coding, robotics, and digital literacy from an early age.

(D) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions below:

In many cities around the world, people are looking for new ways to travel more efficiently and reduce pollution. One growing solution is the use of electric scooters, also known as e-scooters. These small vehicles run on rechargeable batteries and are usually rented through smartphone apps. Riders can pick them up at one location and leave them at another, making short trips quicker and more convenient.

Supporters of e-scooters say they help reduce traffic and are more eco-friendly than cars. Because they use electricity instead of gasoline, they produce fewer greenhouse gases. They also make it easier for people to cover short distances without needing to drive. For instance, someone can ride an e-scooter from a bus stop to their workplace in just a few minutes.

However, critics argue that e-scooters are not always safe. Many riders do not wear helmets, and accidents can happen when scooters are used on crowded sidewalks or busy roads. In addition, the batteries must be recharged often, and collecting and charging thousands of scooters still creates environmental costs.

Overall, e-scooters are becoming a common sight in modern cities. Whether they are a perfect solution or just a temporary trend remains an open question.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main purpose of e-scooters is to
 - a) provide an efficient and eco-friendly travel option
 - b) replace all cars in large and small cities
 - c) create jobs for people charging the scooters
 - d) encourage people to walk longer distances
2. E-scooters are usually rented
 - a) through smartphone apps with location services
 - b) by visiting rental shops in shopping centers
 - c) from public transportation ticket machines
 - d) by calling special numbers for delivery
3. E-scooters are useful because they
 - a) reduce traffic and produce fewer gases
 - b) replace buses and trains in big cities
 - c) are faster than trains and airplanes
 - d) never need recharging or repair work
4. The disadvantage of e-scooters is that they
 - a) are too expensive for most travelers
 - b) may cause accidents on crowded streets
 - c) can only be used by young students
 - d) are banned in all major world cities
5. The word "eco-friendly" in the second paragraph means " ".
 - a) Safe for the environment and less polluting
 - b) Very cheap and easy for many travelers
 - c) Extremely fast and good for competitions
 - d) Highly modern and popular in rich cities
6. E-scooters still might harm the environment as
 - a) collecting and charging them uses resources
 - b) riders usually throw away old helmets
 - c) they can only be used during summer
 - d) they make people avoid walking completely
7. According to the passage, we can infer about e-scooters that
 - a) their long-term role in cities is still uncertain
 - b) they will soon replace all public transportation
 - c) they are the safest travel option available today
 - d) their popularity is already declining everywhere

(E) Writing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main purpose of the introduction in an essay is to
 - a) list references
 - b) present the topic and thesis statement
 - c) summarize the conclusion
 - d) include dialog
2. The thesis statement is usually found
 - a) at the end of the body
 - b) in the middle of the essay
 - c) at the end of the introduction
 - d) in the conclusion only
3. The function of the conclusion is to
 - a) introduce a new idea
 - b) repeat the first sentence
 - c) summarize main points and restate the thesis
 - d) list all sources
4. A well-organized essay should have
 - a) random ideas
 - b) clear transitions and logical order
 - c) only opinions
 - d) many questions
5. What is a topic sentence?
 - a) A sentence that ends the essay.
 - b) The first sentence of a body paragraph that states its main idea.
 - c) A sentence in the conclusion only.
 - d) A sentence with no purpose.
6. The main goal of a descriptive essay is to
 - a) describe a person, place, object, or experience in detail
 - b) tell a story
 - c) argue a point
 - d) give instructions
7. What should a descriptive essay include to make it vivid?
 - a) Opinions only.
 - b) Sensory details and imagery.
 - c) Only facts.
 - d) Long definitions.
8. Which comes first in a typical essay outline?
 - a) Body paragraphs.
 - b) Conclusion.
 - c) Thesis statement.
 - d) References.

9. What does "imagery" mean in writing?

- a) Pictures printed in the essay.
- b) Words that create mental pictures and sensory experiences.
- c) Drawing a map.
- d) Using bullet points.

10. An outline should be written

- a) after finishing the essay
- b) in full paragraphs
- c) only if the teacher asks
- d) before writing the first draft

11. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) I love cooking my family and my pets.
- b) I love cooking, my family, and my pets.
- c) I love cooking, my family and my pets.
- d) I love cooking my family, and my pets.

12. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated?

- a) Don't forget to bring your notebook, laptop, and charger.
- b) Don't forget to bring your notebook, laptop and, charger.
- c) Don't forget to bring your notebook laptop and charger.
- d) Don't forget, to bring your notebook, laptop, and charger.

2 Write a descriptive essay of (120-150) words on one of the following:

- a) The atmosphere of a library on a rainy day.

.....

.....

.....

- b) A memorable moment of winning a competition.

.....

.....

.....

(F) The Novel

Answer the following questions:

1. How does Santiago show dignity in the face of failure?
2. Why is the number eighty-five important for Santiago?
3. Why does Santiago call the fish his "brother"?

Unit 4

Save and Shine



Learning Outcomes

- Reading** - An article about how to go green in industry.
- Identify key details of a text about the importance of clean energy.
- Language** - Verbs + (inf. or -ing) forms.
- Listening** - A community campaign.
- Speaking** - A debate about the importance of green industry.
- Writing** - Write a formal email.

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

campaign (n) (v) (ed)	landfill (n)	مكبّ النفايات	sustainable (adj)	مستدام
حملة / يقوم بحملة				
concerns (n)	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل	swap (v) (ped)	يبادل / يقايض
اهتمامات / مخاوف				
depletion (n)	renewable (adj)	متجدد		
استهلاك / نفاذ				
eco-friendly (adj)	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	waste (n)	مخلفات
صديق للبيئة				
initiative (n)	slogan (n)	شعار		
مبادرة				

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

achieve (v) (d)	damage (v) (d) (n)	يؤذي / يدمر	harm (v) (ed)	يؤذي
يحقق				
across (adv)	describe (v) (d)	يصف	harmful (adj)	ضار
عبر				
adopt (v) (ed)	discussion (n)	مناقشة	honored (adj)	متشرف / لديه الشرف
يتبنى / يتخذ				
alternative (adj) (n)	effect (n)	تأثير	individual (n)	فرد / شخص
بديل				
amount (n)	energy (n)	طاقة	Industrial Revolution (n)	الثورة الصناعية
كمية				
approach (n)	essential (adj)	ضروري	industry (n)	صناعة
نهج / طريقة				
automobile (n)	exchange (v) (d)	يتبادل	issue (n)	قضية / موضوع
سيارة				
balance (v) (d) (n)	expand (v) (ed)	يوسع	large-scale (adj)	على نطاق واسع / ضخم
يوازن / توازن				
commitment (n)	fashionable (adj)	مساير للموضة / عصري	long-term (adj)	طويل الأجل
التزام / تعهد				
concept (n)	fight (n) (v)	حرب / يحارب	machine (n)	آلة / ماكينة
مفهوم / مصطلح				
consultant (n)	forum (n)	منتدى	major (adj)	رئيسي
مستشار / خبير				
consumer (n)	generation (n)	جيل	manufacturer (n)	صانع / مصنع
مستهلك				
convince (v) (d)	global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري	manufacturing (n)	تصنيع
يقنع				
costly (adj)	goods (n)	بضائع	material (n)	مادة خام
مكلف				

mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	plant (n)	مصنع	products (n)	منتجات
misuse (n)	إساءة استخدام	practice (v) (d) (n)	يمارس / ممارسة	profit (n)	مكسب
natural resources (n)	مصادر طبيعية	preserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على / يحفظ	promote (v) (d)	يرقي / يطور
negative (adj)	سلبي	process (n)	عملية	purpose (n)	غرض
outcome (n)	حصيلة / أثر	produce (v) (d)	ينتج	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
overuse (n)	إفراط في الاستخدام	production (n)	إنتاج	unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيها

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The environmental group chose the "Save the Earth" for their campaign.
a) slogan b) paragraph c) poem d) magazine
- Recycling helps the amount of waste around us.
a) expand b) reduce c) produce d) increase
- Factories shouldn't throw their chemical in rivers.
a) balance b) process c) waste d) landfill
- My business made a large last month. I earned a lot of money.
a) loss b) material c) profit d) tax
- The company aims to eco-friendly products using sustainable materials.
a) produce b) practice c) misuse d) harm
- The couple decided to an orphan child as their own.
a) teach b) adapt c) protect d) adopt
- Environmental problems increase when people natural resources.
a) promote b) overuse c) mention d) preserve
- Solar energy is a power source that can provide the world with electricity.
a) renewable b) wasteful c) balanced d) costly

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at a time	في المرة الواحدة	fight against	يحارب ضد	on social media	على وسائل التواصل
climate change	التغير المناخي	for this reason	لهذا السبب	play a role in	يلعب دورًا في
cost money	يكلف مالا	go green	اعتماد ممارسات صديقة للبيئة	refer to	يشير إلى
cut down costs	يقلل التكاليف	green practices	ممارسات للحفاظ على البيئة	start a campaign	يبدأ حملة
cut down	يقلل / يخفض	I'm honored to be here	إنه لشرف لي أن أكون هنا	throw away	يرمي بعيدًا / يتخلص من
effect on	تأثير على	in two ways	بطريقتين	transform ... into	يحول ... إلى
environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	made from	مصنوع من	widely used	يستخدم على نطاق واسع
exchange ... for	يبدل بـ	make changes	يجري تغييرات	work to	يعمل من أجل

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
deplete	يستنزف / يستنزف	depletion	نفاذ / استنزاف	depleted	مستهلك / مستنزف
renew	يجدد	renewal	تجديد	renewable	متجدد
reduce	يقلل	reduction	نقص / تقليل	reduced	منقوص
waste	يضيع	waste	فضلات	wasteful	مبذر
sustain	يدوم	sustainability	الاستدامة	sustainable	مستدام
initiate	يبدأ	initiative	مبادرة	initial/initiative	أولي / تمهيدى
pollute	يلوث	pollution pollutant	تلوث مادة ملوثة	polluted polluting	ملوث (اسم مفعول) ملوث (اسم فاعل)
profit	يربح	profit/profitability	ربح / مكسب	profitable	مربح / مثمر
consult	يستشير	consultation/consultant	استشارة / مستشار	consulting	استشارى
affect	يؤثر	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
preserve	يحفظ	preservation preservative	حفظ مادة حافظة	preserved	محفوظ / محمي

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Factories **deplete** natural resources faster than they can be replaced. (v)

The **depletion** of the ozone layer is a serious issue. (n)

The soil became **depleted** after years of overfarming. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
renewable	متجدد	sustainable/inexhaustible/ replaceable		nonrenewable/finite	غير متجدد / محدود
reduce	يقلل	lessen/decrease		increase/expand	يزيد / يتمدد
waste	يساء استخدام	misuse/drain		conserve/save	يحفظ
sustainable	مستدام	durable/continuous/ lasting		temporary/wasteful	ضار / مدمر
production	إنتاج	creation/manufacturing		destruction/reduction	تدمير / نقص
pollution	تلوث	contamination/dirtiness		cleanliness/purity	نظافة / نقاء
profit	مكسب	gain/earnings		loss/debt	خسارة / دين
harm	ضرر	damage/injury		protection/benefit	حماية / فائدة
consultant	مستشار	advisor/expert		amateur/beginner	هاوي / مبتدئ
effect	تأثير	impact/influence		cause/source	سبب / مصدر
depletion	نفاذ	exhaustion/reduction		increase/growth	زيادة / نمو

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We need to cut on the number of plastic bags we use.
a) away b) down c) over d) off
- This educational application is widely by students all over the world.
a) made b) done c) used d) changed
- The company had to some changes to improve its customer service.
a) take b) make c) go d) sit
- Smoking has a very bad on our health.
a) effect b) mark c) rule d) benefit

5. We all should cooperate to help increase our factory's of cars this year.
 a) produce b) production c) productive d) prediction
6. My mother always tells us that leaving the lights on all night is
 a) helpful b) economical c) powerful d) wasteful
7. The new law will help to reduce air pollution. The synonym of "reduce" is
 a) increase b) misuse c) decrease d) damage
8. Eating too much junk food may do harm to your health. The antonym of "harm" is
 a) benefit b) damage c) usage d) dirtiness

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم اجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

After many years since the Industrial Revolution and the misuse of technology, the large-scale production of machines and automobiles has had harmful effects on the environment. These technologies have mainly caused damage in two ways; through air and water pollution, and through the overuse of natural resources. For this reason, environmental concerns have become a major issue across all industries.

Why green?

Green is more than just a color. "Going green" means making changes in the way individuals, organizations, and societies live and work so that their actions are more environmentally friendly. Today, "Go Green" has become a widely used slogan in industry. Green manufacturing refers to producing goods in ways that do not harm the environment and that help preserve natural resources for future generations.

The concept of "green manufacturing" can be understood in two ways. First, it means producing environmentally friendly products by using renewable energy and clean technologies. Second, it refers to making the manufacturing process itself greener, reducing pollution and waste by cutting down on resource use, recycling, and reusing materials. This approach helps slow the depletion of natural resources and reduces the amount of waste going into landfills. Both manufacturers and consumers play a role in the fight against climate change, and building a sustainable future is essential. While the process may be costly and require strong commitment, many companies have already taken the initiative to adopt green practices.

One negative outcome of the Industrial Revolution is global warming, which has become a major topic of discussion in international forums and on social media. This is why many manufacturers are now working to transform their factories into eco-friendly production plants.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The Industrial Revolution caused harm to the environment mainly through
 - a) the use of renewable energy
 - b) air and water pollution
 - c) recycling and reusing materials
 - d) eco-friendly production
2. "Going green" means
 - a) making environmentally friendly changes
 - b) painting factories green
 - c) producing more vehicles
 - d) avoiding the use of technology
3. Green manufacturing can be understood in two ways: by producing eco-friendly products and by
 - a) increasing waste in landfills
 - b) making the process itself greener
 - c) using more natural resources
 - d) focusing only on profits
4. One negative outcome of the Industrial Revolution is
 - a) increased recycling
 - b) global warming
 - c) renewable energy use
 - d) sustainable development

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Good evening, everyone, my name is Ahmed and I'm honored to be here today. Last year, I wanted to do something that would help both our community and our environment. I noticed that many shops used a lot of plastic bags, which cost money and were often thrown away after just one use.

So, I started a campaign called "One Bag at a Time". My idea was simple, encourage shops to offer reusable cloth bags instead of plastic ones. I visited shop owners, explained how this would save them money, reduce waste, and keep our neighborhood cleaner. To make it fun, I organized a bag swap day, where customers could exchange their old plastic bags for free cloth bags. Families loved the idea, and soon more shops joined in. Today, more than half of the shops in our area have reduced their plastic use.

We've saved hundreds of bags, cut down costs, and inspired others to make small changes that protect our planet.

Definitions

depletion	نفاذ / استنزاف	the gradual use or reduction of natural resources, energy, or materials until there is little or none left
renewable	متجدد	a type of resource or energy that can be replaced naturally and used again (like wind or solar power)
sustainable	مستدام	something that can be maintained over time without causing damage to the environment or running out of resources
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	not harmful to the environment; good for nature and helps protect the planet
initiative	مبادرة	a new plan, idea, or action started to solve a problem or improve a situation
landfill	مكب للنفايات	a place where large amounts of waste and garbage are buried under the ground
slogan	شعار	a short, catchy phrase used in advertising or campaigns to deliver a message or idea
concerns	اهتمامات	worries or things people are anxious or nervous about, especially related to problems or risks
swap	يبادل	to exchange one thing for another
Go Green	اعتماد ممارسات صديقة للبيئة	make changes in the way individuals, organizations, and societies live and work so that their actions are more environmentally friendly
green manufacturing	تصنيع صديق للبيئة	producing environmentally friendly products by using renewable energy and clean technologies

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

effect

اسم بمعنى تأثير عادة في السياق الرسمي ويشير إلى النتيجة

The new law had a positive **effect** on education system.

1 impact

تأثير قوي أو مفاجئ (سواء كان سلبياً أو إيجابياً)

- The **impact** of the fire was serious.
- The earthquake **impacted** the city seriously.

affect

فعل بمعنى يؤثر على ولا يأتي بعده حرف جر

The new law had **affected** the education system positively.

machine

آلة/ماكينة (تقوم بعمل تلقائي أو معقد)
كبيرة حجمًا

A washing **machine** is used to clean clothes.

tool

أداة صغيرة يدوية للقيام بعمل معين (النجار
- السباك - الهنا - الميكانيكي - الصيانة)

A hammer is a **tool** used for driving nails.

device

جهاز صغير يحتوي على مكونات تقنية
(تكنولوجيا - إلكترونيات)

A smartphone is a communication **device**.

instrument

جهاز دقيق للقياس والفحص والموسيقى
(الطبيب - العالم - الموسيقار - الطياران)

- The violin is a musical **instrument**.
- A thermometer is a medical **instrument**.

adopt يتبنى (طفلًا/فكرة/أسلوبًا)

Many schools have **adopted** new teaching methods.

adapt + (to)

يتكيف/يُعدّل شيئًا ليتناسب مع وضع جديد

She had to **adapt to** the cold weather in Canada.

approach

(طريقة الشخص في التعامل مع موقف أو
مشكلة أو شخص) نهج/أسلوب

We need a different **approach** to solve this issue.

method

طريقة/تقنية (منظمة ومجربة لعمل شيء
مثل تجربة علمية أو تقنية تعليمية)

There are several **methods** for solving this math problem.

discussion

مناقشة (تبادل للأفكار ولموضوع معين
وغالبًا بهدف حل مشكلة أو اتخاذ قرار)

We had a serious **discussion** about our future.

chat

دردشة (كلام عفوى غير رسمي بين
شخصين أو أكثر عادة في وقت فراغ)

She's **chatting** with her friend online.

conversation

محادثة (ممكّن تكون رسمية أو غير رسمية
وتدور حول أي موضوع)

I had a nice **conversation** with my neighbor.

debate

مناظرة/جدال (مواجهة لفظية بين وجهتي نظر
مختلفتين وكل طرف يحاول إثبات صحة رأيه)

They got into a heated **debate** about politics.

عملية أو نشاط تؤدي إلى نتيجة ولها خطوات منطقية

The **process** of getting a suitable job often takes time.

میکانیکی - وظیفی - جراحی)

The doctor performed a successful heart operation.

3

▶ **1. A/An** is a new plan, idea, or action started to solve a problem or improve a situation.

- 1.** Improve
a) idea
c) initiative
- 2.** Pollution may our health seriously.
a) adopt
c) impact
- 3.** This smart allows you to control your lights using your phone.
a) machine
c) instrument
- 4.** Learning a new language is a long that requires practice.
a) process
~~c) result~~
- 5.** The meeting included a on ways to improve education.
a) discussion
c) decision
- 6.** Lack of sleep can badly your concentration تركيز.
a) affect
c) effective
- 7.** The sewing helped her finish the dress in short time.
a) tool
c) instrument
- b) symbol
d) slogan
b) adapt
d) affect
b) device
d) program
b) method
d) operation
b) chat
d) reply
b) effect
d) affection
b) device
d) machine

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The government announced an environmental to plant more trees.
a) production b) initiative c) introduction d) fashion
2. Wind and water are both examples of energy.
a) renewable b) non-renewable c) harmful d) man-made
3. I offered the girl sitting behind me to seats, so she could see well.
a) describe b) swap c) balance d) charge
4. The of our natural resources is a major concern for future generations.
a) pollution b) control c) depletion d) use
5. Many famous shops sell bags to reduce plastic waste.
a) essential b) reusable c) harmful d) costly
6. Parents should encourage their children to buy products that don't harm nature.
a) dirty b) eco-friendly c) plastic d) expensive
7. The government helps farmers use methods that save soil quality.
a) sustainable b) traditional c) limited d) polluted
8. The tourist is one of the most important sources of our national income.
a) system b) trade c) industry d) machinery
9. The overuse of natural like forests and water can lead to long-term damage.
a) resources b) energy c) finance d) commitments
10. We think that the new is more concerned about the environment.
a) alternative b) transformation c) products d) generation
11. A good teacher is the one whose teaching focuses on student participation.
a) way b) approach c) system d) habit
12. Efforts to endangered species of animals and plants are increasing worldwide.
a) grow b) create c) reverse d) preserve
13. The science teacher explained the of gravity.
a) rule b) tool c) concept d) object
14. During the Industrial, factories became more common.
a) Revolution b) Approach c) Operation d) Evolution
15. As a marketing, Emy gives advice to companies to build strong brands and increase their sales.
a) consultant b) employee c) trainee d) designer

- ▶ 16. A thermometer is a medical used to measure body temperature.
 a) tool b) instrument c) machinery d) machine
17. The company is investing in projects that will benefit future generations.
 a) long-term b) quick c) brief d) late
18. Photosynthesis البناء الضوئي is the plants use to make food from sunlight.
 a) function b) operation c) method d) process

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. Some countries burn waste to produce energy instead of sending it to a
 a) landslide b) landfill c) platform d) farmland
20. We should use products to protect the planet where we live.
 a) environmental friendly b) harmful
 c) environmentally friendly d) large-scale
21. Social media pages play a in shaping public opinion.
 a) role b) rule c) game d) roll
22. We must all work together and fight pollution to save the Earth.
 a) with b) against c) from d) at
23. She felt deeply to receive the award from the president.
 a) honored b) worried c) ignored d) tired
24. Many people now plastic bags for reusable ones.
 a) produce b) exchange c) throw d) trade
25. Some people avoid eating canned معلب food as they contain some harmful
 a) preservatives b) preserve c) preservations d) preserved

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. The new law had a strong on pollution levels.
 a) impact b) reason c) effect d) mistake e) cause
27. I made a lot of profit last year. The antonyms of "profit" are
 a) loss b) benefit c) income d) debt e) success
28. Teachers should teach their students that they mustn't waste their time.
 The synonyms of "waste" are
 a) conserve b) save c) expand d) squander e) misuse
29. Cutting down many trees leads to forest depletion. The word "depletion" gives the same meaning as
 a) increase b) exhaustion c) growth d) reduction e) reflection
30. The company hired a/an to give expert advice on environmental issues.
 a) consultant b) bully c) employee d) driver e) advisor

1 Verbs followed by (-ing form)

١- أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً إليه **ing** ومنها:

admit (to)	يعترف بـ	involve	يشمل / يتضمن	recommend	يوصي بـ
avoid	يتجنب	resist	يقاوم	fancy	يتخيل (تستخدم للدهشة)
suggest	يقترح	risk	يخاطر	delay	يؤجل
practise	يمارس	postpone	يؤجل	prevent	يمنع
consider	يعتبر / يفكر	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	escape	يهرب
mind	يمنع	finish	ينهي	forgive	يسامح
imagine	يتخيل	deny	ينكر	miss	يفتقد
understand	يفهم	go	يذهب	dislike	يكره
keep	يبقى	practice	يتدرب / يمارس		

Examples

The criminal **admitted (to) committing** the crime.

He **enjoys meeting** people from other cultures.

My brother **suggested spending** the weekend on the beach.

2 Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

٢- أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً إليه **to + inf.** ومنها :

decide	يقرر	wish	يتمنى	need	يحتاج
agree	يوافق	swear	يقسم	prepare	يجهز / يعد
promise	يعد	determine	يصمم	attempt	يحاول
hope	يأمل	fail	يفشل	prove	يثبت
plan	يخطط	expect	يتوقع	neglect	يهمل
manage	يتمكن	threaten	يهدد	can't afford	لا يتحمل
refuse	يرفض	arrange	يرتب	deserve	يستحق
seem	يبدو	offer	يعرض	choose	يختار
want	يريد	expect	يتوقع	afford	يتحمل نفقة
need	يحتاج	offer	يعرض		

Examples

I have **decided to play** a match with my friends.

He asked me for some money, but I **refused to give** him any.

Do you **want to come** with me to the party?

Ali **proved to be** the cleverest in the class.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rania offered us do the washing up.
 a) to be helped b) helping c) to help d) help
2. We're planning to Europe for our holiday next year.
 a) flying b) to fly c) fly d) to flying
3. Do you mind some photos of your wedding on Facebook?
 a) sharing b) to share c) in sharing d) to sharing
4. Do you fancy on a day trip to Alexandria next week?
 a) to come b) come c) to coming d) coming
5. I dislike away from my family for a long time.
 a) to be b) to being c) be d) being

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He mustn't repeat those mistakes. (avoid)
 2. Ali dislikes learning foreign languages. (doesn't want)
 3. Amr succeeded in passing his exams last week. (managed)
 4. The boy said that he broke the pen. (breaking)

3 Verbs followed by (object + to + inf.)

٣- أفعال يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم الفعل مضافاً إليه **to + inf.** ومنها :

advise	ينصح	permit	يسمح	tell	يخبر
recommend	يوصي بـ	instruct	يعلم/ يخبر	order	يأمر
expect	يتوقع	ask	يطلب	warn	يحذر
encourage	يشجع	persuade	يقنع	teach	يعلم
force	يجبر	allow	يسمح	remind	يذكر
invite	يدعو	promise	يوعد	request	يطلب

Examples

He **advised me to study** and revise regularly.
 I managed to **persuade my wife not to travel** alone.
 Parents **encourage their children to be** good citizens.

لاحظ إذا لم يأت بعد هذه الأفعال مفعول يأتي بعدها (v-ing).

(advise – recommend – encourage – allow – permit + (v-ing))

Examples

He doesn't **allow smoking** in his office.

I often **encourage playing** football on Fridays.

The doctor **recommends doing** sports three times a week.

4 Expressions followed by (-ing form)

٤- تعبيرات يأتي بعدها الفعل مضارعاً إليه ing ومنها:

feel like	يرغب في	can't stop	لا يستطيع التوقف	(have) difficulty (in)	لديه صعوبة في
It's worth	يستحق	What/How about ...?	ما رأيك؟ (اقتراح)	(be) busy	مشغول
can't help	لا يستطيع التوقف عن	It's no good	ليس من الصالح	(have) fun	يمرح
can't stand	لا يستطيع تحمل	It's no use	لا فائدة من	succeed in	ينجح في

Examples

This movie **is worth watching** more than once.

My mother **has difficulty (in) climbing** up and down the stairs.

It's no use eating fast food.

5 Expressions followed by (to + v-ing)

٥- تعبيرات يأتي بعدها الفعل مسبوقاً بـ to ومضارعاً إليه ing ومنها:

look forward to	يتطلع إلى	(be) exposed to	معرض لـ	take to	يعتاد على
object to	يعترض على	own up to	يعترف بـ	owing to	بسبب
contribute to	يساهم في	(be) used to	معتاد على	prefer (v-ing) to (v-ing) يفضل ... عن	
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	(be) accustomed to	معتاد على		

Examples

We **look forward to living** on a remote island.

All people **object to using** horns late at night.

Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- [illegible]

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I look forward to see my old friends. (.....)
2. I don't mind to wait for you. (.....)
3. At last, the thief admitted stole the money. (.....)
4. Salma reminded me to calling the doctor. (.....)
5. I prefer studying to watch TV. (.....)



تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The girl decided a new dress before attending the party.
a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) buy
2. Ahmed avoided his old friends at the wedding yesterday.
a) meet b) to meet c) to meeting d) meeting
3. The teacher threatened students who didn't do the homework.
a) punish b) punishing c) to punish d) to be punished
4. The old man denied my money last week.
a) steal b) to steal c) stealing d) to stealing
5. Menna hopes the Faculty of Medicine one day.
a) to join b) joining c) joins d) to joining
6. Maged suggested to the club today.
a) goes b) go c) going d) to go
7. Ashraf was laughing out loud. He seemed over the moon.
a) to be b) being c) to being d) be
8. When you finish the report, send it to the manager.
a) writing b) write c) to write d) to writing
9. They couldn't afford the house at that high price.
a) buy b) to buy c) buying d) to buying
10. My son admitted his time on social media before the exam.
a) to waste b) wasting c) of wasting d) both a & b
11. The manager arranged some of the workers to know their problems.
a) to meet b) meeting c) to meeting d) meet
12. I can't stand around doing nothing.
a) sit b) sitting c) to sit d) to sitting
13. Possibly, I might infected because all my family are sick.
a) got b) for getting c) get d) getting
14. I think this nice story is worth It is written in a clear, simple language.
a) to read b) to reading c) reading d) read
15. Hala agreed to her younger sister.
a) apologize b) to apologize
c) apologizing d) to apologizing

- ▶ **16.** The little girl has her mother that she will never lie again ever.
 a) wanted b) enjoyed c) decided d) promised
- 17.** It is a holiday tomorrow, so we could go together.
 a) sailing b) to sailing c) to sail d) sail
- 18.** Mom will enjoy with us in the same flat. She hates living alone.
 a) being b) to be c) to being d) a & b
- 19.** Many people in our town objected the new bridge.
 a) to build b) to building c) build d) building
- 20.** What a hot day! I feel like for a swim.
 a) go b) going c) to go d) to going
- 21.** Alaa couldn't stop exercise although his back hurt.
 a) do b) to do c) doing d) in doing
- 22.** The salesman taking the money from me. He said he hadn't taken it.
 a) wanted b) refused c) denied d) admitted
- 23.** attending all of today's meetings, I also finished my tasks.
 a) In addition to b) In addition c) Addition to d) Addition
- 24.** My father allowed me out with my friends every weekend.
 a) going b) go c) to go d) to going
- 25.** My father always allows our friends using his phone.
 a) phoning b) to phone c) to phoning d) phone
- 26.** Which of the following sentences is INCORRECT?
 a) My father suggested leaving his new job.
 b) I don't really enjoy going to the Opera.
 c) She accused her neighbour of stealing her money.
 d) He objected to visit that frightening place again.
- 27.** Which of the following sentences is CORRECT?
 a) I promised helping her with her problems.
 b) She agreed bringing her new laptop with her.
 c) I recommend taking the train to Aswan.
 d) I don't mind to watch this movie again.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. You mustn't mix with bad people.
2. Huda prefers to play video games.
3. I hope to see you tomorrow.
4. I let Taher use my digital camera.

(... avoid ...)
 (Huda enjoys ...)
 (I look forward ...)
 (I allowed ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Countries around the world are working together to slow down the effects of warming on Earth.
a) local b) global c) community d) industrial
2. Getting a good job good communication skills.
a) requires b) acquires c) reduces d) damages
3. This machine can thousands of bottles every hour.
a) deplete b) convince c) produce d) achieve
4. Educating people about is the key to protecting the environment.
a) discussion b) destruction c) cycling d) recycling
5. Saving is one of the main goals of modern technology.
a) media b) energy c) production d) generation
6. The factory uses eco-friendly to make packaging.
a) materials b) structures c) machines d) containers
7. The government launched a campaign to reduce pollution across the country; it will last for so many years.
a) limited b) large-scale c) short-scale d) hidden
8. Most household waste ends up in
a) factories b) landfills c) plants d) warehouses
9. The fast of groundwater المياه الجوفية threatens agriculture in many areas.
a) depletion b) production c) storage d) manufacturing
10. Modern are designed to use developed technology to reduce pollution.
a) parks b) materials c) plants d) engineers
11. The doctor suggested a/an treatment to avoid surgery.
a) new b) old c) alternative d) harmful
12. It's important to between work and rest to keep healthy.
a) preserve b) overuse c) balance d) reduce
13. China is considered a leading country in the of electronics.
a) discovery b) recycling c) manufacturing d) installation
14. The of drinking water can lead to a serious water shortage problem.
a) use b) misuse c) reuse d) control
15. Operating these types of heavy requires special training.
a) tools b) machines c) devices d) techniques

Language

16. Ramy promised me to finish my school project.
 a) helps b) help c) helping d) to help
17. My brother suggests the weekend on the beach.
 a) spends b) spending c) spend d) to spend
18. These tourists enjoy people from other cultures.
 a) meet b) meeting c) to meet d) meets
19. Would you like the summer vacation with us in Port Said?
 a) to spending b) spend c) to spend d) spending
20. I really hate alone.
 a) to living b) lives c) live d) living
21. If I were you, I would avoid into the city during the festival.
 a) to traveling b) travel c) to travel d) traveling
22. My closest friend refused anyone information about where I lived.
 a) give b) to give c) giving d) to giving
23. I didn't finish my homework until 10 o'clock last night.
 a) do b) to do c) doing d) to doing
24. I prefer in the new capital as it is modern.
 a) to living b) live c) lives d) living
25. We are planning to Alexandria next summer.
 a) to go b) going c) to going d) go
26. My uncle stopped football after he hurt his leg.
 a) to play b) play c) playing d) to playing
27. I hope a new car soon.
 a) to buy b) buying c) to buying d) will buy
28. We going anywhere with our car during rush hour.
 a) prefer b) wouldn't like to c) fail d) avoid
29. We owe much to those who contribute the environment clean.
 a) in keeping b) to keep c) to keeping d) will keep
30. Taher is very kind; he always to help his friends when they are in trouble.
 a) refuses b) offers c) minds d) considers



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

assembly (n)	مؤتمر/اجتماع	leak (n) (v) (ed)	تسرب / يسرب	record (v) (ed)	يسجل
drip (n)	قطرة (مياه)	mission (n)	مهمة / مأمورية / بعثة	survey (n) (v) (ed)	
impact (n)	تأثير / يؤثر على	observations (n)	ملاحظات		استطلاع رأي / يستطلع

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

active (adj)	نشط / نشيط	fix (v) (ed)	يصلح	prove (v) (d)	يثبت
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	fountain (n)	نافورة	public spaces (n)	الأمكان العامة
bathroom (n)	الحمام	ignore (v) (d)	يهمل / يتجاهل	rainwater (n)	مياه الأمطار
bright (adj)	مشرق / مضيء / لامع	include (v) (d)	يتضمن	research (n)	بحث (علمي)
busy (adj)	مشغول (شخص / مكان)	inspire (v) (d)	يلهم	rest (n)	بقية / استراحة
carry (v) (ied)	يحمل	junk food (n)	طعام جاهز / سريع	result (n)	نتيجة
chart (n)	رسم بياني / خريطة	leave (v)	يترك / يغادر	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد الاستخدام
check (v) (ed)	يفحص / يتأكد	notebook (n)	مفكرة / مذكرة	science lab (n)	معمل العلوم
cleaner (n)	المنظف / عامل نظافة	notice (v) (d) (n)	يلاحظ / ملاحظة	sink (n)	حوض
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	observation (n)	ملاحظة / متابعة	sources (n)	مصادر
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	observe (v) (d)	يلاحظ / يراقب	special (adj)	خاص / مميز
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل / بالكامل	paper cup (n)	كوب ورقي	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
create (v) (d)	يخلق / يبتكر	planet (n)	كوكب	tap (n)	حنفية / صنبور
cycle (v) (d)	يركب دراجة	plastic (n)	البلاستيك	tiny (adj)	ضئيل
Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفل	playground (n)	ملعب	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / متفرد
finding (n)	نتيجة / اكتشاف	present (v) (ed)	يقدم	unplug (v) (ged)	يسحب / يفصل القابس (الفيشة)

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The sound of the from the tap kept me awake all night.
a) lakes b) drips c) rings d) records
- The school did a to collect students' opinions on its system.
a) test b) chart c) survey d) report
- Scientists must make careful during experiments to get good results.
a) observations b) missions c) drawings d) sources
- Ali asked me to the lecture for him in order to listen to it later.
a) impact b) record c) copy d) prove
- My father is very and plays football every day.
a) complete b) busy c) active d) tired
- The director asked the secretary to data about the projects.
a) ignore b) fill c) collect d) prevent

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a greener future مستقبل خالي من التلوث	do/conduct a survey يجري مسحاً	result in يؤدي إلى
for the first time لأول مرة	a day يومياً/ في اليوم	the result of نتيجة لـ
free time وقت الفراغ	turn off يفصل/ يطفئ	write down يدون
taps were left running تركت الحنفيات مفتوحة	turn on يشغل/ يضيء	do research يجري بحثاً
help save water يساعد في الحفاظ على المياه	instead of بدلاً من	play a part in يساهم في/ يلعب دوراً في
work together يعمل معاً	In addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك	
active group مجموعه نشطة	result from ينتج من	

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
drip يقطر	drip	dripping مبتل جداً
survey يستطلع/ يفحص	survey surveyor استطلاع/ مسح مراقب/ مساح	surveyable قابل للمسح
observe يلاحظ	observation observer ملاحظة مراقب	observant قوى الملاحظة / منتبه / ملتزم

record	يسجل	record	سجل / تسجيل	recorded	مسجل
activate	يفعل / ينشط	activity	نشاط	active	نشط
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعي
create	يخلق / يبدع	creation creator creature	خلق / إبداع خالق مخلوق	creative	مبدع
include	يضم / يحتوي	inclusion	إدراج	inclusive	شامل
brighten	ينير / يشرق	brightness	إشراق / سطوع	bright	مشرق
leak	يسرب / يتسرب	leak	تسرب	leaky	غير محكم

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The factory **created** some jobs for the village people. (v)

The factory helped in the **creation** of some jobs for the village people. (n)

My daughter is very **creative** in making up stories. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
observation	ملاحظة / مراقبة	monitoring/examination		neglect/ignorance	إهمال / جهل
active	نشط	energetic/lively		lazy/inactive	كسول / غير نشيط
collect	يجمع	gather/assemble		scatter/lose	يتبعثر / يفقد
include	يحتوي	contain/involve		exclude/omit	يستبعد / ي حذف
bright	مشرق / ذكي	shiny/intelligent		dull/dark	ممل / مظلم
leak	يسرب / ينقط	drip/escape		seal/block	سدادة / سد
impact	تأثير	effect/influence		cause/origin/source	سبب / أصل / مصدر
avoid	يتجنب	evade/escape		face/confront	يواجه

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We waste a lot of water when we leave taps
 a) turning b) running c) active d) stopped
2. During our time, we enjoy listening to soft music.
 a) free b) close c) busy d) class
3. One should apologize blaming others for their mistakes.
 a) instead b) because of c) instead of d) however
4. The detective was very and noticed the smallest details.
 a) observe b) observant c) observation d) observes
5. Students must choose at least one outdoor this year.
 a) activity b) active c) actively d) activate
6. To stay safe online, it's important to avoid sharing personal details. The antonym of "avoid" is ".....".
 a) consider b) gather c) escape d) confront
7. Ali's duties as a teacher include planning lessons and evaluating students. The synonym of "include" is ".....".
 a) exclude b) involve c) separate d) improve

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

In a bright and busy classroom, the students were discussing ways to help their community and protect the environment. Their teacher suggested forming special teams, each with a unique mission. One of the most active groups was called "The Water Team".

The Water Team's mission was simple but important: to survey the school's water sources. This included taps in the bathrooms, sinks in the science lab, and the water fountains in the playground. Their first task was to check for any drips or leaks. Even a small leak can waste many liters of water each day, so finding and fixing them would make a big difference.

The students also observed how water was used during the day. They noticed that some taps were left running while students washed their hands or filled bottles. They recorded these observations carefully in a notebook.

After two weeks of research, The Water Team presented their findings at the school assembly. They shared photos, charts, and ideas for saving water, such as turning off taps completely and using water bottles instead of paper cups.

Their work inspired other classes to start saving water, too. It proved that even small changes, when done by many people, can have a big impact on the community and the planet.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. What was the main mission of "The Water Team"?
 - a) To plant trees around the school.
 - b) To check the school's water sources.
 - c) To clean the science lab.
 - d) To collect rainwater.
2. Which of these was NOT part of their survey?
 - a) Bathroom taps.
 - b) Playground water fountains.
 - c) Science lab sinks.
 - d) Classroom chairs.
3. Why is fixing small leaks important?
 - a) It saves paper cups.
 - b) It prevents wasting large amounts of water.
 - c) It makes the taps look better.
 - d) It cleans the school.
4. How long did "The Water Team" collect their observations?
 - a) One day.
 - b) One week.
 - c) Two weeks.
 - d) One month.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Keeping our environment clean is one of the most important responsibilities for people today. Protecting nature means learning how to live without causing serious harm to the world around us. By practicing recycling, reducing waste, and reusing products, we can all play a part in building a healthier planet.

One of the best ways to help is to stop using much plastic. Carrying a reusable bag and bringing your own water bottle are simple actions that make a big difference. Another useful habit is turning off lights when leaving a room, and unplugging devices that are not in use.

Saving energy helps reduce pollution, and keeps resources from running out too quickly. In addition, we need to plant more trees, and to clean public spaces regularly. Planting trees gives us fresh air, and cleaning our streets and parks makes our communities safer and more beautiful.

We should also encourage people to walk or cycle, and avoid driving everywhere. By working together, and choosing to take small actions every day, we can create a cleaner, greener, and more sustainable future.

Definitions

survey	استطلاع رأى	a set of questions used to collect information about people's opinions or behavior
observation	ملاحظة	careful watching and noting of something in order to gain information
drip	قطرة (مياه)	a small drop of liquid falling slowly
mission	مهمة	a special task or job that someone is sent to do
impact	تأثير	a strong effect or influence that something has
assembly	مؤتمر/اجتماع	a group of people gathered for a particular purpose, or the act of putting parts together
leak	تسرب	a hole or crack through which liquid or gas escapes

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

mission

مهمة كبيرة/بعثة (طويلة الأمد)

The rescue **mission** lasted for two days.

task

مهمة صغيرة/عمل محدد منتظم

Cleaning the classroom was a difficult **task**.

2

survey

استطلاع
(أسئلة تطرح للتعرف على آراء الناس أو سلوكهم)

The students conduct a **survey** in their school.

research

بحث علمي أو دراسة

The scientist is doing **research** on renewable energy.

search

يبحث/بحث (محاولة إيجاد شيء)

- She **searched** the internet for a good recipe.
- Rescuers are continuing their **search** for survivors of the crash.

3

special

مميز (له قيمة/أهمية)

Today is a **special** day for our family.

private

خاص/شخصي (معلومات/ممتلكات)

We have a **private** garden around our villa.

include

يشمل (قبلها الكل وبعدها الجزء)

The book **includes** several **chapters**.**4****contain**

يحتوي على شيء بداخله

The box **contains** old books and photos.**consist of**

يتكون من أجزاء / يشتمل على

The committee **consists of** ten members.**leak**

تسريب / ثقب يتسرب منه شيء ما (سائل / غاز / معلومة)

There is a **leak** in the roof. Water is coming in when it rains.**5****hole**

فتحة (على سطح)

The mouse ran through a **hole** in the wall.**space**

فراغ (بين شيئين)

Please leave some **space** on the shelf for the new books.**Vocabulary Checkpoint 3****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- A set of questions used to collect information about people's opinions or behavior is called a/an
a) search b) research c) assembly d) survey
- Mom made a/an cake for my birthday party.
a) private b) special c) individual d) careful
- Finishing this group project is an important for the final grade.
a) mission b) task c) lesson d) test
- She did a lot of before writing her final report.
a) leak b) search c) practice d) research
- This bottle one liter of water, so take it on the trip with you.
a) consists b) contains c) falls d) includes
- A/An means the powerful effect that something has on somebody or something.
a) impact b) assembly c) leak d) result
- Beware of the in the road – it could damage your car.
a) hole b) space c) leak d) gap
- Someone caused a of secret information to the press.
a) hole b) space c) leak d) gap

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

- The price of the room breakfast and dinner.
a) contains b) drips c) includes d) consists
- A pipe was broken and its made the floor wet.
a) result b) leak c) luck d) survey
- You should fix the tap before the slow fills the sink.
a) waste b) drip c) wave d) drain
- According to a recent, most young people prefer spending time on the internet alone.
a) record b) law c) survey d) mission
- Even in her old age, my grandma remained mentally by reading a lot.
a) silent b) active c) lazy d) aggressive
- If there's a gas in the building, you must leave immediately and call emergency services.
a) drop b) leak c) mission d) drip
- Scientists wrote down their while studying the behavior of wild animals.
a) missions b) observations c) records d) assemblies
- The astronaut's was to collect samples from the surface of the moon.
a) mission b) task c) competition d) result
- The school held a morning to announce the winners of the competition.
a) findings b) mission c) assembly d) observation
- This gift is for me because it's from my father who died a long time ago.
a) public b) special c) dull d) useless
- My mom asked me to wash the dishes in the
a) sink b) shelf c) pot d) oven
- The teacher used some stories to students to work hard and believe in themselves.
a) confuse b) inspire c) punish d) ignore
- Many students trained for weeks to share in the science and present their projects.
a) completion b) combination c) competition d) compilation
- The of the research were amazing and could help in developing new treatments.
a) skills b) actions c) findings d) reasons
- She always carries a small in her bag to write down any ideas that come to her.
a) calendar b) notebook c) magazine d) folder

16. The restaurant was so that we had to wait for a table to be available.
 a) filled b) cheap c) large d) busy
17. Before we can make a good decision, we must that the plan will actually work.
 a) imagine b) prove c) improve d) forget
18. The technician said it would take an hour to the broken computer.
 a) delete b) fix c) shut d) fit
19. You should always the expiry date on food products before buying them.
 a) check b) ignore c) delete d) change
20. The actor refused to answer the question, saying it was a matter.
 a) general b) private c) special d) public



Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. The damage to the building resulted the earthquake that occurred last night.
 a) from b) through c) in d) of
22. Ignoring traffic rules results most road accidents.
 a) from b) by c) on d) in
23. To complete the project successfully, all team members need to work effectively.
 a) separately b) together c) lazily d) individually
24. Please the lights when you leave the room to save electricity.
 a) turn off b) set up c) open up d) keep on
25. A team of scientists is research on climate change in the Arctic.
 a) doing b) making c) acting d) proving
26. The advertising company is looking for a person who can come up with fresh and original ideas.
 a) creative b) create c) creator d) creation

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. The trip will include a visit to the museum. The synonyms of "include" are
 a) contain b) exclude c) omit d) involve e) increase
28. My grandfather is still very active at the age of 70. The antonyms of "active" are
 a) lazy b) energetic c) tired d) inactive e) lively
29. We need to fix the leak in the pipe immediately. The opposites of "leak" are
 a) block b) escape c) exclude d) seal e) drip
30. Sara was asked to a survey for her company to get people's opinions on their new system.
 a) make b) do c) play d) conduct e) operate

B

Language



Important Notes

(١) أفعال يأتي بعدها بـ **-ing** أو **to + inf.** دون تغيير في المعنى:

like	يحب	love	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل
start	يبدأ	begin	يبدأ
continue	يستمر	intend	ينوي

Examples

I **like to** play football. = I **like playing** football.

He **started to study** English. = He **started studying** English.

لاحظ

١- عند وجود كلمة **would** أو اختصارها **'d** قبل الأفعال السابقة لا بد أن يأتي بعدها **(to + inf.)**.

I'd like/hate/prefer/love **to go** to school early.

٢- إذا كانت **would** تعبر عن زمن الماضي.

'd (like - prefer - love ...) to have + P.P.

It's a pity we didn't visit Ali. I'd like **to have** seen him again.

٣- استخدامات **'d rather - 'd prefer** بمعنى (يفضل):

prefer	rather
(1) 'd prefer + to + inf. - I'd prefer to have lunch.	(1) 'd rather + inf. - I'd rather have lunch.
(2) prefer + v-ing + to + v-ing - I prefer studying to sleeping .	(2) 'd rather + inf. + than + inf. - I'd rather study than sleep .
(3) 'd prefer + to + inf. + rather than + inf. - I'd prefer to study rather than sleep .	(3) 'd rather + فاعل + past simple/past perfect - I'd rather he played well.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I prefer in a swimming pool.
a) swim b) to swim c) swimming d) b & c
2. I'd prefer in a swimming pool.
a) swim b) to swim c) swimming d) b & c
3. I'd rather lunch with my friends.
a) had b) to have c) have d) having
4. I'd prefer to sleep early rather than TV.
a) watching b) to watch c) to watching d) watch
5. I prefer studying English to football with my friends.
a) play b) playing c) played d) plays

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I'd rather stay at home than go out. (prefer)
2. I don't want to go to the party. (hate)
3. I'd prefer to have coffee instead of tea. (would rather)
4. She prefers swimming to running. (like)

(٢) أفعال تتبع بـ **ing** أو **(to + inf.)** مع اختلاف في المعنى:

stop (to + inf.)

يتوقف لكي يقوم بالفعل.

stop + (v-ing)

يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل.

When he saw the restaurant, he **stopped to eat**. (توقف عن السير لكي يأكل)

He decided to **stop smoking** as he felt so sick. (قرر أن يتوقف عن التدخين تماماً)

remember (to + inf.)

يتذكر ثم يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم بعد).

remember + (v-ing)

يتذكر أنه قام بالفعل (الفعل تم في الماضي).

I **remembered to phone** her. (تذكر أولاً ثم اتصل)

I **remembered phoning** her. (اتصل أولاً ثم تذكر الحدث)

forget (to + inf.)

ينسى أن يقوم بالفعل (الفعل لم يتم).

forget + (v-ing)

قام بالفعل ونسى أنه قام به (الفعل تم).

I **forgot to go** to that meeting. (نسى أن يذهب)

I **forgot going** to that meeting. (قام بالذهاب بالفعل ولكنه نسي الحدث)

try + (to + inf.)

يحاول أن يفعل شيئاً

try + (v-ing)

يُجرب فعل شيء ليرى النتيجة

She **tried to answer** all the questions.Try **taking** an aspirin. It might work.

regret (to + inf.)

يأسف لفعل شيء سوف يقوم به؛ لأنه مضطر لذلك (الفعل لم يتم بعد).

regret + (v-ing)

يندم على فعل قام به (الفعل تم).

I **regret to say** that your interview was not successful. (أسف لقول ذلك)I really **regret being** so rude to my friend. (ندمان على فعل ذلك)

go on + (to + inf.)

ينتقل من عمل لآخر

go on + (v-ing)

يستمر (في القيام بنفس العمل)

After he finished his math homework, he **went on to study** English. (بدأ مذاكرة الإنجليزي)My son **went on studying** English all night. (استمر في مذاكرة الإنجليزي)

Language

Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nader usually stops us some sweets on his way back home.

- a) to get b) getting c) to getting d) get

2. I remember the Queen in London. It was a wonderful day.

- a) meet b) to meet c) meeting d) to meeting

3. Mona forgot her medicine, so she took it again.

- a) taking b) to take c) take d) to taking

4. I regret this old car as it breaks down a lot.

- a) to buy b) buy c) to buying d) buying

5. A: I have a headache. B: Have you tried an aspirin?

- a) to take b) taking c) take d) to taking

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I stopped eating when I reached the restaurant. (.....)

2. I really regret to be so rude to my friend. He got upset. (.....)

3. Please, Khaled, don't forget turning off the light before you go out. (.....)

4. I remember to lock the door, but now it's open. (.....)

EXTRA POINTS

- 1** suggest/recommend + v-ing
 = suggest/recommend that + فاعل آخر + inf. or (should + inf.)
 I **suggest going** for a swim. = I **suggest that** we **(should) go** for a swim.
- 2** see – hear + مفعول + inf.
 see – hear + مفعول + v-ing
 رؤية واستماع الحدث كله
 رؤية واستماع جزء من الحدث
 I **heard** them **talk** about global warming. It was a very useful programme.
 I **saw** my friend Ali **playing**, but I left before the end of the match.
- 3** the first – the second – the third – the last ... + n. + to + inf.
 لاحظ هذا التعبير
 Hana was the **last** person **to come** to the party.
- 4** ask – decide – know – remember – forget – explain – understand
 – هذه الأفعال إذا جاء بعدها أداة استفهام نستخدم **to + inf.**
 We **asked** him how **to get** to the station.
 I haven't **decided** where **to go** yet.
- 5** make + مفعول + inf. = cause + مفعول + to + inf. ... يجعل
 make + مفعول + inf. = force + مفعول + to + inf. ... يجعل / يجبر ...
 let + مفعول + inf. = allow + مفعول + to + inf. ... يسمح ...
 My teacher always **makes me study**. (= **causes me to study**)
 I only did it as they **made me do it**. (= **forced me to do it**)
 He **let me go** out with my friends. (= **allowed me to go out**)
 ولكن في حالة المبنى للمجهول نستخدم بعدها **to + inf.**
 He was **made to come** early.

Language Checkpoint 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- He suggested that she the party with her friends.
a) attend b) has attended
c) attending d) can attend
- Rania was the last student the class yesterday.
a) enter b) entered
c) entering d) to enter
- Could you explain how this math problem?
a) answering b) to answer
c) to answering d) answer
- Ali made me for dinner.
a) to pay b) pay
c) paying d) paid
- Huda was made a fine for driving her car fast.
a) to pay b) pay
c) paying d) paid
- I suggest the homework now. We don't have enough time later.
a) do b) did
c) have done d) doing

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I suggest to go for a swim. (.....)
2. She was the first student coming to school yesterday. (.....)
3. He made me to finish my homework. (.....)
4. I have decided going to the movie theater. (.....)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I'd like out with my family. This will make me happy.
a) go b) going c) to going d) to go
2. I soon began what the problems were.
a) to understanding b) understand
c) understands d) to understand
3. Noha would rather lunch at the club.
a) to have b) have c) having d) to having
4. Dalia would prefer her meat well-done.
a) to have b) have c) having d) b & c
5. Nader suggested that his sister with him.
a) going b) go c) has been d) is going
6. My favorite player intends this year. He can't play for any more seasons.
a) retiring b) to retire c) not to retire d) a & b
7. I like listening to Dr. El-Baz on television. I don't miss a word of his speech.
a) talking b) to talk c) to talking d) talk
8. I'd rather Ramy to the gym to build his muscles.
a) to go b) goes c) go d) went
9. Jana is the first girl the top of the mountain.
a) reached b) to reach c) reaches d) reaching
10. I always hear the little kids in the nursery next to me.
a) to singing b) singing c) sings d) a & b
11. Hatem starts French this year.
a) study b) studying c) to studying d) studied
12. I regret that the school trip has been canceled.
a) announce b) announcing
c) to announce d) to announcing
13. I suggest that Mona the club.
a) join b) joined c) has joined d) will join
14. I still remember to Alexandria as a reward for my success.
a) take b) taking c) to be taken d) being taken
15. We tried the fire out, but it was in vain.
a) put b) putting c) to put d) to putting
16. I'll never forget down in the middle of the street. It was embarrassing.
a) falling b) to fall c) to falling d) fell

- ▶ 17. The postmen stopped letters to the houses in our area. It took them half an hour.
 a) deliver b) to deliver c) to delivering d) delivering
18. Oh dear! You forgot the important documents.
 a) signing b) sign c) to signing d) to sign
19. I've gained too much weight, so I stopped fast food.
 a) eat b) to eat c) to eating d) eating
20. I regret you that your request has been rejected.
 a) for telling b) telling c) to tell d) not telling
21. I regretted my mother with the housework yesterday as she was really ill.
 a) helping b) to help c) not to help d) not helping
22. I prefer to videos on the internet. The latter is useless.
 a) to read/watch b) reading/watch
 c) reading/watching d) read/watching
23. I heard Mr. Ahmed talking on his cell phone. This means:
 a) I heard everything he said b) I heard part of what he said
 c) I heard nothing he said d) I heard everything he didn't say
24. My brother decided not to eat a lot of food to lose weight. This means he
 a lot.
 a) stopped eating b) enjoyed eating
 c) regretted to eat d) forgot eating
25. I have a memory that I met Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria before. This means that
 a) I went on to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.
 b) I regret meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.
 c) I forgot to meet Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.
 d) I remember meeting Ahmed Mekky in Alexandria.
26. I forgot to bring my cell phone. This means that
 a) my cell phone is with me now b) my cell phone isn't with me now
 c) I have never brought my cell phone d) nothing is correct

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The young man admitted that he had stolen the money. (... stealing ...)
2. I wish I hadn't made that silly mistake. (I regret ...)
3. It's useless to argue with him. (It's no use ...)
4. My father no longer travels by train. (My father stopped ...)
5. It's my habit to get up late on Fridays. (I'm used ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Before cleaning the machine, you should always it for your safety.
a) unplug b) plug c) turn d) switch
2. There's a small in the middle of the square that lights up at night.
a) mountain b) fountain c) chart d) playground
3. The painting was I had never seen anything like this before.
a) repeated b) unique c) observed d) unclear
4. You should important instructions so you don't forget them later.
a) turn on b) erase c) write down d) look up
5. The weather shows rain tomorrow.
a) chart b) plan c) advert d) notebook
6. Don't forget to turn the TV before you go to sleep.
a) off b) away c) on d) up
7. The firefighters were sent on a to rescue people trapped in the building.
a) survey b) mission c) trip d) research
8. Students must use trusted when writing a research paper.
a) plugs b) scores c) sources d) leaks
9. The teacher asked the students to write a story using their imagination.
a) dull b) repeated c) creative d) boring
10. Schools today focus on the of all students, regardless of their differences.
a) exclusion b) inclusion c) separation d) division
11. Maha's success was the direct of studying hard and following the teacher's advice.
a) result b) reason c) practice d) solution
12. Energy comes from many like the sun and wind.
a) sources b) observations c) findings d) plans
13. The new company could an app that helps students manage their time well.
a) check b) prove c) create d) remove
14. The meeting together of a group of people for a particular purpose is called a/an
a) assembly b) survey c) competition d) observation
15. The teacher showed us a of the results on the board.
a) chart b) chair c) task d) speech

Language

16. I stopped newspapers because now I can read them online.
 a) buy b) buying c) to buying d) to buy
17. Our teacher doesn't allow in class.
 a) speaking b) to speak c) speak d) spoke
18. We suggest she her homework at night.
 a) do b) does c) did d) is doing
19. I tried my eyes open, but I couldn't.
 a) keep b) to keep c) kept d) keeping
20. Menna hopes the Faculty of Medicine one day.
 a) to join b) joining c) joins d) to joining
21. We were very tired, so I suggested a rest.
 a) to have b) have c) to having d) having
22. Thousands of people enjoy at the Great Pyramid.
 a) to looking b) to look c) looking d) looks
23. Ali suggests the mid-year holiday in Aswan.
 a) to spend b) spending c) spends d) spend
24. I remember that novel, but I can't remember the name of the author.
 a) read b) reading c) to reading d) to read
25. She doesn't forget Paris for the first time in 2020.
 a) to be visited b) visiting c) being visited d) visited
26. Stop noise; your father is asleep.
 a) to making b) making c) make d) to make
27. Would you like the night at Grandma's place?
 a) to spending b) spend c) spending d) to spend
28. I really regret up late; I missed the first lecture.
 a) staying b) to stay c) to staying d) for staying
29. I remember this young man before when I was in Alexandria.
 a) meeting b) to meet c) to meeting d) had met
30. Don't your activity book or the teacher will be angry with you.
 a) remember bringing b) forget bringing
 c) remember to bring d) forget to bring



Writing Skill

Writing

tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Formal Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي

Formal Email Template

نموذج البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي
يكون الغرض من الإيميل الرسمي التواصل بطريقة احترافية ومحترمة ومنظمة مع شخص لا تعرفه جيدًا أو أكاديمية: كطلب وظيفة، شكوى، طلب رسمي.

To: إيميل المرسل إليه

From: إيميل الراسل

Subject: عنوان الإيميل

[Clear and Professional]

Dear [Sir/Madam/Mr. ...], لقب الشخص المرسل إليه واسمه

I am writing to ... [state your purpose clearly] اذكر هدفك بوضوح [Give details in full sentences] كن مهذبًا ومهنيًا. أعط التفاصيل في جمل كاملة. Be polite and professional..

لغة الإيميل لابد أن تكون مؤدبة وتحتوي على جمل كاملة وبعيدة عن استخدام المصطلحات العامة.

Thank you for your time and consideration. اختتم الإيميل

Yours sincerely/Kind regards,

[Your Full Name] اكتب الاسم كاملاً

MODEL FORMAL EMAIL

Write a formal email to your teacher apologizing for not attending the school day and telling her/him the reason.

Subject: Apology for Absence on School Day

Dear Mr. Ahmed,

I hope this message finds you well. I am writing to sincerely apologize for my absence from school on Monday, October 9th. I deeply regret not being able to attend the school day, especially knowing the importance of the activities and lessons planned.

Unfortunately, I was feeling unwell the night before and woke up with a high fever and severe headache. My parents took me to the doctor, who advised me to rest at home for a few days. I have attached the medical report for your reference.

I will make sure to catch up on all missed assignments and class notes. Please let me know if there is any work I need to complete or materials I should review.

Thank you for your understanding and support.

Yours sincerely,

Omar Ahmed

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الشهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Nowadays, industries play a big role in our world. They produce the things we use every day, like clothes, food, and machines. However, factories also create waste and pollution. To protect our planet, industries need to go green.

Going green means working in a way that saves energy, reduces waste, and keeps the environment clean. One important step is recycling. Instead of throwing away paper, plastic, or metal, factories can recycle them to make new products. This helps save natural resources.

Another way is to use clean energy. Solar panels and wind turbines can give power without harming the air. Factories that use renewable energy reduce smoke and greenhouse gases. This protects people's health and slows down climate change.

Water is also very important. Many factories use a lot of water in their work. By cleaning and reusing water, they can save millions of liters every year.

Finally, industries can care for nature by planting trees around their buildings. Green areas make the air fresher and provide safe places for birds and animals.

If industries take these steps, they can still grow while protecting the Earth. Going green is not only good for nature, but it also improves the company's reputation. Customers respect companies that care for the planet.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is: ".....".

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a) Industries and machines | b) How to go green in industry |
| c) Saving money in factories | d) The history of factories |

2. What is one benefit of planting trees around factories?

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a) They produce more machines. | b) They make the air fresher. |
| c) They create more waste. | d) They use more water. |

3. What does the pronoun they in "they can save millions of liters" refer to?

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| a) Trees. | b) Animals. | c) Factories. | d) Rivers. |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|------------|

4. The passage suggests that customers respect companies that:

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| a) use more energy | b) care for the planet |
| c) make cheap products | d) ignore pollution |

5. From the passage, we can infer نستنتج that going green in industry is:

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a) harmful to the economy | b) good for both nature and business |
| c) impossible to achieve | d) only useful for small companies |

- ▶ 6. Which idea is NOT mentioned as a way to go green in industry?
- a) Recycling waste.
 - b) Using solar and wind power.
 - c) Planting trees.
 - d) Building larger factories.
7. Which statement best sums up the author's opinion?
- a) Industries must stop producing to save the planet.
 - b) Going green is difficult and unhelpful.
 - c) Industries can protect nature and still succeed.
 - d) Customers do not care about green industries.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A strong community is built when people help and support one another. Helping our community means doing things that make life better for everyone around us. It doesn't always require money—sometimes your time and effort are the most valuable gifts you can give.

There are many ways to help. For example, volunteering at a local shelter, cleaning up public parks, or helping elderly neighbors with shopping or housework. Even small acts like smiling at others, listening to someone's problems, or helping a child with homework can have a big impact.

Schools often encourage students to take part in community service projects. These projects teach young people responsibility, teamwork, and kindness. They also help students understand the needs of others and feel proud of their contributions.

Local governments and organizations also play a role. They create programs to support families in need, organize food drives, or offer free education classes for adults.

Helping our community doesn't just help others—it also makes us feel more connected, confident, and hopeful. When we give, we grow.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What do small acts like smiling or listening do, according to the text?
- a) Waste time.
 - b) Make others feel worse.
 - c) Have a big impact.
 - d) Are not important.
2. What is one role of local governments?
- a) Teaching students how to cook.
 - b) Providing free clothes to everyone.
 - c) Organizing food drives.
 - d) Asking people not to help.
3. What does the writer say about helping others?
- a) It can make us feel more connected.
 - b) It makes life harder.
 - c) It should only be done during holidays.
 - d) It's a waste of energy.
4. What is NOT mentioned as a way to help the community?
- a) Cleaning parks.
 - b) Donating money to friends.
 - c) Helping with homework.
 - d) Volunteering at shelters.

5. Why do schools encourage community service?

- a) To punish lazy students. b) To teach responsibility and teamwork.
c) To get free work done. d) To save money.

6. Which of the following is mentioned as a way to help?

- a) Building your own house. b) Starting a business.
c) Helping an elderly neighbor. d) Traveling abroad.

7. What is the main idea of the text?

- a) Helping the community can only be done with money.
b) Communities grow stronger when people support each other.
c) Only the government can help a community.
d) Everyone should work alone.

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. The development of different means of transportation has made travel easier, faster, and safer than before.

- (a) قد يجعل تطور وسائل المواصلات المختلفة السفر أسهل وأسرع وأكثر تكلفةً من ذي قبل.
(b) لقد جعل ثمن وسائل المواصلات المختلفة السفر أسهل وأسرع وأكثر أماناً من ذي قبل.
(c) لقد جعل تطور وسائل المواصلات المختلفة السفر أكثر متعةً وأسرع وأكثر أماناً من ذي قبل.
(d) لقد جعل تطور وسائل المواصلات المختلفة السفر أسهل وأسرع وأكثر أماناً من ذي قبل.

2. In order to help in solving the problem of pollution, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use public transportation.

- (a) لكي نساعد في حل مشكلة التلوث من الممكن أن نستخدم السيارات التي تعمل بالكهرباء، ونزرع المزيد من الأشجار، ونستخدم وسائل المواصلات العامة.
(b) لكي نساعد في حل مشكلة الإسكان من الممكن أن نستخدم السيارات التي تعمل بالكهرباء، ونزرع المزيد من الأشجار، ونستخدم وسائل المواصلات الخاصة.
(c) لكي نساعد في حل مشكلة التلوث من الممكن أن نستخدم السيارات التي تعمل بالغاز، ونزرع القليل من الأشجار، ونستخدم وسائل المواصلات العامة.
(d) لكي نساعد في حل مشكلة التلوث من الممكن أن نستخدم السيارات الإلكترونية، ونزرع المزيد من الأشجار، ونستخدم وسائل المواصلات العامة.

3. We have to rationalize the consumption of water, electricity, and food to face the increasing rise in prices.

- (a) علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
(b) علينا تيسير اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
(c) يجب علينا ترشيد اشتراك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمواجهة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.
(d) وجب علينا ترشيد استهلاك الماء والكهرباء والغذاء لمقاطعة الارتفاع المتزايد في الأسعار.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. غالبًا ما يكون الناس ودودين أكثر مما يبدو عليه. وستندهش من مدى لطفهم وترحابهم بمجرد أن تلقى عليهم التحية.

- a) People are often more approachable than they seem. You'll be surprised how kind and welcoming they can be once you say hello.
- b) People are often much approachable than they seem. You'd be surprising how kind and welcoming they can be just you say hello.
- c) Sometimes, people are more approachable than they seem. You'd be surprised how kind and welcoming they can be just you say hello.
- d) Sometimes, people are much approachable than they seem. You'll be surprising how kind and welcoming they can be once you say hello.

5. الصديق المخلص والمحترم يستمع دائمًا بتفهم، ويفي بوعوده، ويدعمك أثناء التحديات دون أن يكون كثير الانتقاد.

- a) A true and respectful friend always listens carefully, fulfills his promises, and stands by you in hard times without hidden criticism.
- b) A faithful and respectful friend always shows understanding, keeps his word, and helps you face difficulties without criticizing.
- c) A sincere and respectful friend always listens with empathy, keeps commitments, and supports you in challenges without being judgmental.
- d) A loyal and respectful friend always listens with understanding, keeps promises, and supports you during challenges without being judgmental.

6. يشكل الوالدان شخصيات أبنائهما منذ بداية طفولتهم فهما يعلمانهم القيم والعادات.

- a) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the end of their childhood, as they show them values and habits.
- b) Parents shape the personalities of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
- c) Fathers shape the characters of their children from the beginning of their childhood, as they teach them values and habits.
- d) Parents shape the personalities of their daughters from the beginning of their childhood, as they learn them values and habits.

(c) Writing

4 Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"How shy students can make friends and feel welcomed at a new school."

Enrich your vocabulary

transportation	النقل	rationalize	يرشد الاستهلاك	means	وسائل
values	القيم	consumption	استهلاك	pollution	تلوث



Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box:

energy – plastic – cleaner – trees – recycling

1. One simple way to save is turning off lights when leaving a room.
2. Carrying a reusable bag helps reduce the use of
3. Planting more gives us fresh air.
4. By practicing, we can reduce waste.
5. Working together every day can create a and greener future.

2 Fill in the blanks with words from the box:

survey – observations – drips – mission – impact – assembly

1. The students' was to reduce waste in the school.
2. We need to the garden to see which plants are growing.
3. Tiny water can waste many liters of water a day.
4. The teacher asked the class to write down their in a notebook.
5. During the school....., students presented their projects.
6. Planting trees has a big on the environment.

Language

3 Choose the correct option from a, b, c, or d:

1. She enjoys to music.
a) to listen
b) listening
c) listen
d) listening
2. He promised me with the project.
a) helping
b) to help
c) to helping
d) help
3. They avoid junk food.
a) eating
b) eat
c) to eating
d) to eat
4. We decided a new car.
a) buying
b) to buying
c) to buy
d) buy

5. I don't mind for you.

a) to wait

b) waiting

c) wait

d) waits

6. She suggested a break.

a) to take

b) take

c) to taking

d) taking

7. He stopped a coffee break.

a) taking

b) to take

c) take

d) to taking

8. I'll never forget the Eiffel Tower for the first time.

a) to see

b) seeing

c) see

d) to see

9. Please remember off the lights before leaving.

a) turning

b) to turn

c) turn

d) to turn

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form (gerund or infinitive) of the verb in brackets:

1. She enjoys (read) novels in her free time.

2. He promised (help) me with my homework.

3. We decided (travel) to Spain next summer.

4. I don't mind (work) for extra hours.

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





1 Finish the following dialog:

Ali asked Samy about his favorite sport.

Ali : What is your favorite sport?

Samy : (1).....

Ali : Is football a team or pair sport?

Samy : It is a team sport.

Ali : (2).....?

Samy : We win at football by scoring the most goals.

Ali : (3).....?

Samy : My favorite player is Mohamed Salah.

Ali : Is he a clever player?

Samy : (4).....

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Belief in Allah is the of faith.

a) stone

b) corner

c) cornerstone

d) care

2. To believe in Allah is to believe in all of these except his

a) partnership

b) existence

c) attributes

d) lordship

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is monotheism?

.....

4. What constitutes faith?

.....

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Choose your friends carefully and always make friends with those who respect others.

.....

(B) Translate into English:

لا يتعلق مفهوم العبادة بعلاقة المرء بالله فحسب، بل يتعلق أيضًا بتفاعل المرء مع البشر بشكل عام.

.....

► Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The pollution was so bad that most of the fish died. The antonyms of "pollution" are
 a) poisoning b) cleanliness c) corruption d) misuse e) purification
2. Cycling is a sustainable form of transport. The synonyms of "sustainable" are
 a) lasting b) harmful c) destructive d) negative e) continuous

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The film was made to young people to follow their dreams.
 a) inspire b) control c) suggest d) prevent
4. The athlete broke the world in the 100-meter race.
 a) manufacture b) record c) drip d) chance
5. This health encourages people to eat better and exercise more.
 a) solution b) initiative c) decision d) activity
6. Experts warn that the of natural resources could lead to serious global problems.
 a) reuse b) depletion c) reducing d) sharing
7. A good advertising can help people remember the brand.
 a) slogan b) image c) message d) color
8. I tried to on my good foot while holding onto my friend Ramy.
 a) hope b) crawl c) run d) hop
9. Our national team is expected in the next World Cup finals.
 a) play b) playing c) to play d) to playing
10. Sara disliked from the handball team, and she felt disappointed.
 a) to excluding b) to exclude c) excluding d) being excluded
11. I can't help my mom's fresh bread. It's irresistible.
 a) eat b) eating c) to eat d) eats
12. Adel, try the mobile over there, it might get a better signal.
 a) puts b) will put c) putting d) put
13. The rules of the library don't allow us
 a) to smoking b) smoking c) smoke d) to smoke
14. I am really trying to forget this annoying man.
 a) meeting b) to meeting c) to meet d) meet

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Today, more and more people are choosing to “go green.” But what does this slogan really mean?

Going green means making choices that help protect the environment. It can be as simple as turning off the lights when you leave a room, recycling plastic and paper, or using public transport instead of driving your own car. When many people do these small actions, they can make a big difference to our lives.

One of the biggest problems we face is pollution—from cars, factories, and even plastic waste. This pollution harms the air we breathe, the water we drink, and the animals we share the planet with. By going green, we can reduce pollution and help save natural resources like water, trees, and energy.

Many governments and companies are also supporting green practices. They create laws to protect nature, promote clean energy like wind and solar power, and encourage people to reduce waste.

You don’t need to be perfect to go green. Even small changes—like using a reusable water bottle or carrying your own shopping bag—can help the planet. Every action counts!

If we all work together, we can build a cleaner, healthier, and more sustainable future for everyone.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. What is an example of a small green change?

- a) Using a reusable water bottle.
- b) Buying more plastic bags.
- c) Drinking more soda.
- d) Eating fast food.

16. How can governments help the environment?

- a) By cutting down more trees.
- b) By creating more factories.
- c) By promoting clean energy.
- d) By banning public transport.

17. Which of the following is an example of going green?

- a) Leaving the lights on all day.
- b) Throwing plastic in the ocean.
- c) Driving your own car everywhere.
- d) Turning off unused lights.

18. What can pollution affect, as mentioned in the text?

- a) Our pets only.
- b) Only people who live in cities.
- c) The air, water, and animals.
- d) Television and phones.

19. What is the main message of the text?

- a) Technology will save the planet.
- b) We all must become environmental scientists.
- c) Everyone can help protect the planet.
- d) Only the government can solve pollution.

- 20. According to the text, what is a major problem we face?
 a) Too many trees. b) Pollution. c) Cold weather. d) Noise.

21. What does the writer say about small actions?

- a) They are not very useful. b) They don't change anything.
 c) They only help rich people. d) They can make a big difference.

► 22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- العمل الجاد هو الطريق الوحيد لرفع مستوى المعيشة كما يجب أن نقوم باستغلال كل الموارد الاقتصادية المتاحة بدون إسراف.

- a) Hard work is the only way to arouse the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.
 b) Hard working is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all online economic resources without extravagance.
 c) Working hard is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economical resources without spending.
 d) Hard work is the only way to raise the standard of living, and we must make use of all available economic resources without extravagance.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Egypt had to call for an international conference aiming at stability in the peace process and combating terrorism.

- a) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر محلي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
 b) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.
 c) اضطرت مصر أن تدعو إلى مؤتمر دولي يستهدف استقرار عملية السلام ودعم السياحة.
 d) كان لزامًا على مصر أن تدعو إلى اجتماع دولي يستهدف السلام ومحاربة الإرهاب.

► 24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Santiago call the fish his "brother" even though he planned to kill it?
2. Why do you think Santiago keeps comparing himself to Joe DiMaggio?
3. Is Santiago's fight with the marlin heroic or tragic? Why?

► 25. Write an email to your cousin of (120-150) words on the following:

"The importance of true friendship"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. This illness has ruined my life. The synonyms of "ruin" are
 a) destroy b) clean c) complete d) clear e) spoil
2. My uncle sold his old car for a small profit. The antonyms of "profit" are
 a) gain b) earnings c) loss d) debt e) trip

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The scammer tried to the old man by pretending to be from the bank.
 a) receive b) betray c) deceive d) verify
4. He felt deeply when his best friends had a vacation without him.
 a) betrayed b) included c) trusted d) aware
5. The good of the hotel encouraged us to stay there.
 a) reputation b) scam c) rumor d) awareness
6. Solar energy is a source because it comes from the sun and never runs out.
 a) landfill b) renewable c) material d) record
7. I don't like this seat — can I with you?
 a) material b) swap c) record d) survey
8. We did a/an to find out what students think about the new school cafeteria.
 a) leak b) record c) survey d) observation
9. If she a good swimmer, she could win a medal.
 a) were b) is c) isn't d) wasn't
10. The children are allowed to play in the garden they do not make too much noise.
 a) as long as b) until c) in case of d) unless
11. behaving badly, he would be punished.
 a) In case b) If c) Without d) In case of
12. The police never allow in this area.
 a) parking b) park c) to park d) to be parked
13. Donia didn't mind her brother with his homework.
 a) helping b) to help c) help d) to helping
14. The accused boy denied the ruler from his classmate's bag.
 a) stealing b) to steal c) stolen d) steal

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Interests are important to think about. But it is more important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words, they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work under pressure. Others can't stand it. My mother loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, my aunt can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She wouldn't be able to stay very long in a high-pressure job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines, or managing multiple tasks at once. Some involve more pressure than others, like the jobs of surgeons or firefighters. In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. According to the writer, our choice of jobs is influenced by our
a) our education b) work values c) personality d) salaries
16. According to the passage, working under pressure means
a) meeting a deadline b) finishing at any time
c) making mistakes d) enjoying our job
17. Most of the time, pressure leads to
a) relaxation b) satisfaction c) freedom d) sickness
18. A very important skill that employers always look for is working
a) without pressure b) calmly
c) under pressure d) personally
19. One disadvantage of working under pressure for some people is
a) meeting the deadline b) working a lot
c) being lazy d) making mistakes
20. Why might some people accept jobs that don't fit their work values?
a) They want to work less.
b) They are not interested in money.
c) They want the job even if something important is missing.
d) They like pressure.

Module 3



Unit 5

Using Technology
at School

Unit 6

Job Hunting

Module (3) General Exercises

Units 5 & 6

Unit 5

Using Technology at School



Learning Outcomes

- Reading**
- Analyze a text to identify how learning a foreign language can open new cultures and opportunities.
 - Identify specific examples of how technology aids in language acquisition and learning.
 - Infer the meaning of specialized vocabulary (e.g., fluency, tolerance, perspectives) from context.
- Listening**
- Extract specific details from an audio track about the journey of a multilingual student.
 - Identify the main idea of a text about students and technology.
 - Distinguish between correct and incorrect statements based on listening text.
- Language**
- Correctly use quantifiers such as "some, any, much, many, a few, and a little" with both countable and uncountable nouns.
 - Distinguish between the uses of "some" and "any" in affirmative statements, questions, and offers.
 - Identify and correct mistakes in sentences involving countable and uncountable nouns.
- Speaking**
- Discuss the benefits of learning a foreign language and how it helps students become global citizens.
 - Engage in a role-play using conditional sentences to ask and answer questions about language learning.
 - Express opinions on how technology, like AI, can assist in language learning.
- Writing**
- Write an essay about how learning a foreign language can help students.

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

collaborate (v) (d)	يتعاون	fluency (n)	فصاحة /طلاقة اللغة	process (n)	عملية
dedicate (v)(d)	يكرس	fluent (adj)	فصيح /طليق (في اللغة)		
exchange program	برنامج تبادل	hesitate (v) (d)	يتردد	tolerance (n)	التسامح /تقبل الآخر
expand (v) (ed)	يتوسع /يتمدد	perspective (n)	وجهة نظر		

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

ability (n)	القدرة	imaginary (adj)	خيالي	problem-solving	حل المشاكل
activities (n)	أنشطة	improvement (n)	تحسين	professional (adj) (n)	محترف
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	international (adj)	دولي	proficiency (n)	كفاءة /إتقان
benefit (n)	فائدة	leisure time	وقت الفراغ	program (n)	برنامج
broad (adj)	واسع /عريض	memorize (v) (d)	يحفظ	promote (v) (d)	يدعم /يرقي /يروج
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	memory (n)	ذاكرة	provide (v) (d)	يزود /يوفر
connected (adj)	مترابط /متصل	moreover (conj.)	علاوة على ذلك	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
consistent (adj)	مستمر /متسق	motivated (adj)	مُحفَّز	relatives (n)	أقارب
consistently (adv)	باستمرار	multicultural (adj)	متعدد الثقافات	remain (v) (ed)	يظل
critical thinking	تفكير نقدي	multiple (adj)	متعدد	situation (n)	موقف
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية /خبرة	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات	subtitles (n)	ترجمة الشاشة (ترجمة الأفلام)
express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن	native language	اللغة الأم	time-consuming (adj)	مستهلك للوقت
foreign (adj)	أجنبي	opportunity (n)	فرصة	worldview (n)	نظرة عالمية
global (adj)	عالمي	peer (n)	قرين /زميل		
horizon (n)	أفق	personal (adj)	شخصي	worldwide (adv) (adj)	عالمياً/عالمي
idea (n)	فكرة	positively (adv)	بإيجابية		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The two companies decided to on a project for renewable energy development.
a) hesitate b) collaborate c) dedicate d) expand
- Mai decided to her life to helping poor children in rural African villages.
a) dedicate b) express c) respect d) exchange
- Her in English impressed the interviewers and helped her get the desired job.
a) decision b) tolerance c) hesitation d) fluency
- Mona was confident and didn't while answering the questions in front of the audience.
a) memorize b) tolerate c) hesitate d) accept
- Traveling abroad helps people see new and understand other cultures.
a) intentions b) perspectives c) memories d) processes
- Cooking is a long that requires preparation and careful attention to details.
a) horizon b) situation c) dedication d) process
- The teacher encouraged among students from different backgrounds.
a) hesitation b) tolerance c) leisure d) experience
- The diplomat was in French, which helped him build strong relationships with partners.
a) fluent b) foreign c) international d) multiple

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

communicate with	يتواصل مع	in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	open the door to	يفتح مجالاً أمام
connect with	يتصل بـ	in short	باختصار	participate in	يشارك في
contribute to	يساهم في	interested in	مهتم بـ	perspective on	وجهة نظر عن
encourage ... to	يشجع ... على	join a competition	يشارك في مسابقة	promote respect	يعزز الاحترام
gain a skill	يكتسب مهارة	key to	مفتاح لـ (عنصر ضروري / مهم لـ)	remain/stay motivated	يبقى مُحفَّزاً
give advice about	يعطي نصيحة بشأن	make friends	يُكوّن صداقات	return to	يعود إلى
hesitate to	يتردد أن	move to	ينتقل إلى	speak to	يتحدث إلى

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
expand	يتوسع / يتمدد	expansion expanding	توسع / تمدد التوسع	expansive	واسع / ممتد
hesitate	يتردد	hesitation	تردد	hesitant	متردد
tolerate	يتسامح	tolerance	تسامح	tolerant	متسامح
exchange	يتبادل	exchange	تبادل	exchangeable	قابل للتبادل
collaborate	يتعاون	collaboration	تعاون	collaborative	تعاوني
dedicate	يكرس / يخصص	dedication	تكريس	dedicated	مُكرس / متفاني
promote	يدعم / يرقى / يروج	promotion	ترقية وظيفية أو حملة ترويجية	promotional	ترويجي

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

Sayed always **hesitates** before making a decision. (v)

After a moment of **hesitation**, Rana answered the question. (n)

Ali felt **hesitant** about joining the new project. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
foreign	أجنبي	external/strange		native/local/national	ساكن أصلي / محلي / وطني
hesitate	يتردد	balk/waffle		continue/persist	يستمر / يصبر
international	دولي	global/worldwide/universal		local/national	محلي / قومي
promote	يعزز	advance/boost		hinder/discourage	يوقف / يثبط
broad	واسع / عريض	wide/vast/immense		narrow/limited	ضيق / محدود
regularly	باتظام	routinely/systematically		irregularly/uncommonly	بغير انتظام / بغيرابة
improvement	تحسين	development/enhancement		deterioration/decline	تدهور / انهيار

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Teachers often give advice healthy lifestyle choices to help students live better lives.
a) in b) at c) for d) about
2. It is easy to friends by joining clubs and talking to classmates regularly.
a) make b) do c) renovate d) give
3. We're waiting for the improvement of the internet service in Egypt. The synonym of the word "improvement" is ".....".
a) development b) decline c) deterioration d) joining
4. The project was successful because of strong between teachers, parents, and community members.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) collaborated
5. Working in a team helps individuals grow, learn, and achieve goals more effectively together.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) tolerance d) collaborative
6. All students want to participate sports events organized by the school.
a) at b) on c) for d) in
7. Hard work is the key success if you want to achieve your dreams.
a) of b) to c) for d) with
8. It is important to communicate your classmates when working on a group project.
a) to b) at c) with d) for

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

Learning a foreign language opens the door to new cultures, ideas, and opportunities. If students learn a new language, they will be able to communicate with people from different countries, make international friends, and participate in global activities. Moreover, they will understand other cultures better, which promotes respect, tolerance, and a broader worldview.

If students practiced speaking regularly, they would improve their confidence, fluency, and ability to express themselves clearly in different situations. Schools that provide language programs encourage students to use these skills in real-life experiences, such as traveling, participating in exchange programs, joining international competitions, or using digital communication tools to connect with peers worldwide.

Some students hesitate to learn another language because they feel it is too difficult or time-consuming. However, if they tried consistently and remained motivated, they would gain not only language skills, but also critical thinking, problem-solving abilities, memory improvement, and new perspectives on the world.

In addition, if students spoke multiple languages, they would have more opportunities for higher education and careers in international companies. In short, learning a foreign language is not just about grammar and vocabulary. It is a key to becoming a global citizen, expanding personal horizons, and contributing positively to a connected and multicultural world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Learning a foreign language has benefits like
- a) memorizing grammar rules
 - b) understanding other cultures and making international friends
 - c) avoiding communication with strangers
 - d) not traveling a lot
2. According to the passage, what would happen if students practiced speaking another language regularly?
- a) They would forget their native language.
 - b) They would improve confidence and fluency.
 - c) They would avoid traveling.
 - d) They would no longer need to write.
3. What could students gain if they spoke multiple languages?
- a) More opportunities for higher education and careers.
 - b) More leisure time.
 - c) Less interest in their own culture and homeland.
 - d) Only reading and writing skills.

Listening Text



My name is Salma and I speak Arabic, English, and Spanish. I grew up in Cairo, but when I was twelve my family moved to Spain because of my father's job. At first, I couldn't understand anything at school. I felt shy, anxious, and overwhelmed. However, my teachers encouraged me to practice every day with my classmates and slowly I improved. After a year, I could speak Spanish fluently and participate in class confidently. Later, I returned to Egypt and studied English more seriously. Speaking three languages has completely changed my life. I am now multilingual which allows me to work with international companies, travel easily, and communicate with people from different cultures. I believe learning languages is not just about words—it's about understanding people. We must respect the cultures connected to the languages we learn. In the future, I hope to study French—who knows? Maybe one day I will speak five languages.

Definitions

fluency	طلاقة في اللغة	ability to speak a language easily and accurately
tolerance	التسامح	willingness to accept differences
hesitation	تردد	delay or uncertainty
perspectives	وجهات نظر	points of view or ways of thinking
expand	يتوسع / يمتد	making something larger, or wider in size or importance
fluent	فصيح / طليق في اللغة	able to speak a language very well
exchange program	برنامج تبادلي	temporary transfer of people between locations, often involving students studying abroad
collaborate	يتعاون	to work together with a person or group in order to achieve something, especially in science or art
dedicate	يكرس	to give all your attention and effort to one particular thing
process	عملية	a series of actions that are done in order to achieve a particular result

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1

gain	يكتسب (شيئاً معنوياً / سرعة / وزناً)	He gained a lot of experience and confidence while working very hard.
win	يفوز في (مسابقة / بطولة / مباراة) / بميدالية	Our team won the football match yesterday and celebrated the big victory.
beat	يهزم / يتغلب على	She beat her opponent in the final game and won the gold medal.
earn	يكسب مائلاً (قوت يومه)	- He earned a lot of money from his job as a carpenter. - My father works hard to earn his living.

2

memory (n)	- ذاكرة (اسم لا يعد) - ذكرى (اسم يعد)	- My grandfather has a sharp memory and remembers events from his early childhood. - We shared our childhood memories together and laughed about the funny little stories.
memorial (n)	نصب تذكاري	The city built a beautiful memorial to honor soldiers who sacrificed their lives.

3	regularly (adv)	بانتظام	He goes to the gym regularly because exercise helps him stay strong and healthy.
	gradually (adv)	تدريجياً	The patient gradually recovered after the surgery and returned to normal daily activities.
4	imaginary (adj)	خيالي (غير حقيقي)	The child created an imaginary world filled with dragons, castles, and magical adventures.
	imaginative (adj)	مبدع	The imaginative writer created magical worlds that inspired children and adults.
5	personal	شخصي	He shared a personal story about his childhood that touched everyone's heart deeply.
	personnel	عامل / شؤون العاملين	The company's personnel department hired new workers and organized training for the staff.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She hopes to confidence after practicing public speaking with her classmates.
a) appear b) earn c) gain d) beat
- Our football team will the championship this year if they continue playing so well.
a) win b) gain c) beat d) earn
- Industrial production is a complicated that depends on machines and skilled factory workers.
a) surgery b) operation c) experiment d) process
- Children may invent a/an story to explain strange noises they hear during the night.
a) dedicated b) imaginative c) collaborative d) imaginary
- Traveling to Paris brought back of childhood dreams about art, culture, and beauty.
a) experiments b) memories c) memorials d) imagination
- Plants grow well if you water them and give them enough sunlight every morning.
a) gradually b) hesitantly c) creatively d) regularly

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. Athletes usually much of their time and effort to daily physical exercise.
a) tolerate b) collaborate c) dedicate d) exchange
2. Scientists from different countries will to find solutions for climate change problems.
a) collaborate b) dedicate c) tolerate d) expand
3. Nour joined a/an program to study English in America for a year.
a) process b) imaginary c) exchange d) dedication
4. The company is its business into new markets across Europe and America.
a) hesitating b) expanding c) contributing d) dedicating
5. Achieving in a language requires practice and consistent communication.
a) fluency b) perspective c) worldview d) process
6. Many people when speaking English because they fear making mistakes or being misunderstood.
a) improve b) express c) exchange d) hesitate
7. Students shared different about technology's role in education.
a) perspectives b) adjectives c) memories d) subtitles
8. Education is a complicated involving several elements عناصر.
a) tool b) experiment c) horizon d) process
9. Religious is necessary in societies to spread peace and prevent conflicts.
a) tolerance b) anger c) hesitation d) benefit
10. She had a great to solve difficult math problems fast.
a) ability b) activity c) career d) respect
11. The school organizes many such as sports, music, and drama to develop student talents.
a) abilities b) activities c) relatives d) tools
12. You should eating too much fast food if you want to stay healthy.
a) stand b) improve c) avoid d) remain
13. Regular exercise has many, including strong muscles and more energy daily.
a) activities b) situations c) experiences d) benefits
14. Traveling abroad provides students with a view of life beyond their country.
a) narrower b) personal c) broader d) digital
15. She dreams of a successful in medicine where she helps people.
a) career b) situation c) work d) horizon

16. The between the two teams was exciting and ended with a last-minute goal.
 a) discussion b) respect c) competition d) practice
17. Omar's performance in tennis is remarkable. He wins all his matches!
 a) imaginary b) consistent c) temporary d) foreign

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18. At the summer camp, children can easily friends by joining social activities.
 a) make b) give c) have d) take
19. Teachers often advice about healthy habits to students.
 a) make b) give c) have d) do
20. The rapid of cities creates many challenges like pollution and housing shortages.
 a) expand b) expansion c) expansive d) expanding
21. If you have a problem, you should speak your teacher immediately for advice.
 a) to b) for c) about d) at
22. Students are encouraged to participate science competitions.
 a) at b) in c) on d) for
23. Every student should contribute keeping the classroom clean and cozy مريح.
 a) for b) to c) on d) with
24. Artists often their ideas through painting or sculpture.
 a) control b) avoid c) forget d) remind
25. Many ancient buildings still in the city center, showing its history.
 a) remind b) disappear c) remain d) remember
26. Only a photographer can take high-quality pictures for the magazine.
 a) professional b) beginner c) passer d) volunteer

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. Learning a foreign language helps students discover new cultures. The synonyms of the word "foreign" are
 a) strange b) native c) local d) national e) external
28. Knowing about other cultures promotes a broad worldview. The synonyms of the word "broad" are
 a) vast b) narrow c) wide d) national e) limited
29. The student showed great improvement in English after practicing daily. The antonyms of the word "improvement" are
 a) development b) deterioration c) enhancement
 d) decline e) fictional
30. The school organized a campaign to promote healthy eating habits among students. The antonyms of the word "promote" are
 a) pull b) hinder c) discourage d) advance e) boost

Countable and Uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns الأسماء المعدودة

هي أسماء لها شكل مفرد أو شكل جمع، يأتي معها فعل مفرد أو جمع.

- That painting **is** beautiful.
- Those paintings **are** beautiful.

يأتي قبل الاسم المفرد منها (a/an).

- Is there **a** park here?
- He ate **an** apple.

Examples

1. Regular plural (add s)

a car	a dog	an apple
2 cars	2 dogs	2 apples

2. Nouns ending in (s, ss, sh, ch, x, z) (add es)

الجمع بإضافة **es** للأسماء المنتهية بالنهايات المذكورة.

a bus	a box	a quiz
2 buses	2 boxes	2 quizzes

3. Nouns ending in consonant + y (remove y and add ies)

الجمع بإضافة **ies** للأسماء المنتهية بـ **y** مسبوقة بحرف ساكن.

a baby	a city	a story
2 babies	2 cities	2 stories

4. Nouns ending in f/fe (remove f/fe and add ves)

بعض الأسماء المنتهية بـ **f/fe** تحذف ونضع **ves**.

a loaf	a wife	a wolf
2 loaves	2 wives	2 wolves

5. Irregular plural

الجمع غير المنتظم.

a man	a child	an ox
2 men	2 children	2 oxen

a mouse	a tooth	a goose
2 mice	2 teeth	2 geese

a woman	an oasis	a foot
2 women	2 oases	2 feet

6. No change هذه الأسماء هي مفرد وجمع في نفس الوقت.

1 sheep	1 deer	1 fish
2 sheep	2 deer	2 fish

Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

- هي أسماء لا تعد ولا تجمع، يأتي معها فعل مفرد فقط.
- Swimming **is** a popular sport.
 - That furniture **was** expensive.

لا يأتي قبلها (a/an).

- This table is made of **wood**.
- We play **football** every week.

Examples

1. Liquids

السوائل

water/coffee/oil/milk/soup/blood/tea/juice/petrol

2. Gases

الغازات

oxygen/nitrogen/hydrogen/carbon dioxide

3. Languages

اللغات

Arabic/English/French/Italian/Spanish/German

4. Meals

الوجبات

breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper

5. School subjects

المواد الدراسية

psychology/statistics/science/mathematics/physics/chemistry/biology/economics

6. Sports

الرياضات

football/dominos/billiards/tennis/gymnastics/squash/athletics/chess

7. Food

الطعام

meat/rice/butter/macaroni/cheese/sugar/salt/bread/toast/beef

8. Other nouns

أسماء أخرى لا تعد

happiness/knowledge/freedom/business/hatred/education/honesty/advice/luck/courage/sadness/fun/peace/progress/behavior/fear/confidence/help/sorrow/horror/beauty/information/homework/money

Quantifiers

تعابير الكمية (المحددات)

a lot of/much/many (كثير) – few – a few – little – a little (قليل) – some – any

Quantifier المحدد	Usage الاستخدام	Examples
a lot of/lots of + مفعول a lot بدون مفعول	في الجملة المثبتة (كثير من)	He always drinks a lot of water. He was tired because he worked a lot .
much + اسم لا يعد	في الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن في الإثبات مع there is – so – too	How much money do you need? There isn't much furniture here. There is too much sugar in the tea.
many + اسم جمع	في الجملة المنفية والسؤال من الممكن في الإثبات مع there are – so – too	How many brothers have you got? I didn't see many films, only a few. There are so many books on the desk.
a few/few + اسم جمع يعد	في الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للعدد	I have a few books here. قليل ويكفي I have few books here. قليل ولا يكفي
a little/little + اسم لا يعد	في الجملة المثبتة بمعنى قليل للكمية	I have a little money. قليل ويكفي I have little money. قليل ولا يكفي
some + عدد/كمية	في الجملة المثبتة في أسلوب العرض والطلب	I have some good friends. Would you like some soup?
any + عدد/كمية	في السؤال في الجملة المنفية	Do you want any money? There isn't any water in the bottle.

الفرق بين (a little/little) و (a few/few)

a few	قليل ويكفي (مع الأسماء المعدودة)	a little	قليل ويكفي (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة)
few	قليل ولا يكفي (مع الأسماء المعدودة)	little	قليل ولا يكفي (مع الأسماء غير المعدودة)

Mai bought **a few** bottles of water.

اشترت ماي القليل من زجاجات المياه (وتكفي).

Mai bought **few** bottles of water.

اشترت ماي القليل من زجاجات المياه (ولا تكفي).

Randa bought **a little** sugar.

اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ويكفي).

Randa bought **little** sugar.

اشترت راندا القليل من السكر (ولا يكفي).

تستخدم كلمة **only** مع **a few/a little**.

لاحظ

I bought **only a few** books.

She listened to **only a little** music.

Checkpoint 4

- The news great today. I'm over the moon.
a) are b) is
c) isn't d) has
- Would you like tea with the cake?
a) any b) a bit of
c) some d) a few
- Ali's father earns money, so he is in need of our help.
a) little b) many
c) a few d) much
- books are very useful, but others are not.
a) Any b) Some
c) A lot d) Much
- There are books available; we have 4 and we need at least 20.
a) a few b) few
c) many d) less

1. There is not much time for doing this exercise. (little)
2. The books on the shelf are not enough. (few)
3. We have hardly any money to travel. (little)
4. What is the number of students who did the homework? (many)
5. How many hours do you need to reach the airport? (much)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Radwa asked her teacher for advice about how to study well.
a) a b) an c) a few d) some
2. Would you like cup of coffee?
a) a b) any c) some d) an
3. The teacher didn't accept excuses for missing the assignment deadline.
a) some b) any c) an d) one
4. The hotel provided food. I was still hungry, but I didn't complain.
a) a few b) few c) a little d) little
5. Marwan doesn't like the city life as there is too much there.
a) voices b) noise c) cars d) shops
6. Ahmed wanted to wash his hands, so I passed him the of soap.
a) bar b) slice c) tube d) loaf
7. This car costs far too money for me to buy.
a) some b) enough c) many d) much
8. There too many passengers on the train. I can't get on it.
a) aren't b) isn't c) are d) is
9. I was served only food at the wedding.
a) a few b) few c) a little d) little
10. There are serious problems with using phones in class, but there are also advantages.
a) a little b) any c) much d) some
11. I have found a job in clothes factory.
a) an b) a c) no article d) any
12. Would you like to have help with this project?
a) a b) an c) the d) some
13. My friends managed to get a lot of useful information, but I haven't got
a) some b) many c) any d) few
14. The scientist presented interesting facts during her lecture on climate change.
a) much b) little c) some d) any
15. I don't think there are reasons to believe this rumor.
a) some b) any c) much d) few

- ▶ **16.** Can you tell me how times you have seen this film?
 a) many b) any c) much d) often
- 17.** Most of our furniture in Damietta. My father is fond of this city.
 a) are made b) is made c) makes d) is making
- 18.** Does Amgad have educational apps on his phone?
 a) an b) some c) any d) a lot
- 19.** I am going to buy bread for breakfast.
 a) a b) many c) one d) some
- 20.** I didn't get information, only a little.
 a) many b) much c) some d) any
- 21.** Lentil soup an ancient, nutritious type of Egyptian soup.
 a) are b) is c) does d) a & b
- 22.** We don't have sugar left in the kitchen.
 a) many b) much c) few d) several
- 23.** I was very angry when I found in my soup at the restaurant.
 a) any hairs b) no hairs c) a hair d) the hair
- 24.** Mr. Gamal is really professional. His experience in teaching over 20 years long.
 a) are b) is c) should d) can
- 25.** Which one of the following sentences is NOT grammatically correct?
 a) We need some water to drink during the journey.
 b) He told me an important information about the crime.
 c) I saw lots of students waiting for their results at school.
 d) I met some kind people while I was in the village.
- 26.** Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
 a) My trousers are very expensive and of a good material.
 b) Lentils soup are my favorite kind of appetisers.
 c) Gymnastics aren't easy sports as they need a lot of practice.
 d) Two hours are very long to wait for the doctor.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I have no money to help you. (... any ...)
2. There isn't much food in the kitchen. (... a little ...)
3. How often do you go to the club? (... times ...)
4. How much did you pay for the new suit? (... pounds ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Teachers should with parents to improve children's overall performance.
a) advise b) collaborate c) dedicate d) expand
2. To succeed in medicine, students must many years to studying and training.
a) dedicate b) collaborate c) borrow d) expand
3. Technology is rapidly, changing the way people communicate and share information.
a) collaborating b) competing c) dedicating d) expanding
4. Some young children achieve great in language by listening to stories.
a) fluency b) collaboration c) process d) tolerance
5. Do not to ask questions if you feel confused. You're welcome any time.
a) come b) collaborate c) hesitate d) expand
6. The hiring التوظيف includes interviews and written tests for all applicants.
a) process b) operation c) collaboration d) experiment
7. The book presents several on social media, written by several experts.
a) sights b) benefits c) perspectives d) landscapes
8. Students are asked to the new vocabulary they learn in the English class.
a) remind b) remain c) avoid d) memorize
9. Young people today are more with peers than before.
a) separated b) attached c) connected d) involved
10. Students joined a/an program that allowed them to study abroad and share experiences with local families.
a) charge b) career c) digital d) exchange
11. Using devices in classrooms can support interactive lessons.
a) cultural b) imaginary c) digital d) broad
12. Students can knowledge from reading books and watching documentaries.
a) win b) gain c) beat d) earn
13. Climate change is a issue requiring cooperation among all countries.
a) foreign b) global c) personal d) local
14. Parents should teach their children to have and respect people with different beliefs.
a) fluency b) opportunity c) tolerance d) collaboration

- 15. Reading expands your and shows you new ways of understanding the world.
 a) memory b) horizons c) relatives d) subtitles

Language

16. Nadeen didn't have time to finish her work.
 a) some b) any c) a lot d) less
17. water is wasted every day around the world, so we should be careful and use it wisely.
 a) Many b) Much c) A few d) Little
18. I'm glad that I don't have luggage; I can move easily.
 a) many b) some c) much d) a lot
19. Mariam was playing music all evening.
 a) any b) many c) a d) some
20. I don't have furniture. I feel more comfortable when the rooms aren't crowded.
 a) many b) much c) some d) a
21. Too homework can make a student to lose interest in studying.
 a) many b) much c) a lot d) few
22. There were only people in the meeting, so the manager canceled it.
 a) little b) a little c) a few d) few
23. There is hardly bread left. We need to buy
 a) any / some b) no / some c) any / a few d) many / one
24. Unfortunately, there aren't solutions to this complicated problem.
 a) some b) any c) much d) little
25. There isn't traffic on the ring road today.
 a) few b) some c) much d) many
26. **A:** How sandwiches do you want to have? **B:** Three, please.
 a) much b) many c) little d) few
27. Could you recommend good books about technology in education?
 a) few b) any c) much d) some
28. There weren't mistakes in her essay; it was almost perfect.
 a) some b) any c) a little d) much
29. I'll send you photos from the school trip later this evening.
 a) some b) any c) a d) much
30. Did you notice changes in Osama's behavior after the workshop?
 a) some b) any c) little d) many

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

anxious (adj)	قلق	confident (adj)	واثق
complicated (adj)	معقد	enriching (adj)	مثمر / مفيد

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

abroad (adv)	في الخارج	face (v) (d)	يواجه	pronunciation (n)	نطق
accidentally (adv)	بشكل عارض	greet (v) (ed)	يحيى	quick (adj)	سريع
adjust (v) (ed)	يعدل / يتكيف	happen (v) (ed)	يحدث	realize (v) (d)	يدرك
adventure (n)	مغامرة	impatient (adj)	غير صبور	receive (v) (d)	يستلم
afraid (adj)	خائف	informal (adj)	غير رسمي	show (v)	يظهر / يبين / يعرض
appreciate (v) (d)	يقدر	joy (n)	فرح / متعة	software (n)	برنامج (برمجيات)
apps (n)	تطبيقات	later (adv)	فيما بعد	solve (v) (d)	يحل
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	locals (n)	السكان المحليون	soon (adv)	قريبًا
check (n) (v) (ed)	فحص / يفحص	lose (v)	يفقد / يخسر	struggle (v) (d) (n)	يكافح / كفاح
contraction (n)	اختصار	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	subject (n)	موضوع
dictionary (n)	قاموس	nervous (adj)	متوتر	target (n) (v) (ed)	هدف / يستهدف
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	officer (n)	ضابط	trip (n)	رحلة
download (v) (ed)	يحمل / ينزل	pass (v) (ed)	يمر	understand (v)	يفهم
effective (adj)	فعال	phrase (n)	عبارة	useful (adj)	مفيد
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرج	playlist options (n)	خيارات التشغيل		
excited (adj)	متحمس	podcast (n)	بودكاست	worried (adj)	قلق
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح / يفسر	practice (v) (d) (n)	يمارس / ممارسة		

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The mother became very when her child did not return home after school.
a) anxious b) confident c) embarrassed d) relaxed
- The grammar exercise was because it had many confusing phrases.
a) easy b) useful
c) complicated d) quick
- You must be if your job requires dealing with strangers.
a) confident b) weak c) nervous d) bored
- Reading different books is a/an activity for students who want to gain more knowledge.
a) boring b) worried c) useless d) enriching
- The driver had to the mirror before starting his trip.
a) break b) adjust c) forget d) lose
- Many students use digital to practice English every day.
a) books b) pens
c) apps d) contractions
- When I traveled to Turkey, I found the very friendly and helpful.
a) subjects b) locals
c) experiences d) trips

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعابير والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

adjust to	يتأقلم / يتكيف مع	dream of	يحلم بـ	mastering new languages	إتقان لغات جديدة
afraid of	خائف بشأن	feel sure of	يتأكد من	to his surprise	لدهشته
as days passed	بمرور الأيام	fly to	يطير إلى	travel to	يسافر إلى
ask for directions	يسأل عن الاتجاهات	hope for the best	يأمل للأفضل	turn into	يتحول إلى
by the end of	قريباً نهاية	join a class	يلتحق بصف دراسي		
connect with	يتصل / يرتبط بـ	kind to	لطيف مع	write down	يدون / يكتب
deal with	يتعامل مع	miss a flight	يفوته رحلة طيران		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adjust	يضبط / يعدل	adjustment	ضبط / تعديل	adjustable adjusted	قابل للتعديل معدل
complicate	يعقد	complication	تعقيد	complicated	مُعقد
embarrass	يحرج	embarrassment	إحراج	embarrassed embarrassing	مُخْرج مُخْرج
enrich	يثري	enrichment	إثراء	enriching enriched	مثمر / مفيد مدعم / معزز
excite	يثير	excitement	إثارة	excited exciting	مثار مثير

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

- Don't **complicate** the problem; try to make it simple. (v)
- The doctor found out some **complications** during the surgery. (n)
- The puzzle is very **complicated**, and it takes a long time to solve. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
accidentally	بشكل عارض	unintentionally/by mistake		intentionally/deliberately	بشكل متعمد
difficulty	صعوبة	hardship/complication		ease/simplicity	سهولة / بساطة
effective	فعال	effectual/efficient		ineffective/ineffectual	غير فعال
impatient	غير صبور	restless/hasty		patient/calm	صبور / هادئ
joy	فرح / سعادة	happiness/delight/pleasure		sadness/sorrow/misery	حزن / أسف / يؤس
quick	سريع	rapid/fast		slow/sluggish	بطيء
worried	قلق	anxious/nervous		calm/relaxed/unworried	هادئ / مسترخ / غير قلق

2

- d) for

اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

As days passed, Ramy spoke more words, greeted locals, and even asked for directions. People appreciated his efforts and were kind to him. By the end of his trip, Ramy realized that learning English had turned his journey from a struggle into an enriching adventure.

1. Ramy's biggest problem when he first arrived in Liverpool was that he
a) lost his passport b) didn't have money
c) couldn't speak English d) missed his flight

2. At the airport, Ramy solved his problem by
a) using his phone to translate
b) showing his passport to the officers
c) speaking Arabic to the officers
d) asking another passenger to help him

3. Ramy decided to improve his English by
a) watching English movies b) downloading an English app
c) joining a class at the university d) listening to his teacher

4. After practicing English every day, Ramy became more when speaking to locals.
a) complicated b) anxious
c) confident d) enriching

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Learning any foreign language has become easier thanks to modern technology. In the past, students relied only on textbooks and classroom lessons. Today, digital tools provide many opportunities to practice and improve skills in fun and interactive ways. One of the most popular methods is using language-learning applications. These apps offer short daily lessons, vocabulary games, and much pronunciation practice. Many of them use artificial intelligence to adjust the level of difficulty according to the learner's progress. Some learners spend a little time every day, but they still make great progress. Another useful tool is online video and audio platforms. By watching movies, listening to songs, or following podcasts in the target language, learners can hear natural pronunciation and improve listening skills. Subtitles and playback options make it simple to understand and repeat. However, only a few students make full use of these options. Social media and messaging platforms also play a role. Learners can connect with native speakers around the world, exchange messages, and even join live video calls. This creates real communication opportunities without traveling abroad. But some students show little interest in using these chances effectively. Finally, translation software and online dictionaries help students check meanings quickly and build confidence. When used together, these tools turn technology into a powerful partner for mastering new languages. Even if students have few resources, modern tools can still give them much support to reach success.

Definitions

التعريفات

anxious	قلق	feeling worried, nervous, or afraid of something that might happen
complicated	معقد	not simple; difficult to understand or deal with because it has many parts
confident	واثق	feeling sure of yourself and your abilities
enriching	مثمر/مفيد	making your life better or more meaningful by giving you new knowledge, experience, or joy

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

trip رحلة قصيرة بغرض العمل أو المتعة

I'm going on a business **trip** tomorrow with the manager of the company.

journey رحلة طويلة

His **journey** across the desert was very difficult and lasted for two months.

voyage رحلة بحرية

The sailors went on a long **voyage** across the ocean.

flight رحلة طيران

We missed the **flight** and had to travel by car.

hike رحلة سيرًا على الأقدام

They preferred to rest instead of going for a **hike**.

abroad في الخارج / خارج البلاد

My daughter studied **abroad** for two years.

aboard على متن (طائرة / سفينة / قطار)

All passengers are now **aboard** the plane.

board
- لوحة / لوح (خشب أو سطح)
- مجلس / هيئة إدارية
- يصعد (على متن وسيلة نقل) كفعل

- Our teacher wrote our names on the white **board**.
- Randa is a member of the school **board**.
- We will **board** the plane after ten minutes only.

broad واسع / عريض

The river is very **broad**, so it is dangerous to swim here.

later فيما بعد / لاحقًا

I'm studying my lessons now, I'll call you **later**.

latter الأخير / الثاني

- Between tea and coffee, I prefer the **latter**.
- In the **latter** part of the year, it usually gets colder.

dream of يحلم بـ (أمنية للمستقبل)

I **dream of** becoming a doctor.

dream about يحلم بـ (أثناء النوم)

I **dreamt about** drowning in the sea.

1. Our class went on a to the museum to learn about history.

a) trip b) journey
c) voyage d) flight
2. We went on a up the mountains to enjoy the fresh air and nature.

a) journey b) flight
c) voyage d) hike
3. The from Cairo to Aswan by train takes almost fifteen hours.

a) mission b) journey
c) flight d) hike
4. My brother is studying to learn more about other cultures.

a) abroad b) aboard
c) board d) broad
5. The street was so that four cars could pass at the same time easily.

a) board b) abroad
c) aboard d) broad
6. We will have English class now and math class in the afternoon.

a) latter b) later
c) soon d) abroad
7. Between reading and writing, I prefer the because it helps me express ideas.

a) latter b) later
c) litter d) letter
8. My sister dreams getting a certificate in business.

a) in b) of
c) with d) at

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. He felt before the exam because he had not revised enough at home.
a) missed b) excited c) anxious d) patient
2. The machine is too for people to use without help from the worker.
a) confident b) modern c) complicated d) informal
3. The player felt after weeks of practice and believed he would win.
a) afraid b) tired c) confident d) anxious
4. The school trip was because it gave students new experiences.
a) enriching b) short c) confident d) empty
5. Watching movies in the language helps students improve their listening skills.
a) subject b) target c) phrase d) practice
6. He gave a answer to the question before anyone else in the classroom.
a) quick b) slow c) late d) silent
7. The teacher will your homework before the exam begins tomorrow.
a) share b) break c) ignore d) check
8. The professor told me that I couldn't use language when emailing him.
a) formal b) informal c) useful d) ineffective
9. When we were in Madrid, we asked the to explain the history of their ancient area.
a) locals b) officers c) passengers d) subjects
10. Students sometimes difficulties when they try to speak English in public.
a) hide b) run c) face d) imagine
11. The children were before the school trip to the zoo last Friday.
a) excited b) bored c) nervous d) lazy
12. Daily practice is a/an way to make progress in speaking and listening.
a) excited b) boring c) effective d) impatient
13. The teacher told the students that the exam results would be announced very
a) abroad b) soon c) later d) accidentally
14. Tamer had great understanding the complicated text without help.
a) power b) ease c) difficulty d) strength
15. Many students to pass the exam because they don't practice enough.
a) meet b) solve c) struggle d) forget

- ▶ 16. She couldn't the phrase until the teacher had explained it three times.
 a) gain b) invite c) understand d) pass
17. The little girl was when everyone laughed at her mistake during the game.
 a) embarrassed b) proud c) surprised d) brave
18. She felt as she waited for her turn to speak in the meeting.
 a) impatient b) confident c) proud d) curious



Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19. Even when situations look difficult, we should always for the best together.
 a) hope b) hop c) drive d) lose
20. The teacher asked students to quickly down every important phrase.
 a) sit b) post c) write d) stay
21. During the school trip, the lost tourists had to the locals for directions.
 a) write b) ask c) require d) greet
22. After moving to a new school, Nada could to the new environment easily.
 a) adjustable b) adjusted c) adjust d) adjustment
23. This modern chair is so you can change its height.
 a) adjusting b) adjustable c) adjust d) adjustment
24. Tomorrow, we are flying London for our summer holiday.
 a) in b) to c) at d) on
25. Nora feels sure her ability to win the race because she practiced really hard.
 a) on b) at c) of d) for
26. Many students dream becoming doctors or engineers in the future.
 a) of b) to c) with d) by

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. Exercise is effective in keeping students healthy, strong, and active. The synonyms of the word "effective" are
 a) effectual b) efficient c) ineffective d) ineffectual e) rapid
28. He shouted with joy after winning the final football game. The antonyms of the word "joy" are
 a) happiness b) delight c) sadness d) worry e) sorrow
29. Maher accidentally deleted important files from his computer last night. The synonyms of the word "accidentally" are
 a) intentionally b) unintentionally c) coincidentally
 d) deliberately e) manually
30. The student gave a quick answer before the teacher finished speaking. The antonyms of the word "quick" are
 a) rapid b) sluggish c) fast d) slow e) relaxed



Important Notes

ملاحظات هامة على المعدود وغير المعدود:

1

athletics/politics/gymnastics/mathematics/maths/news/economics/
statistics/physics/genetics/classics/electronics/a means/a species

Mathematics is my favorite subject.

Gymnastics helps us to keep fit.

بعض الكلمات في ظاهرها جمع، ولكنها تعامل معاملة المفرد:

2

police/goods/clothes/groceries

The police are looking for a man with a scar ندبة on his face.

بعض الأسماء تعامل معاملة الجمع دائماً وليس لها مفرد:

3

team/staff/family/government/company/committee/army/couple/crew/
crowd/gang/group/navy/population/university

The English staff is the best one in our school.

هناك بعض الكلمات تشير إلى مجموعة. وهذه الكلمات من الممكن أن تكون مفرداً أو جمعاً حسب المقصود منها:

كلمة staff مفرد لأن المقصود بها القسم كواحد من ضمن الأقسام في المدرسة.

The English staff in our school are all wonderful.

وهنا جمع لأننا نقصد مجموعة المدرسين في القسم.

4

هناك كلمات أخرى يمكن أن تكون countable أو uncountable مع اختلاف المعنى مثل:

paper – glass – coffee – time – cold – light – hair – iron – chicken

I'd like some writing paper.

(ورق الكتاب / لا يعد)

I'm going to buy a paper. (= a newspaper)

صحيفة (تعد)

The window's made of unbreakable glass.

(الزجاج / لا يعد)

Would you like a glass of water?

كوب

Have you got any coffee?

القهوة (سائل لا يعد)

Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)

فنجان قهوة (يعد)

Do you like chicken? (= chicken meat)

لحم الدجاج

We bought a chicken.

دجاجة

I work for a big company.

شركة (اسم يعد)

I hope to have good company.

صُحبة (اسم لا يعد)

تعتبر المبالغ المالية / الفترات الزمنية / المسافات شيئاً واحداً؛ لذا تعامل معاملة المفرد:

- Ten million pounds **is** a lot of money.
- Five hours **is** a long time to do this.

هناك كلمات مثل **trousers/glasses/shoes/gloves/scissors** تعامل معاملة الجمع. أما إذا جاء قبلها **a pair of** فتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- My **trousers are** of a good material and they don't cost much.
- A pair of trousers is** very expensive if it is imported from abroad.

من الممكن استخدام ألفاظ التجزئة مع الكميات لتحويلها إلى اسم يعد (وهنا يمكن جمع أداة التجزئة ولا يمكن جمع اسم الكمية).

a piece of jewelry

a piece of luggage

a slice of cake/cheese

a jar of jam

a glass of lemonade

a bar of soap

a bottle of milk

a piece of advice

a piece of furniture

a piece of information

a loaf of bread

a cup of coffee

a tube of toothpaste

a sheet of paper

a bar of chocolate

a bag of chips

تستخدم **many** مع **so/too**

تستخدم **much** مع **so/too/very**

تستخدم **such** مع **a lot of**

- There are **so many** people in the party.
- There is **too much** pollution in the city.
- I met **such a lot of** people yesterday.

لاحظ

تستخدم **too** في الحالات السلبية لبيان أن الكمية غير مرغوب فيها.

- There are **too** many cats in the club. That's bothering.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Mathematics not very easy to understand.
a) are b) were c) is d) has
2. Three hundred pounds enough for this shirt.
a) are b) have c) is d) were
3. My trousers some holes in them.
a) has b) have c) is d) are
4. I got a very important of information when I interviewed the scientist.
a) bar b) jar c) slice d) piece
5. There are many beautiful flowers in the garden.
a) such b) so
c) very d) all are correct

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

- ▶ 1. How much meat can you eat? (many)
.....
2. There is much bread in the fridge. (many)
.....
3. There are many slices of meat on this plate. (much)
.....
4. Can I have some tea, please? (cup)
.....
5. I heard some good news from my friends. (The news ...)
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My father asked me to buy a of jam.
 a) tube b) bar c) piece d) jar
2. Three hours a long time to wait for her to come.
 a) is b) are c) have been d) were
3. I want you to enjoy your trip and have good time.
 a) many b) a c) a few d) any
4. A: coffee have you drunk today? B: Two cups.
 a) How many b) How much c) How d) How long
5. A: coffees have you drunk today? B: Two cups.
 a) How many b) How much c) How d) How long
6. If you want to know the news, you can read it in
 a) much paper b) paper c) some paper d) the papers
7. My family arguing over where they'll meet next Friday.
 a) is b) are c) no word d) a & b
8. Five million pounds too much money for this villa.
 a) is b) is being c) are d) are being
9. My son bought a new pair of shoes which very expensive.
 a) are b) were c) was d) a & b
10. Everyone knows that athletics us fit and healthy.
 a) keep b) are keeping c) keeps d) a & c
11. A bag of money from my father while he was walking last night.
 a) was stolen b) is stolen c) were stolen d) are stolen
12. Fortunately, the news as bad as we had expected.
 a) wasn't b) weren't c) haven't been d) don't
13. The police searching for the murderer.
 a) is b) was c) are d) have
14. I bought a of toothpaste last night.
 a) sheet b) slice c) jar d) tube
15. The sheep hungry. The shepherd الراعي didn't feed them for long.
 a) are b) is c) has d) have

16. My football team all still students in secondary education.
 a) is b) have c) are d) was
17. I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of
 a) papers b) paper c) a paper d) many papers
18. Ten kilometers a long way to run.
 a) have b) been c) is d) are
19. Would you like cup of tea?
 a) a b) any c) some d) an
20. One of the players in the blue team very tall.
 a) are b) is c) be d) is being
21. Five thousand pounds in the robbery.
 a) were stolen b) had stolen c) have stolen d) was stolen
22. A: Can I borrow your scissors? B: Mine sharp enough.
 a) isn't b) doesn't c) aren't d) don't
23. The train is of transport. I really like using it.
 a) means b) the means c) a means d) some means
24. The police to question يستجوب two men about the robbery.
 a) want b) wants c) has wanted d) is wanted

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. Could you give me an advice? (.....)
2. I have a good news for you. (.....)
3. How many money do you need? (.....)
4. There is a few water left in the bottle. (.....)
5. I only have a little friends here. (.....)

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Some people feel when they travel alone to a foreign country; they look worried in the beginning.
a) confident b) sleepy c) angry d) anxious
2. The instructions were so that nobody in the class could understand them.
a) informal b) complicated c) simple d) meaningful
3. Volunteering can be a/an experience that teaches kindness and teamwork.
a) nervous b) embarrassing c) enriching d) quick
4. Her brother is studying because he wants more knowledge and experience.
a) abroad b) later c) soon d) outside
5. The teacher will students how to use the new digital board.
a) hide b) ask c) show d) pass
6. The guide will the reasons for building the castle during the trip.
a) explain b) face c) solve d) adjust
7. The man was while waiting in the long line at the shop. He kept looking at his watch.
a) patient b) embarrassed c) relaxed d) impatient
8. She felt when she forgot her words while speaking in front of the class.
a) embarrassed b) confident c) calm d) proud
9. We will read a new story today and write about it
a) later b) latter c) nearby d) lately
10. He pressed the wrong button and deleted the important apps.
a) accidentally b) quickly c) suddenly d) carefully
11. She was happy to an email from her best friend living abroad.
a) send b) lose c) receive d) skip
12. Students can English songs to practice listening at home.
a) delete b) lose c) download d) upload
13. Daily will help you improve your English speaking and writing skills.
a) rest b) practice c) adventure d) fun

- 14. Ashraf learned some basic to help him deal with people abroad.
a) letters b) songs c) phrases d) lines
15. The manager will new employees on the first day of work.
a) greet b) ignore c) realize d) show

Language

16. trousers very expensive.
a) This / are b) These / is c) These / are d) That / is
17. I'd like a of coffee, please.
a) cup b) much c) few d) piece
18. Can you give me a of paper?
a) part b) much c) little d) sheet
19. I have homework to do tonight before visiting my grandfather.
a) many b) a c) a lot of d) few
20. Fifteen pounds is not enough to buy this of toothpaste.
a) pair b) cup c) bottle d) tube
21. There isn't milk left.
a) much b) many c) a lot of d) few
22. I have free time today, so I can help you with your homework.
a) a few b) a little c) many d) few
23. Could you give me advice on how to solve this problem?
a) a piece of b) a bar of c) many d) any
24. My trousers torn at the knee.
a) is b) has c) are d) was
25. There isn't petrol left in the car.
a) any b) some c) few d) many
26. I bought pairs of shoes during the sale.
a) a little b) less c) much d) a few
27. Statistics an important subject for business students.
a) are b) is c) were d) have
28. I need to bring bread for dinner.
a) a loaf of b) a glass of c) a slice of d) a piece of
29. There are many benefits of technology in education.
a) too b) so c) such d) very
30. Your clothes on the table now, my son.
a) is b) are c) were d) a & b



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Writing

tips

كتابة الإيميل (رسالة بريد إلكتروني) Writing an email

	Formal email	Informal email
Greeting التحية	Dear Mr. Ali,/Dear Ms. Ashraf,	Hi Sara,/Hello John,
Language اللغة	Polite, no contractions اختصارات (cannot NOT can't; I am NOT I'm).	Friendly, relaxed, contractions are okay (I'll, can't, don't).
Purpose الغرض	Official matters أمور رسمية like school, work, teachers, managers, applications.	Chatting, inviting friends, sharing news, casual updates.
Style الأسلوب	Clear, respectful, structured منسق.	Personal, warm, less strict.
Closing الخاتمة	Sincerely,/Kind regards,	See you soon,/Best wishes,/Love,

MODEL ESSAY

Formal email model

Subject: Apology for Missing Online Class
Dear Miss Salma,

I hope you are doing well. I am writing to sincerely apologize for not attending yesterday's online English class.

Unfortunately, I had a technical problem with my internet connection, and I could not join the session on time.

I will review the slides and notes that you shared, and I will complete all assigned work before the next session.

Please let me know if there are any additional tasks I should do to catch up. Thank you very much for your understanding and support.

Kind regards,
Omar Ahmed
Grade 10

Informal email model

Subject: Weekend Trip Invitation
Hi Karim,

I hope you are doing well. I'm writing to invite you to join me on a weekend trip to Alexandria. I think it will be a great chance to relax, enjoy the sea, and spend some fun time together.

We are planning to go on Friday morning and come back on Saturday evening. We can visit the library, walk along the Corniche, and of course, eat some delicious seafood. Don't forget to bring your camera, comfortable shoes, and a light jacket.

I'm sure this trip will be full of good memories, and it won't be the same without you.

Please let me know as soon as possible if you can come.

Best wishes, Ahmed

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

At GEM Secondary School, technology plays a huge role in daily learning. Students use tablets for assignments, interactive quizzes, and research projects. Smartboards have replaced traditional chalkboards, making lessons more engaging and productive. Teachers say these tools strengthen concentration and encourage students to stay motivated.

However, some teachers worry that too much screen time may cause distraction and reduce face-to-face interaction. "We must find a balance," says Mr. Hassan, the school's IT coordinator. "Technology is useful, but overuse can lead to isolation." To help, the school introduced 'Tech-Free Tuesdays,' when students complete activities without any digital devices.

Last month, a survey asked students whether they preferred digital learning or traditional methods. About 60% enjoyed using apps and online resources, while 40% felt that books and group discussions were more effective. Both groups agreed that technology should support—not replace—real-world communication.

Next year, the school plans to launch an AI-based learning assistant. It will recommend study materials, collect progress data, and help students prepare for exams. Still, the principal insists that human teachers will remain essential. "AI can assist, but it cannot replace empathy or personal guidance," she explains.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
 - Students dislike traditional learning.
 - AI will replace teachers next year.
 - The school uses technology, but encourages balance.
 - Technology has completely replaced books at GEM Secondary School.
- There is a 'Tech-Free' day at the school on
 - Wednesday
 - Tuesday
 - Friday
 - Monday
- Which sentence best summarizes the passage?
 - The school blends technology with traditional methods.
 - The school uses only AI for teaching.
 - The school bans all technology.
 - Students dislike technology.
- AI-based learning assistant is designed to
 - entertain students
 - reduce homework
 - help with study materials and progress tracking
 - replace teachers

5. Based on the passage, what might happen if screen time is not limited?

- a) Students may become isolated.
- b) Books will become more popular.
- c) Students will improve their concentration.
- d) AI will be banned.

6. How do students' opinions differ about learning methods?

- a) All dislike group discussions.
- b) Some prefer apps, others prefer books.
- c) All prefer books.
- d) All prefer technology.

7. The principal believes teachers are still essential because they

- a) know more facts than AI
- b) use more apps
- c) work faster than AI
- d) provide empathy and guidance

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Learning a foreign language is more than just memorizing words and grammar rules. It is a key that opens doors to new cultures, ideas, and experiences. When people learn another language, they can communicate with people from different countries, which helps them understand how others think and live. For example, someone who speaks Spanish can travel to Spain or Latin American countries and connect with locals easily.

Language learning also improves career opportunities. Many companies look for employees who can speak more than one language. This skill allows workers to handle international clients, attend global meetings, and work in different countries. Moreover, learning a language can make traveling easier and more enjoyable because travelers can read signs, ask questions, and understand local traditions.

Besides practical benefits, learning a language increases cultural awareness. Students discover new music, movies, books, and foods from other countries. They learn to respect different traditions and develop a more open mind. In short, knowing a foreign language enriches personal life, strengthens relationships, and creates professional possibilities.

Anyone who starts learning a new language gains a broader view of the world. It is not only about words; it is about connecting with people, exploring new ideas, and opening doors to exciting opportunities.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is: ".....".

- a) Learning a foreign language is difficult.
- b) Learning a foreign language opens up cultures and opportunities.
- c) Traveling is the best way to learn.
- d) Grammar rules are important.

2. What does "enriches" mean in the passage?

- a) Makes worse.
- b) Improves or adds value.
- c) Hides.
- d) Loses.

3. The author wants to:
- encourage people to travel
 - explain the benefits of learning foreign languages
 - teach grammar rules
 - compare countries
4. Which of these is a cultural benefit mentioned?
- a better pay.
 - understanding traditions.
 - attending meetings.
 - traveling cheaply.
5. The passage suggests that learning a language can improve relationships because
- people become smarter
 - people can connect and communicate with more people
 - people travel more
 - people read books faster
6. The phrase "strengthens relationships" implies that:
- learning a language helps people communicate better
 - language learning makes people physically stronger
 - people argue less
 - people travel less
7. "Besides practical benefits, learning a language increases cultural awareness." What does awareness mean in this sentence?
- Ignorance.
 - Understanding and knowledge.
 - Memory.
 - Traveling.

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Scientists make achievements and advances which help us to cope with the changes in our world.

- يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تعوقنا عن التعامل مع التغيرات في عالمنا.
- العلم يقوم بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات في عالمنا.
- يقوم العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات في عالمنا.
- قام العلماء بإنجازات واكتشافات تساعدنا على التعامل مع التغيرات في عالمنا.

2. Legal immigration is every citizen's right, but illegal immigration exposes them to a lot of risks.

- إن الهجرة الشرعية هي حق لكل مواطن وأيضاً الهجرة غير الشرعية التي تُعرض حياتهم للكثير من المخاطر.
- إن الهجرة الشرعية هي صحيح لكل مواطن، ولكن الهجرة غير الشرعية تُعرض حياتهم لبعض المخاطر.
- إن الهجرة الشرعية هي حق لكل المواطنين، ولكن الهجرة غير الشرعية تُعرض حياتهم للكثير من الآلام.
- إن الهجرة الشرعية هي حق لكل مواطن، ولكن الهجرة غير الشرعية تُعرض حياتهم للكثير من المخاطر.

3. Modern technology plays an important role in bringing people together. It also helps us to achieve work quickly and easily.

- (a) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا هامًا في تجميع الناس معًا، وتساعد أيضًا في إنجاز العمل بجودة وبسرعة.
 (b) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا هامًا في تشجيع الناس معًا، وتساعد أيضًا في إنجاز العمل بسرعة وببساطة.
 (c) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا هامًا في تجميع الناس معًا، وتساعدنا أيضًا في إنجاز العمل بسرعة وببساطة.
 (d) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا كبيرًا في تجميع الناس معًا، وتساعد أيضًا في تقديم العمل بسرعة وبسهولة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. يجب على كل فرد تعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت؛ لأن الحياة أصبحت معتمدة عليهما بشكل أساسي.
- a) Everyone should teach computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
 b) Should everyone learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
 c) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become independent on them mainly.
 d) Everyone should learn computer and internet skills because life has become dependent on them mainly.
5. سأقابل صديقي أحمد غدًا في الساعة العاشرة مساءً، لم أره منذ فترة طويلة وأفتقده بشدة.
- a) I'll see my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 in the evening. I haven't seen him for long, and I lose him so long.
 b) I'm going to meet my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 a.m. I didn't see him for long, and I missed him so much.
 c) I meet my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 p.m. I haven't seen him for long, and I'm missing him so much.
 d) I'm seeing my friend, Ahmed, tomorrow at 10 p.m. I haven't seen him for long, and I miss him so much.
6. المواطنة تعني أن يتساوى أبناء الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق وما عليهم من واجبات.
- a) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and homework.
 b) Citizenship means that the people of the one country are equal in terms of their laws and duties.
 c) Citizenship means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their rights and duties.
 d) Membership means that the people of the same country are equal in terms of their truths and duties.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"The effects of social media on real-life relations"

Enrich your vocabulary

achievements	إنجازات	surgery	الجراحة	industry	الصناعة
legal immigration	الهجرة الشرعية	cope with	يواكب	citizenship	المواطنة



Vocabulary

1 Match the words in the box with the definitions:

1. fluency	a) willingness to accept differences
2. tolerance	b) points of view or ways of thinking
3. hesitation	c) making something larger, or wider in size or importance
4. perspectives	d) ability to speak a language easily and accurately
5. expanding	e) delay or uncertainty

2 Match the words in the box with the definitions:

1. anxious	a) feeling sure of yourself and your abilities
2. complicated	b) not simple; difficult to understand or deal with because it has many parts
3. confident	c) feeling worried, nervous, or afraid about something that might happen
4. enriching	d) making your life better or more meaningful by giving you new knowledge, experience, or joy

Language

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- I need an advice. (.....)
- She has many luggages. (.....)
- Can I have two breads? (.....)
- I have a news for you. (.....)
- How many money? (.....)
- She has long hairs. (.....)

4 Complete the following sentences using "some, any, much, many, a few, a little":

- I don't have homework today.
- There are cars on the street, around a thousand.
- My brother has close friends; only 2.

- 5** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ## تطبيق الضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد للاختبارات الشهور مع الأعضاء من خلال تحميل ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.





1 Finish the following dialog:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about their plans for the vacation.

Ahmed : Where are you going to spend your vacation, Ali?

Ali : (1).....

Ahmed : (2).....?

Ali : I will go with my family.

Ahmed : (3).....?

Ali : I'm going to stay there for two weeks.

Ahmed : Have a nice vacation!

Ali : (4).....

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Angels have roles.

a) the same

b) no

c) similar

d) different

2. Angels record the of humans.

a) diaries

b) deads

c) dears

d) deeds

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. How do angels differ from humans?

.....

4. What were angels created for?

.....

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

The great development in industry has led to an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide, and this has led to climate change and global warming.

.....

(B) Translate into English:

توزن أعمال الناس يوم القيامة، فمن غلبت حسناته سيئاته كان من الفائزين.

.....

► Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

- The teacher noticed great improvement in her students' level. The synonyms of the word "improvement" are
a) development b) deterioration c) decline d) excitement e) enhancement
- She became impatient because she'd been waiting for ages! The antonyms of the word "impatient" are
a) hasty b) patient c) restless d) calm e) slow

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Learning English can be a for students who do not practice every day.
a) struggle b) dream c) story d) trip
- After years of study, she became in English and spoke confidently.
a) fluent b) worldwide c) multicultural d) patient
- The coach discussed all the of the team, then took a decision.
a) perspectives b) languages c) relatives d) cultures
- Living with people from different countries teaches students the importance of
a) tolerance b) benefit c) leisure d) wealth
- We really your help because it made the homework easier.
a) receive b) think c) measure d) appreciate
- The teacher gave a explanation that helped students understand the text.
a) complicated b) nervous c) worldwide d) meaningful
- Physics the study of natural laws.
a) has b) are c) were d) is
- We still need volunteers to help with the charity event this weekend.
a) some b) a c) a few d) many
- If you have advice, please I need your help.
a) some b) any c) few d) little
- I was so thirsty and asked for of water.
a) the glass b) pair of glass c) a little d) a glass
- Hatem didn't show interest in class, so the teacher asked him to participate **شارك** more.
a) many b) much c) few d) little
- I have only money for the trip; I need to borrow more.
a) a little / some b) little / some c) a few / no d) a little/ no

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

'Haya Karima' (which means 'Decent Life') is a national initiative recently launched as a national project aiming to improve the quality of life for the people in the Egyptian countryside and raise the efficiency of the services provided to them. Most villages in Egypt suffer from a shortage of some development services and facilities, such as clean water networks, sanitation, gas, electricity, schools, and hospitals.

The initiative focuses on developing agricultural projects in various areas in Egypt. It provides marketing and investment solutions to these lands in addition to all relevant businesses associated with the project, including the division of lands and offering these lands to investors, small farmers, and the youth for the cultivation and development of these lands. The aim is to achieve sustainable development in this area through developing regional communities and attracting Egyptian investors and small farmers, and youths to live and work in there.

Regarding the countryside development, Egypt seeks to treat the wastewater that is dumped into the sea or lakes. The treated water will then be reused in new projects across Sinai. Thus, a total of 100,000 feddans will be ready for agricultural use in Sinai using the treated water.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. Which one is a suitable title for the passage?

a) Cultivating lands b) Haya Karima, a decent life

c) Treating wastewater d) Getting investors
16. According to the text, 100,000 feddans will be ready for agricultural use in Sinai if

a) sea water is used b) we dug a canal by the Nile

c) wastewater is treated d) water is wasted
17. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the

a) lands b) investors c) projects d) people
18. The underlined word "associated" means

a) connected b) organized c) excited d) relaxed
19. According to the passage, the project of Haya Karima

a) won't be helpful to the Egyptians b) aims to improve the countryside

c) aims to improve the city d) aims to build a new community
20. Pick a word from the text that means 'environmentally friendly'

a) launched b) national c) dumped d) sustainable
21. In your opinion, to attract Egyptian investors, the project must

a) give them the land for nothing b) provide them with gas

c) achieve sustainable development d) treat wastewater for them

► 22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– تعتبر القراءة من الوسائل الرئيسية والأساسية لنهضة مختلف الشعوب والحضارات.

- a) Reading is one of the main and essential means of the renaissance of difficult peoples and civilizations.
- b) Consider reading is one of the mean and essential mains for the renaissance of different peoples and civilizations.
- c) Reading is one of the main and essential means for the progress of difference peoples and cultures.
- d) Reading is considered one of the main and essential means of the renaissance of different peoples and civilizations.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- I'm traveling to France tomorrow morning, and I may stay for two weeks.
I'm going to communicate with you through video calls.

- a) سأسافر إلى فرنسا صباح الغد، ومن الممكن أن أمكث أسبوعين، وسأتواصل معك عبر مكالمات الفيديو.
- b) يحتمل أن أسافر إلى فرنسا غدًا في الصباح، وسأمكث أسبوعين، وسأتصل بك عبر التليفون الفيديو.
- c) أنا أنوي أن أسافر فرنسا بعد أسبوعين، وسأتواصل معك عبر مكالمات الفيديو.
- d) أنا أسافر إلى فرنسا الآن، ويحتمل أن أمكث أسبوعين، وسأتواصل معك عبر مكالمات الفيديو.

► 24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was the old man sad for the fish when it was dead?

.....

2. Do you think the old man will stop fishing? Why/Why not?

.....

3. Why do you think the old man talked to the fish?

.....

► 25. Write a (120 -150) word informal email to your friend:

"Inviting them to your birthday party"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 6

Job Hunting



Learning Outcomes

- Reading**
- Analyze texts to identify the main ideas about the modern job market, including digital platforms and networking.
 - Infer the meaning of specialized vocabulary (e.g., resume, polished, footprint, generic) from context clues within an article.
 - Identify the key sections and purpose of a resume or Curriculum Vitae (CV).
- Listening**
- Identify key ideas from a career coach's talk.
 - Recognize specific advice from a career coach's talk.
 - Extract details about skills, opportunities, and career advice from an audio track.
- Language**
- Correctly use definite and indefinite articles ("a, an, "the") and know when no article is needed.
 - Identify and correct grammatical mistakes related to article usage in sentences.
 - Use action verbs to describe job experience in a CV.
- Speaking**
- Express opinions on various aspects of job hunting, such as the importance of grades versus experience.
 - Engage in role-play scenarios, such as a job search simulation or a mock interview, to practice professional communication.
 - Apply interview strategies like the STAR Method to answer behavioral questions effectively.
- Writing**
- Compose a well-structured and professional CV, including personal information, education, and relevant skills.
 - Draft a short paragraph about job hunting or internships.
 - Summarize an article or talk about volunteering in a concise manner.

A

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

association (n) منظمة / جمعية	footprint (n) بصمة	mentor (n) مرشد
attitude (n) اتجاه / شعور / موقف	generic (adj) عام	polished (adj) لامع / جذاب
check-ins (n) اجتماعات متابعة	implementing (n) تنفيذ / تطبيق	resume (n) سيرة ذاتية
clear-headed (adj) صافى الذهن	impressive (adj) مؤثر / مُبهر	silos (n) صوامع (فرق منفصلة)
common ground (n) أرضية مشتركة	independently (adv) بشكل مستقل	stakeholders (n) مساهمون
department (n) قسم	innovative (adj) مبدع / مبتكر	trends (n) اتجاهات / ترندات

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

application (n) طلب توظيف	highlight (v) (ed) يظهر / يبرز	relationship (n) علاقة
assessment (n) تقييم	hire (v) (d) يوظف	relevant (adj) ذات صلة
behavioral (adj) سلوكي	hunt (n) (v) (ed) بحث / يبحث	response (n) استجابة
candidate (n) مرشح	interview (n) مقابلة شخصية / حوار	regular (adj) منتظم
challenging (adj) صعب / متحدّ	involve (v) (d) يُشرك	round (n) جولة
client (n) عميل / زبون	keyword (n) كلمة مفتاحية	sample (n) عينة / نموذج
conferences (n) مؤتمرات	long-term (adj) طويل المدى	screen (v) (ed) يتصفح / يتحرى (عن موبيل أو جهاز)
colleague (n) زميل	launch (v) (ed) (n) يطلق / إطلاق	seek (v) يبحث عن
crisis (n) أزمة	maintain (v) (ed) يحافظ على / يواصل	session (n) جلسة
currently (adv) حالياً	modify (v) (ied) يعدل	specific (adj) محدد
customize (v) (d) يخصص	multiple (adj) متعدد	strategy (n) استراتيجية
deadline (n) الموعد النهائي	networking (n) تواصل	strength (n) قوة / نقاط قوة
decade (n) عقد (عشر سنوات)	position (n) وظيفة / منصب	submit (v) (ted) يرسل
employment (n) توظيف	presence (n) حضور	updated (adj) مُحدث
event (n) حدث	professional (adj) مهني / احترافي	
format (n) شكل / تنسيق	profile (n) ملف الشخصي	weakness (n) ضعف / نقاط ضعف
former (adj) سابق	recommendation (n) توصية	

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The restaurant wants to its menu to include more foreign dishes.
a) shrink b) expand c) hire d) seek
2. A homeowners' is a group of people in a neighborhood who work together to keep the area nice.
a) association b) concert c) charity d) battle
3. Before the job interview, make sure your has no spelling mistakes.
a) appearance b) challenge c) report d) resume
4. Our football team's comeback in the final minutes was very
a) impressed b) boring c) impressive d) reflective
5. The company chose only two of the job to come back for a second interview.
a) candidates b) employers c) bosses d) designers
6. When searching for information online, use a specific to find relevant results quickly.
a) icon b) trend c) keyword d) keyboard
7. Dalia applied for a/an as a marketing manager at the new company.
a) building b) position c) meeting d) award
8. The company developed a new marketing to increase sales during the holiday season.
a) budget b) ground c) product d) strategy

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

achieve goals يحقق الأهداف	keep a positive attitude يحافظ على موقف إيجابي	over the past decade خلال العقد الماضي
apply to يتقدم بطلب لـ	land the right opportunity يغتنم الفرصة المناسبة	stay calm يحافظ على الهدوء
bring people together يجمع الناس معاً	learn from يتعلم من	specialize in يتخصص في
focus on يركز على	make contact يقوم بالتواصل	spend too much time on يقضي وقتاً طويلاً في
get the right job يحصل على الوظيفة المناسبة	make or break your chances يُنجح أو يُفشل فرصك	walk into يدخل إلى
give way to يفسح المجال لـ	meet a tight deadline يلتزم بموعد نهائي صعب	worked under pressure عمل تحت ضغط
in the long run على المدى البعيد	methods of طرق لـ	working in silos العمل بشكل منفصل / معزول

Special job Collocations

career coach	مدرب / مستشار مهني	dream job	وظيفة الأحلام	job postings	إعلانات الوظائف
career goals	أهداف مهنية	industry event	فعاليات في مجال العمل	job seekers	الباحثون عن عمل
cross-department projects	مشاريع مشتركة بين الأقسام	job description	وصف الوظيفة	phone screenings	اختبارات هاتفية
customer engagement	تفاعل العملاء	job hunter	الباحث عن عمل	video interview	مقابلات فيديو
digital footprint	البصمة الرقمية	job market	سوق العمل		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
-----		profession	مهنة	professional	مهني / محترف
apply	يتقدم لوظيفة	application applicant	طلب متقدم بطلب	applicable	ملائم / قابل للتطبيق
assess	يقيم	assessment assessor	تقييم مقيم	assessable	قابل للتقييم
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor competitiveness	منافسة منافس القدرة التنافسية	competitive	تنافسي
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب عمل	employed employable	موظف قابل للتوظيف
impress	يؤثر / يبهر	impression	تأثير / انطباع	impressive impressed	مؤثر / مبهر متأثر
innovate	يبتكر	innovation innovator	تقييم مقيم	innovative innovatory	مبتكر مبتكر
modify	يعدل	modification	تعديل	modified	معدل
polish	يصفق / يحسن	polishing	صفق / تحسين	polished	مُصفق / مُحسن
qualify	تأهل	qualification qualifier	مؤهل مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
respond	يستجيب	response	استجابة	responsive	متجاوب

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

The customer service team will **respond** to your inquiry within 24 hours. (v)
Her thoughtful **response** to the difficult question impressed the interviewer. (n)
The new smartphone is highly **responsive** to touch commands, making it a joy to use. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
customize	يخصص	personalize/modify		standardize/uniformize	يوحد
generic	عام	general/universal		specific/unique	محدد/فريد
highlight	يبرز	emphasize/spotlight		downplay/minimize	يقلل
impressive	مؤثر/مبهر	remarkable/awesome		ordinary/dull	عادي/ممل
independently	بشكل مستقل	autonomously/separately		dependently/jointly	مشتركًا
innovative	مبتكر	pioneering/creative		conventional/traditional	تقليدي
modify	يعدل	alter/adjust		preserve/maintain	حفظ/صيانة
polished	لامع/جذاب	shining/elegant		dull/rough	خام/باهت/غير مصقول
professional	مهني	expert/skilled		amateur/unskilled	هاوي/غير ماهر
specific	محدد	precise/exact		vague/general	غامض/عام
updated	محدث	modernized/current		outdated/old	قديم

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sarah studied for long hours every night to her goal of getting into a good university.
a) achieve b) design c) derive d) detect
- The small shops in the city will way to big supermarkets over time.
a) reply b) do c) give d) take
- The team had to work overtime to the deadline for the important project.
a) play b) make c) have d) meet
- After finishing high school, Maria decided to apply three different universities.
a) to b) in c) for d) with

5. The company's digital helped them serve customers much better.
 a) transformed b) transformation c) transformer d) transforming
6. She is highly for the teaching job because she has ten years of experience.
 a) qualify b) qualification c) qualifier d) qualified
7. The school uses traditional teaching methods instead of new technology.
 The antonym of the adjective "traditional" is " ".
 a) conventional b) worthless c) outdated d) modern

Reading Text



اقرأ القطعة ثم اجب عن
الأسئلة للتدريب على أسئلة
قطعة الفهم.

The Modern Job Hunt

The job market has transformed greatly over the past decade. Traditional methods of finding employment—such as reading a newspaper or walking into offices with a resume in hand—have largely given way to digital platforms and networking strategies.

Today's job seekers must maintain a professional online presence. This means having an updated LinkedIn profile, a polished resume, and sometimes even a personal website showing their skills. Employers often screen candidates online before making contact, so your digital footprint can make or break your chances.

Many positions are filled through personal connections rather than public job postings. Attending industry events, joining professional associations, and maintaining relationships with former colleagues can open doors that traditional applications cannot.

The days of sending the same generic resume to multiple employers are gone. Successful job hunters modify their applications to each specific role, highlighting relevant experience and using keywords from the job description. This personalized approach increases the chances of getting noticed.

Modern interviews often involve multiple rounds, including phone screenings, and video interviews. Some companies even use skills-based assessments or ask candidates to complete sample projects. Being prepared for various interview formats is essential.

The job search process can be challenging. It's not uncommon for qualified candidates to apply to dozens of positions before landing the right opportunity. Keeping a positive attitude and learning from each experience is important for long-term success.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is one old way of looking for a job?
 a) Going to an industry event. b) Posting on LinkedIn.
 c) Reading a newspaper. d) Sending a special resume.

2. What should job seekers do online to look professional?
- a) Buy things online.
 - b) Have an updated LinkedIn profile.
 - c) Play video games.
 - d) Not use the internet.
3. How are many jobs filled today?
- a) By mailing a resume to a company.
 - b) By using friends and people you know.
 - c) By only looking at public job ads.
 - d) By going to every office in town.
4. What does "personalized approach" mean for a resume?
- a) Sending the same one to everyone.
 - b) Sending it without your name.
 - c) Making it different for each job.
 - d) Printing it on special paper.

Listening Text



Scan & listen



Extract 1

Interviewer : What would you say is your greatest strength?

Candidate : My greatest strength is teamwork. In my last role, I led a project that brought together different departments like marketing, IT, and sales. By listening to concerns and finding common ground, we avoided working in silos, improved communication, and achieved an impressive 25% increase in customer engagement.

Interviewer : And what is an area you'd like to improve?

Candidate : Sometimes I spend too much time on details. I'm working on focusing on the bigger picture more quickly and trusting my team to work more independently while I support them with regular check-ins.

Extract 2

Interviewer : Tell me about a time you worked under pressure.

Candidate : A main client nearly canceled their contract two days before a product launch. I organized an emergency meeting with all the stakeholders, made a detailed action plan, and coordinated directly with the client. By implementing the plan step by step and finding innovative solutions, we saved the contract and even expanded it by 15%.

Interviewer : How did you handle the stress?

Candidate : I broke the problem into small tasks, kept everyone informed with quick check-ins, and took short breaks to stay clear-headed.

Extract 3

Interviewer : Where do you see yourself in five years?

Candidate : I want to develop leadership skills, specialize in digital marketing, and be a mentor to others. I'm currently studying digital marketing, leading training sessions, and attending conferences to keep up with AI and new trends.

Definitions

association	منظمة / جمعية	a group of people with a common purpose
attitude	اتجاه / شعور / موقف	the way of thinking about something; how you react to people or situations
check-ins	اجتماعات متابعة	short meetings or updates to see how things are going
clear-headed	واضح	staying calm and thinking clearly
common ground	أرضية مشتركة	shared ideas or interests that bring people together
department	قسم	a section of a company or organization that deals with a specific job
footprint	بصمة	the mark or impact something leaves behind
generic	عامة	general or plain; not special or specific
implementing	تنفيذ / تطبيق	putting a plan, idea, or system into action
impressive	مؤثر / مبههر	something that makes you feel admiration because it is very good or skillful
independently	بشكل مستقل	doing something on your own, without needing help or control from others
innovative	مبدع / مبتكر	using new and creative ideas to solve problems or make things better
mentor	مرشد	a person who guides and supports someone less experienced
polished	لامع / جذاب	made to look smooth, professional, or refined; something that has been improved to look better
resume	سيرة ذاتية	a document that lists your work experience, education, and skills, used when applying for jobs
silos	صوامع (فرق منفصلة)	teams or departments that work in isolation, not sharing information with others
stakeholders	مساهمون	people or groups who care about or are affected by a company or project
trends	اتجاهات	current directions or changes in an industry

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

impressive

مؤثر (يوحى بالإعجاب)

Seeing the Pyramids for the first time was really **impressive**.

moving

مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)

The movie had a very **moving** ending that made everyone cry.

effective

مؤثر (فعال ومفيد)

Antibiotics are only **effective** if you finish the whole course of treatment.

Organization

منظمة (تضم مجموعة من الناس أو الشركات أو البلاد تم إنشاؤها لغرض محدد).

The World Health **Organization** is interested in providing health care for poor countries.

Association

منظمة / اتحاد (مجموعة من الأشخاص في مهنة أو رياضة أو نشاط لتمثيل الأعضاء بشكل رسمي)

The Football **Association** is in a meeting to choose a new manager.

department

قسم (جزء من مؤسسة كبيرة مثل الحكومة أو الأعمال أو الجامعة)

- I work in the sales **department** of an oil company.
- My brother graduated from the English **department**.

section

قسم (جزء من شيء مختلف بشكل واضح ومنفصل عن الأجزاء الأخرى)

- The test is divided into two **sections**.
- The dictionaries are in the reference **section** of the library.

position

تستخدم (**position**) بأكثر من معنى في اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

- Bill took up his new **position** as a director in October. = **job/post** وظيفة
- Because of my broken leg, I struggled up into a sitting **position**. = **وضع**
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your **position**. = **situation** موقف
- Our hotel was in a central **position** near Tahrir Square. = **location** موقع
- Our principal adopted the **position** that music classes are unimportant. = **attitude** موقف / رأي
- The **position** of women in society should be promoted. = **importance/role** مكانة
- Samia finished the race in third **position** and won a medal. = **rank** مركز

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- are people or groups who care about or are affected by a company or project.
 a) Associations
 b) Stakeholders
 c) Silos
 d) Departments
- The way of thinking about something or how you react to people or situations is called
 a) position
 b) resume
 c) tactic
 d) attitude
- I work for a voluntary which helps disabled people with their transportation needs.
 a) party
 b) organization
 c) association
 d) institution
- Seeing the old man sleeping on the pavement was really a/an sight that made us all sad.
 a) defective
 b) impressive
 c) joyful
 d) moving
- The new edition of the dictionary adds a on phrasal verbs.
 a) section
 b) department
 c) site
 d) scene
- The position of Sales Manager has been filled. The word "position" in this sentence is similar to
 a) place
 b) post
 c) opinion
 d) location

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The Ministry's new reforms plan has now been widely in schools.
a) appeared b) reflected c) implanted d) implemented
2. Ms Hana is the best for the job because of her strong experience and skills.
a) candidate b) teacher c) driver d) visitor
3. The child walked through mud and left his on the carpet.
a) footprints b) fingerprints c) keyboard d) paw print
4. The health launched a campaign about heart disease.
a) translation b) explanation c) association d) reservation
5. Ali works in the sales of a tourist company.
a) agreement b) department c) treatment d) measurement
6. Most emails begin with a greeting like "Dear Sir or Madam".
a) symbolic b) formal c) generic d) strategic
7. The design looked professional and, ready for publishing.
a) accidental b) polished c) unfinished d) hired
8. Our team worked in, without much communication among us.
a) silos b) networks c) harmony d) groups
9. The director of our school is known for his ideas. He is so imaginative.
a) innovative b) repetitive c) sensitive d) traditional
10. A good helps students do well by giving constant advice.
a) sample b) mentor c) listener d) competitor
11. The teacher asked a question, but Ali's was too late.
a) response b) mistake c) reason d) problem
12. Mr Nader asked the students to the important points in the text.
a) highlight b) forget c) ignore d) remove
13. You must fill in the online form before the deadline.
a) recommendation b) examination c) instruction d) application
14. Amir was the best for the job. The company offered him a high salary.
a) candidate b) visitor c) trainer d) employer
15. The manager asked Lubna to use examples that were to the question he had asked.
a) helpful b) interesting c) relevant d) rare
16. It's essential for all of us to a healthy diet to keep fit.
a) maintain b) ignore c) forget d) think

- 17. The clever engineer completed the project without any help.
 a) dependently b) independently c) nervously d) politely
18. My teacher wrote a great that helped me with my university application.
 a) recommendation b) intension c) organization d) celebration
19. All students must their homework before the deadline.
 a) explain b) submit c) delete d) ignore
20. The new employee works well with every in the office.
 a) colleague b) employer c) student d) neighbor



Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21. She studied hard to after graduation.
 a) lose the right job b) miss the chance
 c) meet a tight deadline d) get the right job
22. Many graduates like to apply top companies for internships to get more experience.
 a) to b) on c) at d) with
23. The organization helps refugees اللاجئين to contact with local communities.
 a) take b) cut c) lose d) make
24. Investing in education benefits people in the long
 a) run b) walk c) ruin d) path
25. With hard work and determination, you can the right opportunity in your career.
 a) fill b) lose c) miss d) land
26. The course helps students become in today's job market.
 a) employable b) unemployable c) employment d) employee

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

27. Fine Arts is a generic term for subjects such as painting, music, and sculpture. The synonyms of "generic" are
 a) general b) specific c) universal d) cheap e) ready
28. The company became successful by using innovative technology. The antonyms of "innovative" are
 a) creative b) traditional c) new d) excited e) common
29. He acted in a very professional manner during the meeting. The opposites of "professional" are
 a) skilled b) expert c) untrained d) careless e) polite
30. We had to modify our travel plans due to bad weather. The synonyms of "modify" are
 a) alter b) adjust c) destroy d) repeat e) confuse

1 Indefinite articles (a/an)

أدوات النكرة

تستخدم (a/an) قبل الاسم المفرد المعدود، ولكن متى تستخدم كل منهما؟ لاحظ الآتي:

A

تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

a boy/a house/a friend/a table/a problem/a car

لاحظ

1 تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحروف متحركة ولكن تنطق كأنها (u) مثل حروف (e - eu - ew - y).

a unit/a university/a uniform/a union/a European citizen/a useful tip/a ewe

2 تستخدم a قبل الاسم المفرد في الكلمات التي تبدأ بحرف (o) وينطق كأنه (w).

a one-way street/a one-pound coin

An

تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

an apple/an eagle/an ice cream/an orange/an umbrella

لاحظ

تستخدم an قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن غير منطوق ويليه صوت متحرك.

an hour/an honest man

تستخدم (a/an) في الحالات التالية:

A/An

1 قبل الاسم النكرة الذي يذكر في الجملة لأول مرة.

When I was in the shop, I saw a boy with his two sisters.

2 قبل الوظائف والمهن والحرف.

My father is a carpenter.

She is an engineer.

3 قبل تعبيرات الكمية والأرقام مثل:

a pair زوج - a couple زوج - a hundred مائة - a thousand ألف - a quarter ربع - a dozen ستة

My son bought a dozen (of) pens. (This means that my son bought 12 pens.)

4 قبل اسم مفرد عند تعريف الكلمات.

A teacher is someone whose job is to teach others, especially in a school.

An egg is a round object with a hard surface, that contains a baby bird, snake, insect, etc.

5 مع تعبيرات السرعة والزمن والنسبة والمسافة والسعر وعدد المرات بمعنى (في: per).

100 pounds a kilo (This means that 100 pounds per kilo.)

90 kilometers an hour

3 hours a day

2 times a week

6 قبل الصفة إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد.

اسم مفرد + الصفة + (a/an)

My father bought **a new book**.

I met **an American friend**.

أما إذا كان الاسم الموصوف اسمًا لا يعد أو جمعًا لا نستخدم (a/an).

My father bought **new books**.

He gave me **useful advice**.

7 مع الاختصارات التي تنطق بحروف منفصلة نستخدم (a/an) حسب بداية نطق الحرف.

I sent **an SMS** to my friend yesterday.

I downloaded **an MP3** song online last week.

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I'll buy you new bag tomorrow.

a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

2. Although my father is engineer, I don't like math.

a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

3. Amira is university student.

a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

4. Reda is honest man who tells the truth.

a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

5. I found one-pound coin in the street yesterday.

a) a

b) an

c) the

d) no article

2 Complete the sentences using (a/an):

1. I have ID.

2. Are you English tourist?

3. It is European country.

4. My son is honest boy.

5. They go to university in Giza.

2 The definite article (the)

أداة التعريف

تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية:

The

the sun
the universe

1 قبل الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها (الموجود منها واحد فقط).
the sky
the earth
the North Pole

2 قبل الاسم الذي تم ذكره للمرة الثانية.

I read a book. The book was really interesting.

3 قبل صفات الدرجة الثالثة (صيغة التفضيل).

Ali is the tallest boy at his school.
أما في حالة وجود صفات الملكية (my - his - her - its - our - their - your) أو (s) للملكية
لا نستخدم قبلها (the).
Nora is my best friend at school.
Ali is my father's oldest uncle.

لاحظ التعبير التالي:
كلما ...، كلما ...

The (more/adj صفة + er) ..., the (more/adj صفة + er) ...
The more I add sugar to my tea, the more I like it.
The older I get, the smarter I am.

4 قبل أسماء أو اختصارات البلاد التي تحتوي على:

Republic / ولاية / مملكة / Kingdom / اتحاد / Union / جمهورية / Federation / إمارات

the Arab Republic of Egypt = the A.R.E.
the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia = the K.S.A.
the United States of America = the U.S.A.

أو قبل أسماء الدول الجمع ... مثل:

the Netherlands هولندا
the Philippines الفلبين

5 قبل أسماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والقنوات ومجموعات البحيرات وسلاسل الجبال الجمع، والكتب المقدسة
والصحاري ومجموعة الجزر الجمع، والصحف.

the River Nile
the Red Sea
the Pacific Ocean
the Suez Canal
the Great Lakes
the Alps
the Quran
the Sahara
the Caribbean Islands
the Times

أما إذا جاء الجبل مفردًا أو جاءت البحيرة مفردة أو الجزيرة مفردة ... فلا نستخدم (the).

Kilimanjaro جبل كلمنجارو
Lake Nasser بحيرة ناصر
Seychelles جزيرة سيشل
Everest جبل إفرست

6 قبل الآلات الموسيقية إذا جاء قبلها: (play – listen to – learn – teach – study – practice)

I like listening to **the piano** with my family.
Hany enjoys playing **the guitar** every day.

7 قبل الاختراعات والاكتشافات للحديث عنها بشكل عام.

The smartphone is one of the most important inventions.

أما إذا جاء اسم الاختراع جمعًا فلا يأتي قبله أداة.

Smartphones become necessary in our lives.

أما إذا قصدنا الجهاز وليس الاختراع بشكل عام يسبق بـ (a/an).

My father bought **a smartphone** yesterday.

8 قبل فصائل الحيوانات أو الطيور للحديث عنها بشكل عام.

The lion is very strong.

أما إذا جاء اسم الحيوان أو الطائر جمعًا فلا نضع أداة.

Lions are very strong animals.

أما إذا قصدنا عددًا واحدًا من فصيلة الحيوان أو الطائر يسبق بـ (a/an).

I saw **a lion** at the zoo yesterday.

9 قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع.

the rich = rich people / الأغنياء **the poor** = poor people / الفقراء

the Chinese / الصينيون **the disabled** = disabled people / المعاقون

We collected a lot of money to help **the poor**.

10 مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

the government/the police/the United Nations/the climate/the weather/
the press/the army/the environment

11 قبل بعض الكلمات التي تفيد الترتيب ... مثل:

first/second/third/only/last

Mohammed was **the last** one to arrive.

It is **the only** chance for you.

12 عندما نقصد شخصًا واحدًا لا يوجد غيره.

the President of Egypt/**the** King of Denmark/**the** Queen of England

13 مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه والخدمات) ... مثل:

the cinema/the theater/the club/the library/the shop/the post office

14 للإشارة إلى فترات زمنية وخاصة عقد من الزمان (فترة ١٠ أعوام) أو قرن (فترة ١٠٠ عام).

the twenties / العشرينيات **the sixties** / الستينيات **the nineties** / التسعينيات

I like reading for the great novelists of **the 1900s**.

My mother hated the fashions of **the 1960s**.

15 قبل اسم العائلة الجمع للإشارة إلى كل أفراد العائلة.

The Johnsons have lived in this house for many years.

16 قبل ذكر التاريخ إذا بدأنا بالأرقام الترتيبية Ordinal Numbers مثل ... the 1st/2nd/3rd

I married on the 3rd of November, 1990.

17 قبل أسماء بعض الأمراض ... مثل:

the measles الحصبة / the flu الإنفلونزا / the mumps النكاف / the plague الطاعون

If one of the children got the measles, we all got the measles.

لاحظ أن هناك بعض الأمراض لا يأتي قبلها أداة ... مثل:

AIDS/cancer/malaria

There are several medications that can be used to treat malaria.

18 عند الإضافة (إضافة اسم لاسم آخر وهو ما يقابل المضاف إليه في اللغة العربية).

The growth of the steel industry is very big in our country.

The arrival of our guests was very late.

19 للتخصيص.

The man who stole my money was my neighbor.

My brother lives in the big villa with a black door.

Language Checkpoint 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You must never look at sun directly during the eclipse.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
2. We dream of climbing Alps one day.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
3. Lake Nasser is a popular place for tourists.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
4. I bought laptop two months ago.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
5. tigers are very strong animals.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning:

1. Omar read an interesting story. (The)
2. This test was so easy. (an)
3. Rich people should raise money for charities. (The)
4. My father's job is to teach students. (a)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. All I need in life is peace of mind.
a) no article b) the c) a d) an
2. This is smartphone I bought last month.
a) no article b) the c) a d) an
3. panda is an endangered animal.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
4. Don't spend all money you got from your father.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
5. Ali never tells lies. He is honest boy.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
6. Fateen had a nightmare yesterday. In nightmare, he was kidnapped by a gang.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
7. My family is interested in visiting United Kingdom.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
8. I'd like to buy this great house. house will cost me 6 million pounds.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
9. Everyone should sleep at least 7 hours day to be healthy.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
10. My elder brother is university student.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
11. Nagwa likes playing violin before sleeping.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. I know that Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
13. sun gives the Earth warmth and light.
a) A b) The c) An d) No article
14. We all know that brain can't be transplanted.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

- ▶ **15.** The charity is trying to raise money for disabled.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- 16.** They are talking to 8-year-old boy.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- 17.** more you study, the better you will perform.
 a) A b) An c) The d) No article
- 18.** When someone broke into my house, I called police.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- 19.** It is first time that we have seen the temples of Luxor.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- 20.** My brother found watch in the playground yesterday.
 a) the b) an c) a d) no article
- 21.** Magdi Yacoub is famous heart doctor.
 a) the b) an c) a d) no article
- 22.** supermarket where I did the shopping was very crowded.
 a) A b) An c) The d) No Article
- 23.** Mr. Hany speaks Italian well. This means that he speaks well.
 a) an Italian language b) the Italian language
 c) Italian language d) an Italian
- 24.** made the world a smaller place.
 a) The planes have b) The plane has
 c) Some planes have d) This plane has
- 25.** childhood of Taha Hussein was full of hardships.
 a) No article b) A c) The d) An

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Spain is a country in Europe. (... European ...)
2. Mrs. Jane lives in a country in Africa. (... African...)
3. Nada bought a dress. It was amazing. (... an ...)
4. We should help those who are poor. (... the ...)
5. No man is as tall as our neighbor, Hamdi. (... the ...)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. The festival aims to people together from different cultures.
a) bring b) break c) separate d) divide
2. The student gave a/an answer that surprised the teacher and his classmates.
a) impressive b) natural c) polite d) slow
3. The final will be based on tests and assignments that the students have taken all week.
a) discussion b) location c) assessment d) connection
4. Social media has a big impact on modern lifestyle
a) trends b) formats c) rules d) mistakes
5. Even under pressure, we must remain and calm.
a) nervous b) sleepy c) clear-headed d) clean-handed
6. Positive helps you achieve success in life.
a) attitude b) clothes c) struggle d) decade
7. The manager is responsible for company policies.
a) checking b) implementing c) questioning d) ignoring
8. The expert tested a of the product before mass production.
a) sample b) profile c) process d) screen
9. You must finish the project today if you want to the deadline.
a) break b) meet c) do d) have
10. An is someone who is responsible for the job you are given.
a) employer b) employee c) assistant d) applicant
11. The task will both reading and writing.
a) ignore b) involve c) replace d) delete
12. Many people still follow old customs in their culture.
a) traditional b) recent c) updated d) creative
13. The school discovered a few problems related to some children at school.
a) behavior b) natural c) behavioral d) usual
14. Hana often uses a marker to the key words in order to remember them.
a) highlight b) erase c) cross d) appear
15. We had to the plan due to the changes in weather conditions.
a) hire b) modify c) protect d) explain

Language

16. If you want to get the plural of a word, add "s" to it.
 a) a b) an c) no article d) the
17. I want to read short story. It looks fun.
 a) the b) no article c) an d) a
18. The teacher gave us homework for the next week.
 a) a b) many c) some d) any
19. This is girl my sister helped yesterday.
 a) an b) no article c) the d) a
20. My uncle owns another company in European country.
 a) an b) no article c) a d) the
21. My brother wants to play piano in the future.
 a) an b) a c) the d) no article
22. Don't move! There is snake near you!
 a) the b) some c) a d) any
23. The you drive, safer you are.
 a) slower / - b) slowest / the c) slower / a d) slower / the
24. I read amazing article about works of Taha Hussein.
 a) - / the b) a / the c) an / the d) an / -
25. Fortunately, I found room on bus going to my university.
 a) no / the b) a / - c) - / the d) a / the
26. I need information to complete my project.
 a) few b) some c) any d) an
27. Do you think that women can occupy same jobs as men?
 a) no article / the b) the / the c) no article / no article d) a / the
28. This is most expensive car I've ever bought.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
29. Hala is leading easy life; she is very rich.
 a) a b) an c) the d) nor article
30. I will never forget lunch I had with my friends on the beach.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

analysis (n)	تحليل	promotional (adj)	ترويجي
coordinator (n)	منسق (شخص)		

المفردات الرئيسية

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

مفردات نصوص القراءة والاستماع

achievement (n)	إنجاز	fulfil (v) (ed)	يحقّق / يلبّي	requirements (n)	متطلبات
analytics (n)	تحليلات	follower (n)	تابع	salary (n)	راتب شهري
assistant (n)	مساعد	guidance (n)	إرشاد	sales (n)	مبيعات
channel (n)	قناة (تلفزيونية / مائية / اتصال)	illustrator (n)	رسم	schedule (n)	جدول مواعيد
collaborate (v) (d)	يتعاون	internship (n)	فترة التدريب	section (n)	قسم
competitor (n)	منافس	income (n)	دخل	self-reflection (n)	التأمل الذاتي
content (n)	محتوى	management (n)	إدارة	separate (adj)	منفصل
customer (n)	زبون	marketing (n)	التسويق	sense of purpose (n)	إحساس بالهدف
description (n)	وصف	monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب	skilled (adj)	ماهر
determine (v) (d)	يحدد	passion (n)	عاطفة	specialist (adj)	متخصص
engagement (n)	ارتباط / اشتباك	path (n)	مسار / طريق	specific (adj)	محدد
examination (n)	اختبار	performance (n)	أداء	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
feature (n)	خاصية / ميزة	platform (n)	منصة	visual (adj)	بصري

Vocabulary Checkpoint 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Some samples of water were sent to a laboratory for
a) opportunities b) sales c) analysis d) achievements
- After finishing his degree in, Mohammed joined an advertising company.
a) marketing b) commerce c) description d) management

3. Please send your to the HR department to apply for the job.
 a) analysis b) schedule c) performance d) resume
4. Ali put the plant in the right to get enough light.
 a) level b) department c) passion d) position
5. The company gave customers free samples as part of a/an campaign.
 a) promotional b) medical c) personal d) accidental
6. Hend works as a shop in a large clothing store.
 a) assistant b) engineer c) teacher d) tourist
7. Many people use social media as a to share their ideas with the world.
 a) platform b) seat c) ladder d) tool

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

assist with	يساعد في	important for	مهم لـ	giving a real experience	تقديم تجربة حقيقية
Bachelor of Science	بكالوريوس علوم	information systems	نظم المعلومات	make better choices	اتخاذ قرارات أفضل
by ...%	بنسبة	related to	مرتبط بـ	when passion meets opportunities عندما يلتقي الشغف بالفرص	
contact information	معلومات الاتصال	responsible for	مسئول عن		
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	work smoothly	يعمل بسلاسة		

Derivatives

المشتقات

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
analyze	يحلل	analysis	تحليل	analytic	تحليلي
coordinate	ينسق	coordination coordinator	تنسيق منسق	coordinated	منسق
promote	يرقي / يروج	promotion	ترقية / ترويج	promotional	ترويجي
engage	يرتبط	engagement	ارتباط / التزام	engaged	مرتبط / ملتزم
manage	يدير	management manager	الإدارة مدير	manageable	من الممكن التحكم فيه
determine	يحدد	determination	إصرار / عزيمة	determined	مصمم / عاقد العزم

Examples

تعلم أن تستخدم ما تحفظ، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

She **coordinated** the event perfectly. (v)

The event **coordinator** ensured everything went smoothly. (n)

The event was well **coordinated**. (adj)

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
analysis	تحليل	examination/evaluation		guess/assumption	تخمين
promotional	ترويجي	advertising/marketing/ commercial		private/secret	خاص / سر
skilled	ماهر	talented/experienced		unskilled/inexperienced	غير موهوب / ليس لديه خبرة
collaborate	يتعاون	cooperate/participate		oppose/compete/separate	يعارض / ينافس / يفصل
achievements	إنجازات	success/accomplishments		failure/setback	فشل / تراجع

Vocabulary Checkpoint 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Rami got his degree in Information before starting a career in data analysis.
a) Systems b) Data c) Reports d) Results
- You shouldn't advice to someone unless they ask for it.
a) take b) share c) write d) give
- Ola is responsible training new employees and managing daily operations.
a) at b) for c) with d) from
- The two companies agreed to in order to develop new technology.
a) collaborate b) escape
c) decorate d) argue
- Dr. Yacoub has made a lot of achievements. The synonym of "achievements" is
a) duties b) accomplishments
c) failures d) sadness



Sami Adel Digital Marketing Specialist

s.adel@gmail.com 02) 123-4567

linkedin.com/in/samiadel

Abdin, Cairo

PROFESSIONAL SUMMARY Results-driven digital marketing specialist with 3+ years of experience managing social media campaigns and increasing online engagement. Skilled in content creation, data analysis, and customer relationship management. Seeking to use my skills in a challenging marketing coordinator position.

WORK EXPERIENCE

Social Media Manager / Tech Crop Solutions / June 2021 - Present

- Increased follower engagement by 45% across all platforms
- Created and scheduled 50+ posts weekly for multiple social media channels
- Collaborated with the design team to develop visual content for campaigns
- Monitored analytics and prepared monthly performance reports

Marketing Assistant / Local Business Hub / Jan 2020 - May 2021

- Supported the marketing team with campaign development and performance
- Maintained customer database and updated contact information
- Assisted with event planning and promotional activities
- Conducted market research and competitor analysis

EDUCATION

- Bachelor of Science in Information Systems / Cairo University 2020

SKILLS

- Social Media Management (Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, LinkedIn)
- Content Creation and Copy Writing
- Google Analytics and Data Analysis
- Customer Relationship Management (CRM) software
- Adobe software such as Photoshop and Illustrator



Listening Text



Choosing a career is not just about income. It also affects our happiness and a sense of purpose. That is why self-reflection is so important. When students take time to think about their strengths, interests, and values, they make better choices for the future. Researching jobs is another key step. Learning about the requirements, daily tasks, and growth opportunities helps avoid wrong decisions. Internships and volunteering can also shape career goals by giving a real experience and helping students discover what truly excites them. A good career path is built when passion meets opportunities. It is not only about finding a job but also about creating a life that feels meaningful and rewarding. In fact, the most successful people often explain that happiness comes when you choose a career you love, not just a career that pays well. By combining talent with effort, students can turn a simple job into an inspiring journey. Moreover, the guidance of mentors, teachers, and family can provide a clear vision and prevent young people from making quick or careless choices. Finally, building a balance between personal dreams and market needs can lead to a truly fulfilling and lasting career.

Definitions

التعريفات

analysis	تحليل	the detailed study or examination of something to understand its nature or determine its essential features
coordinator	منسق	a person or thing that brings separate parts together to work smoothly as a whole
promotional	دعائي	related to advertising or promoting something to increase sales or public awareness

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

- | | | | |
|---|----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | platform | منصة / رصيف قطار | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The train to Cairo will leave from platform 3. - Social media is a platform for sharing ideas and opinions worldwide. |
| | pavement | رصيف في الشارع (المشاة) | Don't walk in the road! Use the pavement . |
| 2 | channel | قناة (تليفزيونية / مائية / اتصال) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The English Channel separates the UK from France. - I changed the TV channel to watch the news. |
| | canal | قناة صناعية (من صنع الإنسان) | The Suez Canal connects the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea. |

software

البرمجيات (البرامج والتطبيقات التي
تشغل الجهاز)

The antivirus **software** protects your computer.

3

hardware

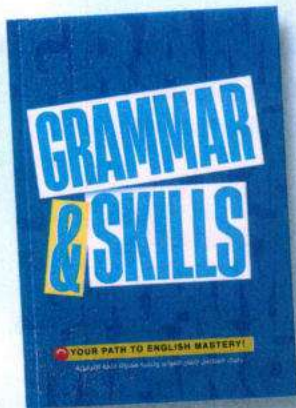
الأجهزة المادية (شاشة - ماوس
إلخ..)

The mouse and keyboard are parts of the computer's **hardware**.

Vocabulary Checkpoint 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's safer to walk on the instead of the street.
a) platform b) line c) pavement d) crossroad
2. A new digital learning was launched for secondary stage students.
a) platform b) pavement c) screen d) signal
3. Rami switched on the to watch his favorite show.
a) canal b) channel c) track d) stream
4. Amina downloaded the photo editing from a trusted website.
a) tool b) software c) document d) feature
5. A project is responsible for guiding the team and meeting deadlines.
a) coordinator b) decorator
c) follower d) spectator



يمكنك اقتناء كتاب

GRAMMAR & SKILLS

دليلك المتكامل في المراحل الثانوية
لإتقان القواعد والمهارات الأساسية للغة
الإنجليزية بطريقة بسيطة وشيقة!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



Key Vocabulary, Reading & Listening

1. The conference made sure that everything would start on time.
a) coordinator b) speaker c) visitor d) volunteer
2. The company launched a campaign to increase brand awareness.
a) schedule b) promotional c) separate d) technical
3. Only students were chosen for the school competition.
a) visual b) lazy c) skilled d) dishonest
4. players receive huge amounts of money these days.
a) Formal b) Friendly c) Amateur d) Professional
5. She applied for a teaching at the university.
a) location b) title c) position d) subject
6. The professor made a presentation with colorful charts and images.
a) separate b) clean c) content d) visual
7. The manager asked his to prepare for a meeting.
a) officer b) assistant c) servant d) specialist
8. Every in the spelling contest مسابقة had to spell ten difficult words.
a) competitor b) singer c) farmer d) fighter
9. The website needs more trusted educational to attract more students.
a) continent b) content c) media d) storage
10. Social media influencers often have thousands of who support them.
a) fans b) visitors c) likes d) followers
11. Good skills can improve your in team projects.
a) analytics b) description c) performance d) absence
12. You can go to the customer service to tell them your complaint.
a) digital b) part c) page d) section
13. My mother asked me to the clean clothes from the dirty ones.
a) wash b) seek c) separate d) organize
14. The teacher will his students' final grades according to their work.
a) select b) vote c) determine d) check
15. Marwa applied for a summer at a well-known hospital.
a) internship b) scholarship c) partnership d) membership
16. I have a for history. I adore it.
a) section b) plan c) dream d) passion

17. The company offered him a higher to encourage him to join their team. —
a) contract b) salary c) title d) shift



Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18. Success often comes from hard work combined with
a) laziness b) determinate
c) determined d) determination
19. The company requested detailed information for all applicants.
a) background b) reference c) fake d) visible
20. We need volunteers to assist customer support during peak hours.
a) of b) with c) for d) to
21. The difficult work became after hiring a new assistant.
a) manage b) manageable c) management d) manager
22. Shrouk felt proud when she could her responsibilities at work properly.
a) fulfil b) escape c) hide d) remind
23. Mr. Hadi asked the students to write a detailed of their favorite animal.
a) description b) prescription c) internship d) assistance
24. Voluntary work regularly gives people a strong sense of in life.
a) purpose b) humor
c) style d) entertainment
25. The company developed a digital for online learning for free.
a) platform b) corner c) advice d) tour

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

26. My grandfather's life was full of achievements. The antonyms of "achievements" are
a) failures b) refreshments c) accomplishments
d) advances e) setbacks
27. Mazen is very skilled at drawing. The antonyms of "skilled" are
a) talented b) experienced c) unskilled
d) famous b) inexperienced
28. The doctor gave an analysis of the patient's blood. The synonyms of "analysis" are
a) examination b) guess c) expectation
d) reflection e) evaluation
29. There are promotional posters on the wall. The synonyms of "promotional" are
a) advertising b) marketing c) private d) secret e) exceptional
30. Doctors often collaborate to find the best treatment. The antonyms of "collaborate" are
a) cooperate b) participate c) oppose d) compete e) ignore

B

Language

لا نستخدم أدوات نكرة أو معرفة في هذه الحالات:

No article

Children are sometimes noisy.

Men should be patient and hardworking.

1 عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام دون تخصيص.
Vitamins are very important for our bodies.

2 مع الوجبات بوجه عام دون تخصيص؛ وفي حالة التخصيص يأتي قبل الوجبات **the**.
breakfast/ lunch/ dinner/ supper

I usually have **breakfast** at 7 o'clock.

3 مع الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام.
advice/ freedom/ love/ sadness/ happiness/ beauty/ education/ success
All countries try to develop **education**.

4 مع الألقاب المتبوعة باسم علم.
King Lear/ Professor Zewail/ President Nasser/ Doctor Magdy Yacoub

5 مع كلمة **home** بعد أفعال (go – come – return).
Mona **returned home** early last night.

لاحظ الجمل التالية:

There's **a home** for the elderly at the end of our street.
Ahmed moved out of **the family home** a year ago.

6 مع كلمة **work** إذا جاءت بمعنى مكان العمل.
I usually go to **work** in my car.

لاحظ الجملة التالية:

The work here is very tiring. (وهنا يقصد طبيعة العمل وليس مكان العمل)

7 قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد والكميات ومنها:

oil/ water/ milk/ money/ meat/ juice, etc.

English/ Arabic/ science/ history/ physics, etc.

glass/ wood/ gold/ silver/ paper, etc.

football/ tennis/ basketball/ volleyball/ swimming, etc.

أسماء الطعام والشراب

المواد الدراسية

المواد الخام

الألعاب الرياضية

Africa/ Europe/ Asia/ South America

8 مع أسماء القارات.

Egypt/ Alexandria/ London/ New York/ Spain/ Italy

9 مع أسماء الدول والقرى.

أما إذا جاء بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) فنستخدم (the):

the English language / the Turkish language

11 مع كلمة space إذا جاءت بمعنى الفضاء.

I like reading about the history of space travel.

أما إذا كان المقصود مكاناً فارغاً فنستخدم قبلها the:

The space between the house and the garage is very big.

12 مع الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذي أنشئت من أجله.

I go to school to learn. (I am a student.)

He had an accident and was taken to hospital. (He was a patient.)

He committed a crime and was sent to prison. (He was a prisoner.)

I went to bed early. (I went to sleep.)

أما إذا كان الذهاب إليها لغرض آخر... فنستخدم (the):

I went to the school to meet the principal. (I was a visitor.)

He went to the prison to visit his friend. (He was a visitor.)

My sister is standing by the bed. (The word "bed" here means a piece of furniture.)

Language Checkpoint 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- women play an important role in developing their communities through education and work.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
- Japanese language is very difficult to learn.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
- There are millions of stars in space.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- Hatem always goes to school wearing a uniform.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
- My father went to school as the principal wanted to meet him.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- I live in the Egypt. (.....)
- Where is chair I told you about? (.....)
- I'll give you chance which you wanted. (.....)
- The monkeys are smart animals. (.....)
- Look at a board please. (.....)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I went to hospital to visit my friend.
a) a b) an c) no article d) the
2. Children go to school every morning.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
3. He got the best mark in English.
a) a b) the c) no article d) an
4. This island gets most of its goods by sea. It has no airports.
a) a b) the c) no article d) an
5. I want to buy that we saw in the store yesterday.
a) the bracelet b) bracelet c) a bracelet d) my bracelet
6. People in speak many languages.
a) an Africa b) Africa c) the Africa d) a Africa
7. I really admire at my school. They are very helpful.
a) some teacher b) teacher c) the teachers d) teachers
8. We have lunch in the afternoon.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
9. Egypt is a pioneering country in Africa and the Middle East.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
10. In the 1970s, not all people in my village had television.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
11. Walking to work is part of my daily routine.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
12. computers are necessary for all kinds of jobs all over the world.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
13. At the new restaurant, I had a cup of tea and some cake. tea was awful.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
14. You should help when you see old person trying to cross the street.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
15. We had lunch at most expensive restaurant in the city center.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

- ▶ 16. Omar is fastest runner in our school football team.
 a) the b) a c) an d) no article
17. *The Old Man and the Sea* is Sama's best novel.
 a) no article b) a c) the d) an
18. The man who stole the car was taken to prison.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
19. children should obey their parents and go to bed on time.
 a) No article b) A c) The d) An
20. England and France are European countries.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
21. is easy to break.
 a) Glass b) The glass c) A glass d) Any glass
22. There is room for all of us in my father's car.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
23. I often like to listen to music when I have free time.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
24. Dad goes to work at 7, so he doesn't have breakfast with us.
 a) no article / the b) no article / a
 c) no article / no article d) the / a
25. Carpenters use glass and wood to make windows.
 a) no article / the b) a / no article
 c) an / no article d) no article / no article
26. The journey to Cairo by train takes hour.
 a) the / an b) a / no article
 c) no article / a d) no article / an
27. Great Lakes are in North America.
 a) The / no article b) A / no article
 c) An / no article d) No article / no article

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- ▶ 1. I usually go to the work by bus. (.....)
2. Cairo is Egypt's the most crowded city. (.....)
3. Most students don't go to school on the Saturdays. (.....)
4. The Honesty is the best value. (.....)
5. We always have the dinner at 3 o'clock. (.....)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Vocabulary

1. Our team needs to to finish the task required on time.
a) update b) collaborate c) oppose d) separate
2. Teachers must regularly their students' progress and performance.
a) monitor b) reduce c) avoid d) edit
3. Dr. Huda is a skin care at the local hospital.
a) vet b) coordinator c) specialist d) dentist
4. Successful marketing strategies focus on audience, not just views.
a) occupation b) engagement c) disadvantage d) awareness
5. Make sure to regularly your cell phone with new apps.
a) refresh b) up-to-date c) update d) list
6. The teacher allows us to select answers if needed.
a) multiple b) wrong c) similar d) much
7. Our major is the local factory that has launched a new product lately.
a) agency b) researcher c) user d) competitor
8. The witness's detailed of the criminal made it easy to arrest him.
a) explanation b) slogan c) description d) summary
9. Fadel's team reached the monthly target. They are top of the month.
a) loss b) sales c) marketing d) product
10. An experienced knows how to match visuals with a story.
a) illustrator b) photographer c) maker d) collector
11. I always write meetings' times in my so as not to forget them.
a) calendar b) clock c) schedule d) watch
12. Many problems to pollution are increasing in big cities.
a) related b) equal c) near d) opposite
13. You must make an accurate of the car before buying it.
a) examination b) project c) worksheet d) test
14. Stay with the latest industry trends to remain competitive.
a) update b) up-to-date c) away from d) calm
15. Thanks to better customer service, profits rose 30%.
a) by b) with c) for d) about

Language

16. During the summer camp, we set fire and gather around to tell stories at night.
a) a b) an c) no article d) the
17. parking is always a problem in all big cities.
a) A b) The c) An d) No article
18. There were no chairs for everyone, so we had to sit on floor.
a) a b) an c) no article d) the
19. It is our duty to help poor people and the homeless.
a) no article b) the c) an d) a
20. women play an important role in society.
a) No article b) The c) An d) A
21. Philippines are a group of islands in the Pacific Ocean.
a) No article b) The c) An d) A
22. My father went to school when he was seven.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
23. exams are always very stressful for me.
a) An b) No article c) A d) The
24. There is hair on your jacket.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
25. Hemingway, author of *The Old Man and the Sea*, died 1961.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
26. He got Nobel Prize for Literature in 1954.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
27. What do you usually have for breakfast?
a) the b) an c) a d) no article
28. Ali is very tall. He should play basketball.
a) the b) an c) a d) no article
29. freedom is something all people should value.
a) the b) an c) a d) no article
30. Nothing in life is better than peace of mind.
a) a / - b) - / a c) the / - d) - / -



Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لمالحق المهارات.

Writing

tips

Curriculum Vitae (CV)

A CV (Curriculum Vitae) is a document that summarizes your education, work experience, skills, and achievements. It's usually the first thing an employer sees about you, so it needs to make a good impression!

السيرة الذاتية (CV) هي وثيقة تلخص تعليمك وخبرتك العملية ومهاراتك وإنجازاتك. عادةً ما يكون هذا أول شيء يراه صاحب العمل عنك؛ لذا يجب أن تترك انطباعًا جيدًا!

Key points about CVs:

- Keep it short (1-2 pages maximum).

النقاط الرئيسية حول السيرة الذاتية:

- Use clear, simple language.

اجعلها قصيرة (1-2 صفحة كحد أقصى).

- Include only relevant information.

استخدم لغة واضحة وبسيطة.

- Make it easy to read.

اجعلها تتضمن المعلومات المهمة فقط.

- Update it regularly.

اجعلها سهلة القراءة.

قم بتحديثها بانتظام.

تطبيق الأضواء

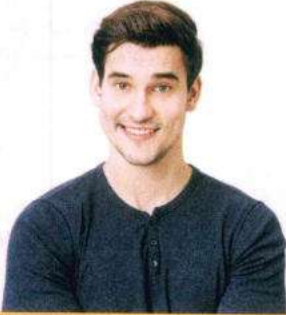
نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:

www.aladwaa.com



MODEL CV



1. Personal Information

البيانات الشخصية:

Full name الاسم الكامل

Phone number رقم الهاتف

Email address عنوان البريد الإلكتروني

City and country المدينة والدولة

LinkedIn profile (optional)

الملف الشخصي على LinkedIn اختياري

2. Personal Statement/ Objective

A short paragraph
(2-3 sentences) describing who
you are and what you want to
achieve.

فقرة قصيرة (2-3 جمل) تصف من أنت وما تريد
تحقيقه.

3. Education

التعليم

List your qualifications in reverse chronological order
(most recent first).

قم بإدراج مؤهلاتك بترتيب زمني عكسي (الأحدث أولاً).

- Format: الصيغة
- Dates: التاريخ
- Qualification: المؤهل
- Degree: الدرجة الجامعية
- Institution: المعهد التعليمي
- Grades (if good): الدرجات (إذا كانت جيدة)

4. Work Experience

خبرة العمل

- Company name: اسم الشركة
- Job title: المسمى الوظيفي
- Dates: التاريخ - from: من - to: إلى
- Key responsibilities and achievements. المسؤوليات والإنجازات الرئيسية.

5. Skills

المهارات

- Technical skills (computer programs, languages) المهارات التقنية (برامج الكمبيوتر واللغات)
- Soft skills (communication, teamwork, leadership) المهارات الشخصية (التواصل، العمل الجماعي، القيادة)
- Language skills with proficiency levels. المهارات اللغوية مع ذكر مستويات الكفاءة.

6. Additional Sections (If Relevant)

الأقسام الإضافية (إذا لزم الأمر)

- Certifications الشهادات
- Projects المشروعات
- Interests/ Hobbies الاهتمامات/ الهوايات
- References المراجع

(A) Reading Comprehension

قاموس بالكلمات الجديدة في
قطع الفهم والتراجم نهاية الكتاب

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Your behavior towards others shows people what you are really like, whether grown-up, well-balanced, wise, or childish. Here are some examples of situations that can reveal your personality.

You have arranged an outing with your friends who have promised to call for you, but they don't arrive. If you are childish, you will get angry and decide to end your relationship with them. But if you are well-balanced, you will think that something bad must have happened to them and quickly call them to make sure that they are safe.

You did something wrong at school. If you are **unreliable**, you will blame the circumstances or your classmates. But if you are a mature, well-balanced person, you will stand by your action and put the blame on yourself.

You didn't do your homework as you stayed up late at night. If you are an irresponsible person, you will copy your classmates' answers or lie to your teacher. You might, for example, claim that your mother was very ill and you spent most of your time looking after her. But if you are wise enough, you will accept the blame and promise your teacher that you will never do that again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The antonym of the word "**unreliable**" is ".....".
a) untrustworthy b) trustworthy c) trust d) dishonest
- If your friends didn't call you as planned, you shouldn't
a) get angry b) make sure they are safe
c) trust them d) say your mother was very ill
- According to the text, you shouldn't at school.
a) tell the truth b) talk to your teachers
c) blame yourself d) tell lies
- The best title for this passage is ".....".
a) How to stay up late at night b) How to make a promise
c) How to be a well-balanced person d) How to lie to your teacher
- According to the passage, the writer wants to
a) guide young people b) mislead young people
c) bully young people d) trick young people
- In your opinion, the best place to publish this text is
a) at school b) in a hospital c) in a workshop d) in the street
- The underlined pronoun "that" means
a) doing the homework b) not doing the homework
c) looking after your mother d) calling friends

1

People all over the continents often get up in the middle of the night or skip work to watch their nation's team compete. People in the winning nations celebrate their teams' victories. When Pelé played for Brazil in 1970, his team won the World Cup. This team is considered one of the greatest. Pelé is regarded as the best football player by many fans. Brazil has won a total of five World Cups, far more than any other nation. Another matchless player was Maradona, who was regarded as one of the greatest footballers who played the game and was awarded FIFA Best Player of the 20th Century.

1. From the context of the passage, which is the antonym of “victories”?

- 306 Part 3

- 6.** People leaving work to watch their nation's team matches are the game.
a) crazy about b) hardly interested in
c) have no affection for d) might be arrested
- 7.** The first Women's World Cup was held in
a) Africa b) Uruguay
c) Asia d) South America

(B) Translation

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, hope and despair, and happiness and sadness, but in all cases, it should be filled with achievements.
- (a) يعرف الإنسان جيداً أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والانتصار، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
- (b) يعرف الإنسان جيداً أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
- (c) يعرف الإنسان جيداً أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والفرح، ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
- (d) يعرف الإنسان جيداً أن الحياة مزيج من النجاح والفشل، والأمل واليأس، والسعادة والحزن، ولكن في كل الأحوال يمكن أن تمتلئ بالإنجازات.
2. Poetry is one of mankind's oldest art forms. It improves critical thinking by forcing a reader to think.
- (a) الشعراء هم أحد أقدم أشكال الفنون الإلقائية فهم يحسنون التفكير النقدي من خلال إجبار القارئ على التفكير.
- (b) القصائد هي أحد أقدم أشكال الفنون البشرية فهي تحسن التفكير الواعي من خلال إجبار القارئ على التفكير.
- (c) الشعراء هم أحد أقدم أشكال الفنون البشرية فهو يحسن التفكير النقدي من خلال إلهام القارئ للتفكير.
- (d) الشعراء هم أحد أقدم أشكال الفنون البشرية فهو يحسن التفكير النقدي من خلال إجبار القارئ على التفكير.
3. Reading literature introduces us to other people's experiences and cultures, which are very different from our own.
- (a) نعرفنا قراءة الأدب على خبرات وثقافات الآخرين التي تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافتنا.
- (b) نعرفنا قراءة الأدب على الخبرات والثقافات الأخرى التي تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافتنا.
- (c) نعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التي تتشابه معنا تمامًا عن ثقافتنا.
- (d) نعرفنا قراءة الأدب على تجارب وثقافات الآخرين التي تختلف تمامًا عن ثقافتنا.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. ألقى أحد الشعراء المشهورين محاضرة عن دور الشعر في التعبير عن الأحداث.
- a) A famous poet made a lecture about poetry rule to express important events.
- b) A famous poet set a lecture about poetry role to express important incidents.
- c) A famous poet gave a speech about poetry role to express important events.
- d) A famous poet gave a lecture about poetry's rule to express important events.

5. لقد اتخذت مصر خطوات واسعة نحو تحقيق الإصلاح الاقتصادي والديمقراطية عن طريق بناء الكثير من المشروعات العظيمة.

a) Egypt has taken wide steps towards achieving economical and democratic reformation by setting up a lot of great projects.

b) Egypt has taken wide steps towards achieving economic and democratic reformation by set up a lot of great project.

c) Egypt has taken wide steps towards achieving economic and democratic reformation by setting up a lot of great projects.

d) Egypt has taken widely steps towards achieving economic and democratic reformation by setting off a lot of great projects.

6. من الضروري أن تجيد تحدث وكتابة اللغة الإنجليزية لكي تحصل على فرصة عمل جيدة فهي اللغة الأكثر تحدثاً في العالم الآن.

a) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and talking English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

b) It is necessary to be good in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken subject in the world now.

c) It is necessity to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

d) It is necessary to be fluent in speaking and writing English to get a good job opportunity, as it is the most spoken language in the world now.

(C) Writing

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"A review on a movie you enjoyed most"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Enrich your vocabulary

mixture	خليط / مزيج	fluent	فصيح / طليق اللسان	opportunity	فرصة
despair	اليأس	failure	الفشل		



Vocabulary

1 Complete the sentences with appropriate action verbs from the box:

managed – developed – assisted – organized – analyzed – collaborated

1. I with the marketing team to create a new campaign.
2. She customer complaints and found solutions.
3. He a new training program for new employees.
4. We the monthly team meetings.
5. I customers at the reception desk.
6. They the budget for the entire project.

Language

2 Fill in the blanks with "a", "an", "the", or no article:

1. I have great idea.
2. Can you play guitar?
3. Mount Everest is highest mountain in the world.
4. She speaks French and Spanish.
5. United States is country in North America.
6. I don't like tea.
7. He's doctor I told you about.
8. She works in hospital
9. Nile River is longest river in world.
10. He is honest man.

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. He is a honest man. (.....)
2. I want to buy an new car. (.....)
3. A birds sing in the morning. (.....)
4. He's doctor. (.....)
5. A moon is beautiful tonight. (.....)
6. She gave me an advice. (.....)
7. I need the pen to write. (.....)
8. Sun rises in the east. (.....)
9. They live in the London. (.....)
10. We met on the Monday. (.....)

1 Finish the following dialog:

Salma : Hey, I heard you visited Aswan recently, (1).....?

Hanan : It was amazing!

Salma : (2).....?

Hanan : We went on a cruise on the Nile.

Salma : What else did you visit there?

Hanan : (3).....

Salma : Did you take any photos at the Nubian Museum?

Hanan : (4)..... I'll send some of them.

A Glimpse of Revelation

2 (A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Holy Books are revealed to mankind to

- a) memorize b) guard
c) recite and follow d) read and enjoy

2. The Qur'an is a that Allah has promised to preserve.

- a) miracle b) tongue
c) chapter d) construct

(B) Answer the following questions:

3. What are the names of the Five Holy Books?

4. What is the challenge in the Qur'an?

3 (A) Translate into Arabic:

Every child has the right to lead a happy life in order to become a good human who is conscientious.

(B) Translate into English:

الحج عبادة بالمال والنفس والوقت، يمحو الله بها الذنوب والخطايا.

► Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The advertisement used a very generic message that didn't stand out.
The opposites of "generic" are
a) unique b) special c) plain d) ordinary e) usual
2. We received the updated version of the software this morning. The closest words to "updated" are
a) recent b) modern c) old d) outdated e) ancient

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The clever student gave a quick to the teacher's question.
a) response b) section c) fitness d) command
4. It's hard to the right person without a good interview.
a) hire b) teach c) avoid d) explain
5. The news is broadcast on several TV
a) channels b) stops c) stations d) canals
6. This skill is important anyone working in customer service.
a) with b) for c) at d) in
7. This educational program gives students great learning
a) requests b) careers c) opportunities d) seasons
8. Physical is important for athletes.
a) fitness b) speed c) strength d) height
9. The elephant is biggest animal in the jungle.
a) a b) the c) an d) no article
10. I remember day when we first went to the museum together.
a) the b) a c) an d) no article
11. Is there life on Mars?
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
12. We had lunch at my uncle's home yesterday.
a) the b) a c) an d) no article
13. I went to store where I can buy antique furniture.
a) the b) an c) a d) no article
14. Please, don't put your cup on TV.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was just before bedtime. Sally was reading a hair-raising ghost story. She loved the excitement of scaring herself before a good night's sleep. She was reading the story halfway when she suddenly heard the squeaky opening of her front door. She was surprised by the scary sound. She felt something was wrong. Sally gently pushed her blanket aside and slowly crept out of her bed. She walked down the stairs. Even her very own footsteps on the creaky stairs scared her. She heard the soft sound of footsteps in the kitchen and stopped to listen. It was surely a ghost since everyone she knew was in their beds fast asleep at this hour.

The darkness also frightened her, but she wanted to find out what was making the strange noise. She turned to enter the kitchen, where the noise seemed to be coming from. Suddenly, she walked right into a dark figure. The dark figure stretched out a hand and quickly turned on the bright kitchen lights. It was Sally's elder brother, Ken! He couldn't help laughing at poor Sally. He had gone out late that night with his friends and had just returned home. Sally felt silly to have thought it was a ghost. She had a good laugh too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The strange sound, the creaky stairs, the darkness, and the dark figure
Sally.
a) screamed
b) scared
c) cared
d) entertained
16. Sally reading ghost stories.
a) enjoyed
b) did not enjoy
c) feared
d) avoided
17. Who does the underlined phrase "The dark figure" refer to?
a) The strange noise.
b) Sally.
c) Sally's brother.
d) The kitchen.
18. Sally realized it was not a ghost when her brother
a) stretched his hand
b) turned on the lights
c) walked down the steps
d) laughed
19. Ken when Sally started reading the story.
a) had been outside
b) had been on the roof
c) hadn't entered the house
d) had hidden under the bed

- a) were asleep b) got out
c) went shopping d) didn't like tricks

a) Reading is important
b) Scary tales give you scares
c) Ken is a coward
d) Sally's brother's trick

- إن مستقبل الحياة على الأرض يتوقف على نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي.

- a) The future of life on Earth depends on the successful of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.
- b) The future of life at Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environment population.
- c) The future of life on Earth independent on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.
- d) The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

- Scientific researchers have proved that the early experiences of childhood have an effect on man's personality.

- (a) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب الحديثة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
- (b) أثبت الباحثون المتخصصون أن الخبرات المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
- (c) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.
- (d) أثبت الباحثون العلميون أن التجارب المبكرة للطفولة لها تأثير على شخصية الإنسان.

1. How does Santiago's pride influence his actions throughout the shark attacks?
2. What can we learn about the human spirit from Santiago's actions?
3. Why does Santiago feel both defeated and victorious at the same time?

"What makes a person truly happy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. Samy waters his plants regularly. The antonyms of the word "regularly" are
 a) gradually b) irregularly c) manually d) usually e) uncommonly
2. Her performance was really impressive. The opposites of "impressive" are
 a) ordinary b) unique c) short d) specific e) dull

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The peace agreement was successful because both sides showed great
 a) disagreement b) tolerance c) anger d) process
4. The translator spoke with such that everyone thought she was a native speaker.
 a) hesitation b) fluency c) collaboration d) dedication
5. Reading historical novels offers interesting on how people lived in the past.
 a) advice b) perspectives c) sights d) horizons
6. Adel is honest. of what he says is true.
 a) Many b) Any c) Few d) Much
7. The trainer gave me instructions during the exercise.
 a) an b) much c) some d) a
8. Statistics taught in some faculties.
 a) are b) is c) has been d) a & b
9. If you want to improve your skills at work, having a can really help.
 a) department b) mentor c) trend d) hunt
10. When the weather suddenly changed, we had to our travel plans.
 a) impress b) hunt c) adjust d) approach
11. Even though the project failed, she kept a positive and stayed motivated.
 a) road b) association c) attitude d) department
12. She works as marketing manager at a tech company.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
13. He lives in United States and studies at Harvard.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
14. The team met in conference room to discuss the project.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

► Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

We must protect our environment from "urgent and threatening problems". For example, when was the last time you walked down a garbage-free street? Although millions of pounds are spent on collecting garbage every year, this alone cannot solve the problem. The solution lies in our hands. Dropping trash in the street is against the law in Britain. You can be fined up to 1000 pounds. Not only is trash ugly, but it can also be dangerous.

Why is there so much trash? Most consumer products are packaged several times; a single item may be wrapped in plastic, put in a box, wrapped in cellophane, and then put in a plastic carrier bag.

What can we do about this growing problem? Try recycling paper and plastic bottles. Never drop trash; even the smallest piece of paper contributes to the problem. Avoid buying over-packaged items from supermarkets and take your own carrier bags. Pollution can also be a problem. Smoke and petrol from cars and more boats may make the air, beaches, and seas dirty; birds and fish may die.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The problem of clearing rubbish may be solved if everyone becomes of finding the solution.
 a) thoughtless b) in charge c) careless d) afraid
16. We spend money to keep the environment clean.
 a) many b) little c) a lot of d) few
17. We should our consumed products.
 a) throw b) recycle c) grow d) clean
18. The underlined word "wrapped" is the synonym of
 a) loose b) turned c) fallen d) rolled
19. In Britain, you throw garbage in streets.
 a) needn't b) mustn't c) are allowed to d) must
20. The text discussed problem(s) that we face nowadays.
 a) three b) four c) one d) two
21. Why do many birds and fish die according to the passage?
 a) Because we drop rubbish on streets.
 b) Because of the problem of pollution.
 c) Because man kills them.
 d) Because of global warming.

► **22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:**

– يعد الدور الذي تلعبه المرأة المصرية في النهوض بالمجتمع المصري بارزاً ويقدره الجميع.

- a) The role, played by the Egyptian women to help the Egyptian society, is significant and appreciated by all.
- b) The role, played by the Egyptian woman to upgrade the Egyptian society, is significant and appreciated by all.
- c) The role, discovered by the Egyptian woman to upgrade the Egyptian society, is significant and appreciated by all.
- d) The role which the Egyptian woman plays to raise the Egyptian society, is remarkable and everyone thinks about it.

► **23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:**

- The great development in industry has led to an increase in the amount of carbon dioxide, and this has led to climate change and global warming.

- a) التطور العظيم في الصناعة أدى إلى زيادة كمية الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.
- b) أدى الازدهار الكبير في الصناعة إلى زيادة مبلغ ثاني أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والحرارة العالمية.
- c) أدى التطور الكبير في الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية الأكسجين مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.
- d) أدى التطور الكبير في الصناعة إلى زيادة كمية ثاني أكسيد الكربون مما أدى إلى تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.

► **24. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do the lions of his youth appear again in his dreams?
2. Why does Santiago refer to the marlin as his "brother"?
3. Why does Santiago keep fighting the sharks even when he knows he can't save the marlin?

► **25. Write an email of (120-150) words to your friend telling him your opinion about the modern technology and its effects on literature.**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(A) Vocabulary

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. His speech was so impressive that the audience was left in complete admiration.
The synonym of the underlined word "impressive" is
a) remarkable b) complicated c) anxious
d) generic e) influential
2. Recycling programs are key to a sustainable future. The synonym of the underlined word "sustainable" is
a) complicated b) maintainable c) hesitant
d) eco-friendly e) generic
3. Climate change has a strong on people's health and safety.
a) impact b) fluency c) influence
d) hesitation e) silos
4. She felt very motivated to finish her project ahead of the deadline.
The antonym of the underlined word "motivated" is
a) generic b) anxious c) polished
d) lazy e) indifferent
5. The instructions are so complicated that most students cannot follow them.
The antonym of the underlined word "complicated" is
a) enriching b) simple c) fluent
d) generic e) clear

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The project aims to promote development that does not harm the environment.
a) fluent b) impressive c) sustainable d) polished
2. The manager is responsible for new policies across the company.
a) observing b) motivating c) implementing d) resuming
3. The company conducted a customer to gather feedback.
a) survey b) hesitation c) attitude d) check-in
4. Solar and wind power are examples of energy sources.
a) complicated b) renewable c) generic d) innovative
5. The team is using an method to solve environmental problems.
a) innovative b) generic c) hesitant d) complicated
6. The company needs to consider all before making big changes.
a) footprints b) stakeholders c) associations d) silos
7. The team laid the for future success by working hard from the start.
a) drips b) ground c) survey d) resume

8. Human language shows the of communication over thousands of years.
a) evolution b) footprint c) department d) association
9. She used a new to solve the math problem.
a) attitude b) approach c) perspective d) mission
10. The sales at the store was very helpful.
a) silos b) mission c) department d) footprint
11. She completed the assignment without anyone's help.
a) hesitantly b) anxiously
c) generically d) independently
12. She speaks French with such that you can hardly notice she is not a native.
a) perspective b) confidence c) fluency d) tolerance
13. Wind turbines provide energy without harming the environment.
a) polished b) impressive c) anxious d) renewable
14. The company brought together all to agree on the new policy.
a) missions b) check-ins c) stakeholders d) resumes
15. Teachers often do short with students to monitor progress.
a) check-ins b) drips c) assemblies d) surveys
16. He showed a professional during the meeting.
a) drip b) hesitation c) attitude d) assembly
17. The new project represents the next step in the company's
a) tolerance b) hesitation c) evolution d) drips
18. The company is trying to reduce its carbon
a) footprint b) department c) drips d) mission
19. She remained even under great pressure.
a) generic b) anxious c) confident d) complicated
20. A good teacher tries to keep students to learn.
a) motivated b) fluent c) anxious d) independent
21. The lecture was both informative and
a) generic b) enriching c) anxious d) hesitant
22. Make sure your job application is clear and
a) polished b) complicated c) hesitant d) anxious
23. Pollution leaves a negative on the planet.
a) footprint b) observation c) mission d) survey
24. The product is so that it doesn't stand out from the competition.
a) generic b) innovative c) polished d) complicated

(B) Language**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

25. She decided abroad after graduation.
 a) going b) to go c) goes d) gone
26. I enjoy new languages in my free time.
 a) learn b) to learn c) learning d) learned
27. He refused the instructions carefully.
 a) to follow b) following c) follows d) followed
28. They admitted the window by mistake.
 a) break b) to break c) breaking d) broken
29. I can't afford a new car right now.
 a) buy b) buying c) to buy d) buys
30. Don't forget your homework before class.
 a) do b) done c) doing d) to do
31. She avoided about the problem directly.
 a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) talked
32. He tried the door, but it was locked.
 a) to open b) opening c) open d) opened
33. Could you give me some for this job interview?
 a) advises b) advice c) advise d) adviser
34. She gave me useful information about studying abroad.
 a) a lot b) few c) many d) some
35. How students are in the classroom?
 a) little b) many c) much d) lots
36. She bought apple and ate it quickly.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
37. They live in big house near the beach.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
38. water is essential for life.
 a) A b) An c) The d) No article
39. My brother is engineer.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
40. He has excellent knowledge of history.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
41. cats are very independent animals.
 a) A b) An c) The d) No article
42. I saw interesting movie last night.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

43. He's a very creative person and full of new

- a) idea b) an idea c) ideas d) some idea

44. I don't have enough to finish the report on time.

- a) time b) a time c) times d) many time

45. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:

- a) I want learning more about history.
b) I want to learn more about history.
c) I want learned more about history.
d) I want learn more about history.

46. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:

- a) There isn't much food in the fridge.
b) There isn't few food in the fridge.
c) There isn't many food in the fridge.
d) There isn't much foods in the fridge.

47. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:

- a) We visited a Eiffel Tower when we were in Paris.
b) We visited an Eiffel Tower when we were in Paris.
c) We visited the Eiffel Tower when we were in Paris.
d) We visited Eiffel Tower when we were in Paris.

48. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:

- a) I need to buy a few furniture for my new apartment.
b) I need to buy a few furnitures for my new apartment.
c) I need to buy pieces of furniture for my new apartment.
d) I need to buy three furniture for my new apartment.

49. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct:

- a) We can't afford being late for class. b) We can't afford be late for class.
c) We can't afford to be late for class. d) We can't afford been late for class.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

50. She enjoys reading novels.

(to read)

51. He refused to answer the question.

(answering)

52. He avoided talking to the teacher.

(to talk)

53. They found a hair in the soup.

(some hair)

54. He borrowed a book from the library.

(books)

55. He has little knowledge of history.

(facts)

56. She is the only child in her family.

(an only child)

57. They stayed at the hotel near the station.

(a hotel)

(C) Translation

1 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

58. Technology in schools enhances learning through interactive tools like smart boards and educational apps.

- (a) تعزز التكنولوجيا في المدارس التعلم من خلال أدوات تفاعلية مثل السبورات الذكية والتطبيقات التعليمية.
- (b) تعزيز التكنولوجيا للمدارس في التعلم من خلال أدوات تفاعلية مثل السبورات غير الذكية والتطبيقات التعليمية.
- (c) تعزز التكنولوجيا في المدارس التعلم من خلال أدوات غير تفاعلية مثل السبورات الذكية والتطبيقات التعليمية.
- (d) تعزز التكنولوجيا في المدارس التعلم من خلال أدوات تفاعلية مثل السبورات الذكية والتطبيقات العلمية.

59. The country is taking significant steps to protect its natural resources and mitigate the effects of climate change.

- (a) تتخذ البلاد خطوات هامة لحماية مواردها الصناعية والتخفيف من آثار تغير المناخ.
- (b) تتخذ البلاد خطوات هامة لحماية مواردها الزراعية والتخفيف من آثار تغير المناخ.
- (c) تتخذ البلاد خطوات هامة لحماية مواردها التجارية والتخفيف من آثار تغير المناخ.
- (d) تتخذ البلاد خطوات هامة لحماية مواردها الطبيعية والتخفيف من آثار تغير المناخ.

2 Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

65. يشهد تركز مصر بشكل متزايد على حركة «التحول إلى الأخضر»، من خلال استراتيجية وطنية تهدف إلى التحول إلى اقتصاد أكثر

استدامة وصديقاً للبيئة.

- a) Egypt is increasingly focusing on the "go grey" movement, with an international strategy aimed at transitioning to a more sustainable and environmentally friendly economy.
- b) Egypt is increasingly focusing on the "go green" movement, with a national strategy aimed at transitioning to a more sustainable and environmentally friendly economy.
- c) Egypt is increasingly focusing on the "go grey" movement, with a national strategy aimed to transitioning to a more sustainable and environmentally friendly economy.
- d) Egypt is increasingly focusing on the "go green" movement, with an international strategy aimed to transitioning to a more sustainable and environmentally friendly economy.

66. تشغل العديد من الوظائف من خلال التواصل الاجتماعي بدلاً من إعلانات الوظائف العامة.

- a) Many job are filled through networking rather than public job postings.
- b) Many job are filled through networking rather that public job postings.
- c) Many jobs is filled through networking either than public job postings.
- d) Many jobs are filled through networking rather than public job postings.

(D) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In today's fast-changing world, many organizations are searching for innovative ways to create a positive impact. One company, Eco-Vision, has gained attention for its sustainable mission. Instead of focusing only on profit, Eco-Vision works to reduce its carbon footprint by implementing renewable energy sources, such as solar panels and wind turbines.

Eco-Vision believes that small actions can create big changes. For example, employees are encouraged to work independently while still joining regular check-ins with their teams. This approach avoids "silos," or isolated groups, and helps everyone stay connected. The company also values tolerance and different perspectives. Leaders invite stakeholders to share ideas, even when opinions are complicated or conflicting. By listening carefully, Eco-Vision creates a culture of respect and confidence.

In addition, the company organizes surveys and observations to track progress. Employees report that the work environment is both motivating and enriching, since their efforts support a clear mission. The results have been impressive: Eco-Vision has reduced its energy use by 40% and inspired other organizations to follow its example.

Eco-Vision shows that innovation and sustainability can go hand in hand. By combining polished strategies with genuine concern for the planet, the company proves that business success does not have to come at the expense of the environment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eco-Vision's main mission is to

- a) increase profits only
- b) sell solar panels directly
- c) avoid employee surveys
- d) reduce its carbon footprint

2. The company uses to create renewable energy.

- a) coal and oil
- b) water bottles
- c) plastic and gas
- d) solar and wind

3. Eco-Vision encourages regular check-ins to

- a) create more silos
- b) keep employees connected
- c) increase hesitation
- d) avoid tolerance

4. What does the word "silos" mean in the passage?

- a) Isolated groups
- b) Tall farm buildings
- c) Concrete structures
- d) Renewable sources

5. How does Eco-Vision treat different perspectives?

- a) Ignores them
- b) Punishes them
- c) Listens and respects them
- d) Avoids them

6. Eco-Vision's results are

- a) impressive
- b) generic
- c) anxious
- d) complicated

7. What message does Eco-Vision send to other organizations?

- a) Profit is the only goal
- b) Innovation and sustainability can work together
- c) Surveys are unnecessary
- d) Renewable energy is too expensive

(E) Writing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following is the most appropriate greeting for a formal email?

- a) Hey there!
- b) Hi John,
- c) Dear Mr. Smith,
- d) You!

2. The main purpose of a CV is to

- a) tell a personal life story
- b) request a favor from a friend
- c) summarize education, skills, and work experience
- d) share vacation photos

3. should be avoided in a formal email.

- a) Clear subject line
- b) Polite closing
- c) Emojis and slang
- d) Full sentences

4. is the most appropriate closing for a formal email.

- a) Cheers!
- b) Talk soon,
- c) Best wishes,
- d) Sincerely,

5. Where would you include your contact information in a CV?

- a) At the end, after references.
- b) In the middle of work experience.
- c) At the top of the page.
- d) Only in the cover letter.

6. is a feature of an informal email.

- a) Structured paragraphs with bullet points
- b) Use of contractions like "I'm" and "can't"
- c) Long, complex vocabulary
- d) No greeting or closing

7. The purpose of a formal email is to

- a) share memes
- b) chat about weekend plans
- c) make a joke with friends
- d) communicate professionally with clarity and respect

8. Which sentence is appropriate for the body of a formal email?

- a) "What's up? Need help with the assignment."
- b) "I hope this message finds you well. I am writing to inquire about the internship position."
- c) "Hey! Send me the notes ASAP!!!"
- d) "Lol, that was so funny!"

9. Which of the following is NOT typically included in a CV?

- a) Education history.
- b) Work experience.
- c) Full life story and childhood memories.
- d) Relevant skills.

10. When writing an informal email to a classmate about a group project, you can include

- a) Official company letterhead
- b) Emojis and exclamation marks
- c) Legal disclaimers
- d) Formal titles like "Respected Sir"

2 Write a descriptive essay of (120 - 150) words on one of the following:

- a) An email to a company or organization to ask for specific information about a product.

.....

.....

- b) An email to congratulate your friend on a new job.

.....

.....

(F) The Novel

3 Answer the following questions:

1. How does Santiago balance his need for food and strength during the battle?
2. Why does Santiago cry after his victory?
3. What does Santiago mean when he says he was beaten by sharks, not the fish?

Story

The Old Man and the Sea



Story

Introduction
Summary
Chapter Texts
Exercises

Introduction

(A) The Writer (Ernest Hemingway)

الكاتب

- Ernest Hemingway was an American novelist, short-story writer, and journalist. Born on July 21, 1899, in Oak Park, Illinois, he served in World War I as an ambulance driver in Italy. Hemingway fought in wars, hunted in Africa, and lived in Cuba for many years. After the war, he worked as a journalist before moving to Paris.
- Hemingway's experiences affected his writing style, characterized by simplicity البساطة, clarity الوضوح, and a focus on descriptive details. Some of his works include "The Old Man and the Sea" (1952), "A Farewell to Arms" (1929), and "For Whom the Bell Tolls" (1940).
- He was awarded the Pulitzer Prize for Fiction in 1953 and the Nobel Prize in Literature الأدب in 1954. Hemingway's life was marked by adventure, including hunting and deep-sea fishing. He died on July 2, 1961, in Ketchum, Idaho.

(B) The Novel

القصة

- "The Old Man and the Sea" is a book by Ernest Hemingway. It's about an old fisherman named Santiago who goes out to sea and catches a huge fish. He struggles to bring it back to shore, facing many challenges along the way. The story is about determination, bravery, and the power of nature.

(C) Characters

شخصيات القصة

1 Santiago

An old Cuban fisherman and the main character. He is poor and unlucky, but full of dignity, courage, and wisdom. Even though he's had bad luck lately, Santiago doesn't give up يستسلم. He's a proud and determined man who respects يحترم the sea and its creatures مخلوقات. He represents endurance and the struggle of man against nature.

2 Manolin

Manolin is a young boy who loves and considers him a mentor مرشد. He cares about Santiago's well-being. Manolin wants to learn from Santiago and help him, showing how much he respects and admires the old man.

Though forced by his parents to leave the old man's boat, he remains loyal and supportive, symbolizing friendship and the passing of knowledge between generations.

3 The Marlin

A giant, noble fish that Santiago hooks far out in the Gulf Stream. It represents both nature's beauty and its challenge.

The marlin tests Santiago's strength and willpower, pushing him to his limits. The fish is also a symbol of the ocean's power and mystery.

4 The Sharks

Cruel predators that attack the marlin after Santiago kills it. They symbolize destruction, loss, and the harsh reality of life.

5 The Sea

Not just a setting but a living character. Sometimes generous, sometimes cruel, it is the world in which Santiago struggles and finds meaning.

(D) Themes

المواضيع

1 Struggle and Perseverance

Santiago fights not just the fish but also his own weakness, showing that true victory lies in refusing to give up.

2 Pride and Dignity

Even in defeat, Santiago maintains his honor. Hemingway shows that dignity matters more than material success.

3 Man and Nature

The novel explores the relationship between humans and the natural world, portraying both respect and conflict.

4 Youth and Age

Through Santiago and Manolin, the story contrasts experience and innocence, showing how strength and knowledge can pass from one generation to another.

Santiago's dreams of lions represent youth, hope, and eternal strength, reminding us that even in old age, the human spirit can remain alive.

Summary of the Plot

- The story is about an old fisherman named Santiago who lives in a small village. He's been fishing for many years, but hasn't caught anything in 84 days. The villagers think he's unlucky, and his apprentice صبي متدرب, Manolin, is forced to fish with another boat.
- Santiago decides to go out to sea alone, determined مصمم to catch a fish. On the 85th day, he catches a huge marlin, which pulls him further and further out to sea. Santiago is amazed by the fish's strength and beauty, and he starts to respect it.
- Over the next few days, Santiago struggles to wear out the marlin. He's tired, hungry, and in pain, but he refuses to give up. As he battles the fish, Santiago thinks about his life and his relationships. He remembers his past, his dreams, and his regrets.
- As the days pass, Santiago develops a deep connection with the marlin. He starts to feel a sense of pride and admiration for the fish, and he begins to see it as a worthy opponent. Eventually, Santiago manages to kill the marlin.
- As he sails back to shore, sharks start to attack the marlin's body, eating away its flesh. Santiago tries to fight them off, but there are too many, and he's too tired. By the time he reaches the shore, all that's left of the marlin is its skeleton هيكل عظمي .
- Despite losing most of the fish, Santiago feels proud of what he's accomplished. He's exhausted, but he's also at peace. He knows he has proved to himself that he's still strong and capable.
- The story is about perseverance الإصرار, courage الشجاعة, and the human relationship with nature. Santiago's journey shows that even when we face challenges, we can emerge stronger and wiser.

Chapter (1)

The Old Man and His Luck

Vocabulary

المفردات

admiration	إعجاب	dignity	الكرامة	luxuries	كماليات / رفاهيات
breeze	نسيم	grin	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة	patched	ملء بالرقع
coil	يلف / يلتف	heel	كعب القدم	scarred	به اثر للجروح / يترك أثراً
companion	صحبة	hut	كوخ	spirit	روح
composure	رباطة جأش	leathery	مدبوغ / مصبوغ		
determination	إصرار	loyal	مخلص		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

at his parents' order	تنفيذاً لأوامر والديه	empty-handed	خالي اليدين	luck will return	سوف يأتي الحظ
dare to	يتجرأ على	fishing gear	معدات الصيد	to be exact	يكون حريصاً ودقيقاً
dream of lions	تشير إلى القوة والشباب والأمل	laugh at	يسخر من		
dream of	يحلم بـ / يتمنى	lean back	يتكأ		

Values in this chapter

Dignity in hardship

الكرامة في وقت الشدة

Santiago keeps his pride even when others mock him.

Loyalty and friendship

الإخلاص والصداقة

Manolin shows devotion to the old man despite his parents' orders.

Hope against misfortune

الأمل مقابل سوء الحظ

Santiago believes the 85th day will bring change.

Wisdom of experience

حكمة الخبرة

Santiago values skill and exactness more than mere luck.

Summary in Points

1. Santiago is an old fisherman who has been fishing for many years.
سانتياجو هو صياد عجوز كان يصطاد منذ سنوات عديدة.
2. For 84 days, Santiago has not caught any fish.
لم يصطد سانتياجو أى سمك لمدة ٨٤ يومًا.
3. The other fishermen think he is unlucky and call him *salao*.
الصيادون الآخرون يعتقدون أنه سيئ الحظ ويطلقون عليه لقب *سالو*.
4. Only one person supports him—a young boy named Manolin.
شخص واحد فقط يدعمه / وهو صبي صغير يدعى مانولين.
5. Manolin used to fish with Santiago since he was five years old.
كان مانولين يصطاد مع سانتياجو منذ أن كان عمره خمس سنوات.
6. Manolin's parents made him fish with another boat because Santiago had no luck.
أجبر والدا مانولين ابنهما على الصيد فى قارب آخر لأن سانتياجو لم يكن محظوظًا.
7. Still, every evening, Manolin helps Santiago with his fishing gear.
ومع ذلك، كل مساء، يساعد مانولين سانتياجو فى حمل أدوات الصيد.
8. The boy tells Santiago he is the best fisherman he knows.
يخبر مانولين سانتياجو بأنه أفضل صياد يعرفه.
9. Santiago replies, "It is better to be lucky, but I would rather be exact."
يرد سانتياجو: من الأفضل أن تكون محظوظًا، لكننى أفضل أن أكون دقيقًا.
10. Santiago lives in a simple hut with very little inside—just the basics.
يعيش سانتياجو فى كوخ بسيط يحتوى على القليل فقط – مجرد الأساسيات.
11. That evening, Manolin brings food, and they eat together.
فى ذلك المساء، جلب مانولين الطعام، وتناولوا العشاء معًا.
12. They talk about baseball, especially Santiago's hero Joe DiMaggio.
تحدثنا عن لعبة البيسبول، وخاصة عن بطل سانتياجو، جو ديماجيو.
13. Santiago respects DiMaggio for playing well even with pain.
يحترم سانتياجو ديماجيو لأنه كان يلعب بشكل جيد رغم الألم.
14. Santiago says he will go far out into the sea the next day to find a big fish.
يقول سانتياجو إنه سيذهب بعيدًا فى البحر فى اليوم التالى ليصطاد سمكة كبيرة.
15. He talks about his dream of lions on African beaches, a symbol of youth and strength.
يتحدث عن حلمه بالأسود على شواطئ إفريقيا، كرمز للشباب والقوة.
16. That night, Santiago falls asleep dreaming of the lions, believing his luck will change on the 85th day.
فى تلك الليلة، ينام سانتياجو وهو يحلم بالأسود، معتقدًا أن حظّه سيتغير فى اليوم الخامس والثمانين.

Chapter Text

Santiago was an old fisherman, and the sea was his companion. His skin had grown dark and leathery from years beneath the burning sun. His hands were rough, cut, and scarred from pulling heavy fishing lines day after day. Yet, when people looked into his eyes, they did not see weakness. His eyes were as clear and bright as the sea itself, full of life and determination.

For eighty-four long days, Santiago had gone out into the Gulf Stream and returned empty-handed. Not a single fish had been caught. In his small Cuban village, whispers began to spread. The younger fishermen, who still had luck, laughed at him quietly.

They called him *salao*—the worst kind of unlucky. Yet Santiago carried himself with dignity.



He walked proudly with his fishing gear over his shoulder, his back straight, as if luck were something that could never truly defeat a man. Among all the people of the village, only one remained loyal to him: a boy named Manolin. The boy had fished with Santiago since he was just five years old. Now he was twelve, strong and full of admiration for the old man. He loved Santiago like a grandfather. For forty days, Manolin had fished with him, even when there was no catch. But finally, at his parents' order, he had joined another boat—a luckier boat that brought back fish.

Still, every evening, when the other fishermen returned with their catch, Manolin would go to Santiago's small skiff. He would help the old man carry his nets, his gaff, and his harpoon. He would fold the patched sail. He would carry the old man's heavy lines, carefully coiled, and walk beside him.

"Old man," the boy said one evening as they reached Santiago's hut, "you are the greatest fisherman I know. Someday, the luck will return to you."

Santiago smiled faintly, the lines of age deepening around his mouth. "It is better to be lucky," he said. "But I would rather be exact. When luck finally comes, I want to be ready for it."

The boy nodded. He knew Santiago's words carried wisdom. To fish was not only luck—it was skill, patience, and courage.

The hut where Santiago lived was small, made of faded palm leaves. Inside, it was almost bare. On the walls hung only two pictures. There was a bed made of newspapers, a single blanket, a wooden table, and one chair. There were no luxuries, no decorations, no treasures—except the tools of a fisherman.

Yet Santiago never complained. He had lived his whole life with the sea, and that was enough.

That evening, the boy sat with him outside the hut. They shared a simple meal of black beans, rice, and a little fried fish. The boy had brought it as a gift from his own home. Santiago ate slowly, gratefully, for food was energy, and tomorrow he would need it.

"Tell me about baseball," Santiago said suddenly. Baseball was one of the old man's greatest loves. "How are the Yankees playing this season?"

"The Yankees are strong," Manolin replied eagerly. "Joe DiMaggio is playing well. He is always the hero."

Santiago's eyes lit up. "Yes, DiMaggio. He is my champion too. He played even when he had pain in his heel, yet he never gave up. That is real courage. Pain does not matter to a man."

The boy grinned. "But you are stronger than DiMaggio, old man. You have the sea."

The old man laughed, a soft, tired laugh. "Perhaps. But baseball has its battles, and the sea has its own."

The evening grew darker. A warm breeze carried the smell of salt from the sea. The sound of waves reached their ears, steady and calming. Santiago leaned back against the wall of his hut, his face peaceful.

"Tomorrow is the eighty-fifth day," he said. "That is a lucky number. I will go far out, farther than the others dare to go. Maybe too far. But I must find the big fish."



The boy looked at him with admiration. "I wish I could go with you."

"You have your boat," Santiago said gently. "But you are always with me in spirit."

For a moment, silence fell between them. Santiago's thoughts drifted back to his youth. He had once been strong, a sailor on great ships. He had traveled to Africa, and on the golden beaches at night he had seen lions—young lions running and playing like children. Those lions had never left his mind. Even now, in his old age, he dreamed of them. They reminded him of strength, youth, and freedom.

"Do you know what I dream of, boy?" Santiago asked softly.

"Yes," said Manolin. "You dream of lions."

The old man smiled. "Yes, lions. Always the lions."

When the meal was finished, Manolin cleared the dishes and promised to bring food again tomorrow. Then he left for his parents' house. Santiago watched him go, feeling both proud and lonely. The boy had strength and future; the old man had only the sea.

Later, Santiago lay down on his bed of newspapers. The hut was dark, but the sound of the ocean filled the silence. He thought of the coming day, of the deep waters, of the great fish that waited for him. He thought of Joe DiMaggio, who played through pain, and of the lions, who never feared.

Slowly, he closed his eyes. Sleep came to him gently, and with it, the dream of lions. In his dream, they played freely on the beaches of Africa, their golden bodies shining in the sun. Santiago was young again, strong, fearless, full of hope.

And as he dreamed, the old man smiled. Tomorrow would be the eighty-fifth day. His luck, he believed, was about to change.

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

تزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter (1) Answered Exercises

1. How did years in the sun change Santiago's skin?
كيف غيرت السنوات التي قضاها في الشمس سانتياجو بشرته؟
 - His skin became dark and leathery.
2. What did people see when they looked into Santiago's eyes?
ماذا رأى الناس عندما نظروا في عيون سانتياجو؟
 - They saw life and determination.
3. How many days did Santiago go without catching a fish?
كم عدد الأيام التي قضاها سانتياجو دون صيد أى سمكة؟
 - Eighty-four days.
4. What did Santiago say about luck and being exact?
ما الذى قاله سانتياجو بشأن الحظ وضرورة الدقة؟
 - He said it is better to be lucky, but he preferred to be exact.
5. What did Santiago admire about Joe DiMaggio?
ما الذى أعجب به سانتياجو فى جو ديماجيو؟
 - He admired that DiMaggio played well even when he was in pain.
6. What did Santiago dream about at night?
ماذا حلم سانتياجو فى الليل؟
 - He dreamed of lions on the beaches of Africa.
7. How does Santiago's long struggle without catching fish show his character?
كيف يُظهر كفاح سانتياجو الطويل دون صيد الأسماك شخصيته؟
 - It shows his patience, determination, and resilience.
8. How does Santiago's relationship with Manolin help both of them grow?
كيف تساعد علاقة سانتياجو مع مانولين كلاهما على النمو؟
 - Manolin learns skills and values, while Santiago gains companionship and hope.
9. Why might Santiago believe the eighty-fifth day will bring luck?
لماذا قد يعتقد سانتياجو أن اليوم الخامس والثمانين سيجلب الحظ؟
 - Because he believes that persistence and hope will eventually lead to success.
10. How does the sea act as both a companion and a challenge for Santiago?
كيف يعمل البحر كرفيق وتحدٍ لسانتياجو؟
 - The sea gives him life and purpose, but also tests his courage and skill.
11. Why do you think Manolin loved Santiago like a grandfather?
لماذا تعتقد أن مانولين أحب سانتياجو مثل جده؟
 - Because Santiago cared for him and taught him fishing.
12. Why did Santiago admire lions in his dreams?
لماذا أعجب سانتياجو بالأسود فى أحلامه؟
 - Because they reminded him of strength, youth, and freedom.
13. How are Santiago's battles with the sea like baseball games?
كيف تشبه معارك سانتياجو مع البحر مباريات البيسبول؟
 - Both need courage, strength, and never giving up.
14. What lesson can we learn from Santiago's story?
ما هو الدرس الذى يمكن أن نتعلمه من قصة سانتياجو؟
 - We learn about patience, courage, and never giving up.
15. How do the sea and baseball serve as symbols in the story?
كيف يكون البحر والبيسبول بمثابة رموز فى القصة؟
 - Both symbolize struggle, courage, and challenges that require patience.

Chapter (1) Student's Book Exercises



Part (A) Reading Comprehension

1. How many days had Santiago gone without catching a fish?
 - a) Forty-four.
 - b) Eighty-four.
 - c) Sixty-four.
 - d) Ninety-four.
2. What did the villagers whisper about Santiago?
 - a) That he was a hero.
 - b) That he was cursed with bad luck.
 - c) That he was too rich to fish.
 - d) That he should stop fishing.
3. Who was Manolin?
 - a) Santiago's son.
 - b) A young fisherman from another boat.
 - c) A boy who had fished with Santiago since childhood.
 - d) A visitor from Havana.
4. Why did Manolin leave Santiago's boat?
 - a) He wanted to fish alone.
 - b) His parents made him join a luckier boat.
 - c) Santiago sent him away.
 - d) He lost interest in fishing.
5. What did Manolin do every evening?
 - a) He brought food and helped Santiago with his gear.
 - b) He went to play baseball.
 - c) He laughed with the other fishermen.
 - d) He practiced sailing with his friends.
6. What sport did Santiago love to talk about?
 - a) Football.
 - b) Baseball.
 - c) Boxing.
 - d) Horse racing.
7. Who was Santiago's hero in baseball?
 - a) Babe Ruth.
 - b) Jackie Robinson.
 - c) Joe DiMaggio.
 - d) Mickey Mantle.
8. What did Santiago plan for the eighty-fifth day?
 - a) To rest.
 - b) To borrow another boat.
 - c) To go far out into the sea to find a big fish.
 - d) To fish near the shore.

9. What did Santiago dream of at night?

- a) His boyhood in Cuba.
- b) His family.
- c) Lions on the beaches of Africa.
- d) The sharks of the Gulf Stream.

Part (B) Vocabulary MCQs

1. The word "scar" means

- a) fresh wound
- b) old mark from an injury
- c) a type of fish
- d) a weapon

2. The opposite of "loyal" is

- a) faithful
- b) respectful
- c) unfaithful
- d) patient

3. Which word collocates with "luck"?

- a) Good.
- b) Bad.
- c) Return.
- d) a & b.

4. "To carry a burden with pride" means

- a) to show negative attitude
- b) to accept difficulties with dignity
- c) to refuse help from others
- d) to avoid responsibility

5. A "skiff" is

- a) a kind of fish
- b) a small fishing boat
- c) a tool for cutting lines
- d) a fishing net

6. The antonym of "admiration" is

- a) respect
- b) praise
- c) dislike
- d) affection

7. The word "composure" is closest in meaning to

- a) calmness
- b) excitement
- c) anger
- d) fear

8. "To be exact" means

- a) to guess
- b) to be careful and precise
- c) to be lucky
- d) to be strong

Part (C) Fill in the Gaps

1. Santiago's hands were cut and full of from years of fishing.
2. The boy helped Santiago fold his patched
3. The villagers whispered that the old man was cursed with bad
4. Santiago said it was better to be lucky, but even better to be
5. Manolin brought the old man food such as rice, beans, and
6. Santiago admired the courage of Joe in baseball.
7. Santiago believed the-fifth day would be lucky.
8. Santiago planned to go far out into the to find a big fish.
9. At night, the old man dreamed of on the beaches of Africa.

Part (D) Open-ended

1. Why did the villagers think Santiago was unlucky?
.....
2. How did Manolin show loyalty to Santiago even after leaving his boat?
.....
3. Why does Santiago admire Joe DiMaggio?
.....
4. What is the importance of the number eighty-five in this chapter?
.....
5. How does Santiago show dignity in the face of failure?
.....
6. Why do you think the boy still spends his evenings with Santiago?
.....
7. How do the lions in Santiago's dreams symbolize youth and strength?
.....
8. What does Santiago mean by saying "It is better to be exact"?
.....
9. What lesson can we learn about perseverance from this chapter?
.....

Part (E) Critical Thinking

1. How does Hemingway use Santiago's eyes to show his inner spirit?
.....
2. Why does the patched sail symbolize more than just an old piece of cloth?
.....
3. In what ways does Santiago represent courage even before the big journey begins?
.....
4. What role does baseball play in the old man's life?
.....
5. Why does Hemingway show the boy's loyalty, even when he fishes on another boat?
.....
6. How do Santiago's dreams reveal his true character?
.....
7. Do you think luck or skill is more important for success? Why?
.....
8. How does this chapter introduce the theme of man versus nature?
.....
9. In what way does Santiago's hut reflect his personality?
.....
10. Why is hope so important for both Santiago and Manolin?
.....

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter (2)

Preparing for the Great Day

Vocabulary

المفردات

bait	الطعم / يطعم	harpoon	حرية لصيد الحيتان	skiff	قارب صغير للصيد
dock	رصيف الميناء / حوض السفينة	horizon	الأفق	slap	صفعة / لكمة
endurance	قوة التحمل	pity	شفقة	splash	ترش / يتخبط في الماء
gaff	عصا بخطاف تستخدم في الصيد	precision	دقة / أحكام	sweat	العرق
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	row	يجدف	tar	مادة القطران
harbor	مرفأ / ميناء	seaworthy	صالح للإبحار	whisper	همس / يهمس

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن بـ	go too far	يذهب بعيدًا عن المعتاد	the flag of defeat	تدل على تهالك الشراع
eighty-five is my number	رقم ٨٥ هو رقم الحظ	keep his eyes on	يضع نصب عينيه	The sea waits	البحر ينتظر (تشخيص البحر بإنسان)
exactness brought luck	الدقة تجلب الحظ	push ... away	يدفع ... بعيدًا	Farther than the others dare	أبعد مما يجرؤ عليه الآخرون (يدل على الشجاعة)
Good luck	حظ جيد	put on	يرتدى		

Values

in this chapter

Faith and determination

الإيمان والإصرار

Santiago believes in his lucky number, 85

Respect and humility

الاحترام والتواضع

He ignores pity and pride from others.

Preparation and patience

التجهيز والصبر

Exact care in setting lines reflects discipline.

Companionship

الصحبة

The bond with Manolin shows love beyond duty.

Summary in Points

1. Santiago woke up before sunrise and enjoyed the quiet, starry morning.
استيقظ سانتياجو قبل شروق الشمس واستمتع بصمت الصباح وسماء مليئة بالنجوم.
2. Manolin was already waiting for him with food and coffee.
كان مانولين بانتظاره وقد أحضر له طعامًا وقهوة.
3. Santiago was grateful and said he would need strength for the day ahead.
كان سانتياجو ممتنًا وقال إنه سيحتاج إلى القوة لهذا اليوم.
4. Together, they carried the fishing gear to the harbor, including the patched sail.
حملًا معًا أدوات الصيد إلى الميناء، بما في ذلك الشراع المرقع.
5. Other fishermen either greeted Santiago with respect or looked at him with pity.
بعض الصيادين حيوه باحترام، بينما نظر إليه آخرون بشفقة.
6. Santiago stayed focused and calm, ignoring all opinions.
ظل سانتياجو مركزًا وهادئًا، غير مبالي بآراء الآخرين.
7. At the boat, Manolin asked to join him, but Santiago told him to stay with the lucky boat.
عند القارب، طلب مانولين أن يرافقه، لكن سانتياجو طلب منه البقاء مع القارب المحظوظ.
8. They shared a moment of quiet and sipped coffee together.
شاركوا لحظة هادئة وتناولوا القهوة معًا.
9. Santiago said this was the 85th day, and he would go far into the sea, beyond the others.
قال سانتياجو إن هذا هو اليوم الخامس والثمانون، وسيتمجه بعيدًا في البحر، أبعد من الجميع.
10. Manolin wished him luck, and Santiago set off alone into the calm morning sea.
تمنى له مانولين الحظ، وانطلق سانتياجو وحده في بحر الصباح الهادئ.
11. As he rowed, Santiago felt peace and remembered his youth, Africa, and the lions.
بينما كان يجدف، شعر سانتياجو بالسلام وتذكر شبابه، وإفريقيا، والأسود.
12. He prepared his lines carefully and placed them at different depths.
جهز خيوط الصيد بعناية، ووضعها في أعماق مختلفة من الماء.
13. He waited patiently, ignoring small fish, searching for a big one.
انتظر بصبر، وتجاهل الأسماك الصغيرة، باحثًا عن سمكة كبيرة.
14. Though the sun grew hot, Santiago stayed strong and hopeful.
رغم أن الشمس أصبحت حارة، ظل سانتياجو قويًا ومتفائلًا.
15. He noticed a bird circling above the sea and felt that something important was near.
رأى طائرًا يحوم فوق البحر وشعر أن شيئًا مهمًا على وشك الحدوث.

Chapter Text

In the early morning, before the sun rose, Santiago woke up. The sky was dark and full of stars. He loved this hour, when the village was quiet and the sea whispered in the distance. He put on his old trousers, picked up his coil of lines, and stepped outside his small hut.

The boy, Manolin, was already waiting for him. He carried food wrapped in paper—a gift for Santiago. “Here, old man. Some black beans, rice, and a little coffee,” he said proudly.

Santiago accepted it gratefully. “You are good to me, boy. I will need my strength today.”

The boy helped him carry the lines, gaff, harpoon, and the sail, which was patched many times and looked like the flag of defeat. But Santiago carried it with pride, for he believed the sail would take him to his destiny.

As they walked toward the harbor, they passed other fishermen preparing their boats. Some greeted Santiago with respect, while others looked at him with pity. Santiago ignored both. He knew what he must do.

They reached the small wooden skiff, Santiago’s boat. It was old but seaworthy. The boy loaded the gear carefully, arranging the lines in neat coils so they would run freely when needed.

“Can I come with you?” Manolin asked

“You are with a lucky boat now,” Santiago replied. “Stay with them. I will manage alone. But when I catch the big one, you will help me carry it back.”

The boy’s eyes shone. “I believe in you, old man.”

They sat together for a moment on the dock, sipping the warm coffee from tin cups. The air smelled of salt and tar, and the sea waited silently. Santiago looked at the horizon.

“Eighty-five is my number,” he said. “Today, I will go far out. Farther than the others dare to go.”

The boy nodded. “You always go too far.”

Santiago smiled. “That is where the big fish live.”



When the stars began to fade and the first light of dawn touched the water, Santiago pushed his boat away from the shore. The boy held the rope for a moment, then let go.

"Good luck, old man," Manolin said softly

"Good luck," Santiago answered, though he believed luck was only part of the story. Skill, patience, and endurance mattered more.

The boat moved smoothly over the calm water. Santiago rowed with steady arms, feeling the rhythm of the oars. He listened to the sounds of the sea: the splash of fish, the cries of seabirds, the gentle slap of waves. He felt at home.

As he rowed, he thought about his life. He remembered when he was young and strong, when he had sailed to Africa and seen lions playing on the golden beaches. He remembered storms, battles with giant fish, and long nights on the open sea. He was old now, but his spirit was not broken.

By sunrise, he was far from the shore. He could no longer see the lights of the village. The sea stretched wide and endless around him. Other boats had stopped closer in, but Santiago kept going. He wanted to be alone where no one else dared to fish.

At last, he stopped and prepared his lines. He baited them carefully with fresh sardines and lowered them into the deep blue water, at different depths. He worked with the precision of a master, for he believed that exactness brought luck.

Then he sat back, holding the line gently between his fingers, feeling every movement below. He waited, patient as always. The sun climbed higher, and the sea shone like glass.

The old man thought of the boy and smiled. "He has hope," Santiago whispered to himself. "It is good for a man to have hope. Without it, he is nothing."

All morning he waited. Small fish tugged at the bait, but he ignored them. He was looking for something greater, something worthy of all his strength.

By noon, the heat was strong, and sweat ran down his back. But Santiago did not complain. He kept his eyes on the sea, his hands ready, his heart steady. He was prepared for the great test.

Far out, a bird circled over the water. Santiago watched it carefully. "Where the bird circles, there are fish," he said aloud. His eyes followed the movement, and deep inside, he knew that soon, his moment would come.



Chapter (2) Answered Exercises

1. What did Santiago love about the early morning? ماذا أحب سانتياجو في الصباح الباكر؟
 - He loved the quiet of the village and the whispering sea.
2. How did Santiago feel about the patched sail? ما هو شعور سانتياجو تجاه الشراع المصحح؟
 - He carried it with pride, believing it would take him to his destiny.
3. How did other fishermen react to Santiago? كيف كان رد فعل الصيادين الآخرين تجاه سانتياجو؟
 - Some greeted him with respect, others looked at him with pity.
4. Why did Santiago tell Manolin not to come with him? لماذا طلب سانتياجو من مانولين ألا يأتي معه؟
 - Because Manolin was with a lucky boat now, and Santiago wanted to manage alone.
5. How did Santiago feel when rowing far from shore? كيف كان شعور سانتياجو عندما كان يجدف بعيداً عن الشاطئ؟
 - He felt at home and peaceful with the sea.
6. What did Santiago remember about his youth? ماذا يتذكر سانتياجو عن شبابه؟
 - He remembered sailing to Africa, seeing lions, storms, battles with giant fish, and long nights at sea.
7. How did Santiago prepare his fishing lines? كيف قام سانتياجو بإعداد خيوط الصيد الخاصة به؟
 - He baited them carefully with fresh sardines and lowered them at different depths.
8. What did Santiago feel while holding the line? ماذا شعر سانتياجو أثناء تمسكه بالخيط؟
 - He felt every movement below, showing patience and skill.
9. Why did Santiago ignore the small fish tugging at his bait? لماذا تجاهل سانتياجو السمكة الصغيرة التي تسحب طعمه؟
 - He was waiting for something greater, worthy of all his strength.
10. How does Manolin's care for Santiago reflect their relationship? كيف تعكس رعاية مانولين لسانتياجو علاقتهم؟
 - It shows loyalty, respect, and love.
11. Why does Santiago value skill and patience over luck? لماذا يفضل سانتياجو المهارة والصبر على الحظ؟
 - Because success in fishing requires preparation and mastery, not just chance.
12. How does remembering his youth and lions help Santiago? كيف يساعد تذكر شبابه وأسوده سانتياجو؟
 - It gives him strength, hope, and a sense of freedom.
13. Why is hope important to Santiago, according to his thoughts about the boy? لماذا الأمل مهم بالنسبة لسانتياجو ، وفقاً لأفكاره عن الصبي؟
 - Because hope motivates and gives purpose, making life meaningful.
14. How does the circling bird serve as a sign for Santiago? كيف يكون الطائر الدائري بمثابة علامة لسانتياجو؟
 - It guides him to fish and shows the importance of observation in fishing.
15. Why does Santiago continue even when conditions are difficult? لماذا يستمر سانتياجو حتى عندما تكون الظروف صعبة؟
 - Because he is determined, patient, and believes in his abilities.

Chapter (2) Student's Book Exercises



Part (A) Reading Comprehension

1. When did Santiago wake up to prepare for his journey?
 - a) After sunrise.
 - b) Before sunrise.
 - c) At noon.
 - d) In the evening.
2. What food did Manolin bring Santiago in the early morning?
 - a) Bread and milk.
 - b) Black beans, rice, and coffee.
 - c) Fish and fruit.
 - d) Meat and water.
3. How did other fishermen react to Santiago as he passed?
 - a) They all laughed.
 - b) They all praised him.
 - c) Some respected him, others pitied him.
 - d) They ignored him completely.
4. What kind of boat did Santiago own?
 - a) A large ship.
 - b) A modern boat.
 - c) A wooden skiff.
 - d) A canoe.
5. Why did Santiago tell the boy not to come with him?
 - a) Because the boy was too young.
 - b) Because the boy had to stay with a lucky boat.
 - c) Because Santiago wanted to fish alone.
 - d) Because the boy disliked the sea.
6. What number did Santiago call his "lucky number"?
 - a) Forty.
 - b) Sixty.
 - c) Eighty-four.
 - d) Eighty-five.
7. What did Santiago believe about luck?
 - a) It was more important than skill.
 - b) It was useful, but exactness mattered more.
 - c) It never existed.
 - d) It only helped the young.
8. What did Santiago do after pushing the boat out?
 - a) He waved goodbye to everyone.
 - b) He rowed steadily and listened to the sea.
 - c) He shouted loudly to the fishermen.
 - d) He went back to his hut.

9. What did Santiago say about hope?

- a) Without hope, a man is nothing.
- b) Hope is useless.
- c) Hope is only for the young.
- d) Hope is stronger than skill.

Part (B) Vocabulary MCQs

1. The word "harpoon" means

- a) a net for fishing
- b) a long spear for catching fish
- c) a type of boat
- d) a large hook for sharks

2. The phrase "flag of defeat" symbolizes

- a) a nation's power
- b) Santiago's patched sail and hardship
- c) victory at sea
- d) the pride of fishermen

3. The opposite of "respect" is

- a) admiration
- b) kindness
- c) disrespect
- d) care

4. Which collocates with "strength"?

- a) Show.
- b) Gain.
- c) Need.
- d) All of them.

5. "Seaworthy" means

- a) safe and fit for sailing
- b) dangerous for travel
- c) expensive to own
- d) made of nets

6. The word "endurance" is closest in meaning to

- a) courage
- b) patience and strength over time
- c) weakness
- d) fear

7. The antonym of "distant" is

- a) near
- b) far
- c) quiet
- d) alone

8. "Hopeful" is opposite in meaning to

- a) cheerful
- b) joyful
- c) hopeless
- d) patient

9. "To bait the lines" means

- a) to repair them
- b) to put food on the hooks to catch fish
- c) to cut them
- d) to coil them

Part (C) Fill in the Gaps

1. Manolin brought food such as black beans, rice, and for the old man.
2. Santiago's patched looked like the flag of defeat.
3. Some fishermen showed, while others pitied him.
4. The old man's small wooden boat was called a
5. Santiago told the boy to stay with the boat.
6. Santiago believed that -five was his lucky number.
7. He rowed steadily, feeling the rhythm of the
8. Santiago said that without, a man is nothing.
9. He baited his fishing carefully with sardines.
10. Santiago prepared his lines with like a master fisherman.

Part (D) Open-ended

1. Why did Manolin bring food to Santiago?
.....
2. How did the boy help prepare the boat for the journey?
.....
3. Why does the patched sail symbolize Santiago's past struggles?
.....
4. Why did some fishermen respect Santiago while others pitied him?
.....
5. How does Santiago show humility when talking with the boy?
.....
6. Why is the number eighty-five important for Santiago?
.....
7. What does the early morning setting tell us about Santiago's character?
.....
8. Why did Santiago choose to go farther than the other fishermen?
.....
9. What does Santiago mean by saying "without hope, a man is nothing"?
.....
10. How does Santiago's preparation show the value of patience and skill?
.....

Part (E) Critical Thinking

1. How does Hemingway create an atmosphere of hope at the start of Santiago's journey?
.....
2. Why do you think Santiago is described as both pitied and respected by others?
.....
3. How does the patched sail act as a metaphor for human struggle?
.....
4. What does Santiago's decision to fish farther than others reveal about his spirit?
.....
5. How is Manolin's loyalty important for the old man's dignity?
.....
6. Do you think luck or preparation is more important in life? Why?
.....
7. How does this chapter prepare readers for the great challenge to come?
.....
8. In what way does Santiago's skiff represent his life?
.....
9. Why might Hemingway show Santiago rowing in silence at sunrise?
.....
10. How does Santiago's belief in hope make him a symbol of resilience?
.....

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter (3)

The Big Fish Bites

Vocabulary

المفردات

battle	معركة	strain	جهد / إجهاد	tremble	يرتعش / يهتز
brace	يستجمع قواه	surrender	يستسلم	unstoppable	لا تتوقف
eternal	أبدى / خالدة	swallow	يبتلع		
forehead	الجبهة (فى الوجه)	tighten	يضيق / يشد	wipe	يمسح
hook	خطاف / يمسك بخطاف	tow	يسحب / يجر		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعابير والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

cut into his hands	يقطع يديه	feel the power of ...	يشعر بقوة ...	May the best of us win	الأفضل سيفوز
cut into	يقطع فى	go down	تغرب	My brother, the fish	يعبر عن الاحترام حتى للعدو
except for	ما عدا	held firm	يمسك بإحكام		
far from	بعيداً عن	his heart beat faster	قلبه يدق بسرعة	wait for	ينتظر

Values in this chapter

Courage in the face of struggle

الشجاعة فى مواجهة الصراع

Santiago meets the marlin with calm strength.

Patience and timing

الصبر والتوقيت

He waits for the fish to take the bait fully.

Endurance

التحمل والجلد

His fight begins with quiet determination.

Respect for the opponent

احترام المنافس

Santiago calls the fish "brother."

Summary in Points

1. The sun was high, and the sea was shining. Santiago watched a bird looking for fish.
كانت الشمس مرتفعة، والبحر يلمع. راقب سانتياجو طائرًا يبحث عن السمك.
2. The bird dived, and small tuna jumped. Santiago knew a big fish was nearby.
انقضَّ الطائر، وقفزت أسماك التونة الصغيرة. عرف سانتياجو أن سمكة كبيرة قريبة.
3. The fishing line moved slowly. Santiago stayed calm and let the fish eat the bait.
تحرك خيط الصيد ببطء. بقى سانتياجو هادئًا وترك السمكة تأكل الطُعم.
4. Suddenly, the line pulled hard and cut Santiago's hand. The big fish was hooked.
شدَّ الخيط فجأة وجرح يد سانتياجو. تم صيد السمكة الكبيرة.
5. The fish swam strongly into the deep sea, pulling the boat far from land.
سبحت السمكة بقوة في أعماق البحر، وسحبت القارب بعيدًا عن اليابسة.
6. Santiago felt pain but stayed strong. He drank water and ate a little tuna to keep his strength.
شعر سانتياجو بالألم لكنه بقى قويًا. شرب الماء وأكل قليلًا من التونة ليحافظ على طاقته.
7. As night came, Santiago talked to the fish. He called it his brother, but said he would not give up.
مع قدوم الليل، تحدث سانتياجو إلى السمكة. ناداها «أخي»، لكنه قال إنه لن يستسلم.
8. He remembered Joe DiMaggio, who played baseball in pain. This gave him courage.
تذكر جو ديماجيو الذي لعب البيسبول رغم الألم. أعطاه هذا شجاعة.
9. He wished the boy was with him to help and see the great fish.
تمنى لو كان الفتى معه ليساعده ويرى هذه السمكة العظيمة.
10. At sunrise, the fish was still pulling. Santiago said, "We are joined, fish. May the best one win?"
عند شروق الشمس، كانت السمكة لا تزال تسحب القارب. قال سانتياجو: نحن الآن مرتبطان، فليريح الأفضل.

Chapter Text

The sun was high now, and the sea shone with a hard, bright light. Santiago wiped the sweat from his forehead and watched the bird circling. The old man knew that the bird was looking for fish near the surface. Suddenly, the bird dived straight down, and the water splashed. Small tuna jumped in the air, frightened by something larger below.

Santiago's heart beat faster. He studied the lines with calm eyes, but inside he was excited. He had been waiting for this moment. His fingers felt the line tremble slightly. Then, without warning, the line began to move slowly, steadily. Something powerful was taking the bait.

The old man held the line carefully. He did not pull. He let the fish eat. He knew the ways of big fish. They circled, tested, and swallowed slowly. Santiago whispered, "Take it, big one. Take it well."

Then the line tightened hard, cutting deep into his hand. The fish was hooked. Santiago braced his feet and leaned back. The line stretched out into the deep water with unstoppable force. The boat began to move slowly, pulled by the fish.

"He is strong," Santiago said aloud. "He will show me what strength is."

The fish did not jump. It swam steadily out into the open sea, far from all other boats. Santiago let it run, his hands steady though the line cut into his skin. He felt the power of the great creature below, pulling him farther and farther away from land.



For hours, the fish swam on, and the boat followed. Santiago drank a little water and ate a piece of tuna he had caught earlier for bait. He needed strength, for this battle would not end quickly.

As the sun went down, the line still pulled tight, and the fish still swam deep. The old man spoke to it softly: "Fish, you are my brother. But I will not let you go. I will fight with all my heart to take you."

Night fell, and the stars came out. The boat moved quietly through the dark water. Santiago felt the line burning into his hands, but he held firm. His back ached, his arms trembled, but he would not surrender.

He remembered Joe DiMaggio playing baseball with pain in his heel. "If DiMaggio could play with pain, I can fight this fish," Santiago thought. "Pain does not matter. Only endurance matters."

The fish towed the boat all night. Santiago could not sleep. He tied the line across his shoulders to take some of the strain, but he never let go. He ate another piece of fish to keep his strength.

Sometimes, he thought of the boy. "I wish the boy were here," he whispered. "He would help me, and he would see what a great fish this is."

But Santiago was alone, and he knew this was his fight. The sea was silent except for the sound of water against the boat. The old man felt small under the wide sky, but also strong. He was part of the sea, part of the stars, part of the eternal struggle between man and nature.

As dawn began to break again, Santiago looked at the line. It still cut hard into the water, strong and deep. The fish had not tired. Neither had he.

The old man said aloud: "Now we are joined, fish, you and I. You are pulling me, and I am pulling you. May the best of us win."



Chapter (3) Answered Exercises

1. What did Santiago notice the bird doing? ماذا كان يفعل الطائر عندما لاحظته سانتياجو؟
 - The bird was circling, looking for fish near the surface.
2. What caused the small tuna to jump? ما هو السبب الذي جعل سمكة التونة الصغيرة تقفز؟
 - They were frightened by something larger below.
3. How did Santiago feel when the line began to move? كيف كان شعور سانتياجو عندما بدأ الحبل يتحرك؟
 - He felt excited inside, but studied the line calmly.
4. What did Santiago do when the fish took the bait? ماذا فعل سانتياجو عندما ابتلعت السمكة الطعم؟
 - He held the line carefully and did not pull.
5. How did Santiago refer to the fish while speaking to it? كيف أشار سانتياجو إلى السمكة أثناء حديثه معها؟
 - He called it his brother.
6. What did Santiago compare his endurance to? بماذا قارن سانتياجو قدرته على التحمل؟
 - He compared it to Joe DiMaggio playing baseball with pain.
7. Why did Santiago wish the boy were with him? لماذا تمنى سانتياجو أن يكون الصبي معه؟
 - Because he could help and see how great the fish was.
8. How did Santiago feel under the wide sky? كيف كان شعور سانتياجو تحت السماء الواسعة؟
 - He felt small, but also strong.
9. What did Santiago do to reduce the strain on his shoulders? ماذا فعل سانتياجو لتخفيف الضغط على كتفيه؟
 - He tied the line across his shoulders.
10. Why does Santiago let the fish swim without pulling immediately? لماذا يسمح سانتياجو للسمكة بالسباحة دون سحبها على الفور؟
 - Because he knows that the big fish tests the line slowly and he must be patient.
11. How does Santiago calling the fish his "brother" show his attitude toward nature? كيف يُظهر تسمية سانتياجو للسمكة بـ «أخيه» موقفه تجاه الطبيعة؟
 - It shows respect and a sense of connection with the fish.
12. How is Santiago inspired by his thought about DiMaggio? كيف يستلهم سانتياجو فكره عن ديماجيو؟
 - It motivates him to endure pain and continue fighting.
13. What does the struggle with the fish symbolize? ماذا يرمز الصراع مع السمكة؟
 - It symbolizes the battle between man and nature, and human perseverance.
14. Why is Santiago's fight described as both physical and spiritual? لماذا توصف معركة سانتياجو بأنها جسدية وروحية؟
 - Because it involves strength, courage, and respect for the fish.

Chapter (3) Student's Book Exercises



Part (A) Reading Comprehension

1. What did the bird circling above the water signal?
 - a) A storm was coming.
 - b) Fish were near the surface.
 - c) The sun was too bright.
 - d) Santiago was close to land.
2. What happened when the bird dived into the sea?
 - a) It caught a big fish.
 - b) Tuna jumped, scared of a larger fish below.
 - c) Santiago caught the bird
 - d) The boat rocked in the waves.
3. How did Santiago react when the line first moved?
 - a) He pulled hard immediately.
 - b) He cut the line.
 - c) He held it carefully and waited.
 - d) He asked another fisherman for help.
4. What cut into Santiago's hands?
 - a) A knife.
 - b) The fish's teeth.
 - c) The line.
 - d) The tuna.
5. Where did the fish pull Santiago's boat?
 - a) Back toward the village.
 - b) Out into the open sea.
 - c) Into shallow water.
 - d) Toward another boat.
6. What did Santiago eat to keep his strength during the night?
 - a) Rice and beans.
 - b) Bread.
 - c) Tuna, he had caught earlier.
 - d) Shark meat.
7. What memory gave Santiago courage to endure the pain?
 - a) His childhood games.
 - b) The lions on the beach.
 - c) Joe DiMaggio playing with pain.
 - d) Manolin's words.
8. How did Santiago support the line when he grew tired?
 - a) He tied it across his shoulders.
 - b) He tied it to the mast.
 - c) He asked for help.
 - d) He put it in the water.
9. What did Santiago whisper about the fish?
 - a) "Fish, you are my enemy."
 - b) "Fish, you are my brother."
 - c) "Fish, I will let you go."
 - d) "Fish, you are too strong."

10. At dawn, how did Santiago describe his connection with the fish?

- a) "Now we are joined, fish, you and I." b) "I will leave you, fish."
c) "The boy will see this fish." d) "I am stronger than you."

Part (B) Vocabulary MCQs

- The word "brace" in "Santiago braced his feet" means
a) relaxed b) prepared and steadied
c) jumped d) fell
- The sun shone with a hard, bright light, making the sea look almost
a) dark b) harsh
c) cold d) quiet
- The antonym of "surrender" is
a) resist b) give up c) lose d) stop
- The phrase "the line burned into his hands" means
a) his hands were on fire
b) his hands were scratched by the rope
c) his hands were wet
d) his hands were relaxed
- The old man was part of the eternal between man and nature.
a) game b) struggle c) song d) journey
- The closest meaning of "to be joined" in the text is
a) to be tied together b) to be separated
c) to be close but apart d) to cut loose
- The opposite of "calm" is
a) peaceful b) angry c) quiet d) patient
- "To whisper" means
a) to speak loudly b) to speak softly
c) to shout angrily d) to stay silent
- The word "creature" refers to
a) a boat b) a human
c) a living animal or fish d) a storm
- "Pain does not matter. Only endurance matters." Here "matters" means
a) important b) heavy c) painful d) strange

Part (C) Fill in the Gaps

1. Santiago saw a bird above the water, looking for fish.
2. When the bird dived, small jumped out of the sea.
3. Santiago held the line, not pulling too soon.
4. The line cut into his as the fish pulled.
5. The boat was dragged into the open
6. Santiago ate a piece of to keep his strength.
7. He remembered Joe playing baseball with pain.
8. Santiago tied the line across his to share the strain.
9. "Fish, you are my", Santiago whispered.
10. At dawn, Santiago said: "Now we are, fish, you and I."

Part (D) Open-ended

1. Why did Santiago wait instead of pulling the line immediately?
.....
2. How does the bird help Santiago know that fish are near?
.....
3. What does the tuna jumping reveal about the sea?
.....
4. Why does Santiago call the fish his "brother"?
.....
5. How does Santiago endure the pain in his hands?
.....
6. Why does Santiago remember Joe DiMaggio during the struggle?
.....
7. What shows Santiago's determination through the night?
.....
8. Why does Santiago wish the boy were with him?
.....
9. How does the night sky affect Santiago's thoughts?
.....
10. What does Santiago mean when he says, "May the best of us win"?
.....

Part (E) Critical Thinking

1. How does Hemingway use the bird to symbolize guidance and hope?
.....
2. Why does Santiago speak to the fish as if it were human?
.....
3. What does the steady, deep swimming of the fish suggest about its nature?
.....
4. How is Santiago's endurance compared to DiMaggio's?
.....
5. Why does Santiago accept pain as part of the struggle?
.....
6. What does the endless pull into the sea symbolize about life's challenges?
.....
7. In what ways does Santiago's solitude make the battle more meaningful?
.....
8. How does the sea act as both a friend and an enemy in this chapter?
.....
9. Why does Hemingway describe Santiago as part of the sea and the stars?
.....
10. Do you think Santiago is fighting the fish, or is he fighting himself? Explain.
.....

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com




Chapter (4)

A Battle of Strength and Will

Vocabulary

المفردات

ache	يؤلم	gulf	خليج	sparingly	دون إسراف
awe	رعبة	hemp	قنب (نبات يستخدم في صناعة الحبال والقماش الخشن)	spur	مهماز (قطعة حادة من المعدن)
chew	يمضغ	leap	ينط / يقفز	stiff	متيبس
clench	يشد على (أسنانه)	marlin	سمكة كبيرة لها منقار يشبه السيف	surge	يندفع بقوة هائلة
companionship	الصحبة	palms	كف اليد	will	إرادة
cramp	يتشنج / تشنج	shift	يغير / يبدل		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعابير والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

come up	يظهر	have the right	لديه الحق	pour down	يصب / يتصبيب
crash into	يصطدم بـ	It is you or me	إما أنت أو أنا		
feel fear	يشعر بالخوف	lean against	يستند على	show himself	يظهر نفسه (يبين قوته الحقيقية)
feel pride	يشعر بالفخر	Pain does not matter	لا يهم الألم		

Values

in this chapter

Pride in endurance

الفخر في التحمل

Santiago refuses to surrender despite pain.

Respect for nature

احترام الطبيعة

He admires the fish's power.

Human courage

شجاعة البشر

Strength of spirit matters more than the body.

Loneliness and faith

الوحدة والإيمان

Santiago is alone, yet strengthened by memory and hope.

Summary in Points

1. Santiago stayed awake through the night, in pain and exhausted, but mentally strong.
بقى سانتياجو مستيقظًا طوال الليل، متألماً ومنهكاً، لكنه قوى ذهنياً.
2. The marlin continued to pull the boat far into the gulf, but Santiago felt pride, not fear.
واصلت المارلين سحب القارب بعيداً في الخليج، لكن سانتياجو شعر بالفخر، لا بالخوف.
3. Santiago called the fish his brother, yet knew he must kill it to survive.
ناداه سانتياجو «أخي»، لكنه كان يعلم أنه يجب أن يقتلها ليعيش.
4. To relieve his hands, Santiago let the line bite into his back, enduring deeper pain.
ليريح يديه، ترك الخيط يضغط على ظهره، متحملاً ألماً أعمق.
5. The fish pulled harder at noon, and Santiago held on with bleeding hands and clenched teeth.
سحبت السمكة بقوة عند الظهر، وتمسك سانتياجو بالخيط بيدين تنزفان وأسنان مشدودة.
6. Santiago admired the marlin's strength and compared his struggle to Joe DiMaggio's pain.
أعجب سانتياجو بقوة المارلين، وقارن صراعه بألم جو ديماجيو أثناء اللعب.
7. At night, the fish surged powerfully. Santiago almost fell, but refused to let go.
في الليل، انطلقت السمكة بقوة. كاد سانتياجو أن يسقط، لكنه رفض أن يترك الخيط.
8. He felt lonely but spiritually connected to the fish, and remembered the lions of his youth.
شعر بالوحدة لكنه كان مرتبطاً روحياً بالسمكة، وتذكر أسود شبابه.
9. At dawn, the marlin finally leapt—huge and shining. Santiago saw his worthy opponent.
عند الفجر، قفزت المارلين أخيراً—ضخمة ومتأللة. رأى سانتياجو خصمه المستحق.
10. After two days without rest, both were exhausted. Santiago whispered: "It is you or me."
بعد يومين دون راحة، كان كلاهما مرهقاً. همس سانتياجو: «إما أنا أو أنت».

Chapter Text

The morning sun rose golden over the sea, and the sky turned from black to pale blue. Santiago had not slept. His body was stiff, his hands were cut from the line, and his back ached from leaning against the pull of the great fish. Yet his eyes were clear, and his spirit unbroken.

The fish still swam powerfully, dragging the boat farther out into the gulf. Santiago knew they were alone now, far from other fishermen, far from the coast. But he did not feel fear. Instead, he felt pride. "No one will see this fight," he said aloud, "but I will know it, and so will the fish."

He looked at the line, stretched tight into the water. "You are my brother, fish," he whispered, "but I must kill you. There is no other way."

To rest his hands, Santiago shifted the line across his shoulders, letting the rough hemp bite into his back instead of his palms. He breathed deeply and ate another piece of tuna, chewing slowly. He knew he must save his strength. The battle was not about hours, but days.

By noon, the fish suddenly pulled harder, and Santiago braced himself. The line cut deeper into his skin, but he did not let go. His teeth clenched, sweat poured down his face. For a moment, he thought the fish might leap, but it did not. Instead, it dove deeper, dragging the skiff slowly along.



The old man admired the creature's power. "He has not shown himself yet," he thought. "He is too wise. But soon, he must come up."

The hours passed. The sun burned hot, and Santiago shaded his eyes. His muscles cramped, but he stretched them against the pain. He thought again of Joe DiMaggio, who played baseball with a bone spur in his heel. "If he could play with pain, I can fight with pain," Santiago repeated. "I am only an old man, but I can endure."

That night, the fish made a great move. It surged suddenly, pulling the boat faster than ever. Santiago almost fell, but he held on, his body trembling with the effort. His hands bled freely, but he ignored the pain.

"You are killing me, fish," he said aloud, "but you have the right. Never have I seen such a strong one. But I will not give in."

When the stars came out again, Santiago felt both loneliness and companionship. He was alone on the sea, but the fish was with him, bound by the line between them. He looked up at the stars and remembered the lions of his youth, playing on the beaches of Africa. That dream gave him strength.

The next morning, the fish finally rose. Santiago saw the line move up, felt the great force lifting. Then, in a sudden explosion, the marlin leapt high into the air. It was enormous—longer than the boat itself, silver in the sunlight, shining like a living sword. Water cascaded from its body as it crashed back into the sea.

Santiago's heart jumped. "Never have I seen such a fish," he whispered in awe. "Noble, strong, and full of spirit."

The marlin dived again, and the struggle continued. But now Santiago knew the size of his enemy. He spoke softly: "You are the greatest fish I have ever fought. I will kill you, though it will take all my strength."

For two days and two nights, the battle continued. Santiago did not sleep. He ate little, only raw fish, and drank sparingly from his water bottle. His body was broken, but his will was like iron.

At times he pitied the fish. "You are killing yourself for me," he said.

"I love you, but I must take you. A man was born to work, to fight, to suffer, and to win."

When the third dawn came, Santiago was near exhaustion. His eyes burned, his hands were raw, his back felt as if it would break. Yet the line still held tight. The marlin swam slower now, tired but still strong.



Santiago whispered to the sea, to the fish, to himself: "It is you or me. May God help us both."

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100% : راجع إجاباتك من خلال
تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة
لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter (4) Answered Exercises

1. How did Santiago feel physically at the start?
كيف كان شعور سانتياجو جسدياً في البداية؟
 - His body was stiff, his hands were cut, and his back ached.
2. Where were Santiago and the fish compared to other fishermen?
أين كان سانتياجو والسمكة مقارنة بالصيادين الآخرين؟
 - They were alone, far from other boats and the coast.
3. What did Santiago do to rest his hands?
ماذا فعل سانتياجو لإراحة يديه؟
 - He shifted the line across his shoulders.
4. Why did Santiago eat slowly and breathe deeply?
لماذا كان سانتياجو يأكل ببطء ويتنفس بعمق؟
 - To save his strength because the battle could last days.
5. What happened at noon when the fish pulled harder?
ماذا حدث في الظهيرة عندما سحبت السمكة بقوة أكبر؟
 - The line cut deeper, the fish dove deeper, dragging the boat.
6. What happened when the fish surged at night?
ماذا حدث عندما ارتفعت السمكة ليلاً؟
 - It pulled the boat faster, Santiago's hands bled, but he held on.
7. How long did the battle with the marlin last?
كم من الوقت استمرت المعركة مع المارلين؟
 - For two days and two nights.
8. What did Santiago whisper when he was near exhaustion?
ماذا همس سانتياجو عندما كان على وشك الإرهاق؟
 - "It is you or me. May God help us both."
9. How does the author show Santiago's endurance?
كيف يظهر المؤلف قدرة سانتياجو على التحمل؟
 - Through his actions: holding the line, eating little, and continuing despite pain.
10. Why does the author describe the fish leaping like a sword?
لماذا يصف المؤلف السمكة وهي تقفز كالسيف؟
 - To show its power, beauty, and the grandeur of the struggle.
11. How is the struggle between Santiago and the fish symbolic?
كيف يكون الصراع بين سانتياجو والسمكة رمزياً؟
 - It represents the battle between man and nature, endurance, and courage.
12. Why does the author mention the lions of Santiago's youth?
لماذا يذكر المؤلف أسود شباب سانتياجو؟
 - To give him strength and remind him of courage and freedom.
13. How does the author create suspense in the fish battle?
كيف يخلق المؤلف التشويق في معركة السمكة؟
 - By describing the fish's power, Santiago's pain, and the long struggle in detail.
14. What does Santiago's near exhaustion reveal about his limits?
ماذا يكشف الإرهاق شبه الكامل الذي يعاني منه سانتياجو عن حدوده؟
 - That he is old and physically strained, but his will is strong.

- What did Santiago feel when he realized he was far from land and other fishermen?
a) Fear.
b) Pride.
c) Loneliness.
d) Anger.
- How did Santiago rest his hands during the fight?
a) He let go of the line.
b) He tied it to the mast.
c) He shifted the line across his shoulders.
d) He asked for help.
- What food did Santiago eat to keep his strength?
a) Bread.
b) Rice and beans.
c) Raw tuna.
d) Shark meat.
- Who gave Santiago inspiration to fight through pain?
a) Manolin.
b) The lions of Africa.
c) Joe DiMaggio.
d) Other fishermen.
- What happened when the fish suddenly surged at night?
a) Santiago fell into the water.
b) The boat nearly capsized.
c) Santiago almost fell but held on.
d) The fish broke the line.
- What dream gave Santiago strength during his loneliness?
a) His family.
b) His village.
c) The lions of his youth.
d) Baseball.
- What did Santiago see when the marlin first leapt into the air?
a) A small silver fish.
b) A shark.
c) A marlin longer than the boat.
d) A whale.
- How did Santiago describe the marlin after seeing it?
a) Ugly and dangerous.
b) Noble, strong, and full of spirit.
c) Weak and tired.
d) Ordinary and common.
- How long did the battle last?
a) One night.
b) Two days and two nights.
c) Three hours.
d) One week.
- What did Santiago whisper at the end of the chapter?
a) "The boy will save me."
b) "It is you or me. May God help us both."
c) "I will let you go."
d) "The sea will decide."

Part (B) Vocabulary MCQs

- 1.** The word "stiff" means
a) flexible b) hard and difficult to move
c) weak d) quick
- 2.** The phrase "bite into his back" means
a) the line tore painfully into his skin b) a fish attacked him
c) he slept on hard wood d) his shirt was too tight
- 3.** The antonym of "endure" is
a) continue b) surrender
c) resist d) persist
- 4.** The word "surged" means
a) moved suddenly with force b) fell asleep
c) grew weaker d) stopped moving
- 5.** The word "noble" is closest in meaning to
a) evil b) proud and honorable
c) small d) tired
- 6.** Which word collocates with "pain"?
a) Fight. b) Bear. c) Ignore. d) All of them.
- 7.** The opposite of "companionship" is
a) friendship b) loneliness c) respect d) unity
- 8.** The word "pitied" means
a) admired deeply b) felt sorrow and compassion for
c) fought bravely d) ignored completely
- 9.** "To clench one's teeth" means
a) to eat hungrily
b) to hold teeth tightly together in pain or effort
c) to smile
d) to whisper
- 10.** In "his will was like iron," the word "will" means
a) a document b) desire and determination
c) a promise d) a command

Part (C) Fill in the Gaps

1. Santiago's hands were from the line, and his back ached.
2. He whispered to the fish: "You are my, but I must kill you."
3. To rest, he shifted the line across his
4. Santiago thought of Joe to endure pain.
5. Sweat poured down his face as the fish suddenly harder.
6. At night, Santiago looked up at the and felt strength.
7. The marlin leapt high, silver in the
8. Santiago called the marlin the greatest fish he had ever
9. For two days and nights, he ate little and drank sparingly from his
10. At last, Santiago whispered: "It is you or me. May help us both."

Part (D) Open-ended

1. Why does Santiago feel pride instead of fear when far from land?
.....
2. What does shifting the line across his shoulders show about Santiago's endurance?
.....
3. How does Santiago balance his need for food and strength during the battle?
.....
4. Why does Santiago compare himself to Joe DiMaggio?
.....
5. How does the marlin's leap affect Santiago emotionally?
.....
6. Why does Santiago admire the marlin even while trying to kill it?
.....
7. What role do Santiago's memories of the lions play in his struggle?
.....
8. How does Santiago express both love and duty toward the fish?
.....
9. Why does Hemingway describe Santiago's will as "like iron"?
.....
10. What does Santiago mean by "It is you or me"?
.....

Part (E) Critical Thinking

1. How does the sea serve as both a setting of danger and a stage of glory in this chapter?
.....
2. Why does Hemingway show Santiago speaking to the fish as if it were human?
.....
3. In what way does the fish symbolize both an opponent and a partner?
.....
4. How does Santiago's endurance highlight the theme of human resilience?
.....
5. What does the marlin's leap symbolize in the story?
.....
6. Why is admiration for the fish important in understanding Santiago's character?
.....
7. How does the description of stars and dreams connect Santiago to nature?
.....
8. What message does Hemingway send about suffering and greatness through this battle?
.....
9. How does Santiago's loneliness deepen the meaning of the fight?
.....
10. Do you agree with Santiago that "a man was born to work, to fight, to suffer, and to win"? Why or why not?
.....

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter (5)

The Great Marlin Revealed

Vocabulary

المفردات

fair	عدل	horizon	الأفق	surrender	يستسلم
forgive	يسامح	pain	الألم	swell	يتورم
gasp	يشهق	pattern	شكل	weaken	يضعف
glow	تتألق	sharks	سمك القرش	weary	متعب
gracefully	برشاقة	sharp	حاد		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

come into view	تظهر للرؤية	gasp at	يشهق تعجباً على	swell up	يتورم
face what comes	يواجه ما يأتي (يظهر)	prepare for	يستعد لـ	victory carried danger النصر يحمل في طياته الخطر	
feel at peace	يشعر بالراحة والهدوء	sail on	يستمر في الإبحار		

Values in this chapter

Triumph through suffering

النصر من خلال المعاناة

Santiago kills the marlin but at great cost.

Respect for the noble opponent

احترام المنافس النبيل

He asks the fish's forgiveness.

Dignity in victory

الكرامة في النصر

His pride is mixed with sorrow.

Man and nature

الإنسان والطبيعة

Victory binds them together forever.

Summary in Points

1. The sun rose as Santiago continued fighting the marlin after three days and nights.
أشرقت الشمس بينما ستنياجو ما زال يقاتل المارلين بعد ثلاثة أيام وثلاث ليالٍ.
2. He was very tired, his hands were injured, but his spirit stayed strong.
كان متعباً جداً، ويدهاء مجروحتان، لكن روحه بقيت قوية.
3. The marlin was getting weaker, but it still had great strength.
كان المارلين يضعف، لكنه لا يزال قوياً جداً.

4. The fish started circling under the boat, showing signs of exhaustion.
بدأت السمكة تدور تحت القارب، مما يدل على التعب.
5. Santiago prepared himself for the final struggle with the fish.
استعد سنتياجو للمواجهة الأخيرة مع السمكة.
6. Slowly, he pulled the marlin closer, feeling pain but also strength.
بطيء، سحب المارلين نحو السطح، شاعرًا بالألم لكنه شعر بالقوة أيضًا.
7. The marlin finally rose, big and beautiful, shining in the sunlight.
ظهر المارلين أخيرًا، ضخماً وجميلاً، يلمع تحت أشعة الشمس.
8. Santiago respected the fish and called it his brother, but he had to kill it.
احترم سنتياجو السمكة واعتبرها أخاه، لكنه اضطر لقتلها.
9. He tied the marlin to the boat and started sailing back home.
ربط المارلين بالقارب وبدأ رحلة العودة إلى الوطن.
10. Santiago felt proud of the fair fight between him and the fish.
شعر سنتياجو بالفخر بسبب المعركة العادلة بينه وبين السمكة.
11. He knew sharks would come because of the blood in the water.
كان يعلم أن القروش ستأتي بسبب رائحة الدم في الماء.
12. He promised to fight the sharks to protect the marlin.
وعد بقتال القروش لحماية المارلين.
13. Santiago felt a deep connection with the dead marlin.
شعر سنتياجو بارتباط عميق مع المارلين الميت.
14. At night, he dreamed of lions from his youth, giving him hope.
في الليل، حلم بالأسود التي رآها في شبابه، مما أعطاه الأمل.
15. The boat sailed into the dark night, carrying Santiago and the marlin toward an uncertain future.
أبحر القارب في الليل المظلم، يحمل سنتياجو والمارلين نحو مستقبل غير مؤكد.

Chapter Text

The sun was rising again. Santiago had been fighting the fish for three long days and nights. His body was weary, his hands swollen and bleeding, but his spirit remained sharp. He knew the fish was weakening, though its strength was still greater than anything he had ever faced.

The line pulled with less power now, and Santiago felt the fish circling slowly deep below the boat. He recognized the pattern: the marlin was tired, but it would not surrender easily. It was preparing for its final struggle.

"Now it begins," the old man whispered. He braced his feet against the wooden boards of the skiff and leaned back with all the strength left in him.

The fish circled wider and wider. Each turn brought it a little closer to the surface. Santiago worked carefully, pulling in the line inch by inch. His muscles burned, but he welcomed the pain. "Pain is not an enemy," he thought. "It tells me I am alive."

At last, the marlin rose. The giant fish came into view, silver and purple in the water, glowing in the sunlight. Santiago gasped at its size. It was longer than the boat, with a great sword-like bill and a powerful body. The marlin swam gracefully, a king of the sea.

"Fish," Santiago said aloud, his voice full of respect, "you are my brother, but I must end this. Forgive me."

The boat began its long journey home. Santiago's arms were weak, but the wind carried him gently toward the coast. He looked at the marlin's shining body in the water. "We fought well, fish," he said softly. "You gave me everything you had. And I gave you everything I had. This was fair."



The sea was calm, the sun warm. Santiago felt at peace, though he knew his work was not finished. The hardest part was yet to come: bringing his prize safely home.

As the boat sailed, Santiago dreamed of how the villagers would react. The fishermen would measure the marlin, and the boy would be proud. People would see that the old man was not finished, that he was still strong, still capable of greatness.

But Santiago also knew that victory carried danger. The smell of blood in the water would call the sharks. He looked at the horizon, his eyes hard. "They will come," he said. "But I will fight them."

The marlin floated beside him, silent, beautiful, and dead. The old man placed his hand gently on the fish's side. "We are joined forever, you and I," he whispered. "Your death gives me life, but it costs me my soul."

Night fell once more, and Santiago, though exhausted, kept watch. He felt both proud and deeply sad. He had won the greatest battle of his life, but he sensed that the sea would test him again before he reached home.

He closed his eyes briefly, and in his half-dream, he saw the lions of his youth on the African shore, running and playing freely. They gave him strength, as they always did.

When he opened his eyes, he looked again at the marlin, shining in the moonlight. "Tomorrow, we will face what comes," he said. "For now, we rest together."



The boat sailed on into the darkness, carrying the old man and his mighty prize toward an uncertain dawn.

Chapter (5) Answered Exercises

1. How did Santiago feel physically after the long struggle?

كيف كان شعور سانتياجو جسدياً بعد النضال الطويل؟

- He was weary, with swollen and bleeding hands.

2. What did Santiago notice about the fish's strength?

ماذا لاحظ سانتياجو بشأن قوة السمكة؟

- The fish was weakening, but still stronger than anything he had faced.

3. What did Santiago recognize about the fish's movements?

ماذا عرف سانتياجو عن تحركات السمكة؟

- The marlin was tired but preparing for its final struggle.

4. How did Santiago prepare himself for the fish's last fight?

كيف أعد سانتياجو نفسه للمعركة الأخيرة مع السمكة؟

- He braced his feet against the skiff and leaned back with all his strength.

5. How did Santiago feel about the pain in his muscles?

كيف شعر سانتياجو بالألم في عضلاته؟

- He welcomed it and thought pain was not an enemy but proof that he was alive.

6. How did Santiago describe the marlin when it rose?

كيف وصف سانتياجو المارلين عندما ارتفع؟

- It was silver and purple, longer than the boat, with a sword-like bill, swimming gracefully.

7. What did Santiago imagine about the villagers' reaction?

ماذا تخيل سانتياجو بشأن رد فعل القرويين؟

- They would admire the marlin, and the boy would be proud, showing Santiago's strength.

8. Why was Santiago worried about sharks?

لماذا كان سانتياجو قلقاً بشأن أسماك القرش؟

- The smell of blood from the marlin would attract them.

9. What did Santiago say when he touched the marlin?

ماذا قال سانتياجو عندما لمس المارلين؟

- "We are joined forever, you and I. Your death gives me life, but it costs me my soul."

10. How does the author emphasize the size and power of the marlin?

كيف يؤكد المؤلف على حجم وقوة المارلين؟

- By describing its length, sword-like bill, and graceful swimming.

11. What does Santiago mean by "Your death gives me life, but it costs me my soul"?

ماذا يقصد سانتياجو بقوله «موتك يمنحني الحياة، لكنه يكلفني روعي»؟

- He recognizes the moral and emotional weight of killing the fish, despite its necessity.

12. How is the marlin's beauty important to the story?

كيف يكون جمال المارلين مهماً للقصة؟

- It emphasizes the nobility of nature and the honor in Santiago's struggle.

13. Why does Santiago feel both pride and sadness?

لماذا يشعر سانتياجو بالفخر والحزن في نفس الوقت؟

- Pride from his victory and courage, sadness from the cost of the struggle and the marlin's death.



Part (A) Reading Comprehension

1. How long had Santiago been fighting the marlin by this chapter?
 - a) One night.
 - b) Two days.
 - c) Three days and nights.
 - d) A week.
2. What did Santiago notice about the marlin's movement?
 - a) It circled slowly, tired but not surrendering.
 - b) It jumped wildly near the boat.
 - c) It stayed far away in the deep.
 - d) It swam toward the shore.
3. What did Santiago think about pain?
 - a) Pain is an enemy.
 - b) Pain is a sign of weakness.
 - c) Pain shows he is alive.
 - d) Pain makes him fail.
4. How did Santiago describe the marlin when it first rose?
 - a) Ugly and frightening.
 - b) Silver and purple, graceful, a king of the sea.
 - c) Small and ordinary.
 - d) Tired and weak.
5. What weapon did Santiago use to kill the fish?
 - a) A knife.
 - b) A net.
 - c) A harpoon.
 - d) His bare hands.
6. How did the marlin die?
 - a) It sank without a fight.
 - b) It leapt one last time, then crashed into the sea.
 - c) Sharks attacked it.
 - d) Santiago strangled it.
7. Why did Santiago cry after killing the marlin?
 - a) He feared sharks would come.
 - b) He felt sorrow for killing such a noble creature.
 - c) He was afraid of the villagers' reaction.
 - d) He was weak and hopeless.
8. How did Santiago secure the marlin after killing it?
 - a) He dragged it inside the skiff.
 - b) He tied it to the side of the boat.
 - c) He let it float behind freely.
 - d) He cut it into pieces.

9. What did Santiago fear would be attracted by the blood?
 a) Other fishermen. b) Whales.
 c) Sharks. d) Dolphins.
10. What vision gave Santiago strength as he sailed home?
 a) His family waiting on shore.
 b) The lions of his youth playing on the beach.
 c) The boy bringing him food.
 d) Baseball games with Joe DiMaggio.

Part (B) Vocabulary MCQs

1. The word "weary" means
 a) rested b) very tired c) angry d) strong
2. The phrase "braced his feet" means
 a) slipped on the boards b) stood firmly to prepare for strain
 c) relaxed in the boat d) walked across the deck
3. The antonym of "forgive" is
 a) blame b) pity
 c) respect d) release
4. The word "majestic" is closest in meaning to
 a) weak and ordinary b) noble and grand
 c) small and fragile d) angry and dangerous
5. Which word collocates with "harpoon"?
 a) Throw. b) Lift. c) Drive. d) All of them.
6. The word "triumph" means
 a) victory b) sorrow c) fear d) effort
7. The antonym of "pride" is
 a) humility b) honor c) strength d) respect
8. The word "sorrow" means
 a) great joy b) deep sadness c) anger d) surprise
9. "To be joined forever" means
 a) to stay connected permanently b) to be separated
 c) to meet briefly d) to live together
10. The word "uncertain" in "uncertain dawn" means
 a) clear b) doubtful and unknown
 c) happy d) peaceful

Part (C) Fill in the Gaps

1. Santiago's hands were swollen and from holding the line.
2. The marlin circled slowly, preparing for its final
3. Santiago believed that pain was not an, but a reminder of life.
4. The marlin appeared silver and in the sunlight.
5. Santiago lifted the and drove it into the fish's heart.
6. The marlin leapt one last time, then crashed into the
7. Santiago tied the fish to the of the skiff.
8. He feared that the smell of would bring sharks.
9. Santiago placed his hand gently on the fish and whispered: "We are joined".
10. He saw the of his youth running freely on the shore.

Part (D) Open-ended

1. How does Santiago show respect for the marlin even as he kills it?
.....
2. Why does Santiago describe pain as something positive?
.....
3. How does the description of the marlin emphasize its greatness?
.....
4. Why does Santiago cry after his victory?
.....
5. What does tying the marlin to the side of the boat reveal about its size?
.....
6. How does Santiago's vision of the villagers reflect his need for dignity?
.....
7. Why does Santiago fear the sharks?
.....
8. What does Santiago mean by saying, "Your death gives me life, but it costs me my soul"?
.....

9. How do the lions of his youth continue to support him in this chapter?

10. How does this chapter mark both victory and tragedy for Santiago?

Part (E) Critical Thinking

1. How does Hemingway blend pride and sorrow in Santiago's victory?

2. Why does Santiago view the marlin as both a brother and an enemy?

3. What does the marlin symbolize in this chapter?

4. How does the fight reflect the theme of man versus nature?

5. Why does Hemingway describe the marlin as majestic and noble?

6. What does Santiago's statement "They will not believe me" suggest about human achievement?

7. How does the presence of sharks foreshadow the next conflict?

8. Why is Santiago's victory incomplete at the end of this chapter?

9. How does this chapter connect the ideas of survival, sacrifice, and honor?

10. Do you think Santiago is truly victorious, or has he lost more than he gained? Explain.

Chapter (6)

The Sharks Arrive

المفردات

Vocabulary

backbone	العمود الفقري	mutter	يتمتم	stab	يطعن
bitter	مرير/مر	predator	حيوان مفترس	steadily	بثبات
flesh	لحم	shadow	ظل	strike/struck	يضرب/يصيب
generous	كريم	skeleton	هيكل عظمي	swiftly	بسرعة
glint	يتلألأ	slash	يشق	thrash	يتلوى من الألم
insistent	مُصر/مصمم	sorrow	حزن	tiller	ذراع دفة القارب
mako shark	قرش الماكو (صغير الزعانف وسريع جدًا)	spear	رمح	trail	أثر
mast	الصاري/سارية القارب	splint	ينكسر		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a faint smile	ابتسامة باهتة	look at his catch	ينظر إلى صيده	take up	يحمل/يمسك
beyond words	لا يمكن التعبير عنه بالكلمات	shovel-nosed sharks	أسماك قرش تشبه أنفها المجرفة	tear away	ينتزع
drive away	يبعد شيئًا عنه	sink into the depths	يغرق في الأعماق	vision blurring	الرؤية غير واضحة
in return	بالمقابل	strip of	يخلى من	With all the strength left in him	بكل ما تبقى له من قوة

Values in this chapter

Courage against destruction

الشجاعة ضد الدمار

Santiago fights to protect his catch.

Persistence despite loss

المثابرة بالرغم من الخسارة

He refuses to stop even when hopeless.

Tragic acceptance

القبول بالمأساة

He knows sharks will come, yet resists them.

Pride in the fight

الكبرياء في القتال

His dignity lies in never giving up.

Summary in Points

1. Santiago sailed toward shore with the giant marlin tied to his boat.
أبحر سانتياجو نحو الشاطئ والسمة العملاقة مربوطة بقاربه.
2. He felt proud, but worried because the marlin's blood would attract sharks.
شعر بالفخر لكنه كان قلقاً لأن دم السمكة قد يجذب القروش.
3. A mako shark appeared and attacked the marlin.
ظهر قرش «الماكو» وهاجم المارلين.
4. Santiago killed the shark with his harpoon, but the marlin was badly wounded.
قتل سانتياجو القرش باستخدام رمحه، لكن السمكة أصيبت بشدة.
5. He knew more sharks would come.
كان يعلم أن المزيد من القروش ستأتي.
6. Two more sharks came and bit large pieces from the marlin.
جاء قرشان آخران وقاما بعض أجزاء كبيرة من السمكة.
7. Santiago broke his harpoon and tied a knife to an oar to keep fighting.
انكسر رمحه، فربط سكيناً إلى مجداف لمواصلة القتال.
8. He killed one shark and scared the other away, but he was getting weaker.
قتل قرشاً وأبعد الآخر، لكنه كان يضعف تدريجياً.
9. More sharks came during the day, and he fought them all.
جاءت قروش أخرى خلال النهار، وقاتلها جميعاً.
10. By afternoon, only the marlin's skeleton was left.
بحلول بعد الظهر، لم يتبق من المارلين سوى هيكلها العظمي.
11. Santiago whispered that he was beaten, but not by the marlin.
همس سانتياجو قائلاً إنه هُزم، لكن ليس على يد السمكة.
12. Even without strength, Santiago kept fighting the sharks.
واصل القتال ضد القروش رغم نفاد قوته.
13. At night, he sailed on with only the marlin's skeleton beside him.
ليلاً، واصل الإبحار والهيكل العظمي للمارلين بجانبه.
14. He told the fish: "You were my greatest enemy and my greatest friend."
قال للسمكة: «كنت أعظم أعدائي وأعز أصدقائي».
15. Though he lost the fish, Santiago kept his pride and dignity.
رغم أنه خسر السمكة، فإن سانتياجو احتفظ بفخره وكرامته.

Chapter Text

The morning sun rose as Santiago's small skiff sailed steadily toward the shore. The giant marlin was tied beside the boat, its silver body shining in the light. Santiago, though proud, felt uneasy. The sea was never generous without asking for something in return. He knew the scent of blood would call predators.

And then he saw it: a dark shadow moving swiftly beneath the surface. A shark.

It was a mako shark, fast and strong, following the marlin's trail of blood. Santiago's heart tightened. "So, it begins," he muttered. He took up his harpoon, though his hands were raw and shaking. The shark came closer, its sharp teeth glinting as it attacked the marlin's side.

With all the strength left in him, Santiago drove the harpoon down into the shark's head. The iron struck deep, and the shark thrashed violently, turning the sea red. Finally, it sank, dead, into the depths.

But the victory was bitter. The marlin had lost a great piece of flesh, and blood flowed freely from its wound. Santiago looked at his catch with sorrow. "They will come now, one after another," he said.

He was right. Before long, more shadows appeared. A pair of galanos—shovel-nosed sharks—rose from the deep. They were slower but insistent. They bit at the marlin, tearing away its flesh. Santiago fought with his harpoon until it broke off in a shark's body. Now, he tied his knife to an oar and used it as a spear.

He stabbed and slashed, killing one shark and driving the other away. But each battle cost him strength, and the marlin's body grew smaller, its beauty ruined.

As the hours passed, more sharks came. The smell of blood had spread far through the sea. Santiago fought them all, his arms burning, his vision blurring. He killed several but knew he could not stop them forever.

By afternoon, the marlin was only half a fish. Its head and backbone remained, but much of its flesh was gone. Santiago leaned against the mast, breathing heavily. "I was beaten," he whispered, "but only by sharks, not by the fish."

Still, he did not surrender. Every time a new shark attacked, he stood up and fought. He swung the oar-spear until it splintered, then used the tiller, then even the broken pieces of wood. He was an old man with nothing left but his will.



Night fell again, and Santiago was exhausted beyond words. The marlin was now only a skeleton, stripped of nearly all its meat. But Santiago kept sailing toward home, his spirit unbroken.

"I fought for the marlin as long as I could," he said aloud to the stars. "He was too noble to be lost without a fight."

At last, silence returned. No more sharks came. The marlin's skeleton glowed white in the moonlight, its long sword rising like a banner of both triumph and tragedy.



Santiago looked at it and felt tears in his eyes. "You were my greatest enemy and my greatest friend," he told the fish. "They destroyed you, but they could not destroy my pride. We fought well."

He thought of the boy, and a faint smile touched his lips. "The boy will not let me be alone again," he said. "Tomorrow, he will help me. He must."

Santiago steered the little skiff through the dark waters, his body broken but his spirit still alive. He had lost his catch, but he had not lost his dignity.

The sea was quiet again, carrying the old man and the skeleton of the marlin slowly toward the shore.

تطبيق الأضواء



نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



Chapter (6) Answered Exercises

1. How does Santiago feel about the marlin and the sea? ما هو شعور سانتياجو تجاه المارلين والبحر؟
 - He feels proud but uneasy, knowing the sea demands a price for generosity.
2. What was the first danger Santiago noticed? ما هو الخطر الأول الذي لاحظته سانتياجو؟
 - A dark shadow beneath the water—a shark.
3. What type of shark attacked first? ما هو نوع القرش الذي هاجم أولاً؟
 - A mako shark.
4. How did Santiago fight the first shark? كيف حارب سانتياجو القرش الأول؟
 - He used his harpoon to strike it in the head.
5. What happened to the marlin after the first shark attack? ماذا حدث للمارلين بعد هجوم القرش الأول؟
 - It lost a great piece of flesh, and blood flowed from its wound.
6. Which sharks appeared after the mako? ما هي أسماك القرش التي ظهرت بعد الماكو؟
 - A pair of galanos—shovel-nosed sharks.
7. How did Santiago adapt when his harpoon broke? كيف تكيف سانتياجو عندما انكسرت حريته؟
 - He tied a knife to an oar and used it as a spear.
8. What effect did the continuous shark attacks have on Santiago? ما هو تأثير هجمات أسماك القرش المستمرة على سانتياجو؟
 - He became very tired, his arms burned, and his vision blurred.
9. How did Santiago continue fighting despite exhaustion? كيف واصل سانتياجو القتال رغم الإرهاق؟
 - He used the oar-spear, the tiller, and broken pieces of wood.
10. Why is Santiago's victory over the first shark described as "bitter"? لماذا يوصف انتصار سانتياجو على القرش الأول بأنه «مرير»؟
 - Because the marlin was injured and lost part of its flesh.
11. Why does Santiago continue fighting even though the sharks are too many? لماذا يواصل سانتياجو القتال على الرغم من كثرة أسماك القرش؟
 - To protect the marlin and honor its nobility, showing his courage and willpower.
12. How does Santiago show respect for the marlin? كيف يظهر سانتياجو احترامه للمارلين؟
 - By speaking to it, honoring its strength, and mourning its destruction.
13. What does the passage suggest about the relationship between humans and nature? ماذا يوحي المقطع عن العلاقة بين الإنسان والطبيعة؟
 - It shows a balance of struggle and respect.

Chapter (6) Student's Book Exercises



Part (A) Reading Comprehension

1. What did Santiago fear as he sailed with the marlin beside the boat?
 - a) A storm would sink him.
 - b) The boy would not find him.
 - c) Sharks would come for the blood.
 - d) The boat would break.
2. What kind of shark attacked first?
 - a) Hammerhead.
 - b) Mako shark.
 - c) Galano shark.
 - d) Tiger shark.
3. How did Santiago kill the first shark?
 - a) With his knife.
 - b) With an oar.
 - c) With his harpoon.
 - d) With his fists.
4. What happened to the marlin after the first attack?
 - a) It sank to the bottom.
 - b) It lost a large piece of flesh.
 - c) It escaped.
 - d) It grew stronger.
5. What did Santiago do when his harpoon broke?
 - a) He gave up.
 - b) He tied his knife to an oar and used it as a spear.
 - c) He swam after the sharks.
 - d) He asked for help.
6. What kind of sharks attacked after the mako?
 - a) Whale sharks.
 - b) Great whites.
 - c) Galanos (shovel-nosed).
 - d) Dogfish.
7. What part of the marlin remained by afternoon?
 - a) Only the tail.
 - b) Only the head and backbone.
 - c) The whole fish but weak.
 - d) Just the fins.
8. What did Santiago use after the oar-spear broke?
 - a) The tiller and broken wood.
 - b) His bare hands.
 - c) Nets.
 - d) Stones.
9. What was left of the marlin by nightfall?
 - a) A complete fish.
 - b) A bloody skeleton.
 - c) A pile of bones in the boat.
 - d) Nothing at all.

10. What did Santiago say the sharks had beaten him, not the fish?

- a) Because the marlin was noble, but the sharks were destroyers.
- b) Because he gave up.
- c) Because the fish was too weak.
- d) Because the boy was absent.

Part (B) Vocabulary MCQs

1. Santiago felt uneasy because he knew the sea was never without a price.

- a) cruel
- b) empty
- c) quiet
- d) generous

2. The word "predators" refers to

- a) animals that attack and eat others
- b) waves
- c) small harmless fish
- d) boats

3. The antonym of "victory" is

- a) triumph
- b) defeat
- c) pride
- d) success

4. The word "insistent" means

- a) giving up easily
- b) demanding and persistent
- c) slow but weak
- d) proud and calm

5. Santiago fought the sharks with a knife tied to an oar, turning it into a

- a) sail
- b) rope
- c) spear
- d) shield

6. "Weaponless" means

- a) having no weapon
- b) carrying many weapons
- c) full of courage
- d) safe

7. The opposite of "noble" is

- a) honorable
- b) weak
- c) dishonorable
- d) proud

8. The word "skeleton" means

- a) bones of a body
- b) full body with flesh
- c) skin and muscle
- d) a type of shark

9. The word "dignity" is closest in meaning to

- a) honor and self-respect
- b) weakness
- c) sorrow
- d) anger

10. "To splinter" means

- a) to break into small sharp pieces
- b) to grow stronger
- c) to tie together
- d) to shine brightly

Part (C) Fill in the Gaps

1. Santiago knew the scent of would call sharks.
2. The first attacker was a fast and strong shark.
3. Santiago drove the into the shark's head.
4. After the battle, a great piece of the marlin's was gone.
5. When his harpoon broke, Santiago tied his to an oar.
6. The sharks (galanos) tore at the marlin's flesh.
7. By afternoon, only the head and of the fish remained.
8. Santiago fought with the oar until it
9. The marlin's skeleton glowed white in the
10. Santiago told the fish: "They destroyed you, but not my"

Part (D) Open-ended

1. Why does Santiago call the first shark attack "the beginning"?
.....
2. How does Santiago show courage when facing the mako shark?
.....
3. What does the breaking of the harpoon symbolize?
.....
4. Why does Santiago keep fighting even when the marlin is nearly gone?
.....
5. How do the galanos differ from the mako shark?
.....
6. What does Santiago mean when he says he was beaten by sharks, not the fish?
.....
7. Why does Hemingway describe Santiago using even broken pieces of wood to fight?
.....

8. What role does dignity play in Santiago's battle with the sharks?

9. How is the marlin both a victory and a tragedy in this chapter?

10. How does Santiago's hope in the boy give meaning to his suffering?

Part (E) Critical Thinking

1. How do the sharks symbolize destruction in contrast to the nobility of the marlin?

2. Why does Hemingway emphasize the endless nature of Santiago's struggle?

3. What does the skeleton of the marlin symbolize in the story?

4. How does Santiago's refusal to surrender show the theme of human dignity?

5. Why does Hemingway describe the sharks coming "one after another"?

6. What message does this chapter send about pride and loss?

7. In what way is Santiago's battle with sharks different from his battle with the marlin?

8. Why does Santiago still call the marlin his "greatest friend" even after its death?

9. How does this chapter deepen the theme of man versus nature?

10. Do you think Santiago's fight against the sharks was hopeless or heroic? Why?

Dictionary

الكلمات الواردة بقطع الفهم وأسئلة الترجمة

Unit (1)

مفردات على الوحدة الأولى

ancestors	أجداد / أسلاف	ecological balance	توازن بيئي	measured	مقاس / تم قياسه
benefits	فوائد	for instance	على سبيل المثال	monuments	أثار / معالم
calories	سعرات حرارية	historians	مؤرخون	reign	حكم (فترة حكم)
carbohydrates	كربوهيدرات	impact	تأثير	restoration	ترميم
coastal regions	مناطق ساحلية	imposing a tax	فرض ضريبة	soft drink	مشروب غازي
construction	بناء / إنشاء	industry	صناعة	structure	هيكل / بنية
convenient	مناسب / مريح	junk food,	وجبات سريعة	substances	مواد
destinations	وجهات / جهات الوصول	limestone blocks	كتل من حجر جيرى	the Mediterranean	البحر المتوسط
determination	عزيمة / إصرار	local councils	مجالس محلية	unaware	غير مدرك / غير واعي
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية	mass tourism	سياحة جماعية	unique	فريد

Unit (2)

مفردات على الوحدة الثانية

behavior	سلوك	ink	حبر	shallow	ضحل / قليل العمق
beneficial	مفيد	leisure time	وقت فراغ	specific rules	قواعد محددة
better health record	سجل صحي أفضل	magician	ساحر	squeeze	يعصر / يضغط
cereals	حبوب (إفطار / حبوب غذائية)	miserable	بانس / تعيس	squirm	يتلوى
chameleon	حرياء	motorist	سائق سيارة	statistics	إحصاءات
civilized society	مجتمع متحضر	amount of	كمية من	stickiness	لزوجة
claws	مخالب	observe	يراقب / يلاحظ	sticky ball	كرة لزجة
compared with	مقارنة بـ / مقارنة مع	ocean	محيط	stress	توتر / ضغط نفسي
conduct	سلوك / تصرف	octopus	أخطبوط	thoughtlessness	مليش / قلة تفكير
considering	نظراً لـ / باعتبار	overcome	يتغلب على	topped with	مغطى بـ
coral	شعاب مرجانية	predator	مفترس	trifling	تافه / قليل الأهمية
criminal acts	أعمال إجرامية	privileges	امتيازات	vanishing act	خدعة اختفاء
cultivate	يزرع / يفلح	property	ملكية	venomous	سام
dairy products	منتجات البان	regulate blood pressure	ينظم ضغط دم	vinegared rice	أرز بالخل
featuring	يتميز بـ / يتضمن	responsible for	مسئول عن	visible	مرئى / ظاهر
generic term	مصطلح عام	seaweed	طحالب بحرية	wrapped in	ملفوف فى

Unit (3)

مفردات على الوحدة الثالثة

advantage	ميزة / فائدة	herbal medicine	طب بالأعشاب	primitive	بدائي
aspirin	أسبرين	herbs	أعشاب	private	خاص
attention	انتباه	medicinal purposes	أغراض علاجية	promises	وعود
awareness	وعى	misleading ideas	أفكار مضللة	reduce	يقلل
balancing	موازنة	natural remedies	علاجات طبيعية	reliable	موثوق
chemical	مادة كيميائية	official organizations	منظمات رسمية	shocking	صادم
emotional	عاطفى	platform	منصة	symptoms	أعراض
emotions	عواطف	powders	مساحيق	treatment	علاج
entertainment	ترفيه	prescription	وصفة طبية	willow tree	شجرة صفصاف
herbalist	معالج بالأعشاب	prevent	يمنع / يقي		

Unit (4)

مفردات على الوحدة الرابعة

adults	بالفون	occupations	وظائف	reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
breathe	يتنفس	on the contrary	على عكس	shelter	مأوى
conflict	صراع	pressure	ضغط	slogan	شعار
contributions	مساهمات	products	منتجات	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
deadline	موعد نهائي	provide	يوفر/يقدم	sustainable	مستدام
elderly	مسنون/ كبار السن	public parks	حدائق عامة	transport	نقل
environment	بيئة	recycle	يعيد تدوير	valuable gifts	هدايا قيمة
hitting targets	تحقيق الأهداف	renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	values	قيم
Instead of	بدلاً من	reputation	سمعة	waste	نفايات
missing	مفقود	require	يتطلب	wind turbines	توربينات رياح
multiple	متعدد	resources	موارد		

Unit (5)

مفردات على الوحدة الخامسة

al-based learning assistant	مساعد تعلم قائم على ذكاء اصطناعي	handle	يتعامل مع	possibilities	إمكانات
assignments	واجبات/ مهام	initiative	مبادرة	practical	عملي
associated with	مرتبط بـ	interaction	تفاعل	productive	منتج/ مثمر
coordinator	منسق	interactive	تفاعلي	regarding	فيما يخص/ بخصوص
cultivation	زراعة/ استصلاح	investors	مستثمرون	remain essential	يبقى أساسياً
digital devices	أجهزة رقمية	isolation	عزلة	smartboards	سبورات ذكية
distraction	تشيت/ إلهاء	launch	إطلاق	stay motivated	يبقى متحفزاً
dumped into	مُلقاة في	materials	مواد	strengthen concentration	يقوى تركيز
empathy	تعاطف	memorizing	حفظ/ استذكار	tech-free	خالي من التكنولوجيا
engaging	جاذب/ مشوق	opportunities	فرص	traditional chalkboards	سبورات تقليدية (طباشيرية)
guidance	إرشاد/ توجيه	overuse	إفراط في استخدام	wastewater	مياه صرف صحي/ مياه عادمة

Unit (6)

مفردات على الوحدة السادسة

awarded	مُنح/ مُكْرَم	contest	مسابقة	personality	شخصية
blame on	يلقى باللوم على	excitement	إثارة/ حماس	scare	يُخيف
carrier bag	كيس التسوق	footsteps	خطوات الأقدام	sporting events	فحاليات رياضية
celebrate	يحتفل	garbage	قمامة/ نفايات	squeaky	مزعج بصوت حاد (صريير)
cellophane	سلوفان (بلاستيك شفاف)	ghost	شبح	stretched out	ممدود/ ممدد
championship	بطولة	hair-raising	مثير للرعب/ يقشعر له البدن	unreliable	غير موثوق
childish	طفولي	held in	مُقام في		
circumstances	ظروف	irresponsible	غير مسئول	victory	نصر/ فوز
consumer	مستهلك	nation	أمة/ وطن		

رقم الإيداع: 2025/8846

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب
مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.

Skills & Final Revision

FIRST TERM

**20
26**

1st SEC

Contents

Part 1

Skills

1	Reading Comprehension	4
2	Writing	16
3	Translation	44

Part 2

General Revision

1	Revision on Module (1) (Units 1 & 2)	59
2	Revision on Module (2) (Units 3 & 4)	84
3	Revision on Module (3) (Units 5 & 6)	110
4	The Old Man and the Sea Revision	136

Part 3

Final Guiding Models	142
----------------------------	-----

Part 1

SKILLS



Part 1

- (1) Reading Comprehension
- (2) Writing
- (3) Translation



تُصاغ أسئلة القطعة لتقييم فهم الطالب للنص. ويمكن أن تتنوع في درجة تعقيدها وتركز على جوانب مختلفة. وفيما يلي الأنواع الرئيسية لأسئلة الفهم. قم بقراءة كل نوع وذاكر جيدًا المثال المرفق له حتى تتمكن من حل أسئلة القطعة بطريقة صحيحة.

أنواع أسئلة قطع الفهم TYPES OF COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS

1 Main Idea

الفكرة الرئيسية

هي سؤال عن الفكرة الأساسية أو الدرس المستفاد من القطعة ... وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال يجب أن توافق الإجابة موضوع القطعة أو الفكرة العامة.

Examples

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

In a small village, people worked together to clean the river. They removed plastic and bottles, and planted trees along the bank. Children joined happily, learning how to protect nature. Soon, the water became clearer, and fish returned. Everyone felt proud of their teamwork and the healthy river.

Question: What is the **main idea** of the passage?

- a) The children played by the river.
- b) The villagers worked together to protect nature.
- c) The water became clear because of fish.
- d) Planting trees is more important than cleaning rivers.

Answer: b)

2 Literal

سؤال نصي مباشر

يركز هذا النوع من الأسئلة على المعلومات الصريحة المذكورة مباشرة في النص، وعلى الطالب مطابقة صياغة السؤال بنص القطعة فقط.

Examples

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Last Saturday, Sara and her family went to the park. They took sandwiches, juice, and a ball. Sara played football with her brother, while her parents sat under a tree. Later, they all enjoyed a picnic together and watched the sunset before going home happily.

Question: What did Sara's family take to the park?

- a) Cakes and milk.
- b) Books and toys.
- c) Fruits and water.
- d) Sandwiches, juice, and a ball.

Answer: d)

3 Summarizing

التلخيص

هو سؤال تلخيص الفقرة ... للإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى قراءة الفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها ثم تحديد الكلمات المفتاحية داخل الفقرة، مع تحديد الفكرة الأساسية للقطعة.

Examples

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Nader loves animals. Every weekend, he visits a farm near his house. He feeds the chickens, gives water to the sheep, and plays with the cats. Last week, the farmer taught him how to ride a horse. Nader always feels happy when he helps on the farm.

Question: Which is the best summary of the passage?

- a) Nader helps and enjoys spending time with animals on the farm.
- b) Nader only plays with cats at home.
- c) Nader learns how to cook chicken.
- d) Nader goes shopping with the farmer.

Answer: a)

4 Opinion

الرأي

هو سؤال عن رأي الكاتب والجواب العام للنص ... وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى فهم أي رأي يؤيده الكاتب، وما هو طبيعة النص؛ هل لهجة الكاتب، تدل على نصيحة، أم حكاية، أم نقد؟ ... إلخ.

Examples

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

The importance of education in today's world cannot be overstated فيها. It helps people make better decisions, think clearly, and learn about different subjects. Education plays an important role in shaping a nation's future by preparing responsible citizens who contribute positively to society.

Question: Which of the following statements best reflects the author's opinion about the significance of education?

- a) Education is only important for personal growth.
- b) Education has no impact on a nation's progress.
- c) Education is vital for individual and social development.
- d) Education is only useful for acquiring specific job skills.

Answer: c)

5 Inference

الاستنباط

يتطلب هذا النوع من الأسئلة من الطالب قراءة ما بين السطور واستخلاص الاستنتاجات بناءً على معلومات ضمنية.

Examples

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Laila returned from school carrying a certificate. Her father clapped his hands, and her mother hugged her tightly. Laila's little brother shouted, "Well done!" The family decided to order a special cake for dinner that evening.

Question: Why did Laila's family celebrate?

- a) Because she finished her homework.
- b) Because she brought home a certificate of success.
- c) Because it was her birthday.
- d) Because she visited her grandparents.

Answer: b)

6 Word in Text

كلمة في النص

هو سؤال عن معنى الكلمة داخل النص (مرادف وعكس) وللإجابة عن هذا السؤال، يحتاج الطالب إلى تحديد الاسم الذي يعود عليه الضمير، أو فهم معاني الكلمات، أو معرفة المرادف والعكس.

Examples

Read the following passage, then answer the question:

Mona was very **proud** when she received the first prize in the art competition. Her teacher smiled and said, "You worked hard and deserve it." Mona's parents also congratulated her and took pictures to remember the moment.

Question: What does the word "proud**" mean in the passage?**

- a) Feeling happy about success.
- b) Feeling tired and weak.
- c) Feeling angry with others.
- d) Feeling bored and lazy.

Answer: a)

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The town of Willow Creek was known for its beautiful views and kind people. The annual Willow Creek Festival, held in the heart of the town, attracted visitors from all over the country. The festival featured يتضمن local craftsmen, musicians, and chefs, who came together to celebrate the town's rich cultural heritage.

One of the main attractions of the festival was the Willow Creek Art Competition, where talented artists tried to win the prestigious Golden Brush Award. The competition was judged by a group of famous artists from different parts of the country, who appreciated the diverse styles and techniques displayed by the participants.

In addition to the art competition, the festival included live music performances عروض, a farmers' market, and various interactive workshops for both children and adults. The festival showed the town's commitment to preserving its unique identity and promoting local talent.

1. **Inference:** What can be inferred about the town of Willow Creek from the passage?
 - a) It is a modern and bustling city.
 - b) It is a small, quiet town.
 - c) It is a culturally rich and vibrant place.
 - d) It is an industrial town focused on manufacturing.
2. **Main Idea:** What is the main purpose of the Willow Creek Festival?
 - a) To attract tourists.
 - b) To celebrate the town's cultural heritage.
 - c) To showcase local talent.
 - d) To promote the town's agricultural products.
3. **Literal:** According to the passage, which event is a part of the Willow Creek Festival?

a) A marathon race.	b) A cooking competition.
c) The Willow Creek Art Competition.	d) A fashion show.
4. **Opinion:** What does the passage imply يُلحظ about the importance of the Golden Brush Award?
 - a) It is a minor prize.
 - b) It is a prestigious award in the art world.
 - c) The passage does not express an opinion about the award.
 - d) It is more important than the other events in the festival.

5. Summarizing: What is the key message of the passage?

- a) The Willow Creek Festival is an important event for the town.
- b) The festival promotes local talent and cultural heritage.
- c) The Golden Brush Award is a significant achievement for artists.
- d) The town of Willow Creek values its cultural heritage and local talent.

6. Word in Text: What does “prestigious” mean in the context of the passage?

- a) Common.
- b) Famous.
- c) Highly respected and honored.
- d) Highly ignored and excluded.

7. Referring to: The underlined pronoun “its” refers to

- a) the art competition
- b) the festival
- c) the farmers’ market
- d) the town

Answers:

1. c) 2. b) 3. c) 4. b) 5. d) 6. c) 7. d)

توجيهات عامة لقطعة الفهم

يجب اتباع الآتي عند حل سؤال قطعة الفهم:

١. نقرأ القطعة قراءة سريعة استكشافية، ولا نتوقف عند المفردات الصعبة، ويفضل البعض أن يقرأ الأسئلة أولاً.
٢. نقرأ الأسئلة لتحديد المعلومات التي نبحث عنها.
٣. نقرأ القطعة للمرة الثانية مع تحديد الكلمات المفتاحية والعبارات المهمة لإيجاد إجابات الأسئلة.
٤. التمثل في فهم السؤال ومعرفة معنى كلمات الاستفهام.
٥. التمثل في استخلاص الإجابة؛ فقد تكون إجابة السؤال الأول في الفقرة الثانية، وليس شرطاً أن تكون في الفقرة الأولى.
٦. لا ينبغي الانزعاج من عدم معرفة المفردات والجمال الصعبة الواردة في القطعة، فالمفردات الصعبة واردة لا محالة.
٧. يلزم فهم المعنى العام وتطويع المفردات حسب موضوع القطعة، مع استخدام القدرة على التخمين.
٨. قد نجد إيضاح الكلمة الصعبة في العبارة التالية لها.
٩. قبل اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة تأكد من أن الإجابات الأخرى غير صحيحة بالمرّة.
١٠. ركز على الكلمات الصغيرة مثل كلمات النفي التي قد تغير معنى الجملة.
١١. أجب بما يتوافق مع المعلومات الواردة في القطعة وتجنب الإجابات العامة أو التي تعتمد على معلومات خارجية.
١٢. لا تقص وقتاً طويلاً في سؤال واحد، انتقل إلى التالي ثم عد إليه لاحقاً إذا لزم الأمر.
١٣. حل العديد من القطع التدريبية لتحسين مهاراتك في الفهم والتحليل.

Comprehension

Exercises

Passage No. 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A barber was in his shop, busily cutting a man's hair when a handsome young stranger came in. He had a young boy with him. They sat down and waited until the barber had finished. Then the young man asked the barber to shave his head first and then cut the young boy's hair because he wanted to have a cup of tea while he was cutting the boy's hair. After the barber had finished shaving, he got up and said that he would go down the road to have his tea. "All right, but I won't take long," the barber warned him.

The man went out and the barber began to cut the boy's hair. He soon finished and then the boy sat down and waited. At the end of half an hour, the barber said, "It is a pity that your father's taking such a long time. Where is he likely to be now?" "I can't guess," answered the boy. "And that man wasn't my father. I'd never seen him before in my life. I was playing in the street when he came and asked me whether I'd like to have my hair cut without having to pay anything".

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The young boy was
 a) the man's son
 b) the man's relative
 c) a stranger to the man
 d) the man's friend
- The young man took the young boy with him
 a) because he wanted the boy to have his hair cut
 b) in order not to pay anything
 c) in order to let the boy pay
 d) in order to stay with him
- The young boy went to the barber on condition that
 a) the man wouldn't pay the barber
 b) the boy would pay the barber
 c) the man would give the boy some money
 d) the boy wouldn't pay anything
- The barber didn't ask the stranger to pay him when he left because he was sure that
 a) the stranger would return
 b) the boy wouldn't pay him
 c) such a man would cheat him
 d) the stranger was dishonest

5. While the barber was cutting the boy's hair, the young man
a) escaped
b) was waiting for his son
c) was having his tea
d) was having his breakfast
6. The barber discovered that the young man had deceived him when
a) he went out
b) he finished cutting the boy's hair
c) the boy said that he had never seen that man before
d) the young man asked him to cut the boy's hair
7. The underlined word guess " means "
a) need b) learn c) think d) earn

Passage No. 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The word "clown" is sometimes used to label a person as foolish. But being called a clown is not always an insult. The art of clowning is an old, honorable tradition. It includes not just modern-day circus clowns but court jesters, who performed for kings or emperors, and theatrical clowns, who were onstage as early as 500 years ago.

Throughout history, most cultures have had clowns. These clowns do more than just make people laugh. They are often shown as powerless fools, but sometimes clowns actually enjoy great freedom of speech. Using humor, clowns are able to question their leaders in a way ordinary people might not be able to do.

For example, in ancient China, Emperor Qin Shi Huang ordered to have the Great Wall of China built. During its construction, thousands of workers died due to poor working conditions. The Emperor planned to have the Great Wall painted, which would have resulted in even more lives lost. The Emperor's jester, Yu Sze, was the only person who dared to criticize this plan. He did so jokingly, but his jokes persuaded the Emperor not to paint the Great Wall. For this Yu Sze is now celebrated as a national hero in China.

Clowns remind us that humor can be one of the most effective ways to influence people. The clowns of our culture—those who make us laugh and look at life in new ways—may not represent foolishness at all, but wisdom in disguise.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The author of this passage is most interested in
 - a) presenting the history of clowns
 - b) explaining why Yu Sze is a hero
 - c) discussing the role clowns play in a culture
 - d) making people feel better about being called a clown
2. In paragraph 2, the author suggests that sometimes clowns have "great freedom of speech" compared to ordinary people because clowns are
 - a) not afraid of their leaders
 - b) smarter than ordinary people
 - c) able to use humor to make a point
 - d) viewed as national heroes
3. According to the author, Yu Sze persuaded the Chinese Emperor not to
 - a) build the Great Wall
 - b) mistreat the workers
 - c) paint the Great Wall
 - d) starve the workers
4. In the final paragraph, the author suggests that clowns may represent "wisdom in disguise." By this, the author means that clowns
 - a) are smarter than they appear
 - b) show up in unexpected places
 - c) should always be respected
 - d) dress up in costumes
5. According to the passage, which of the following is NOT true?
 - a) Only a few cultures used to have clowns.
 - b) Clowns do more than just make people laugh.
 - c) The Chinese are grateful to Yu Sze.
 - d) Clowning is an art.
6. Which of the following is the best title for this passage? ".....".

a) The Story of a Circus Clown	b) The Great Wall of China
c) An Honorable Tradition	d) A Famous Chinese Emperor
7. According to the author, humor is an effective way to people.

a) entertain	b) imprison
c) influence	d) understand

Passage No. 3

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Chess is called the game of kings. People have been playing it for over five hundred years. Chess is based on an older Indian game. The chess we play today is from Europe.

Chess is a two-player game. Each piece moves in a special way. One piece is called the king. Each player has one. The players take turns moving their pieces. The game ends when a player loses their King.

Some people think that chess is more than a game because good chess players use their brains. They take their time. They think about what will happen next. These skills are useful in life. Chess is like a workout for the mind. You don't always have lots of time to think when playing chess.

There is a type of chess with short time limits. It's called blitz chess, in which each player gets ten minutes to use for the whole game. You need to hit the clock once you finish your turn to stop your time and start the other player's time. If you run out of time, you lose. Computers have been playing chess since the 1970s. At first, they did not play well. As time went on, they grew stronger. In 1997, a computer beat the best player in the world for the first time. Chess sure has come a long way.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which is not a reason that chess is a good workout for the mind according to the text?
 - a) Good chess players think about what will happen next.
 - b) Good chess players take a lot of risks.
 - c) Good chess players take their time.
 - d) Good chess players use their brains.
2. How long have people been playing chess?
 - a) Over 100 years.
 - b) Over 500 years.
 - c) Over 1000 years.
 - d) Over 5000 years.
3. Where did the game that chess is based on come from?
 - a) Europe.
 - b) America.
 - c) India.
 - d) All of these.
4. Which best describes the main idea in the fourth paragraph?
 - a) This paragraph argues that players should think less.
 - b) This paragraph explains how blitz chess is played.
 - c) This paragraph explains how time clocks work.
 - d) This paragraph describes many different ways to play chess.

5. How is blitz chess different from regular chess?

- a) Each player has two kings.
- b) Players are blindfolded.
- c) Players only have ten minutes to play.
- d) Players start from a random position.

6. If it's your turn in blitz chess, what happens when you hit the clock?

- a) Both your clock and the other person's clock keep running.
- b) The other person's clock stops running and yours starts.
- c) Both clocks stop running.
- d) Your clock stops running and the other person's clock begins.

7. When did a computer first beat a strong human player in chess?

- a) In the 20s.
- b) In the 90s.
- c) In the 70s.
- d) In the 80s.

Passage No. 4

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In a small village, there lived a little girl whose name was Sophia. Her uncle gave her a few pennies to share with her twin brother John on their fifth birthday. She looked at the pieces and said, "What shall we do with them, Mother?" "You mustn't spend them foolishly," said their mother. The twins ran into the street. They wondered what they should buy. Should they buy candy? **They hardly knew how it tasted** Should they buy a toy? If they had been the only children in the family, things might have been different. However, there were three boys older than them and two little younger sisters.

They hadn't gone far when they met a larger boy who was blowing a flute. "I wish I had that flute," John said. The big boy looked at them and blew it and said, "Oh, what a pretty sound it made!" Sophia showed the money to the boy. "You may have them if you will give us the flute." "All of them?" The boy asked. She looked at her brother and then nodded. "Well, it's a deal," said the boy, and he gave the flute to them and took the pennies. Little John was very happy. They ran home quickly.

"You've paid a dear price for this thing. You might have bought half a dozen of such flutes with the money," said their mother. The twins saw what a mistake they had made. The flute did not please John anymore. He threw it upon the floor and began to cry. "Never mind," said the mother very kindly. "You are only very little, and you will learn a great deal as you grow bigger".

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The central idea of this passage can be ".....".

- a) The older you grow, the wiser you will be
- b) The more people you meet, the more money you will get
- c) The more money you get, the fewer things you will buy
- d) The more relatives you have, the more money you will earn

2. liked to have the flute.

- a) The flute boy
- b) Sophia
- c) John
- d) The mother

3. How were the twins deceived by the boy?

- a) The boy sold them his flute for more than it deserved.
- b) They decided to buy a flute for their mother.
- c) They had to buy a flute to play with their brothers.
- d) The mother gave them money to buy a flute.

4. "They hardly knew how it tasted." This sentence shows that the twins

- a) lived in poverty
- b) didn't like candy
- c) knew its taste
- d) preferred to taste it

5. After John's experience of buying the flute, he might learn to

- a) waste his money
- b) stop crying
- c) ask his father for money
- d) value things

6. Although the mother advised her children to spend money wisely, she didn't get when they didn't follow her advice.

- a) upset
- b) happy
- c) delighted
- d) satisfied

7. How old was Sophia?

- a) Fifteen years old.
- b) Fifty years old.
- c) Five years old.
- d) not mentioned.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The wise student does not sit all night studying one single subject, but rather, having spent an hour at one subject, turns to some other different subjects for a further hour, and so on. By such a method, they will keep mentally fresh for three or four hours of real study. Another student, by thinking to devote the same three or four hours to one single subject, will become listless before he is halfway through, and they're too tired to show interest or do anything. Most probably, they will fail to take in the meaning of what they are reading.

Trust yourself and you could be much better and more successful than you are. Self-distrust gives our real abilities no chance to shine and express ourselves. If you want to be greater, you must discover and use the abilities and potentials within you. You may realize that you have skills that you never dreamed of possessing.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. According to the passage, most of what we think as exhaustion is due to
 - a) tiredness or fatigue
 - b) bodily tiredness
 - c) a mental thing
 - d) bodily weariness
2. Change is
 - a) more useful than a bottle of medicine
 - b) less useful than a bottle of medicine
 - c) of the same effect as a bottle of medicine
 - d) of no use as a bottle of medicine
3. A good title for the passage is " "
 - a) The wise student
 - b) Bodily weariness
 - c) Pieces of advice
 - d) Self-distrust
4. Students fail to understand what they are reading when
 - a) they are tired
 - b) they are lazy
 - c) they wake up late
 - d) the subject is hard

5. Mistrust is bad for students as it

- a) hides their abilities
- b) cripples their legs
- c) keeps them unhealthy
- d) makes subjects harder

6. The writer thinks that if we are less shy, we

- a) might be stronger
- b) might be happier
- c) might be better
- d) we must be taller

7. Which one is not mentioned in the passage?

- a) Self-confidence makes you better.
- b) We must discover our potentials.
- c) Wise students don't study one subject at night.
- d) People and all students are active in the morning.

2 Writing

الكتابة

لكتابة مقال جيد، يجب أن تبدأ بكتابة جملة صحيحة (sentence) ومن ثم فقرة صحيحة (paragraph).

وللقيام بذلك عليك مراعاة التالي:

- ١ التكوين الصحيح للجملة، فالجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل.
- ٢ أن تبدأ كل جملة باستخدام حرف كبير Capital.
- ٣ أن تضع period (full stop) واضحة في نهاية كل جملة.
- ٤ أن تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب لنوعية الموضوع الذي تكتبه، فقد يكون في المضارع وقد يكون في الماضي أو المستقبل أو خليطاً بينهم.
- ٥ الاستخدام الصحيح للضمائر حسب موقعها في الجملة.
- ٦ تجنب استخدام الجمل المعقدة التي تحتوي على مفردات وتركيبات صعبة واستخدم الجمل البسيطة والسهلة في المعنى.
- ٧ إذا استخدمت أيًا من أدوات الربط فيجب عليك مراعاة القواعد الصحيحة لاستخدامها.

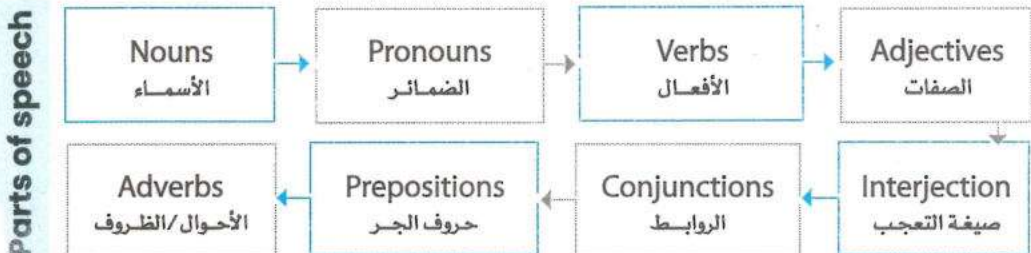
Sentence writing

كتابة الجمل

يجب تعلم أقسام الكلام جيدًا في اللغة الإنجليزية لفهم كيفية بناء الأنواع المختلفة من الجمل.

(A) Parts of speech

أقسام الكلام



1 Nouns

الاسم هو كلمة تشير إلى شخص أو مكان أو حيوان أو شيء، مثل:

Ahmed, people, man, horse, Cairo, door, factory, football, swimming, etc.

Types of Nouns أنواع الأسماء	Examples أمثلة
Common Noun	الاسم الشائع يشير إلى شيء عام وليس شيئاً محدداً. woman, man, town, country, school, tree, location, etc.
Proper Noun	اسم العلم يشير إلى الاسم المحدد لشيء ما، ويبدأ بحرف كبير. Osama, Hala, Cairo, Google, Earth, Eiffel Tower, etc.
Countable Noun	الاسم الذي يعد يمكن عده بالأرقام ويكون في صيغة المفرد والجمع ويستخدم المفرد منه مع أداتي النكرة a/an. car, teacher, tree, lion, eye, table, pen, film, street, etc.
Uncountable Noun	الاسم الذي لا يُعد يشير إلى شيء لا يمكن عده ولا يُستخدم مع a/an. furniture, advice, mail, news, hope, luggage, work, coffee, information, etc.

2 Pronouns

الضمير هو كلمة تستخدم بدلاً من الاسم، لاحظ الجدول التالي:

Types of Pronouns أنواع الضمائر	Examples أمثلة
Personal Pronouns	بدلاً من الفاعل I – he – she – we – they بدلاً من المفعول me – him – her – us – them بدلاً من الفاعل أو المفعول it – you
Possessive Pronouns	ضمائر الملكية لبيان الملكية والانتفاء والخصوصية. صفات الملكية (تتبع باسم) my – his – her – its – our – your – their ضمائر الملكية (لا تتبع باسم) mine – his – hers – ours – yours – theirs
Demonstrative Pronouns	ضمائر الإشارة تعني «إظهار» أو «توضيح» شيء ما. للإشارة للمفرد this – that للإشارة للجمع these – those
Reflexive Pronouns	الضمائر المنعكسة (عندما يعود الفعل على الفاعل نفسه) وتفيد التأكيد وتسمى intensive myself – yourself – himself – herself – itself – ourselves – themselves

Relative Pronouns	ضمائر الوصل هي ضمائر تربط أجزاء مختلفة من الجملة.	who – whom – which – that – whoever, etc.
Indefinite Pronouns	الضمائر غير المحددة هي ضمائر لا تشير إلى أي شخص أو شيء معين.	anything – everybody – another – each – few – many – none – some

3 Verbs

الأفعال

الفعل هو كلمة أو مجموعة كلمات تعبر عن فعل أو حالة مثل:

go, jump, sleep, eat, think, be, change, become, drive, complete, etc.

We **had** a nice lunch./ I **think** that he is right./ He **drove** for hours.

Types of Verbs أنواع الأفعال	Examples أمثلة
Auxiliary Verbs (also called "helping verbs")	الأفعال المساعدة هي أفعال تستخدم مع الفعل الرئيسي للجملة للتعبير عن الفعل أو الحالة. (Be) am – is – are – was – were (Have) have – has – had (Do) do – does – did (Modals) will – would – can – could – may – might – shall – should – must – ought to
Stative Verbs	– هي أفعال الشعور والإدراك والتملك وبعض الأفعال الأخرى. – لا يتم استخدام أفعال الحالة عادة في الأزمنة المستمرة. be – seem – love – own – want – sound – have – know – understand – belong – forget
Phrasal Verbs	الفعل الاصطلاحي هو فعل مدمج مع ظرف أو حرف جر. ويضع معنى جديداً للفعل. look for يبحث عن run into يقابل مصادفة

4 Adjectives

الصفات

الصفة هي كلمة تصف شخصاً أو شيئاً، مثل:

big, old, pretty, expensive, green, round, French, loud, quick, fat, etc.

ترتيب الصفات قبل الاسم:

Opinion الرأي	Size الحجم	Age العمر	Shape الهيئة	Color اللون	Origin بلد المنشأ	Material المادة	Used for الغرض	+ Noun الاسم
nice	big	old	round	red	Egyptian	metal	dinner	table

لاحظ أنه عادة لا يستخدم سوى صفتين أو ثلاث فقط قبل الاسم.

That's a **comfortable big German** car.

5 Adverbs

٤- الجملة

٣- الحال

٢- الصفة

١- الفعل

Examples

(1) Verb	الحال يصف الفعل	She runs quickly.
(2) Adjective	الحال يصف الصفة	She is extremely beautiful.
(3) Adverb	الحال يصف حالة أخرى	She smokes very rarely.
(4) Sentence	الحال يصف الجملة	Naturally , you don't have to come.

Adverbs usually answer the following questions:

الأحوال عادة ما تكون إجابة لمثل هذه الأسئلة:

Where? أين	Home.
When? متى	Yesterday.
How? كيف	Slowly.
How often? كم مرة	Sometimes.
How long? ما المدة	Temporarily.
How likely? ما مدى احتمالية؟	Surely.
To what degree? إلى أي درجة؟	Very.

كيف يتكون الحال؟ غالبًا نحول الصفة إلى حال بإضافة **ly**.

Adjective + ly

quick + ly	quickly	brave + ly	bravely
strange + ly	strangely	real + ly	really
dead + ly	deadly	heavy + ly	heavily

هناك أحوال لا تنتهي بـ **ly** مثل:

fast, very, hard, home, just, too, well, never, sometimes and so forth

TYPES OF ADVERBS

أنواع الأحوال/الظروف

Adverbs of degree	توضح لنا ظروف الدرجة قوة أو درجة الفعل أو الحالة.	very, highly, totally, perfectly, partially, almost
Adverbs of manner	توضح لنا هذه الظروف الطريقة التي يتم بها العمل. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ How .	well, badly, nicely, slowly, loudly, quietly, happily, sadly, secretly, weakly
Adverbs of place	توضح لنا ظروف المكان موقع الفعل أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ Where .	home, here, there, outside, inside, away, around, anywhere, abroad, up, down, out
Adverbs of time	توضح لنا ظروف الوقت وقت الفعل أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ When .	now, soon, later, yesterday, tomorrow, early, before, lately, recently
Adverbs of frequency	توضح لنا ظروف التكرار معدل تكرار الإجراء أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ How often .	always, never, sometimes, often, rarely, usually, occasionally
Adverbs of duration	توضح لنا ظروف المدة طول الإجراء أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ (For) how long .	forever, constantly, temporarily, briefly
Adverbs of probability	توضح لنا ظروف الاحتمال فرص حدوث الإجراء أو الحالة. وتجيب عن السؤال المبدوء بـ How likely .	certainly, maybe, probably, possibly, surely

6 Prepositions

حروف الجر

حرف الجر هو كلمة تُستخدم قبل اسم أو ضمير لربطها بكلمة أخرى في الجملة. يتم استخدامه عادةً لإظهار الموقع أو الاتجاه أو الوقت، وما إلى ذلك مثل:

on, in, at, by, under, above, beside, to, out, from, for

Let's go **into** the house./ We will meet **at** four o'clock./ He went **to** school.

7 Conjunctions

الروابط

الرابط هو كلمة تربط بين جملتين أو أكثر مثل: **and, but, or, because, so**

- I want to come, **but** I can't.
- She is smart, **and** they expect her to answer quickly.
- He didn't pass the test **because** he didn't understand the subject.
- We were hungry, **so** we ordered pizza.

8 Interjection

صيغة التعجب

صيغة التعجب هي صوت أو كلمة أو عبارة قصيرة تستخدم للتعبير عن مشاعر المتحدث.

Oh! Look out! Ow! Hey! Wow! Ah! Um ...

Wow, that's amazing!

Ah, that was a good meal!

Oh, dear! What happened?

Hello! How are you doing?

(B) Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

قد تمتلك مهارات لغوية جيدة وتعرف كيفية التعبير عن نفسك بلغة صحيحة، ولكن دون معرفة علامات الترقيم فإن مهاراتك، وخاصة المكتوبة، تصبح غير مكتملة. ويصعب قراءة قطعة من الكتابة لا تتضمن علامات الترقيم مقارنة بقطعة أخرى تحمل علامات الترقيم المناسبة في الأماكن الصحيحة؛ لذلك يجب أن نناقش علامات الترقيم وخاصة شائعة الاستخدام منها:

1 Capital letters

الحروف الكبيرة

My friend visited me yesterday. Where is the post office? He said, "My father bought me a camera".	١- أول الجملة سواء خبرية أو استفهامية أو أمرية.
Ahmed and Emad are my friends.	٢- في بداية الجملة الموجودة بين علامات الاقتباس في الكلام المباشر.
Saudi Arabia is a rich country. I live in 22 Al-Nasr Street, Maadi.	٣- أسماء الأشخاص والأعلام.
the A.R.E./ the U.S.A./ the K.S.A. /Mr./ Miss/ Dr	٤- أسماء القارات والدول والعواصم والعناوين.
the Red Sea/ the River Nile/ the Alps the Pacific Ocean/ Lake Victoria	٥- في الاختصارات.
Omar speaks English, French, and Spanish.	٦- أسماء البحار والبحيرات والجبال والجزر والمحيطات والأنهار.
Next Sunday, I will travel to Alex.	٧- أسماء اللغات.
I am Egyptian, but my friend is American.	٨- أيام الأسبوع والشهور.
My friend Hossam is training for the Winter Olympics.	٩- الجنسيات.
Britain profited from the Industrial Revolution.	١٠- الاسم العلم، وهو ما يشير إلى شخص أو مكان أو مؤسسة فردية أو حدث فردي.
During Ramadan, Muslims must fast.	١١- أسماء الفترات التاريخية المميزة.
I like "The Times".	١٢- أسماء الأعياد والأيام المقدسة.
	١٣- أسماء الكتب والأفلام والمسرحيات والصحف والمجلات.

2 Comma (,)

الفاصلة السفلى

▶ Thanks for all your help, Osama. ▶ Osama, I want you to study hard.	١- عند مخاطبة الشخص بالاسم.
▶ We went to school, and then to the stadium.	٢- فصل جملتين كاملتين أو عبارتين.
▶ Sara wanted the black, green, and blue dress. ▶ You can fly to Bombay via Moscow, Athens, or Cairo.	٣- فصل العناصر داخل الجمل عندما تكون هناك كلمات أو عبارات أو جمل مرتبطة بكلمة and أو or .
▶ I was born on 9 th August, 2000.	٤- فصل الأرقام والتواريخ.
▶ I live in Cairo, Egypt.	٥- فصل العنوان.
▶ I meant Ali, not Ahmed.	٦- فصل شخصين أو أى عناصر أخرى.
▶ She said, "I'm sorry".	٧- قبل جملة المباشرة التي بين الأقواس.
▶ Sure, Well, No, Yes, Yesterday, Tomorrow, Sorry, Excuse me, Luckily, However, etc.	٨- بعد الروابط الزمنية وعبارات معينة إذا جاءت أول الكلام.
▶ Although I was ill yesterday, I went to school.	٩- تفصل بين جملتين في حالة استخدام أداة ربط في أول الجملة.
▶ My brother is very clever, but he doesn't want to be a doctor.	١٠- في منتصف الجملة قبل أدوات الربط التالية: and, but, for, or, nor, so, yet
▶ My book, which is on the table, is really useful. ▶ Ali, who is my neighbor, is really helpful.	١١- قبل وبعد جملة الوصل التي تعطي معلومات غير ضرورية (non-defining).
▶ These birds are beautiful, aren't they?	١٢- قبل السؤال المذيل.

3 Full stop = period (.)

علامة التوقف

▶ The boys are playing.	١- نهاية الجملة الخبرية.
▶ Give me the blue dictionary.	٢- نهاية الجملة الأمرية.

4 Question Mark (?)

علامة الاستفهام

نهاية السؤال.

Have you finished writing?

She asked, "Are you happy to be home?"

Where did you go yesterday?

لاحظ أيضًا إذا حولنا السؤال من مباشر إلى غير مباشر تحول إلى جملة خبرية ولا نضع علامة استفهام.

He asked me what I was doing.

5 Exclamation Mark/Point (!)

علامة التعجب

نستخدم علامة التعجب بعد العبارات والجمل التي تعبر عن عاطفة أو رغبة مفاجئة.

What a cute puppy! / How fast you ran!

You're such a liar!

لاحظ أن التعجب يبدأ بكلمات استفهام في بعض حالاته، ففرق بينه وبين الاستفهام.

What a wonderful pyramid!

6 Apostrophe (')

الفاصلة العليا

it's = it is or it has

we'll = we will or we shall

they've = they have

he'd = he would or he had

١- للاختصارات

We should care for children's health.

Ahmed's car was repaired yesterday.

٢- الملكية إذا لم ينته الاسم بـ S وتوضع قبل الـ S سواء كان مفرداً أو جمعاً.

My parents' flat is on the first floor.

٣- للملكية إذا انتهى الاسم بـ S وتوضع بعد الـ S.

How many s's are there in "Mississippi"?

٤- عند جمع الحروف.

7 Hyphen (-)

الواصلة

part time, back-to-back, well-known,
sister-in-law, half brother, etc.

نستخدم الوصلة لربط كلمتين أو أكثر معاً في مصطلح مركب، ولا يتم فصلها بمسافات.

8 Colon (:

النقطتان

▶ He was planning to study four subjects: politics, philosophy, sociology, and economics.	١- بعد كلمة بعدها قائمة لأشياء أو شرح لشيء أو مثال.
▶ I didn't have time to get changed: I was already late.	٢- بين الجمل عندما تعطى الجملة الثانية شرحاً للجملة الأولى، على غرار الفاصلة المنقوطة.
▶ There was one thing she loved more than any other: her dog.	٣- للتأكيد.
▶ The ratio 2 : 4 is equivalent to the ratio 1 : 2.	٤- لبيان النسب.
▶ The train leaves at 4:30 p.m.	٥- مع الوقت.

9 Semicolon (;)

الفاصلة المنقوطة

▶ Some people like ketchup with their fries; others prefer mustard.	١- لربط الجمل وثيقة الصلة.
▶ My plan included taking him to a nice dinner; going to the park to look at the stars; and having a ride along the beach.	٢- لتقسيم عناصر القائمة إذا كانت العناصر طويلة أو تحتوي على علامات ترقيم داخلية.
▶ Be here by 4 o'clock at the latest; otherwise, we will not wait.	٣- لفصل جملة عن تفسيرها.

10 Inverted commas ("...")

علامات الاقتباس

"Don't go outside," she said.	تُستخدم لبيان جملة مقتبسة من كلام شخص، وما بينهما لا بد أن يبدأ بحرف Capital.
-------------------------------	---

Sentence patterns

أنماط الجمل

كما أن لكل لغة القواعد النحوية Grammar rules الخاصة فإن لكل لغة أنماطا/ أشكالاً خاصة لتركييب الجملة، ولإجادة الكتابة باللغة الإنجليزية يجب أن نعلم الأنماط الأساسية للجمل في اللغة الإنجليزية للتدريب عليها وأهمها:

1 Simple sentence

الجملة البسيطة

Pattern (1)

Subject فاعل	+	Verb فعل	+	Object مفعول
Alaa		eats		biscuits.
My father and mother		are eating		mangoes now.

(1) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

- 1 That thin girl/ now/ milk/ is drinking.
.....
- 2 the robbers yesterday/ The police/ caught.
.....
- 3 our teacher/ like/ We.
.....
- 4 My mother/ my baby sister/ is looking after.
.....
- 5 has just written/ a letter/ The tall man.
.....

Pattern (2)

Subject فاعل	+	Verb فعل	+	Indirect Object مفعول غير مباشر	+	Direct Object مفعول مباشر
I		gave		my sister		a birthday present.
My parents		tell		me		stories.

(2) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

- 1 The short man/ has bought/ some crayons from the stationery shop/ his son.
.....
- 2 the policeman/ has just shown/ The driver/ his driving license.
.....

3 the patient/ gave/ some medicine/ The nurse.

4 brought/ me/ a bouquet of flowers last week/ My uncle.

5 the shopkeeper/ The customer/ paid/ two hundred dollars.

Pattern (3)

Subject فاعل	+	Verb فعل	+	Direct Object مفعول مباشر	+	Preposition حرف جر	+	Indirect Object مفعول غير مباشر
My friend		has sent		a letter		to		me.
His parents		bought		a computer		for		him.

(3) Rewrite the following sentences by placing the words in brackets before the indirect object:

1 The postman gave her a letter yesterday. (to)

2 The dog owner gives his dog a bone every day. (to)

3 The students sent their teacher a present. (to)

4 I bought my mother a present. (for)

5 Our sister cooked us a delicious dish. (for)

Pattern (4)

Object	+	Verb (to be + P.P.)	+	Subject
The truck		is driven		by him.
Seeds		are eaten		by canaries.

وهذا النمط يستخدم عند بناء الجملة للمجهول.

(4) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

1 for/ him/ will be/ to/ A book/ his birthday/ given.

2 school/ were/ They/ away/ sent/ to.

3 tonight/ watched/ is going to/ A movie/ be/ by us.

2 Compound sentence

الجملة المركبة

تحتوى الجملة المركبة على جملتين مستقلتين على الأقل. يمكن دمج هاتين الجملتين المستقلتين مع فاصلة و رابط أو بفاصلة منقوطة.

She completed her literature review, and she created her reference list.

He organized his sources by theme; then, he updated his reference list.

3 Complex sentence

الجملة المعقدة

تحتوى الجملة المعقدة على جملة مستقلة واحدة على الأقل وجملة تابعة واحدة على الأقل. يمكن أن تشير الجمل التابعة إلى الموضوع (who - which) التسلسل / الوقت (since - while) أو العناصر السببية، (because - so) أو الشرطية (if).

Although she completed her literature review, she still needed to work on her methods section.

Because she had the right skills and experience, she was offered the position immediately.

They studied grammar rules for many hours as they were so interesting.

لاحظ استخدام فاصلة (,) في الجملتين الأوليين للبدء بأداة الربط، بينما لا توجد في الثالثة لوجود أداة الربط في المنتصف.

4 Compound-complex sentence

الجملة المركبة المعقدة

تحتوى الجملة المركبة المعقدة على جملتين مستقلتين على الأقل وجملة تابعة واحدة على الأقل.

Before you make a big decision, it is wise to ask for advice, for others might have a helpful perspective.

Although she had little experience in the field, she impressed the interviewer, and they decided to offer her the position.

(5) Rearrange the words in the correct order to make complete sentences:

1 I want/ lose/ chocolate/ daily/ eat/ to/ weight,/ I/ yet.

2 country,/ in my/ spend/ I plan/ Italy/ two weeks/ favorite/ to.

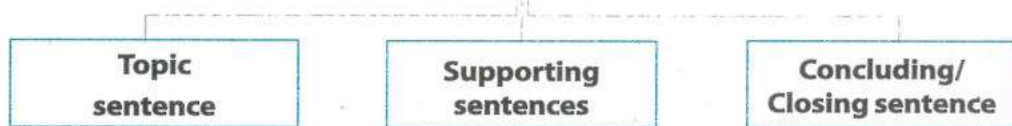
- 3 yesterday/ but he/ me/ saw/ Sami/ didn't/ I/ see.
- 4 went/ we only/ window-shopping/ the mall;/ We/ however/ went/ to.
- 5 football/ Because/ was/ was/ raining,/ the/ match/ it/ canceled.
- 6 when/ laughed/ dad/ I told/ My/ a joke.
- 7 school/ cannot/ leave/ rings/ the bell/ You/ the/ until.
- 8 candy/ I like/ a movie/ when/ to eat/ I watch.
- 9 the cat/ started/ ran away/ barking/ The dog/ so/ and I/ couldn't keep up.
- 10 because they/ are scary/ Kenzy/ doesn't like/ horror movies,/ to watch.

Paragraph

الفقرة

– الفقرة عبارة عن سلسلة من الجمل منظمّة ومتناسكة، وكلها مرتبطة بموضوع واحد، ويجب تنظيم الجمل ليكون الموضوع شيئاً وغير ممل. وتتطلب الكتابة معرفة القواعد والإلمام بمفردات لغوية معقولة، تنقسم الفقرة إلى ثلاثة أجزاء:

Paragraph structure



1 Topic sentence

جملّة الموضوع

It is the first sentence in the paragraph. The topic sentence states the main idea of the paragraph. That is, it shows what the whole paragraph is about. It can be called a 'hook' sentence that attempts to grab the reader's attention so that they want to read up on.

هي الجملة الأولى في الفقرة. توضح الجملة الافتتاحية الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة. أي أنها توضح ما تدور حوله الفقرة ويمكن أن تسمى (هوك) أو (جملة جاذبة للانتباه) تحاول جذب انتباه القارئ حتى يرغب في القراءة.

2 Supporting sentences

They are used to develop the topic sentence. In other words, they give more information about the topic sentence. Supporting sentences can give facts, statistics, details, or examples.

تُستخدم لتفصيل الجملة الافتتاحية. بمعنى آخر، يقدمون مزيدًا من المعلومات حول جملة الموضوع. يمكن أن تقدم الجملة الداعمة حقائق أو إحصائيات أو تفاصيل أو أمثلة.

3 Concluding/Closing sentence

The concluding/closing sentence is the last sentence in the paragraph. It usually restates the topic sentence in different words or summarizes the main points of the paragraph.

الجملة الختامية هي الجملة الأخيرة في الفقرة. عادة ما تعيد صياغة الجملة الافتتاحية بكلمات مختلفة أو تلخص النقاط الرئيسية للفقرة.

Transitions

هي كلمات أو تعبيرات يمكن استخدامها للربط بين الجمل الداعمة داخل الفقرة. ومنها:

Addition عند الإضافة		
and	و	further
also	أيضًا	furthermore
besides	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	in addition
first (second, etc.)	أولاً (ثانيًا ... إلخ)	moreover
What's more	وما هو أكثر	next
In addition to that	بالإضافة إلى (ذلك)	as well as
Giving an opinion عند إبداء الرأي		
in my opinion	في رأيي	in my point of view
I see	إنني أرى	I think
Giving an example عند طرح أمثلة		
For example	على سبيل المثال	In fact
For instance	على سبيل المثال	To illustrate
Contrasting ideas عند تعارض الأفكار		
although	على الرغم من	however
and yet	ومع ذلك	in contrast
but	ولكن (مع أن)	in spite of
despite	على الرغم من	nevertheless
even though	على الرغم من	on the contrary
on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى	though
apart from that	باستثناء ذلك	yet

To show time روابط تشير إلى الوقت

after	بعد	during	أثناء / خلال
afterwards	بعد أن	while	بينما
as	عندما	Finally	أخيراً
as long as	طالما	when	عندما
as soon as	بمجرد أن	immediately	حالياً
at last	في النهاية	later	فيما بعد
before	قبل	meanwhile	في غضون / في أثناء ذلك

Logical relationships العلاقات المنطقية مثل الشرط والسبب والنتيجة

as a result	ونتيجة لذلك	because	لأن
consequently	بالتالي	for this reason	لهذا السبب
hence	من هنا	if	لو
so	لذلك	otherwise	وإلا
therefore	بالتالي	since	لأن
thus	هكذا	then	ثم
unless	لولم	without	بدون

To summarize or conclude للتلخيص أو الخاتمة

All in all	في المجمل	In summary	باختصار
In conclusion	للخاتمة / في المجمل	On the whole	في المجمل / على العموم
In other words	بعبارة أخرى	Therefore	لذلك
In short	باختصار	To sum up	ملخصاً لما سبق
To conclude	للخاتمة		

Model Paragraph

Introduction

Topic sentence →

Body

Supporting sentences →

Conclusion

Concluding/
Closing sentence →

True friendship is one of life's most valuable treasures which you should always keep. Good friends provide unwavering support during difficult times, celebrating our successes, and offering comfort in our failures. They encourage us to be better versions of ourselves through honesty and trust. For example, a true friend will tell you a difficult truth to help you, not just what you want to hear. These relationships are built on a foundation of mutual respect and shared experiences. To sum up, investing time in building strong friendships is essential for a happy and fulfilling life.

Essay

المقال

المقال هو موضوع متكامل يتكون من العديد من الفقرات (ثلاث أو أكثر) وتحتوي كل فقرة على فكرة معينة وكل فقرة بها جملة أساسية لبيان الفكرة (Topic sentence) ويمكن عند سرد أحداث قصة أو تسلسل أفكار مثلاً ألا تحتوي الفقرة على (Topic sentence) ولكن في الموضوعات العامة لابد منها. وينقسم المقال إلى ثلاثة أجزاء:

Essay structure

Introduction

Body

Conclusion

1 Introduction

المقدمة

أول فقرة في المقال وتتضمن معلومات عامة وأساسية عن الموضوع وتحتوي على الـ **Thesis statement** وهي الجملة التي تخبر القارئ بموضوع المقال. وتختلف المقدمات من موضوع لآخر حسب النوع، ففي موضوع الرأي مثلاً نذكر كيف يكون الشيء ونذكر رأينا في المقدمة وفي الموضوعات الجدلية نذكر طرفي الجدل، كل في جملة أو جملتين وهكذا، وسنبين ذلك في الشرح القادم للأنواع.

2 Body

هيئة المقال

تتكون هيئة المقال من فترتين أو أكثر ليطم مناقشة الفكرة الأساسية باستخدام الحقائق والحجج والتحليل والأمثلة وغيرها من المعلومات وتسمى (Supporting). وكل فقرة تحتوي على جمل تدعم الرأي الذي تبنيه أو الموضوع الذي نتناوله.

3 Conclusion

الخاتمة

وهو تلخيص (Summarization) لما تمت مناقشته في الفقرات السابقة مع إضافة جزء خاص على حسب نوع المقال.

Introduction

Friendship is an important human bond that greatly contributes to our mental and emotional well-being. Strong social connections are not just a source of joy; they are a crucial component of a healthy, fulfilling life.

Building friendships and maintaining good relationships require effort and understanding.

Body

Maintaining strong friendships requires consistent effort and effective communication. In today's busy world, it is easy to lose touch, but a simple message or planning regular meet-ups can keep a connection. More importantly, the ability to compromise is essential; understanding a friend's perspective and finding a middle ground during disagreements strengthens trust and respect, turning challenges into opportunities for the relationship to grow deeper.

Conclusion

In conclusion, good friendships make life better. By talking regularly and being willing to compromise, we can keep our friends for a long time. Having strong friendships is one of the best ways to protect our mental health and enjoy life.

Types of Essays

أنواع المقال



تتعدد أنواع المقال وأشكاله وبالطبع لكل نوع خصائص معينة في الكتابة، وسنتناول بالشرح هذه الأنواع وكيفية الكتابة في كل نوع:

1 Persuasive (Opinion) essay

المقال الإقناعي

نستخدم هذا النوع عند إبداء الرأي في موضوع معين ويكون لدينا الحجج والبراهين التي تؤكد الرأي وفي هذا النوع من المقالات يحاول الكاتب أن يقنع القارئ بأن وجهة نظره هي الصحيحة. الكاتب يدعم رأيه بالحقائق والإحصائيات وآراء الخبراء. ويمكن تحديد عناصر موضوع الرأي في الآتي:

Paragraph 1	What is the current situation? What is your point of view?	ما هو الوضع الحالي؟ ما هي وجهة نظرك في هذا الأمر؟
Paragraph 2	Writing about your main idea by using wh- words and giving some examples.	الكتابة عن فكرتك الأساسية من خلال استخدام كلمات الاستفهام وإعطاء الأمثلة.
Paragraph 3	Giving other points through giving examples. (should be linked to the main point)	إعطاء نقاط أخرى من خلال إعطاء أمثلة (يجب ربط الأمثلة بالنقطة الرئيسية)؟
Paragraph 4	Re-emphasize the importance of the defended opinion.	إعادة التأكيد على أهمية الرأي الذي تم الدفاع عنه.

Model Persuasive Essay

نموذج لمقال إقناعي

Cleanliness is very important to fight diseases

Introduction

Nothing is more important than health. All people want to live in a healthy environment. Diseases are enemies attacking living things and ending their lives. Besides, cleanliness is very important to fight these enemies. In my opinion, without hygiene and sanitation, we will suffer a lot from diseases.

Body

Concerning hygiene, people can do many things to protect themselves from all kinds of diseases. Our homes should be kept clean all the time. Our clothes mustn't be left dirty. Washing our hands before and after having meals is very necessary. It's important for everyone to have a bath regularly or after doing any kind of sport. Dishes shouldn't be left lying everywhere. We should eat healthy food and drink clean water.

Concerning sanitation, our streets should be clean in order not to be a means of spreading diseases. Rubbish should be put in dustbins. The government should punish those who pollute our environment. Our sources of water should be pure and healthy. Our means of transport should be environmentally friendly. Supermarkets should try to limit selling unhealthy foods.

Conclusion

To sum up, in my opinion, we should follow the rules of hygiene and sanitation, which are very important in our lives. We should be healthy and carry out the things needed to keep us healthy. To be healthy is very easy and doesn't cost us much, and it's within our reach.

2 Argumentative essay

المقال الجدلي

يهدف هذا النوع إلى تقديم قضية أو فكرة مغينة ومناقشتها بطريقة منطقية ومقنعة. يعتمد هذا النوع من المقالات على تقديم حجة واضحة حول موضوع محدد، ثم دعم هذه الحجة بالأدلة والبراهين الموثوقة مثل الدراسات العلمية، الإحصائيات، الحقائق التاريخية، أو آراء الخبراء.

Paragraph 1	The issue that the title raises.	القضية التي يثيرها العنوان
Paragraph 2	Arguments in favor of the title.	آراء المناصرين
Paragraph 3	Arguments against the title.	آراء المعارضين
Paragraph 4	Guide the reader to think about the topic more deeply.	توجيه القارئ للتفكير في الموضوع بشكل أعمق.

Model Argumentative Essay

نموذج لمقال جدلي

Physical Education (P. E.) is a very important school subject

Introduction

It's often supposed by parents, teachers, and students that P.E. is not important. They think that schools are a place of academic study, and so sports are a waste of time. On the other hand, some people say that P.E. is one of the most essential subjects.

Body

Those who are in favor of P.E. say that it's necessary for students' health. They say that some students exercise only at school. It doesn't waste time as it's only one or two periods during the week. In addition to that, it teaches students good habits of a healthy lifestyle, which will help them in the future.

Opponents of P.E. don't see its importance in education. Moreover, they say that it leads to violence because of its high level of competitiveness. Some think that the only place to do sports is in the club.

Conclusion

To sum up, I think that P.E. is as important as any other subject, but in a different way. These days, teenagers spend too much time in front of screens. P.E. gives them the chance to change their sedentary life and do some exercise.

3 Descriptive essay

المقال الوصفي

يكون هذا النوع من المقالات حول تقديم وصف دقيق وواضح لشخص، مكان، شيء، حدث، أو حتى شعور. الهدف الأساسي منه هو جعل القارئ يشعر وكأنه يعيش التجربة أو يرى الشيء الموصوف أمام عينيه. ويتميز باستخدام اللغة الغنية والتفاصيل الدقيقة التي تساعد على إبراز الصورة في ذهن القارئ.

Paragraph 1	The location and a brief history of the place.	الموقع وتاريخ موجز للمكان
Paragraph 2	The architectural adjectives/material used/style of building.	الصفات المعمارية /المواد المستخدمة /أسلوب البناء.
Paragraph 3	Why is it popular?	لماذا هو مشهور؟
Paragraph 4	Your personal impression or an emotional message about the topic.	انطباعك الشخصي أو رسالة عاطفية حول الموضوع.

Model Descriptive Essay

نموذج لمقال وصفي

The Citadel of Salah El Din in Cairo

Introduction

The Citadel of Saladin is a splendid building on a hill overlooking the old city of Cairo. It was built in the 12th century by King Salah El Din and his brother, King El-Adel. Apart from the mosques, the Citadel hosts four more interesting museums: the Military Museum, the Police Museum, the Royal Carriages Museum, and the Qasr El-Gawhara Museum.

Body

The Citadel, as well as its walls, was built out of stones. It took eight years to complete. Work began in 1176 and finished in 1183. The appearance of the Citadel is different today from the original one. It has been enlarged and reshaped by various leaders.

For many centuries, it was the seat of the king and his government in Egypt. Throughout different stages of Egyptian history, the Citadel has always played a significant role in Egyptian politics. In fact, the Citadel has defended Egypt against many violent attacks throughout time.

Today, the Citadel of Salah El Din is one of the most popular historical sites of Cairo and is included in almost every capital tour. Located at the top of a high cliff, the Citadel also provides tourists with magnificent views over the bustling city of Cairo. You can visit the Citadel of Salah El Din both day and evening.

Conclusion

In my point of view, it's worth visiting as it's one of the most interesting places in Egypt. I visited it 10 years ago, and I'd like to go there again. I think I'll have a very pleasant time there.

4 Expository essay

المقال التفسيري

هذا النوع يهدف إلى شرح أو توضيح موضوع معين بطريقة موضوعية ومنظمة. ويركز على تقديم معلومات واضحة ومباشرة حول الموضوع دون الاعتماد على الآراء الشخصية أو العواطف. ويتميز بأنه يعتمد على الحقائق، الأمثلة، والإحصائيات لشرح فكرة معينة أو تحليل موضوع بطريقة متوازنة ومنهجية.

Paragraph 1

It includes a topic sentence that clearly shows the main point of the essay. يتضمن جملة الموضوع التي توضح النقطة الرئيسية للمقال.

Paragraphs 2/3

Each paragraph in the body of the essay should focus on its own issue that helps develop and support the topic sentence. Make sure you're using factual information to support your thesis.

يجب أن تركز كل فقرة في نص المقالة على القضية التي تساعد في تطوير ودعم جملة الموضوع. تأكد من أنك تستخدم المعلومات الواقعية لدعم الموضوع.

Paragraph 4

Re-emphasize the importance of the theme or main idea. إعادة التأكيد على أهمية الموضوع أو الفكرة الرئيسية.

Model Expository Essay

نموذج لمقال تفسيري

Traffic rules and safety

Introduction

Traffic rules and regulations are formulated to regulate traffic for the safety of all types of road users. They are very essential to ensure the safety of various road users and as well as their easy commuting.

Body

Egyptian roads are overcrowded with a variety of vehicles and daily commuters. Our highways and city roads are carrying much more traffic than what they were actually designed for. But the main problem lies in the variety of vehicles on the same road and of course, they all want to reach on time.

We have slow-moving traffic, like carts along with cars, buses, trucks, bicycles, motorcycles, pedestrians, and often animals; all using the same road. Besides, motorcyclists, bicycle riders, and pedestrians are the most vulnerable, as they are difficult to spot on a crowded and busy road.

The traffic rules and regulations are designed in such a way that they ensure the safety of all commuters. Some rules are formulated for specific types of users, while some are common.

Conclusion

Wearing a helmet while riding a bike or bicycle is meant for the safety of the rider. Likewise, there are many rules like wearing seat belts while driving, driving at a limited speed, giving way to pedestrians, and following traffic signals and signs; all are designed for the safety of road users and to ensure their easy transit.

5 Narrative essay

المقال السردي / القصصي

يهدف إلى سرد قصة أو تجربة شخصية بطريقة مشوقة ومثيرة للاهتمام. ويعتمد هذا النوع على عنصر السرد لنقل الأحداث بشكل متسلسل، مع التركيز على عناصر القصة مثل الشخصيات، الحبكة، الإعداد (الزمان والمكان)، والصراع. الهدف الأساسي منه هو جعل القارئ يعيش التجربة كما لو كانت حقيقية، وقد يكون الهدف أيضًا إيصال رسالة أو فكرة معينة من خلال القصة.

Paragraph 1	Background information/setting the scene.	المعلومات التي لديك عن الحدث
Paragraph 2	Describing the event.	وصف الحدث
Paragraph 3	The response to the event.	رد الفعل والاستجابة تجاه الحدث
Paragraph 4	The story is summarized and the message or lesson learned is highlighted.	يتم تلخيص القصة وإبراز الرسالة أو الدرس المستفاد منها.

Model Narrative Essay

نموذج لمقال سردي / قصصي

An event you remember from your childhood

Introduction

In 2010, my family and I went to attend my uncle's wedding in a small village in Assiut 400 kilometers from where we live. We were driving back home again on the new army road **when** a disaster happened.

Body

As it was a good motorway, my father was driving at a breakneck speed. Unfortunately, it was raining heavily and my father wanted to overtake a bus in front of him. I was sitting in the back seat with my younger sister. It was very cold, **but** we were wearing heavy coats. **Suddenly**, the car started to slide on the road. My father tried to control the car, but it crossed over onto the other side of the road.

We had been very lucky; there had been no cars coming **while** we were crossing the other side of the motorway. **As soon as** the car stopped, we got out, finding that the car windows had been broken and there was glass everywhere. **Fortunately**, none of us had been injured.

Conclusion

After our car had been repaired, we went to visit our family again. **This time** it wasn't raining and my father drove slower. **I've never forgotten this bad experience**

A book review

مقال نقدي عن كتاب / قصة

هي نوع يهدف إلى تقديم تقييم شامل لكتاب معين. ويتضمن ملخصاً لأهم أفكاره ومحتوياته، بالإضافة إلى تحليل نقدي لتقييم جودته وأسلوبه وقيمته الأدبية أو الفكرية. الهدف الأساسي من المقال هو مساعدة القراء على فهم محتوى الكتاب وتقييم ما إذا كان يستحق القراءة أم لا.

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| Paragraph 1 | The facts and details about the novel/book. حقائق وتفاصيل عن الرواية أو الكتاب. |
| Paragraph 2 | Describe the main characters and the relation between them. وصف للشخصيات الرئيسية والعلاقة بينها. |
| Paragraph 3 | What happened in the story and the turning point. ماذا حدث في القصة وما هي نقطة التحول. |
| Paragraph 4 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Re-emphasize whether or not to recommend the book.- The conclusion may include a comparison between this book and other similar books. |

– إعادة التأكيد على التوصية أو عدم التوصية بالكتاب.

– قد تشمل الخاتمة مقارنة بين هذا الكتاب وكتب أخرى مشابهة.

- Think of a novel you have enjoyed reading and you would recommend to other people.
- Write a book review about the last novel you read.

Model Book Review

نموذج لمقال نقدي عن كتاب / قصة

The Old Man and the Sea

Introduction

Ernest Hemingway's *The Old Man and the Sea* is a powerful novella about an old Cuban fisherman named Santiago.

Body

After 84 days without a catch, Santiago ventures far out and hooks a giant marlin. The novel focuses on his long, exhausting struggle to catch the fish, which becomes a battle of endurance and will.

This book is a classic tale of perseverance, courage, and dignity in the face of overwhelming odds. Hemingway's writing is simple yet deeply descriptive, making the struggle feel real and symbolic at the same time. While some may find the pace slow or the ending bittersweet وحزينة وسعيدة, the story leaves a strong impression about resilience and respect for nature.

Conclusion

In conclusion, this novel is a masterpiece about human strength and pride. I highly recommend it to readers who enjoy meaningful stories about human strength and moral victory.

Writing a biography (Description of people)

السيرة الذاتية

الكتابة عن شخص تعرفه أو تحبه أو له فضل أو تأثير عليك لها أفكار معينة وطريقة يجب أن تتبعها ليخرج مقالاً جيداً. وتذكر أنه في الامتحان لن تجبر على الكتابة عن شخص معين ولكن تختار أنت الشخص الذي تكتب عنه؛ ولذلك يمكن أن تعد الأفكار والمعلومات من الآن أو أن تجهز موضوعاً عن شخصية في كل مجال، وفقرات هذا الموضوع تكون كالتالي:

Paragraph 1	The person's birth, family and early school or life. Why you admire him/her. ولادة الشخص وأسرته ومدرسته المبكرة أو حياته. لماذا أنت معجب به / بها.
Paragraph 2	Talk about the first steps in the person's successes and the developments in his/her career. الخطوات الأولى في نجاحات الشخص والتطورات في حياته / حياتها المهنية.
Paragraph 3	What made the person famous? What are their interests? What is their influence on society? ما الذي جعل الشخص مشهوراً وما هي اهتماماته وتأثيره على المجتمع؟
Paragraph 4	The end of his/her career, life in retirement. نهاية حياته / حياتها المهنية والحياة في التقاعد.

- Write about someone you admire/ a sportsperson/ scientist/ writer from your country.

Model Biography

نموذج لسيرة ذاتية

Professor Mostafa El-Sayed

Introduction

The person I admire most is Professor Mostafa El-Sayed. He was a famous Egyptian chemist and medical researcher. He was born in 1933 in Gharbia Governorate. His parents died when he was ten years old. He graduated from the Faculty of Science at Ain Shams University in 1953.

Body

During his studies, he did many scientific experiments that enabled him to pass his exams successfully. In 1961, he became a professor at the University of California. His success is built on teamwork, and much of his research takes place with his team at Georgia Tech's laser laboratory.

He is best known for his work in biochemistry and nanoscience. Inspired by his wife's death from cancer in 2005, he began exploring nanotechnology for cancer treatment. His innovative research has led to innovative therapies.

Conclusion

In 2008, he received the U.S. National Medal of Science. Despite his many honors, he said he worked hard for humanity, not for awards.

Writing an email

كتابة الإيميل (البريد الإلكتروني)

كتابة البريد الإلكتروني لها شكل مختلف في التنسيق عن المقال العادي، فيكون في أوله ثلاثة صفوف: أحدها للمرسل والآخر للمستلم والثالث لعنوان الموضوع. ويبدأ بالتحية ثم الغرض من الكتابة ثم النهاية. ويختلف البريد الرسمي عن غير الرسمي:

1 Informal Email

بريد غير رسمي

البريد غير الرسمي يرسل إلى الأصدقاء والمعارف والأقارب.

New message

← → ↻

From mohammed@gmail.com

To ali@gmail.com

Subject Invitation

Greetings:

Hi اسم الشخص.

Hello اسم الشخص.

Dear اسم الشخص.

Reason for writing:

Just a quick question about ...

I was wondering if ...

I wanted to let you know that ...

Making a request:

I was just wondering if you were around later ...

Would you mind coming earlier?

Can you call me back ASAP? (As soon as possible)

Ending:

Thanks,

See you later,

See you soon,

Bye,

📎 🖼️ 😊 🔍

Send

2 Formal Email

بريد رسمي

البريد الرسمي يرسل إلى الشركات والمصالح الحكومية والمؤسسات والهيئات والوزارات ... إلخ.

New message

← →

From mohammed@gmail.com

To jones@nahda.com

Subject Job application

Greetings:

Dear Sir/Madam,
Dear Mr./Ms. Jones,

Reason for writing:

I am writing to ask for further information about ...
I am writing regarding the meeting we have arranged ...
I am writing with regard to the complaint you made ...
With reference إلى الرجوع إلى to our conversation this morning, I would like to let you know ...

Making a request:

Could you please let me know if you are available?
I would appreciate it if you could send me the document ...
Could we arrange a meeting later?
Please let me know if this will be possible ...

Ending:

Yours sincerely,
Yours faithfully,
Kind regards,
Best wishes,

Send

Model of an informal email

New message

← → 🔍

From hams@gmail.com

To hana@gmail.com

Subject Apology

Hi Hana,
How's it going?
Sorry, I haven't been in touch for such a long time, but I've had exams, so I've been studying every free minute. Anyway, I'd love to hear all your news and I hope we can get together soon to catch up.
We've just moved to a new bigger flat, so maybe you can come and visit us one weekend.
Tell me, how's your new job?
Looking forward to hearing from you!

Hams

📎 🖼️ 😊 🔍 Send

Model of a formal email

New message

← → 🔍

From redakamel@yahoo.com

To fadel@yahoo.com

Subject Vacation request

Dear Mr. Fadel,
I would like to request a vacation from Sunday, March 10th till Friday, March 15th. I would like to get it because of my bad circumstances.
I will make sure to complete all my current projects and tasks in advance before the vacation. My colleagues Amr and Ayman will cover my responsibilities during my absence.
Looking forward to your approval.

Sincerely,
Reda Kamel

📎 🖼️ 😊 🔍 Send

General

Exercises

Write an essay of about (150) words on the following topics:

1. The job you would like to do in the future.
2. The advantages and disadvantages of cell phone.
3. Your past habits.
4. How to help and support charities in your community.
5. How it is important for all of us to stay safe and healthy.
6. The pros and cons of social media.
7. The importance of reading.
8. Your career and life goals.
9. A mistake you have learnt from.
10. Online shopping.
11. How to spend your free time in doing useful things.
12. Modern technology and how it affects our life.
13. Bullying at school.
14. A place that is special to you.
15. The person you admire.
16. Forms of pollution and how to fight them.
17. The role of friendship in our life.
18. The importance of voluntary work.
19. How to solve the problem of food shortage.
20. A review of a novel you have read.
21. The skills you need to get a good job.
22. The role of charities in society.
23. The best invention.
24. Your favorite hobbies.

Emails:

25. Write an email to your friend Mark telling him about your exam results.
26. Write an email to Egypt Air Company, which has advertised some jobs.

What is "Translation"?

ما هي الترجمة؟

الترجمة فن وليست مجرد حفظ كلمات فقط، فهي عبارة عن كيفية الاعتماد على توصيل المعنى المراد من الجملة، وليست ترجمة حرفية للكلمات، تتضمن مهارة الترجمة القدرة على نقل المفاهيم والمعاني من لغة لأخرى عن طريق تخمين معاني الكلمات في حالة وجود كلمات صعبة.

Language is meaning-based:

اللغة تعتمد على توصيل المعنى

عند ترجمة جملة أو التحدث بشيء يجب أن نعرف أن المعنى العام هو الأكثر أهمية، حيث إن اللغة تعتمد على المعنى وليس ترجمة كل كلمة منفصلة.

لاحظ المثال التالي:

- «يجب أن يتحد الشعب المصري لمواجهة تحديات العصر».
- Egyptians must (should) unite (work together/ help each other) to face (stand against) the challenges (difficulties) of the age (present time).
- لاحظ أننا استخدمنا أكثر من معنى لنفس الكلمة وليس شريكاً هنا أن نترجم ترجمة حرفية، ولكن الأهم توصيل المعنى.
- لاحظ مثالاً آخر:
- I had my lunch and then went out to meet my friends to have a nice time together and we really were over the moon.
- تناولت غدائي وخرجت لمقابلة أصدقائي لنحظى بوقت ممتع معاً، وكنا حقاً سعداء للغاية.
- هنا لو تمت الترجمة الحرفية فسوف يضيع المعنى تماماً، فمثلاً كلمة have نعرفها بمعنى «يملك» ولكن هنا لا يتناسب المعنى الحرفي مع المعنى العام.
- أيضاً التعبير over the moon لو تمت ترجمته حرفياً (فوق القمر) لضاع المعنى السليم وهو (سعيد جداً).

What is the difference between "Translation into Arabic and Translation into English"?

ما الفرق بين «الترجمة إلى العربية والترجمة إلى الإنجليزية»؟

- الترجمة من اللغة الإنجليزية إلى اللغة العربية تعتمد على المعنى، وتخمين الكلمات الصعبة وليس هناك شرط لتكوين الجملة والزمن.
- The government tries to solve most of our problems in Egypt.
- تحاول الحكومة (الحكومة تحاول) أن تحل (حل) معظم مشاكلنا في مصر.
- أما الترجمة من اللغة العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية فتعتبر الأصعب حيث لابد من معرفة تكوين الجملة والحفاظ على الزمن السليم وكذلك كتابة الكلمات بشكل صحيح.
- «تلاعب الرياضة دوراً هاماً في بناء الجسم والشخصية»
- Play sport role important in building body and character. (X)
- هنا ترجمة حرفية ليست صحيحة سواء تكوين الجملة أو المعنى.
- Sports (الصفة قبل الاسم) an important role (الفعل مفرد) play (بدأنا هنا بالفاعل) in building (forming) the body and personality. (✓)

1 Translation from English into Arabic:

الترجمة من الإنجليزية إلى العربية:

- ١ لابد من البعد عن الترجمة الحرفية وتوصيل المعنى هو الأهم كما أوضحنا سابقاً.
 - ٢ تخمن الكلمة الصعبة من التي قبلها أو التي بعدها طبقاً لسياق الجملة.
 - ٣ يمكن التخمين باستخدام مقاطع أول وآخر الكلمة مثل **non-renewable** فإن أصل الكلمة **new** وأضيف لها **re** بمعنى يعيد **able** تحولها إلى صفة **non** للنفي فتصبح الكلمة: غير متجدد.
 - ٤ نترجم **ought to – must – should** إلى: يجب – ينبغي – إنه لزام علينا أن.
 - ٥ من الأفضل أن يتحول المبنى للمجهول إلى المعلوم (إذا كان الفاعل مذكوراً).
- A lot of new schools were built by the government.

- لقد قامت الحكومة ببناء الكثير من المدارس الجديدة.
- ٦ من الممكن استخدام بعض الكلمات والحروف لتحسين المعنى.
- Tourism is one of the most important sources of our national income and hard currency.
- تُعتبر السياحة (إن السياحة) واحدة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لدينا وكذلك العملة الصعبة.
- ٧ الالتزام بزمان الجملة في الترجمة من حيث (مضارع أو ماضٍ أو مستقبل).
- ٨ يتم ترجمة **have/has + P.P.** إلى «لقد».
- ٩ لا يظهر **v. to be** في المضارع ولكن من الممكن أن يظهر في الماضي.

- Music is the production of talent and passion.
- الموسيقى هي نتاج الموهبة مع العاطفة.
- Ali was at home when I phoned.
- كان علي في البيت عندما اتصلت.
- ١٠ **v. to have** يترجم إلى أكثر من معنى حسب سياق الجملة (لـ - عند - يملك - لدى - يفتني - يتناول - يصاب - يناقش - ...)
- We had our meals.

- تناولنا وجباتنا.
- My son had a serious disease.
- أصيب ابني بمرض خطير.
- Hala has a nice car.
- تمتلك هالة سيارة جميلة.
- Egypt has a lot of relations with world countries.
- لمصر علاقات كثيرة بدول العالم.

2 Translation from Arabic into English:

الترجمة من العربية إلى الإنجليزية:

- ١ لابد من تحديد أجزاء الجملة حيث إن الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية لابد أن تبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل ثم المفعول
Subject – verb – object...
- تلعب مصر دوراً كبيراً في الشرق الأوسط.
- Egypt plays a great role in the Middle East.
- ٢ الالتزام بقواعد اللغة من حيث الأزمنة الصحيحة للجملة.
- Egypt played a wonderful match yesterday
- لقد لعبت مصر مباراة رائعة بالأمس.
- الزمن هنا ماضٍ بسيط حيث حدد وقته وعلامته.
- لقد اجتاز الاختبار وسيقدم للجامعة الأسبوع القادم.
- He has passed the test, and he will apply to university next week.
- هنا مزيج من المضارع التام والمستقبل.

٣ الصفة دائماً قبل الاسم والظرف بعد الفعل.

• أعتقد أن عليًا طالب رائع حيث إنه يتحدث الإنجليزية بطلاقة.

• I think that Ali is a **wonderful** student as he speaks English **fluently**.

٤ أداة النصب «إن» ليس لها مكان عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

• إن تطوير التعليم هو أساس التقدم.

• **Developing** education **is** the basis of progress.

لاحظ: أن (is) هنا لم تكن موجودة في الجملة باللغة العربية، ولكن لابد من وجودها في الإنجليزية.

لاحظ أيضًا: أنه عند بداية الجملة بالفعل يتم إضافة **ing** ليتحول إلى اسم فاعل **gerund**.

٥ من + صفة + لأو على + مفعول + أن ... = ... **It's + adj. + for + obj. + to + inf.**

• من الضروري لنا جميعًا أن نتحد لخدمة بلدنا.

• **It is necessary** for all of us **to unite** to serve our country.

٦ الضمائر المتصلة في العربية **pronouns** يجب إظهارها عند الترجمة إلى الإنجليزية.

• علينا أن نحاول بجد لكي نحقق ما نتمناه.

• **We** should try hard to achieve what **we** hope.

٧ لام التعليل تترجم إلى: المصدر + **in order to/ so as to/ to**.

• استيقظ مبكرًا للحاق بالقطار المتجه إلى القاهرة.

• He woke up early **to catch** the train to Cairo.

٨ الضمير المضاف إلى فعل يترجم إلى ضمير مفعول (us – them – him – me – her)

الضمير المضاف إلى اسم يترجم إلى (صفة ملكية) (your – its – our – his – her – their – my):

• قام الكثير من أصدقائي بزيارتي حيث إنني كنت مريضًا.

• A lot of **my friends** visited **me** because I was sick.

٩ الأسماء المعنوية والأسماء التي لا تجمع **the** عند ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية.

– السعادة كنز لا يقدر بثمن.

• **Happiness** is a priceless treasure.

الأسماء المعنوية مثل:

honor	الشرف	virtue	الفضيلة	peace	السلام
beauty	الجمال	love	الحب	friendship	الصداقة
freedom	الحرية	advice	نصيحة	hatred	الكراهية
success	النجاح	justice	العدالة	honesty	الصدق

١٠ الأسماء التي لا تجمع **Uncountable Nouns** لا تأخذ أداة المعرفة أو أداة النكرة.

• أريد معلومات عن البحث الجديد.

• I want **information** about the new research.

الأسماء التي لا تجمع مثل:

paper	الورق	luggage	الأمتعة	baggage	الحقائب
grass	العشب	money	المال	oil	الزيت
electricity	الكهرباء	information	معلومات	news	أخبار

١١ حرف الـ (س) وكلمة (سوف) المرادف لهما في اللغة الإنجليزية هو زمن المستقبل البسيط.

- سأزور أصدقائي غدًا.

• I **will visit** my friends tomorrow.

١٢ لقد + فعل ماضٍ وفي الجملة إشارة تدل على الماضي البسيط تترجم إلى ماضٍ بسيط أو تام.

- لقد ذهبنا معًا إلى السينما الشهر الماضي.

• We **went** to the cinema together **last month**

- لقد اشتريت بعض الفاكهة قبل أن أرجع إلى البيت.

• I **had bought** some fruit **before** I **returned** home.

١٣ لقد + فعل ماضٍ بدون أي إشارة تدل على الماضي تترجم لمضارع تام.

- لقد حققت مصر كثيرًا من التقدم وتتمنى المزيد.

• Egypt **has achieved** a lot of progress and we hope for more.

١٤ قد + فعل مضارع تدل على الاحتمال ونستخدم **may**.

- قد نقوم برحلة مدرسية قريبًا.

• We **may have** a school trip soon.

١٥ لن + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية مستقبل بسيط منفى **future simple**.

- لن يأتي على إلى حفل التخرج بسبب سفره.

• Ali **won't come** to the graduation party because of his travel.

١٦ يمكن أن تدل «لم» على المضارع التام أو الماضي التام أو الماضي البسيط حسب الكلمة الدالة على الزمن.

- لم أر صديقي منذ أن كنا في الإسكندرية في الصيف الماضي.

• I **haven't seen** my friend since we were in Alex last summer.

- لم أقابل صديقي قبل أن أنهى عملي أمس.

• I **hadn't met** my friend before I finished my work yesterday.

١٧ كان + فعل مضارع يقابله في الإنجليزية ماضٍ مستمر.

- عندما وصلت المنزل كانت ابنتي تعمل واجباتها المدرسية.

• When I reached home, my daughter **was doing** her school homework.

لاحظ: أن كلمة **home** هنا لا تأخذ حرف جر بعد (reach/return/go).

١٨ كان + قد + فعل ماضٍ يقابله في الإنجليزية الماضي التام.

- عندما ذهبت إلى العمل كان الاجتماع قد انتهى.

• When I went to work, the meeting **had finished**

١٩ المفعول المطلق لا يتم ترجمته، ويتم تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف.

- يؤثر التدخين تأثيرًا سلبيًا على الصحة.

• Smoking has a **negative effect** on our health.

• Smoking **affects** our health negatively.

٢٠ الفعل بعد **and** يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل قبلها من حيث الزمن والإضافات.

• I enjoyed **visiting** my relatives **and talking** to them.

٣١ بعض الأفعال في اللغة الإنجليزية لا يأخذ حرف جر (بينما يأخذ في اللغة العربية) مثل:

contain	يحتوى على	need	يحتاج إلى	affect	يؤثر على
overcome	يتغلب على	fear	يخاف من	enjoy	يتمتع بـ
admire	يعجب بـ	feel	يشعر بـ	celebrate	يحتفل بـ
finish	ينتهي من	consider	يعتبر أن	increase	يزيد من
decrease	يقلل من	raise	يرفع من	include	يشتمل على

إليك إرشادات ستساعدك في حل أسئلة الترجمة

- ١ اقرأ الجملة الأصلية بعناية وتأكد من فهمك الكامل لمعنى الجملة، بما في ذلك الكلمات المفردة، التعبيرات، والزمن.
- ٢ حدد الفكرة الرئيسية: ما هي المعلومة الأساسية التي تريد الجملة توصيلها؟ هذا سيساعدك في تقييم الخيارات المتاحة.
- ٣ اقرأ كل اختيار بعناية: لا تتسرع في اختيار الإجابة قبل قراءة جميع الاختيارات المتاحة.
- ٤ تحقق من القواعد النحوية: هل الجملة في الاختيار صحيحة نحويًا؟ هل تتفق الكلمات مع بعضها البعض بشكل صحيح؟
- ٥ ابحث عن الأخطاء الشائعة: هل هناك أخطاء إملائية أو نحوية في أحد الاختيارات؟ هذه قد تكون علامة على أنها إجابة خاطئة.
- ٦ ابدأ بالاستبعاد إذا كنت متأكدًا من أن أحد الاختيارات خاطئ، استبعده. هذا سيزيد من فرصك في اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ٧ ركز على المعنى: تذكر أن الهدف هو ترجمة المعنى، وليس مجرد الكلمات. قد يكون هناك أكثر من طريقة لترجمة نفس الفكرة.
- ٨ إذا كنت غير متأكد من الإجابة الصحيحة، حاول تخمين الإجابة الصحيحة.
- ٩ تدرب على الترجمة فكلما تدربت أكثر، أصبحت أفضل في حل أسئلة الترجمة. وفي الصفحات التالية أسئلة كثيرة للتدريب.
- ١٠ وسع مفرداتك فكلما زادت معرفتك بالكلمات، كان من الأسهل عليك فهم وترجمة الجمل. وفي نهاية الملحق يوجد قاموس لترجمة الكلمات الأكثر شيوعًا مقسم وفق الموضوعات ومرتب أبجديًا.

Exercises

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

1. Environmental pollution is one of the most serious problems facing humanity and harms the natural environment.

- (a) تعد البيئة الملوثة واحدة من أخطر المشكلات التي تواجه البشرية وتُخرب البيئة الصناعية.
 (b) إن البيئة الملوثة واحدة من سلسلة المشكلات التي تواجه البشر وتؤذي البيئة الطبيعية.
 (c) إن التلوث البيئي واحد من أخطر المشكلات التي تواجه البشرية وتؤذي البيئة الطبيعية.
 (d) إن التلوث البيئي واحد من سلسلة المشكلات التي تواجه البشر وتُخرب البيئة الصناعية.

2. We really owe much to our parents, who do their best to please us and provide a happy, secure life.

- (a) نحن حقاً ندين بالكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان قصارى جهدهما لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وأمنة.
 (b) نحن حقاً نمتلك الكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان أقصى جهودهما لتسليتنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة ومطمئنة.
 (c) نحن حقاً ندين بالكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان قصارى جهدهما لتسليتنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة وأمنة.
 (d) نحن حقاً نمتلك الكثير لوالدينا اللذين يبذلان أقصى ما عندهما لإسعادنا وتوفير حياة سعيدة ومطمئنة.

3. Wasting water is a big problem that has appeared recently. Some careless people use it foolishly without any sense of duty or responsibility.

- (a) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.
 (b) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو الاحتمالية.
 (c) إن ضياع الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس الجهلاء يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.
 (d) إن إهدار الماء مشكلة كبيرة ظهرت مؤخراً. بعض الناس المهملين يستخدمون الماء بحماقة بدون أي إحساس بالواجب أو المسئولية.

4. The internet is considered a double-edged weapon with a lot of benefits as well as many demerits that can be harmful to us.

- (a) يُعتبر الإنترنت سلاحاً ذا حدين لما له من الكثير من العيوب بالإضافة إلى العديد من المزايا والتي من الممكن أن تؤذي.
 (b) يُعتبر الإنترنت سلاحاً ذا حدين لما له من الكثير من الفوائد بالإضافة إلى العديد من العيوب والتي من الممكن أن تؤذي.
 (c) يُعتبر الإنترنت سلاحاً ذا حدين لما له من الكثير من الفوائد بالإضافة إلى القليل من العيوب والتي من الممكن أن تؤذي.
 (d) تُعتبر التكنولوجيا سلاحاً ذا حدين لما لها من الكثير من الفوائد بالإضافة إلى العديد من العيوب والتي من الممكن أن تؤذي.

5. When we give a person quality education, we help them to think and create to be good citizens.

- (a) عندما تعطى للشخص تعليماً جيداً فأنت تساعد على التفكير والإطلاع لكي يكون مواطناً جيداً.
 (b) عندما نعطي للشخص تعليماً ذا كمية كبيرة فإننا نساعد على التفكير والإبداع لكي يكون مواطناً جيداً.
 (c) عندما نعطي للشخص تعليماً جيداً فإننا نساعد على التفكير والاختراع لكي يكون مواطناً صالحاً.
 (d) عندما نعطي للشخص تعليماً جيداً فإننا نساعد على التفكير والإبداع لكي يكون مواطناً صالحاً.

6. Sports protect people, and especially youth, from many social and psychological diseases.

- (a) تحمي الرياضيات الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.
- (b) تحمي الرياضة الناس وخصوصًا الكهول من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.
- (c) تحمي الرياضة الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والنفسية.
- (d) تحمي الرياضيات الناس وخصوصًا الشباب من كثير من الأمراض الاجتماعية والعصبية.

7. When people enjoy freedom, they can achieve progress in all fields.

However, this freedom is not absolute.

- (a) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم في بعض المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.
- (b) يستطيع الناس تحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات عندما يتمتعون بالحرية ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.
- (c) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية مطلقة.
- (d) متى يتمتع الناس بتحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات عندما يتمتعون بالحرية ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.

8. When you feel nervous, this may cause problems with focus or even cause trouble sleeping.

- (a) في أثناء الشعور بالتوتر فإن هذا من المؤكد أنه يسبب مشاكل في التركيز حتى إنه يسبب صعوبات في النوم.
- (b) بعدما تشعر بالتوتر فإن هذا من الممكن أن يسبب مشاكل في التركيز حتى إنه يسبب متاعب في أثناء النوم.
- (c) متى تشعر بالتوتر فإن هذا من الممكن أن يسبب مشاكل في التركيز حتى إنه يسبب كوابيس في النوم.
- (d) عندما تشعر بالتوتر فإن هذا من الممكن أن يسبب مشاكل في التركيز حتى إنه يسبب متاعب في النوم.

9. The invention of the internet has given us various benefits. It is helpful in providing us with an inexpensive means of entertainment.

- (a) لقد أعطانا اكتشاف الإنترنت مزايا مختلفة فهو مفيد في تحسيننا بوسيلة ترفيه رخيصة.
- (b) لقد أعطانا اختراع الإنترنت مزايا مختلفة فهو مفيد في تنميةنا بوسيلة ترفيه غالية.
- (c) لقد أعطانا اكتشاف الإنترنت فوائد مختلفة فهو مفيد في تزويدنا بوسيلة ترفيه غالية.
- (d) لقد أعطانا اختراع الإنترنت فوائد مختلفة فهو مفيد في تزويدنا بوسيلة ترفيه رخيصة.

10. Global warming is the long-term rise in the average temperature of the Earth.

- (a) إن الاحتباس الحراري هو الارتفاع الدائم في إجمالي درجة حرارة الأرض.
- (b) إن الاحتباس الحراري هو الرفع طويل الأجل في متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض.
- (c) إن الاحتباس الحراري هو الارتفاع في متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض على المدى البعيد.
- (d) إن التدفئة العالمية هو الارتفاع في متوسط درجة حرارة الأرض على المدى الطويل.

11. Charitable work is the only hope to improve the living of a lot of the poor, the homeless, and the disabled.

- (a) إن العمل الخيري هو الأمل الوحيد في تحسين معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمشردين والمعاقين.
- (b) إن عمل الخير هو الأمل الأول في تحسين معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمتشدددين والمعاقين.
- (c) إن العمل الخيري هو الأمل الأول في تحسين معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمشردين والمرضى.
- (d) إن العمل الحرفي هو الأمل الوحيد في تحسين معيشة الكثير من الفقراء والمشردين والمعاقين.

12. The Ministry of Environment pays much attention to the fatal dangers that have some bad effects on the environment.

- (a) تولى وزارة البيئة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمخاطر القاتلة والتي لها بعض الآثار السيئة على البيئة.
- (b) تقترح وزارة البيئة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمخاطر القاتلة والتي لها بعض الآثار السلبية على البيئة.
- (c) تولى وزيرة البيئة اهتمامًا كبيرًا للمخاطر القاتلة والتي لها بعض الآثار المدمرة على البيئة.
- (d) تفرض وزارة البيئة اهتمامًا مناسبًا للمخاطر القاتلة والتي لها بعض الآثار السلبية على البيئة.

13. Traveling abroad helps us to see many countries of the world and know a lot about their customs and traditions.

- (a) السفر للخارج يساعدنا على رؤية مختلف دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم.
- (b) يساعدنا السفر للخارج على رؤية العديد من دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم.
- (c) يساعدنا السفر على متن السفن على رؤية العديد من دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن عاداتهم وتقاليدهم.
- (d) يساعدنا السفر للخارج على رؤية العديد من دول العالم ومعرفة الكثير عن زياثهم وتقاليدهم.

14. Most of the world's countries try hard to preserve the environment. Man's activities have caused disasters, such as global warming, which threatens our lives.

- (a) تسعى معظم دول العالم جاهدة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان تسببت في كوارث مثل الاحتباس الحراري الذي يهدد حياتنا.
- (b) تسعى كثير من دول العالم بصعوبة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان تسببت في كوارث مثل الاحتباس الحراري الذي يهدد حياتنا.
- (c) تسعى معظم دول العالم جاهدة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان قد تسبب في كوارث مثل الاحتباس الحراري الذي يهدد حياتنا.
- (d) تسعى معظم دول العالم بصلابة للحفاظ على البيئة. فأنشطة الإنسان تسببت في كوارث مثل الاحتباس الحراري الذي يهدد حياتنا.

15. All you need to help your society is to devote part of your time and your effort to help charity foundations.

- (a) كل ما تحتاج إليه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تخصيص جزء من وقتك ومجهودك لمساعدة المؤسسات الخيرية.
- (b) كل ما تحتاج إليه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تقسيم جزء من وقتك ومجهودك لمساعدة المؤسسات الخيرية.
- (c) كل ما تحتاج إليه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تخصيص كل من وقتك ومجهودك لمساعدة المنشآت التعاونية.
- (d) كل ما تحتاج إليه لمساعدة مجتمعك هو تخصيص جزء من وقتك وصبرك لمساعدة المؤسسات الخيرية.

16. Building the personality of human beings is the basic axis of development. We must take care of youth to make more progress in the future.

- (a) إن الارتقاء بشخصية الإنسان هو المحور الثانوي للتنمية. يجب أن نهتم بالكبار لإنجاز قدر من التقدم في المستقبل.
- (b) إن الارتقاء بشخصية الإنسان هو المحور الرئيسي للتنمية. فعلى أن نهتم بالشباب لتحقيق المزيد من التقدم في المستقبل.
- (c) إن بناء شخصية الإنسان هو المحور الأساسي للتطوير. يجب أن نحفز الشباب لزيادة كمية الإنتاج في المستقبل.
- (d) إن نمو شخصية الإنسان هو المحور الأساسي للتعمير. يجب أن نهتم بالشباب لتحقيق المزيد من التقدم في المستقبل.

17. Can you imagine how difficult life was in the past without cell phones, the internet, and fast means of transport?

- (a) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة في الماضي بدون الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل الحديثة؟
- (b) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة في الماضي بدون الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل السريعة؟
- (c) هل تتخيل كم كانت الحياة صعبة في الماضي باستخدام الهاتف المحمول والإنترنت ووسائل النقل السريعة؟
- (d) هل تتخيل كم هي الحياة صعبة بدون الهاتف المحمول في الماضي والإنترنت ووسائل النقل الحديثة؟

18. The television and the smartphone are responsible for the declining interest in reading among the young.

- (a) إن التلفزيون والهاتف الذكي هما المسؤولان عن قلة الاهتمام بالكتابة بين صغار السن.
- (b) إن التلفزيون والهاتف الذكي هما المسؤولان عن قلة الاهتمام بالقراءة بين الناس.
- (c) إن التلفزيون والهاتف النقال هما المسؤولان عن زيادة الاهتمام بالقراءة بين الشباب.
- (d) إن التلفزيون والهاتف الذكي هما المسؤولان عن قلة الاهتمام بالقراءة بين الصغار.

19. Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilized behavior like helping the people in need and accepting differences among people.

- (a) أن تكون مواطناً قوياً يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الاختلافات بين الناس.
- (b) أن تكون مواطناً صالحاً يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الاختلافات بين الناس.
- (c) أن تكون مواطناً صالحاً يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الاختلافات بين الناس.
- (d) أن تكون مواطناً صالحاً يتطلب منك الكثير من السلوك المتحضر مثل مساعدة المحتاجين وتقبل الصعوبات بين الناس.

20. Mass production brings down prices and means that people can afford to buy a lot of things that have been too expensive for them.

- (a) إن الإنتاج الضخم يتسبب في زيادة الأسعار ويعني أن الناس تستطيع شراء الكثير من الأشياء التي كانت غالية جداً بالنسبة لهم.
- (b) إن الإنتاج الضخم يتسبب في خفض الأسعار ويعني أن الناس تستطيع شراء الكثير من الأشياء التي كانت غالية جداً بالنسبة لهم.
- (c) إن إنتاج الكميات تقلل الأسعار وتعني أن الناس لا تستطيع شراء الكثير من الأشياء التي كانت غالية جداً بالنسبة لهم.
- (d) إن الإنتاج الكثيف تقلل الأسعار وتعني أن الناس تستطيع شراء الكثير من الأشياء التي كانت رخيصة جداً بالنسبة لهم.

21. Reading is a means to develop culture and get useful knowledge during spare time.

- (a) القراءة وسيلة لتطوير الثقافة، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ.
- (b) القراءة وسيلة لتطوير الثقافة، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات العمل.
- (c) القراءة وسيلة لتطوير العلوم، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ.
- (d) القراءة وسيلة لتدوير الثقافة، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

22. تعتبر النظافة الشخصية الحل الأساسي للتصدي للأمراض المعدية أو الفيروسات القاتلة مثل فيروس كورونا.

- a) Hygiene is considered the mean solution to face infections or deadly viruses such as coronavirus.
- b) Hygiene is considered the main solution to face infectious diseases or deadly viruses such as coronavirus.
- c) Hygiene is considered the main solution to face infectious diseases or dead viruses such as coronavirus.
- d) Hygiene is considering the main solution to face infections or deadly viruses such as coronavirus.

23. يجب علينا أن نعمل بجد لزيادة الإنتاج والدخل القومي لتوفير حياة أفضل لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

- a) We had to work hard to increase production and national income to provide better life for all members of society.
- b) We must work hard to improve production and national income to provide better life for all members of society.
- c) We must work hard to increase production and national income to provide better life for most members of society.
- d) We must work hard to increase production and national income to provide better life for all members of society.

24. ينبغي على كل فرد في المجتمع أن يؤدي دوره بإتقان حتى تتحقق الرفاهية والازدهار.

- a) Every member in society should perform his role perfectly to achieve progress and stability.
- b) Everyone in society should perform their role perfectly to achieve welfare and flourishing.
- c) Every good citizen should perform their role perfectly to achieve progress and flowering.
- d) Every member in the community should perform her role perfectly to achieve welfare and stability.

25. إن المشكلات التي تحدث لشخص ما تبين له أحياناً الأصدقاء الحقيقيين الذين يقفون بجواره ويساعدونه.

- a) The problems who occur to someone sometimes show the real friends who stand beside and help them.
- b) The problems that occurs to someone sometimes show the real friends who stand by their side and help them.
- c) The problems that occur to someone sometimes show the real friends which stand by their side and help them.
- d) The problems that occur to someone sometimes show the real friends who stand beside and help them.

26. يبذل الشخص الطموح دائما قصارى جهده لتحقيق نجاح أكثر والوصول لما يريد في هذه الحياة.

- a) An ambitious person always does their best to achieve more success and reach what they want in this life.
- b) An ambition person always does their best to achieve more success and reach what they want in this life.
- c) An ambitious person always does their best to achieve more successful and reach what they want in this life.
- d) An ambitious person always does their best to archive more success and reach what they want in this life.

27. يعد التنمر في المدارس مشكلة خطيرة يمكن أن تؤثر على صحة الطلاب العقلية.

- a) Playing in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.
- b) Bullying in schools is a series problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.
- c) Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the mental health of students.
- d) Bullying in schools is a serious problem that can have effects on the physical health of students.

28. التعليم الجيد يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على تحقيق أهداف مجتمعاتهم.

- a) Good education help us to prepare generations of citizens able to achieve their societies' aims.
- b) Good education helps us to prepare generations of citizens able to achieving their societies' aims.
- c) Good education helps us prepare generations of citizens able to achieve their societies' aims.
- d) Good education helps us to prepare generations of citizens able of achieve their society's aims.

29. قد تجعل التكنولوجيا الشباب كسولا بدنيا، وقد تسبب أيضا بعض المشاكل الصحية.

- a) Technology may make young people mentally lazy, and may cause some health problems.
- b) Technology may make youth physically lazy, and may cause some health problems.
- c) Technology may make young people physically lazy, and may cause some healthy problems.
- d) Technology may do young people physically lazy, and may cause some health problems.

30. زاد اعتمادنا على الكمبيوتر بشكل كبير فنحن نستخدمه تقريبا في جميع الأعمال والأنشطة وداخل مختلف المؤسسات.

- a) Our dependence on computers has increased significantly. We use it in almost all businesses, activities and within different institutions.
- b) Our dependent on computers has increased significantly. We use it in most all businesses, activities and within different institutions.
- c) Our dependence on computers have decreased greatly. We use it in almost all businesses, activities and within different institutions.
- d) Our dependent on computers have decreased greatly. We use it in most all businesses, activities and within different institutions.

31. يجب على المصريين جميعا العمل بجد لإيجاد حلول ممكنة لمشاكلنا الاقتصادية ولتحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات.

- a) All Egyptians must work hard to find impossible solutions to our economic problems and achieve progress in all fields.
- b) All Egyptians must work hard to find possible solutions to our economic problems and achieve progress in all fields.
- c) All Egyptians must work hard to find possible solutions to our economical problems and achieve progress in all fields.
- d) All Egyptians must work hard to find possible solutions to our economic problems and achieve welfare in all fields.

32. التعليم الجيد هو العمود الفقري لعملية التنمية لأنه يرفع قدرات الشباب وينمي مواهبهم.

- a) Good teaching is the backbone of the development process as it arouses youth's abilities and develop their talents.
- b) Good education is the backbone of the development progress as it rises youth's abilities and develop their talents.
- c) Good teaching is the backbone of the development process as it rises youth's abilities and develops their talents.
- d) Good education is the backbone of the development progress as it raises youth's abilities and develops their talents.

33. يجب أن يلعب كل مواطن دورا فعالا وبناءا لصالح بلده ويفكر في مشاكلها ويعرض حلولها.

- a) Every citizen must play effective and constructive role for the beneficial of their country, think about its problems, and show solutions of them.
- b) Every citizen must play an effective and constructive role for the beneficial of their country, think about it's problems, and over solutions to them.
- c) Every citizen must play an effective and constructive role for the benefit of their country, think about it's problems, and offer solutions to them.
- d) Every citizen must play an effective and constructive role for the benefit of their country, think about its problems, and offer solutions to them.

34. لقد أنشئت الكثير من المؤسسات الخيرية لدعم المجتمع وخاصة الفقراء والمسنين والأيتام وذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة.

- a) A lot of charities were set off to support society especially the poor, old people, orphans and those with special needs.
- b) A lot of charities were set up to support society especially the poor people, old people, orphans and those with special needs.
- c) A lot of charities were set up to support society especially the poor, old people, orphans and those with special needs.
- a) A lot of charities were set up to support society especially the poor, old people, orphans and those with private needs.

35. تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات العملاقة وذلك لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب وحل مشكلة البطالة.

- a) The government is carrying out a lot giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solve the problem of unemployment.
- b) The government is carrying out a lot of giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solve the problem of employment.
- c) The government is carrying out a lot of giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solving the problem of unemployment.
- d) The government is carrying out a lot of giant projects to provide job opportunities for youth and solve the problem of unemployment.

36. يهدف النظام التعليمي الجديد إلى تنمية مهارات الفهم والتحليل والنقد بدلا من الحفظ والتلقين.

- a) The new educational system aims at developing the skills of imagination, analysis and criticism instead of memorizing and initiation.
- b) The new educational system aims at developing the skills of understanding, analysis and criticism instead of reminding and initiation.
- c) The new educational system aims at developing the skills of understanding, analysis and criticism instead of memorizing and imitation.
- d) The new educational system aims at developing the skills of understanding, analysis and criticism instead of memorizing and initiation.

37. تستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة في جميع مجالات الحياة مما أدى إلى توفير الوقت والجهد وزيادة الإنتاج وجعل الحياة أكثر راحة.

- a) Modern technology are used in fields of life and this led in saving time and effort, increasing production and make life more relaxing.
- b) Modern technology is used in all life fields and this led in saving time and effect, increasing produce and making life more comfortable.
- c) Modern technology is used in all fields of life and this resulted in saving time and effort, increasing production and making life more comfortable.
- d) Modern technology are used in all life fields and this resulted in saving time and effort, increasing produce and making life more relaxing.

38. يتعلم الأطفال الصغار الكثير عن كيفية التصرف من خلال مراقبة والديهم. فكلما كانوا أصغر سناً، اكتسبوا المزيد من المعرفة من آبائهم وأمهاتهم.

- a) Young kids learn a lot about how to behave by watching their grandparents. The younger they are, the less knowledge they take from their mothers and fathers.
- b) Young children learn a lot about how to believe by disobeying their parents. The older they are, the more knowledge they take from their dads and moms.
- c) Young parents learn a lot about how to behave by watching their children. The younger they are, the more knowledge they give to their mothers and fathers.
- d) Young children learn a lot about how to behave by watching their parents. The younger they are, the more knowledge they gain from their fathers and mothers.

39. الإنسان هو السبب الرئيسي لتلوث البيئة، الأنشطة الصناعية التي يقوم بها الإنسان هي التي دمرت التوازن البيئي.

- a) The man is the main cause of environmental pollution, it's man's industry activities that have destroyed environmental balance.
- b) Man is the main cause of environmental pollination, the industrial activities have destroyed environmental balance.
- c) Man is the main cause of environmental population, it's man's industrial activities that destroyed environmental balance.
- d) Man is the main cause of environmental pollution, it's man's industrial activities that have destroyed environmental balance.

40. إن ثروة مصر الحقيقية تكمن في مواردها البشرية وإبداع شبابها في كل المجالات.

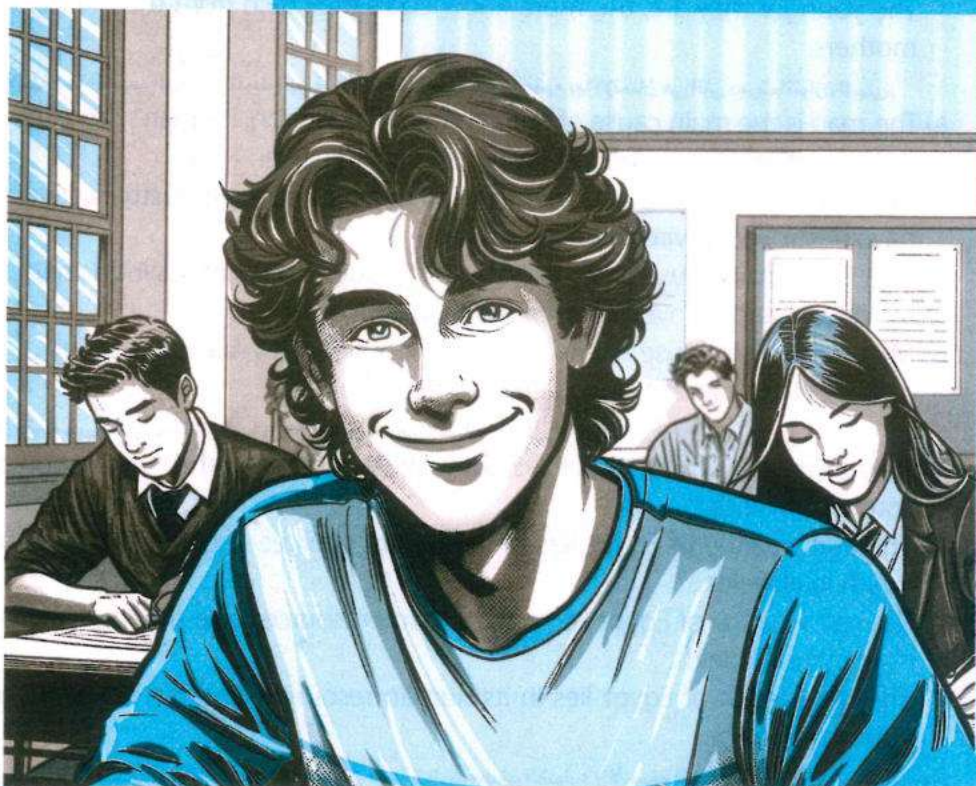
- a) The real wealth of Egypt lies in its humane resources and the imagination of its youth in all fields.
- b) The real wealthy of Egypt lies in its human sources and the creativity of its youth in all fields.
- c) The real wealthy of Egypt lie in it's humane resources and the imagination of its youth in all fields.
- d) The real wealth of Egypt lies in its human resources and the creativity of its youth in all fields.

41. تهتم الدولة اهتماماً كبيراً بأصحاب الهمم، فقد أعيد تخطيط معظم الشوارع والأرصفة لتسهيل عليهم التنقل بسهولة وأمان

- a) The state pays great attention to disabled, so the most streets and pavements have been re-planned to make it easy and safe for them to move.
- b) The state pay great attention to the disabled, so most streets and platforms have been re-planned to make it easy and safe for them to move.
- c) The state pays great attention to the disabled, so most streets and pavements have been re-planned to make it easy and save for them to remove.
- d) The state pays great attention to the disabled, so most streets and pavements have been re-planned to make it easy and safe for them to move.

Part 2

General Revision



Part 2

Revision on Module (1) (Units 1 & 2)

Revision on Module (2) (Units 3 & 4)

Revision on Module (3) (Units 5 & 6)

The Old Man and the Sea Revision



A

Vocabulary

Unit (1)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الأولى

achievement (n)	إنجاز	expression (n)	تعبير	nation (n)	أمة / دولة
advanced (adj)	متقدم / متطور	farming (n)	الزراعة	national (adj)	وطني / قومي
ancestors (n)	أجداد	gather (v) (ed)	يجمع	neighborhood (n)	حي سكني
anxiety (n)	قلق	generation (n)	جيل	preserve (v) (d)	يحافظ على
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	greatness (n)	عظمة	pride (n)	فخر
art (n)	فن	grow (v)	ينمو	profession (n)	مهنة
awareness (n)	وعى / إدراك	harmony (n)	تناغم / انسجام	progress (n) (v) (ed)	تقدم / يتقدم
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	heritage (n)	تراث	protect (v) (ed)	يحمي
beloved (adj)	محبوب	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية / الحروف الهيروغليفية	proud (adj)	فخور
carve (v) (d)	ينحت	historian (n)	مؤرخ	prove (v) (d)	يثبت
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل	history (n)	تاريخ	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام / يحترم
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدي / يتحدى	homeland (n)	أرض الوطن	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
citizen (n)	مواطن	honor (v) (ed)	يكرم	restore (v) (d)	يرمم / يسترجع
civilization (n)	حضارة	identity (n)	هوية	rise (v)	ينهض / يرتفع
connection (n)	ارتباط	improve (v) (d)	يحسن	sacrifice (n) (v) (d)	تضحية / يضحي
construction (n)	مبنى	influence (v) (d)	يؤثر على	society (n)	مجتمع
convenient (adj)	مناسب / ملائم	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث	source (n)	مصدر
creativity (n)	إبداع	inspiration (n)	إلهام	strength (n)	قوة
crossroads (n)	ملتقى طرق / موقع ذو أهمية	invent (v) (ed)	يخترع	superior (adj)	متفوق / رفيع
culture (n)	ثقافة	knowledge (n)	معرفة	temple (n)	معبد
demonstrate (v) (d)	يوضح / يظهر	learn (v)	يتعلم	trade (n) (v) (d)	تجارة / يتاجر
determination (n)	عزيمة	magnificent (adj)	عظيم / رائع	treasures (n)	كنوز
develop (v) (ed)	يطور / ينمي	material (n)	مادة (للبناء مثلا)	united (adj)	متحد
developing country	دولة نامية	medical (adj)	طبي	value (n)	قيمة
development (n)	تنمية	medicine (n)	الطب	vision (n)	رؤية
economy (n)	اقتصاد	merchant (n)	تاجر	will (n)	إرادة
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	mighty (adj)	شامخ / ضخم	wisdom (n)	الحكمة
exchange (v) (d)	يتبادل	monuments (n)	آثار		

Unit (2)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الثانية

accident (n)	حادثة	friendly (adj)	ودود	risky (adj)	خطير/محفوف بالمخاطر
act (n) (v) (ed)	تصرف / فعل / يمثل / يتصرف	gain (v) (ed)	يكتسب	rough (adj)	خشن / قاس
area (n)	منطقة	grade (n)	درجة / تقدير	saplings (n)	شتلات (أشجار صغيرة)
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	grow (v)	ينمو / يزرع	scenarios (n)	تصورات / سيناريوهات
bitter (adj)	مر / لاذع	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن	schoolwork (n)	عمل / واجب مدرسي
breathe (v) (d)	يتنفس	heavy (adj)	ثقيل	serious (adj)	جاد / خطير
burning (adj)	مشتعل	helmet (n)	خوذة	serve (v) (d)	يخدم
campaign (n) (v) (ed)	حملة / يقوم بحملة	ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل	shade (n)	ظل
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدرش / دردشة	injured (adj)	مصاب	situation (n)	موقف
cheat (v) (ed) (n)	يفش / غشاش	irresistible (adj)	لا يقاوم	skills (n)	مهارات
choice (n)	اختيار	isolated (adj)	معزول / منعزل	slip (v) (ped)	يتراجع / ينزلق
classmate (n)	زميل الفصل	kindness (n)	عطف / طيبة	sob (v) (bed)	يبكي
community (n)	مجتمع	lifeguard (n)	منقذ	social (adj)	اجتماعي
confidence (n)	الثقة	light up (v)	ينير / يشرق الوجه	stare (v) (d)	يدقق النظر / يحملق
conflict (n)	صراع	neighbor (n)	جار	storm (n)	عاصفة
contact (v) (ed) (n)	يتصل / اتصال	obey (v) (ed)	يطيع / يتبع	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح / يصارع
cost (n) (v)	تكلفة / يكلف	obligation (n)	إلزام / فرض	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	optimism (n)	تفاؤل	support (v) (ed) (n)	يدعم / دعم / تأييد
danger (n)	خطر	overwhelmed (adj)	مُثقل / مرهق	traffic rules (n)	قوانين المرور
difference (n)	اختلاف	partner (n)	شريك	transform (v) (ed)	يتحول / يتغير
drown (v) (ed)	يغرق	personality (n)	شخصية	trap (v) (ped)	يحتجز
duty (n)	واجب / مسئولية	prevent (v) (ed)	يمنع	treat (v) (ed)	يعالج / يعامل
elections (n)	الانتخابات	property (n)	ممتلكات	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة / يثق
emergency (n)	حالة الطوارئ	quality (n)	جودة / صفة	truth (n)	حقيقة / صدق
empathy (n)	تعاطف	realize (v) (d)	يدرك	valuable (adj)	قيم
encouragement (n)	تشجيع / تحفيز	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد التدوير	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع / يتطوع
environment (n)	بيئة	relationship (n)	علاقة	waste (v) (d)	يضيع / يبذر
experience (n)	خبرة / تجربة حياتية	require (v) (d)	يتطلب	worth (adj)	مستحق / جدير
fade (v) (d)	يتلاشى / يختفى	rescue (v) (d)	ينقذ	wrap (v) (ped)	يلف / يغلف
fear (v) (ed) (n)	يخاف / خوف	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام / يحترم		
financial (adj)	مادى / مالى	reward (v) (ed) (n)	يكافئ / مكافأة		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

agree on	يتفق على	generations to come	الأجيال القادمة	play a role	يلعب دورًا
ask for	يطلب	give a speech	يلقي حديث	prevent from	يمنع عن
believe in	يؤمن بـ	give respect	يُكسب/يعطى احترامًا	protect from	يحمي من
belong to	يخص	give strength	يعطى قوة	put out fire	يطفئ النار
build connections	يبنى علاقات/روابط	go out	يخرج	reconnect with	تعيد الاتصال بـ
by the window	بجوار النافذة	have something in common	لديهم شيء مشترك	responsibility for	مسئولية عن
carve into	ينحت في	home to	موطن لـ	share with	يشارك مع
chat about	يدرّش بخصوص	I see your point	أتفهمك	speak to	يتحدث إلى
cheat in	يغش في	in writing	بالكتابة	stand with	يقف بـ/مع
compare to	يشبه بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ	stare at	يحملق في
connection to	ارتباط بـ	isolated from	منعزل عن	stay calm	يظل هادئًا
continue to	يستمر في	keep safe	يبقى آمنًا	stay united	يبقى متحدين
contribute to	يساهم في	lack of	نقص في	take pride in	يفخر بـ
do a job	يقوم بوظيفة	make a difference	يصنع الفارق	tap on	ينقر على
feel proud of	يشعر بالفخر بـ	no matter the cost	بغض النظر عن التكلفة	the key to	مهم لـ/مفتاح لـ
focus on	تركيز على/يركز على	on fire	مشتعل	work on	يعمل على

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
restore	يرمم/يسترجع	fix/renew/renovate		destroy/damage	يدمر/يتلف
anxiety	قلق	worry/tension		relaxation/calmness	استرخاء/هدوء
development	تنمية	progress/advancement		decline/decrease	تدهور/تراجع
harmony	تناغم/انسجام	consistency/understanding		disagreement/incompatibility	اختلاف/تضارب
inspiration	إلهام	encouragement/enthusiasm		discouragement/despair	إحباط/يأس
preserve	يحافظ على	keep/maintain/protect		endanger/neglect	يعرض للخطر/يهمل
convenient	مناسب/ملائم	appropriate/suitable		inappropriate/unsuitable	غير مناسب/غير ملائم

deep	عميق	deep-seated/rooted	shallow/superficial	ضحل / سطحي
strong	قوى	forceful/powerful	weak/powerless	ضعيف / بلا قوة
positive	إيجابي	effective/constructive	negative/harmful	سلبي / مؤذ
support	يؤيد / يساند	reinforce/encourage	oppose/neglect	يعارض / يهمل
overwhelmed	مثقل	stressed/frustrated	calm/relaxed	هادئ
isolated	منعزل / معزول	remote/detached	connected/sociable	متصل / اجتماعي
irresistible	لا يقاوم	fascinating/enchanting/ unstoppable	resistible/avoidable	يمكن تجنبه
optimism	تفاؤل	enthusiasm/hopefulness	pessimism/despair	تشاؤم / يأس
fade	يختفي	vanish/disappear	brighten/appear	ينير / يظهر
valuable	ثمين / هام	important/precious	useless/worthless	بلا قيمة
trust	إيمان / ثقة	faith/confidence	distrust/doubt	عدم ثقة / شك
danger	خطر	risk/threat/hazard	security/safety	أمن / أمان
risky	خطير	dangerous/hazardous	safe/secure	أمن

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	profession	مهنة تحتاج إلى تعليم أو تدريب متخصص (الاسم من الوظيفة)
	job	وظيفة (اسم يعد)
	work	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)
	career	الحياة المهنية (على المدى الطويل)
2	invent	يُخترع (شيئاً لم يكن موجوداً من قبل)
	discover	يكشف (شيئاً كان موجوداً بالفعل لكن لم يكن معروفاً من قبل)
	explore	يستكشف (مكاناً)
3	rise	ينهض / يرتفع / تشرق (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)
	raise	يرفع / يزيد / يجمع مال (يأتي بعدها مفعول)
	arise	ينشأ / يحدث (لا يأتي بعدها مفعول)
	arouse	يثير (مشاعر أو اهتمام أو شكوك) (يأتي بعدها مفعول)

4	work with	يعمل مع
	work for	يعمل لدى / يعمل لصالح
	work in	يعمل في (مكان / مجال)
	work as	يعمل (بوظيفة)
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع / إنجاز)
5	society	المجتمع (ككل بكل طوائفه)
	community	فئة من المجتمع مرتبطة ببعضها (بمكان أو مهنة مشتركة أو ثقافة أو هواية)
6	compare to	يشبه شيئاً بشيء آخر لتوضيح أوجه الشبه (يُستعمل عادة في الأسلوب الأدبي أو البلاغي)
	compare with	يقارن بين شيئين أو أكثر بهدف إيجاد أوجه الشبه والاختلاف (يستخدم في الدراسات، التحليل، الإحصاءات)
7	grade	علامة / نتيجة في الاختبار / تقدير
	degree	مؤهل أكاديمي يتم الحصول عليه بعد الجامعة
8	cloth	قماش / قطعة من القماش
	clothes	ملابس (يتم ارتداؤها) ودائماً جمع ليس لها مفرد
	clothing	الكسوة / الملابس (نوع معين من الملابس) (اسم لا يعد)
	clothe	يرتدي / يكسو
	clothed	أخرى تأتي بعدها (اسم مفرد - فترات زمنية - كميات - مسافات)
9	another	آخر، ويأتي بعدها اسم جمع
	other	الآخرون (لا يأتي بعدها اسم وتفيد الجمع وتحل محل الفاعل)
	others	الآخر (يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد أو جمع)
	the other	
10	too	أيضاً تأتي في نهاية الجملة المثبتة
	either	أيضاً تأتي في نهاية الجملة المنفية
11	experience	خبرة / تجربة حياتية (شيء مر به الشخص أو تعلمه من الحياة) لاحظ أن إذا كانت بمعنى (خبرة) فهي اسم لا يعد ولا يجمع ويعامل معاملة المفرد أما إذا كانت بمعنى (تجربة) فهي اسم له جمع ويعد.
	experiment	يمكن أن تأتي كفعل بمعنى يمر بتجربة / يجرب / يواجه تجربة علمية (لاكتشاف أو إثبات فكرة أو نظرية) تأتي كفعل أيضاً بمعنى يقوم بتجربة أو يجرب (أشياء مادية)
	experiment	
12	reward	مكافأة على عمل / مجهود / سلوك (مادية أو معنوية)
	award	جائزة رسمية بناء على تقييم أو مسابقة أو لجنة (جائزة نوبل مثلاً)

Module (1)

Vocabulary Question Bank

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The players applied the tactics in harmony. The synonyms of the word "harmony" are
a) conflict b) disagreement c) consistency
d) understanding e) attachment
2. Her determination to finish the marathon was a great inspiration to everyone. The opposites of the word "inspiration" are
a) encouragement b) motivation c) discouragement
d) despair e) disagreement
3. I admire your wisdom and practical way of thinking. The antonyms of the word "wisdom" are
a) ugliness b) insight c) stupidity
d) thoughtlessness e) intelligence
4. I have a strong friendship with Ashraf. The antonyms of the word "strong" are
a) high b) powerless c) low d) weak e) long
5. We should do our best to preserve the environment. The synonyms of the word "preserve" are
a) endanger b) neglect c) keep d) raise e) protect

6. The band's performance was beautiful because of the perfect between all their voices.
a) culture b) noise c) harmony d) silence

7. Our left many stories behind that have a great impact on our generation.
a) descendants b) ancestors c) merchants d) children

8. The progress of human has been shaped by innovation and cultural exchange.
a) neighborhood b) anxiety c) wildness d) civilization

9. We found ourselves at a, unsure whether to turn left or right.
a) homeland b) crossroads c) highway d) straight path

10. In the past, traveled long distances to sell their spices and silk at the market.
a) merchants b) kings c) teachers d) soldiers

11. Ancient Egyptians wrote their stories on, which is a type of paper made from a plant.
a) wood b) stone c) papyrus d) clay
12. The baker ground طحن the into flour to make bread.
a) fruit b) grain c) vegetable d) meat
13. The beautiful sunset was a great for the artist's new painting.
a) source b) disappointment c) inspiration d) distraction
14. The archaeologist spent years studying the mysterious ancient on the temple walls.
a) alphabets b) hieroglyphs c) numbers d) essays
15. The Pyramids are some of the most famous built in Ancient Egypt.
a) houses b) monuments c) bridges d) ruins
16. He felt a great sense of after winning the award for his hard work.
a) shame b) riches c) disappointment d) pride
17. The school is organizing a clean-up day to help all the local
a) neighborhoods b) continents c) countries d) planets
18. Her strong helped her achieve her goals, even when faced with difficulties.
a) memory b) muscles c) determination d) laziness
19. It was a great to be asked to speak at the graduation ceremony.
a) profession b) honor c) deceit d) context
20. Parents make many to give their children a better life.
a) grains b) rewards c) sacrifices d) benefits
21. The is history, traditions, and values passed down.
a) hobbies b) trends c) influence d) heritage
22. The government works hard for the of historical monuments.
a) destruction b) preservation c) pollution d) painting
23. Socrates and Plato are considered great Greek
a) thinkers b) fighters c) workers d) artists
24. The king ruled over a vast empire. He stayed for long years.
a) weak b) small c) fragile d) mighty
25. A/An studied the ancient pyramids and wrote a report about them.
a) archaeologist b) doctor c) painter d) driver
26. Learning from your mistakes shows real
a) anger b) wisdom c) weakness d) sadness
27. The of the book gave a speech at the library.
a) author b) actor c) player d) scientist
28. A passport is used to prove a person's
a) identity b) wisdom c) figure d) culture
29. The workers are the old palace to make it beautiful again.
a) destroying b) restoring c) selling d) ignoring

30. The new invention had a influence on technology.
 a) significant b) useless c) boring d) minor
31. The Pyramids always tourists from around the world.
 a) join b) upset c) hurt d) amaze
32. Ahmed Shawqi and Hafez Ibrahim are famous Egyptian
 a) poets b) engineers c) leaders d) historians
33. A/An is someone who records and studies past events.
 a) author b) geographer c) historian d) scientist
34. I did research into a famous historical from ancient times.
 a) form b) figure c) mistake d) desert
35. She proved to be a strong by guiding her team through a difficult project.
 a) leader b) tourist c) teacher d) poet

Unit 2

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. We should support each other in difficult times. The synonyms of the word "support" are
 a) reinforce b) encourage c) weaken d) hinder e) obstruct
2. It is risky to drive too fast. The antonyms of the word "risky" are
 a) dangerous b) hazardous c) safe d) secure e) difficult
3. A helmet helps protect your head. The antonyms of the word "protect" are
 a) defend b) save c) harm d) guard e) attack
4. Good relationships are built on trust. The antonyms of the word "trust" are
 a) belief b) faith c) doubt d) confidence e) distrust
5. The firefighters came to rescue the family. The antonyms of the word "rescue" are
 a) save b) assist c) abandon d) protect e) endanger

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. After years of hard work, he developed a strong and stable that helped him achieve his professional goals.
 a) ability b) experience c) personality d) attraction
7. He decided to participate in the neighborhood clean-up as a act, without expecting any payment.
 a) voluntary b) positive c) crowded d) professional
8. The painting on display in the museum is considered a/an artifact, priceless and irreplaceable. لا يمكن تعويضه.
 a) financial b) ordinary c) expensive d) valuable

9. All must follow traffic laws to ensure their safety and the safety of others.
 a) cheats b) citizens c) classmates d) workers
10. We must protect public such as parks and libraries, as they belong to everyone in the community.
 a) data b) transportation
 c) property d) furniture
11. The fire department was able to successfully the fire that broke out in the factory very quickly.
 a) start up b) put out c) cover d) weaken
12. After the car accident, the team arrived immediately to assist the injured and provide first aid.
 a) attack b) contact c) community d) rescue
13. Due to the heavy rain, the city experienced major that covered the streets and caused traffic disruption.
 a) storms b) floods c) earthquakes d) volcanoes
14. During the rescue operation, the team was working to free people who were in the collapsed building.
 a) trapped b) scared c) moving d) wrapped
15. Climbing mountains in this bad weather is a/an activity and can put climbers in danger.
 a) isolated b) normal c) risky d) easy
16. It is a/an for every citizen to protect their country's property, whether public or private.
 a) option b) choice c) obligation d) hope
17. There was a real at the hospital after the train accident, as the injured arrived from everywhere.
 a) conflict b) emergency c) trust d) meeting
18. After proving her worth at work, the manager's in her grew, and she was given full authority to manage the project.
 a) trust b) experience c) fear d) cost
19. This book is reading, as it provides new and very important information.
 a) gained b) worth c) served d) useless
20. His role in the project was the sensitive data from unauthorized access.
 a) treating b) stealing c) wasting d) protecting
21. The child was on the wet floor but managed to regain his balance at the last moment.
 a) shaking b) slipping c) running d) fearing

22. After hearing the bad news, he felt and couldn't process what had happened.
a) overwhelmed b) happy c) calm d) excited
23. She was at her mother's face silently, trying to understand what she was thinking.
a) observing b) believing c) staring d) blinking
24. After being from his friends for so long, he felt a great sense of loneliness.
a) proud b) isolated c) together d) with
25. During the match, they were a flag of their favorite team.
a) attending b) holding c) gaining d) reaching
26. The delicious smell of the cake baked in the filled the entire house.
a) cupboard b) freezer c) fridge d) oven
27. The smell of freshly-baked bread was so that he stopped to buy a loaf.
a) bitter b) burning c) undesirable d) irresistible
28. The cashier was busy the gifts with colorful paper and ribbons for the customers.
a) attending b) wrapping c) hiding d) holding
29. He gave his puppy a pat on the head, reassuring it that everything was okay.
a) gentle b) rough c) crowded d) fast
30. As the sun set, the bright colors of the sky began to, turning into soft shades of pink and purple.
a) emerge b) strengthen c) fade d) connect
31. The entire room seemed to with joy when the good news was announced.
a) go dark b) light up c) tap d) cool down
32. Despite the many challenges, his never wavered, and he always believed in a better future.
a) pessimism b) doubt c) optimism d) difference
33. The two parties were able to on the terms of the agreement after a long negotiation.
a) disagree b) refuse c) argue d) agree
34. It is normal for family members to sometimes, but it's important to resolve disputes quickly.
a) disagree b) agree c) forgive d) cooperate
35. A good leader must be able to problems before they happen.
a) allow b) cause c) prevent d) ignore

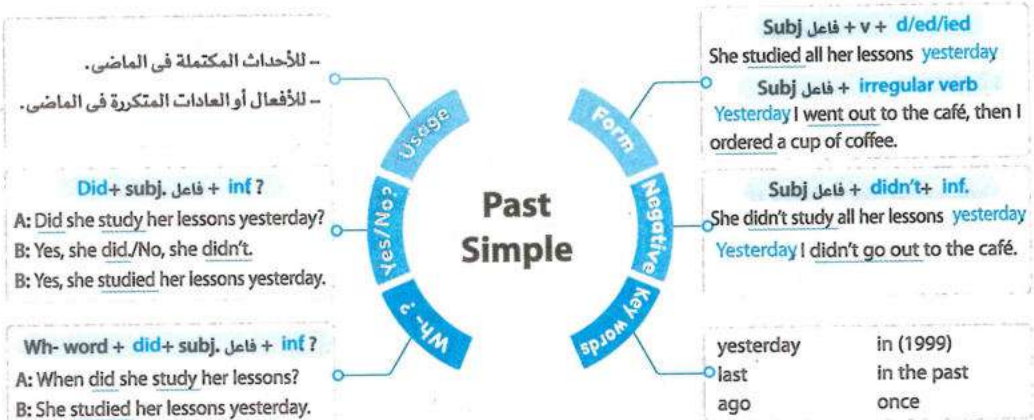
B

Language

Unit 1

1 Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

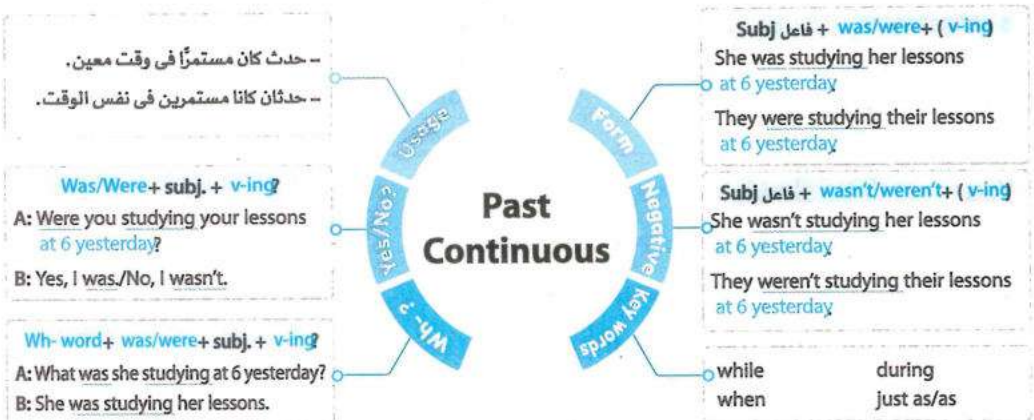


Notes

- فاعل + used to + inf. (no longer – لم يعد)
- اعتاد على (be) used to + (v-ing)
- يُستخدم ل. (be) used to + inf. فاعل غير عاقل
- I wish – Suppose – It's time + past simple (ماضٍ غير حقيقي)
- 'd rather + inf./d rather + فاعل + past simple

2 Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر



(should – shouldn't) (must – mustn't)

لاحظ كيفية استخدام **should – shouldn't** للنصيحة والكلمات التي تساويهما:

should + inf.		shouldn't + inf.
It's better to It's a good idea to It's desirable to It's advisable (for + object) to I advise you to You had better If I were you, I'd It is important to	} + inf.	It's better not to It's a good idea not to It's undesirable to It's inadvisable to I advise you not to You had better not If I were you, I wouldn't It is important not to
		} + inf.

- ▶ I **advise you to (not to) come** to the meeting.
- = You **should (not) come** to the meeting.
- = You **had better (not) come** to the meeting.
- = If I were you, I **would (not) come** to the meeting.
- = It's (not)/ (in)advisable for you to **come** to the meeting.

لاحظ كيفية استخدام **must – mustn't** للإلزام والمنع والكلمات التي تساويهما:

must		mustn't
It's necessary to It's obligatory to فاعل + be obliged to فاعل + need to	} + inf.	It's against the law to It's illegal to It's prohibited to It's banned to It's forbidden to It's not allowed to
		} + inf.

- ▶ You **must drive** slowly on this highway.
- ▶ It **is necessary to drive** slowly on this way.
- ▶ You **must come to visit** us tomorrow.
- ▶ I **strongly advise you to eat** healthy food.
- ▶ You **must eat** healthy food.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. the party, I met an old friend.
a) When b) During c) While d) As
2. I spicy food.
a) don't use to b) didn't use to
c) am not used to d) wasn't used for
3. Many people used to live in this isolated area, but now they
a) aren't b) didn't c) don't d) weren't
4. The writer published his new novel last month. He the last two years writing it.
a) spent b) has spent
c) was spent d) was spending
5. As the child was running after the cat, he a hard rock and injured his leg.
a) hits b) hit c) was hitting d) has hit
6. When I was a boy, I my relatives every now and then.
a) visit b) visited c) have visited d) visits
7. Hasnaa such hard work, she is always lazy.
a) is used to b) used to c) isn't used to d) didn't use to
8. the singing rehearsal, one of the musicians fainted.
a) When b) While c) During d) As soon as
9. My mother no longer a lot as she used to do.
a) travel b) traveled c) was traveling d) travels
10. My brother the money he needed.
a) gave b) didn't give c) give d) was given
11. While the house, I slept in the garden.
a) was cleaning b) was being cleaned
c) was clean d) is cleaning
12. All day yesterday, we were discussing the new project and a good time as well.
a) having b) had
c) have d) being having
13. They were discussing the project when the manager the room.
a) was entering b) have entered c) entered d) will enter
14. The thief while stealing money from the bank.
a) arrested b) was arresting
c) was arrested d) has been arrested

15. While by his mother, the baby gave a loud cry.
 a) dressed b) been dressed c) was dressed d) being dressed
16. the accident, I phoned the police at once.
 a) After I see b) Before I saw c) Before seeing d) When I saw
17. Huda an email to her friend yesterday.
 a) has sent b) was sent c) sent d) was sending
18. While Hazem his car, it started to rain.
 a) drives b) driving c) drove d) was driving
19. While she was doing her homework, I with my friends.
 a) had chatted b) was chatted c) was chatting d) chatting
20. She early. It was her habit.
 a) used to sleep b) is used to sleeping
 c) uses to sleep d) never used to sleeping
21. When she was a little girl, she often early to be healthy.
 a) slept b) sleeps c) has slept d) sleeping
22. She last played a tennis match she was ten.
 a) since b) for c) when d) ago
23. When this school built?
 a) does b) has c) did d) was
24. Between seven and eight yesterday, I the match on TV.
 a) had watched b) was watching c) watch d) watching
25. I'd rather he the report today instead of tomorrow.
 a) finished b) finishing c) was finished d) didn't finish
26. I have a ticket to go to this concert or it's free?
 a) Can b) Could c) Ought to d) Must
27. You were wrong. You this bad thing.
 a) should do b) should have done
 c) shouldn't have done d) needn't do
28. I couldn't find any room to stay in, so I sleep in my car.
 a) must b) had to c) have to d) shouldn't
29. You sleep early to be able to catch the early train.
 a) would better b) shouldn't c) had better d) prefer
30. You aren't allowed to park your car here. This sentence shows
 a) necessity b) advice c) possibility d) prohibition
31. You have so many suits. I think you get a new one.
 a) need to b) needn't c) mustn't d) should
32. You remember to bring your ticket or they won't let you in.
 a) must b) has to c) shouldn't d) had to
33. It is getting too late. I go now.
 a) don't have to b) had to c) need d) have to

34. If you want to lose weight, you eat too many carbohydrates.
a) needn't b) mustn't c) oughtn't d) don't need
35. I'm sorry, you speak loudly in the library.
a) have to b) needn't have c) mustn't d) don't have to
36. You drive so fast inside towns; it's a law.
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) had to
37. You come and be with me all day. It's my wedding party.
a) must b) ought c) shouldn't d) mustn't
38. You should water before you pour it into the cup.
a) to boiling b) to boil c) boils d) boil
39. The sign says, "No smoking", so you smoke here.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) couldn't d) needn't
40. You to help poor and needy people when they ask for help.
a) must b) shouldn't c) ought d) can
41. To be fit. You to go on a diet.
a) should b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) need
42. You eat food that smells bad. It can be poisonous. ^{سام}
a) shouldn't b) mustn't c) needn't d) oughtn't
43. You wash your hands if you have touched an infected bird.
a) should b) mustn't c) had to d) will
44. We help our neighbors with their problems yesterday.
a) had to b) must c) have to d) will have to
45. You mustn't smoke in hospitals. It is
a) necessary b) banned c) advisable d) mustn't
46. We get up early because it was a holiday, so we slept late.
a) needn't b) needn't have to c) didn't have to d) mustn't
47. They shouldn't have wasted their time. They didn't get the marks they wanted. This sentence expresses
a) blame b) necessity c) prohibition d) deduction
48. It is really a good play. You to go and see it.
a) should b) must c) ought d) can
49. You hurry or you will miss the meeting.
a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) could
50. I suggest that our children sleep early and get up early.
a) must b) need c) needn't d) should
51. Do you wear a suit for the interview?
a) should b) must c) have to d) could
52. Dropping rubbish into the Nile water is
a) allowed b) necessary c) forbidden d) advisable

2 Rewrite the following sentences, using the words between brackets without changing the meaning of the sentences:

1. I was doing my homework when my mother called me. (While)
2. The doorbell rang, and the baby woke up. (when)
3. My phone rang as I was getting on the bus. (When)
4. He fell asleep during the movie. (While)
5. Ali used to smoke when he was young. (smokes)
6. The storm hit, and the power went out. (When)
7. I was washing the dishes, and I heard a strange noise. (As)
8. She was eating dinner, and her brother came home. (While)
9. The teacher entered the room, and the students became quiet. (when)
10. The accident happened while they were crossing the street. (As)
11. I was walking to school when I met my friend. (During)
12. Ahmed was in the habit of swimming when he was young. (used)
13. Taking photos isn't allowed in the Egyptian Museum. (mustn't)
14. I advise you to complete your work before you leave. (should)
15. What do you advise me to do? (should)
16. It's necessary for you to brush your teeth after meals. (must)
17. The manager wants to see me. I have no other options. (have to)
18. It would be a good idea to read a lot in your free time. (should)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. She is doing her homework when the lights went out. (.....)
2. My sister is singing while I was studying. (.....)
3. Ramy was driving when he was getting a flat tire. (.....)
4. While they was eating, the phone rang. (.....)
5. I was read a book when I fell asleep. (.....)
6. The children playing outside when it got dark. (.....)
7. We have lunch when the fire alarm went off. (.....)
8. Huda see Ahmed while she was walking down the street. (.....)
9. While running to catch the bus, Ali was dropping his keys. (.....)
10. She prepared the presentation and answer the client's questions. (.....)
11. We went to a famous market yesterday, but we weren't buying anything. (.....)
12. My friend have to work 12 hours a day. (.....)
13. You don't have to smoke in the gas station. It's against the law. (.....)
14. Menna and Aya has to go to work at 8 a.m. (.....)
15. You ought change your glasses as you can't see. (.....)
16. It's necessity to do the homework. (.....)

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

Nowadays, every household produces electronic rubbish, or e-rubbish—an old TV or computer printer, or an out-of-date cell phone we no longer need. But when we throw these everyday items away, few of us know where these objects go. The journalist and photographer, Peter Essick, decided to follow this e-rubbish to several different countries around the world.

In particular, Essick found that a lot of e-rubbish goes to Ghana. There, he saw mountains of old computers in the local markets. The sellers resell some of them, but not much equipment works. Instead, they recycle the broken computers by melting the parts inside. These parts contain a little metal, such as copper or even gold, sometimes. However, this process of recycling is dangerous for workers because it produces a lot of toxic chemicals.

As a result of his journey, Peter Essick thinks it's important to stop exporting e-rubbish. It's bad for the environment, and it's bad for people's health. Instead, he believes manufacturers **شركات تصنيع** need to produce more eco-friendly electronics in the future; in other words, electronic products which you can recycle cheaply, safely, and in the country where they were made.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Which of the following can be a suitable title for the passage? ".....".
 a) Saving the poor African nations
 b) Saving the earth through recycling
 c) Rubbish is no longer useless
 d) A better way to deal with e-rubbish
- Ghana a lot of electronic rubbish.
 a) exports b) imports c) produces d) cycles
- Which of the following ISN'T why Essick wants to stop exporting e-rubbish?
 a) It's made in his own country. b) It harms the environment.
 c) It might cause diseases. d) It produces a lot of toxic chemicals.
- Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?
 a) Essick traveled to Ghana.
 b) Some of the equipment in the e-rubbish works.
 c) Essick suggests extracting gold from e-rubbish.
 d) Huge amounts of e-rubbish are exported to Ghana.

5. What is one thing people in Ghana do with e-rubbish?

- a) They export it to other poor countries.
- b) They convert it into eco-friendly electronics.
- c) They extract some valuable material.
- d) They recycle them safely.

6. Essick is likely to be interested in

- a) health problems
- b) valuable metals
- c) ecological issues
- d) the world countries

7. Essick is different from most people as he

- a) has traveled to many parts of the world
- b) has never thrown away used electronics
- c) tried to shed light on a dirty process
- d) took up two incompatible jobs

Passage No. 2

How would you feel about traveling into space for six months to live on a planet that is 400 million kilometers from Earth? And how would you feel if you had been told that you could never return?!

That is what is planned for people who are going to Mars on a mission in 2031. Surprisingly, 200,000 applications have been received from people who want to join the mission, even though they will never see Earth again. The people who want to go to Mars say that their plan is not very different from the first Europeans who went to America or the thousands of people who have left their countries because of war or diseases. They also knew that their lives would be difficult and that they would probably never see their countries again.

A hundred people who want to go to Mars have chosen to start special training to see who is suitable. Scientists will get people to live in a small living space for a long time, without seeing any friends or family. This will be similar to what they expect on Mars. The launch will have a crew of just four people for the long journey into space. A special settlement will be built on Mars where food will be grown and the four people will live and work. It won't be an easy life. There will be little water, they will have to grow their own food, and the planet is known for its giant dust storms. Despite these problems, it is an adventure they cannot refuse.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The number of people who will be made ready through training is
 a) a thousand people b) less than a thousand
 c) two hundred thousand people d) less than ten people
2. The main idea of the passage is ".....".
 a) One day, we will all live on Mars
 b) Life on Mars will be impossible
 c) The people who will go to Mars will be famous
 d) Life on Mars will be very difficult
3. The thing that made those who sent applications want to travel to Mars is that
 a) they don't like Earth
 b) scientists made them go there
 c) they want to see dust storms
 d) they want to know if they can survive there
4. People who travel to Mars should be
 a) adventurous b) giant c) intelligent d) scientists
5. Mars is known for
 a) its easy life b) its nice plants
 c) its dust storms d) its wonderful shores
6. The aim of living in a small living space for a long time is
 a) traveling b) studying
 c) seeing no friends d) training
7. People who are trained but not chosen to travel to Mars are
 a) 200000 b) 4 c) 96 d) 100

Passage No. 3

Technology has changed people and their lives, but some people don't like the results of technology. They often **resist** the new. They might prefer to take trains instead of planes and receive letters instead of phone calls or emails.

Computers are an obvious part of technology that reaches into most people's lives. A computer can easily perform simple and complex calculations. It can record all kinds of information. It can sort material either alphabetically or in a number sequence. It can classify, report, and edit information that is put in. The only requirement is that the computer must be correctly programmed to perform these functions or jobs.

Computers have so many everyday uses that the business world would stop without them.

They can, for example, reserve airplane tickets, keep bank accounts, and record grocery items. All of these jobs can be done in a fraction of the time that a person would need. The investment of time and patience that a person makes in learning how to use a computer pays off many times.

Computers save great amounts of time by doing uninteresting jobs that take people a long time. Computers are designed for repetitive projects, for processing and storing a large amount of data, and for accuracy and speed. By using computers, human beings can free themselves to do more human projects.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. One of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage as a job that a computer can do
 - a) storing data
 - b) performing complex calculations
 - c) reserving plane tickets
 - d) paving the way for human relationships
2. Some people react negatively to technology as they
 - a) like modern things
 - b) prefer traditional things
 - c) avoid old inventions
 - d) keep away from ancient discoveries
3. What does the writer mean by the underlined words "pays off"?
 - a) Brings benefits
 - b) Causes a delay
 - c) Wastes time
 - d) Harms people
4. To get the most correct output, a computer requires
 - a) great amounts of time
 - b) a limited amount of data
 - c) a high degree of patience
 - d) highly accurate programs
5. Without computers,
 - a) complex calculations would be easier
 - b) life would be much more difficult
 - c) communication would be more developed
 - d) making use of time would be better
6. The best title for this passage can be ".....".
 - a) Technology in the Past Centuries
 - b) Computers, Past, and Present
 - c) Computers and Man
 - d) Unwelcome Guest
7. They often resist the new. The antonym of the word "resist" is ".....".
 - a) reject
 - b) refuse
 - c) accept
 - d) decline

2 Translation:**1. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:**

- Your health is essential if you are to live freely. Your physical health allows you to be free to go wherever you may desire.

- (a) صحتك ضرورية، إذا أردت العيش بحرية فصحتك البدنية تعطيك الحرية في التجول أينما شئت.
 (b) صحتك ملزمة، إذا أردت العيش بحرية فصحتك البدنية تعطيك الحرية في التجول أينما شئت.
 (c) صحتك ضرورية، إذا أردت العيش بحرية فصحتك النفسية تعطيك الحرية في التجول وقتما شئت.
 (d) صحتك مهمة، عندما يعود الأمر للعيش بحرية فصحتك البدنية تعطيك الحرية في التجول وقتما رغبت.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- أعتقد أن الخبرة في العمل مهمة، لكن لا يمكننا التغاضي عن حماس الشباب وأفكارهم المبتكرة.

- a) I think work experience is important, but we cannot ignore the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of workers.
 b) I agree that work experience is important, but we cannot overlook the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of young people.
 c) I think work experience is important, but we cannot overlook the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of young people.
 d) I think work management is important, but we cannot overlook the enthusiasm and innovative ideas of young people.

2. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The internet has become the most outstanding innovation in the field of communication in the history of mankind.

- (a) لقد أصبحت الكهرباء أبرز الابتكارات في مجال الاتصال في تاريخ الجنس البشري.
 (b) يصبح الإنترنت أبرز الابتكارات في مجال الاتصال في تاريخ الجنس البشري.
 (c) لقد أصبح الإنترنت أبرز الابتكارات في مجال الاتصال في تاريخ الجنس البشري.
 (d) لقد أصبح الإنترنت من أبرز الاختراعات في مجال التعليم في التاريخ.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يجب على الدول العربية أن تتحد وتحل النزاعات والخلافات بينها وذلك لمواجهة المخاطر والتحديات الخارجية المحيطة بها.

- a) The Arab countries has to unite and solve disputes and differences between them to face the external dangers and challenges surrounding them.
 b) The Arab countries have to unite and solve disputes and differences among them to face the external dangers and challenges surrounding them.
 c) The Arab have to unite and solves disputes and differences between them to face the external dangers and challenges surrounding them.
 d) Arab countries have to unite and solve disputes and different among them to face the outer dangers and challenges that they surround.

3. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Reading is a vital activity for students of all ages since it exposes them to a variety of cultures.

- (a) اقرأ لأن القراءة حيوية للطلاب في الأعمار الصغيرة لأنها تعرضهم لمجموعة متنوعة من الثقافات.
- (b) القراءة نشاط أساسي للطلاب من جميع الأعمار لأنها تعرضهم لمجموعة متنوعة من الحضارات.
- (c) القراءة نشاط حيوي للطلاب من جميع الأعمار لأنها تعرضهم لمجموعة متنوعة من الثقافات.
- (d) القراءة نشاط جيد للطلاب من جميع الأعمار لأنهم يتعرضون فيها لمجموعة من الثقافات.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– تتمتع بلادنا بمصادر طبيعية غنية إذا أحسن استغلالها سيؤدي ذلك إلى الرفاهية والتقدم الملحوظ.

- a) The country have rich nature resources, which, if they are exploited well, will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.
- b) Our country has rich natural resources, whose, if they had made best use of, will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.
- c) Our country has rich natural resources, which, if they are exploited well, will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.
- d) Our village has rich normal resources, which, if they are exploited well, would lead to welfare and remarkable progress.

3 Write an essay of about (120-150) words on the following:

1. The role mass media play in our life.

.....

.....

.....

.....

2. Different creative ways to support your community.

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. How can people overcome bad habits and replace them with good ones?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Practice...

Cumulative Test Units 1 & 2

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. Different of technology can help in various fields.
a) amounts b) forms c) types d) characters e) figures
2. Farida hasn't spoken to anyone lately and feels isolated from her friends.
The synonyms of the word "isolated" are
a) detached b) depressed c) sociable d) remote e) connected

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The same traditions have been passed down through several in my family.
a) annuals b) generations c) ages d) eras
4. He a large house from his grandfather.
a) sold b) borrowed c) inherited d) lost
5. The castle is a piece of architecture.
a) simple b) weak c) plain d) magnificent
6. The continuous between the two countries led to political instability in the region.
a) cooperation b) agreements c) conflicts d) meetings
7. She is passionate about in her free time, offering her services to local charities.
a) eating b) volunteering c) slipping d) traveling
8. A healthy is built on mutual respect and understanding.
a) argument b) conflict c) relationship d) trust
9. While climbing onto the mountain top, I a strange animal.
a) was seen b) saw c) was seeing d) seeing
10. I couldn't watch the movie because my brother a football match.
a) has watched b) was watching c) watched d) watches
11. The police arrested the thief as he The scene of the crime.
a) had left b) was left c) left d) was leaving
12. If you want to pass the exam, you study hard every day. It's essential.
a) shouldn't b) don't have to c) must not d) have to
13. To be a member of the club, you be over 18 years old. It's a rule.
a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) don't have to
14. You worry so much about the test; you've studied a lot.
a) must b) should c) shouldn't d) have to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

No one can deny the achievements of the United Nations during the past half century in many fields, especially in the field of peace-keeping. One of the aims of its charters is to establish and safeguard world peace through peaceful means and negotiations. As a matter of fact, the U.N. has scored significant success in peace-making.

Moreover, the United Nations has done its best to save stricken countries from famines and natural disasters. Humanitarian انسانی aid has been sent to relieve peoples' sufferings, and remedial measures have been taken to avoid future calamities. There has been an urgent demand to increase the number of the Security Council permanent members. The Council should include as permanent members rich and industrial countries, as their status and contributions affect world policy.

The United Nations has a shortage of funds. There are not adequate funds available to meet the urgent and increasing demands of poor countries. The United Nations faces a world with revolutions and tension everywhere. Feud and greed cause a lot of wars and suffering in many parts of our world. The U.N. has setbacks and failures, but it has been doing a good job, so much so that no one knows what would happen in the world without the United Nations.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The United Nations
a) has successes, achievements, and setbacks
b) has always been a success
c) has always been a failure
d) has no funds at all
16. The United Nations has played a great part to help countries
a) which are rich and industrial
b) in times of need, calamities, and suffering
c) which are powerful and rich
d) in the charters
17. The United Nations has shown success in the field of
a) medicine b) peace-keeping c) wars d) commerce
18. causes a lot of wars and suffering in many areas of the world.
a) Fund b) Failure c) Greed d) Peace
19. The word "calamities" in "to avoid future calamities" means
a) disasters b) happiness c) solutions d) contributions

20. What is desired for the Security Council now?

- a) To reduce the number of permanent members.
- b) To increase the number of temporary members.
- c) To raise the standard of its members.
- d) To raise the number of permanent members.

21. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

- a) the Security Council
- b) the poor countries
- c) the United Nations
- d) the revolutions

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يهدف الإرهاب إلى خلق جو من الرعب وتدمير صناعة السياحة، إحدى ركائز الدخل القومي.

- a) Terrorism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry, one of the pillars of national income.
- b) Terrorism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry, one of the pillars of international income.
- c) Terrorism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the tourism industry, one of the ladders of national income.
- d) Tourism aims at creating an atmosphere of terror and destroying the terrorism industry, one of the pillars of national income.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Many kinds of animals and plants are facing extinction because of man's irresponsible activity. So, man should be careful while dealing with the environment.

- (a) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للتلف بسبب نشاط الإنسان المسئول. ومن ثم يجب على الإنسان توخي الحذر في التعامل مع البيئة.
- (b) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم يجب على الإنسان توخي الحذر في التعامل مع البيئة.
- (c) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم يجب على الإنسان عدم التهور في التعامل مع البيئة.
- (d) تتعرض أنواع كثيرة من الحيوانات والنباتات للانقراض بسبب نشاط الإنسان غير المسئول. ومن ثم يجب على الإنسان توخي الحذر في معالجة البيئة.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Santiago remembers the lions on the African beaches?
2. Why is Santiago determined to fish alone, even though he is old?
3. Do you consider Santiago a hero even though he hasn't caught a fish for 84 days?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Volunteering can benefit society and help to solve problems." Discuss.

A

Vocabulary

Unit (3)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الثالثة

appearance (n) مظهر	embarrassed (adj) مُحَجَّر	pretend (v) (ed) يتظاهر
apply (v) (y)ied يطبق	emotions (n) عواطف	process (n) عملية
authentic (adj) أصلي / حقيقي	exist (v) (ed) يوجد	product (n) منتج
awareness (n) وعي / معرفة	exploit (v) (ed) يستغل	profit (n) ربح
battle (n) معركة	fake (adj) مزيف	reliable (adj) موثوق به
behavior (n) سلوك	fight (v) يقاتل / يحارب	reputation (n) سمعة / شهرة
betray (v) (ed) يخون / يغدر	goodness (n) خير	require (v)(d) يتطلب
boundary (n) حد	guard (v) (ed) يحمي / يحرس	resources (n) موارد
career (n) حياة مهنية	headline (n) عنوان رئيسي	role model (n) قدوة حسنة
caught in a trap محاصرون في فخ	honesty (n) صدق / أمانة	rumors (n) شائعات
cautious (adj) حريص / حذر	impression (n) انطباع	scam (n) احتيال
charity (n) جمعية خيرية	individuals (n) أفراد	sensational (adj) مثير
combine (v)(d) يدمج	intention (n) نية	supportive (adj) داعم
confirm (v) (ed) يؤكد	interaction (n) تفاعل / رد فعل	suspicious (adj) مريب / مرتاب
confused (adj) مرتبك	invisible (adj) خفي / غير مرئي	tactics (n) تكتيكات / أساليب
consider (v) (ed) يعتبر / يفكر في	lie (n) (v) كذبة / يكذب	tank (n) دبابة
contract (n) عقد	limited (adj) محدود	teens (n) مراهقون
creativity (n) إبداع	misinformation (n) معلومات مضللة	too good to be true جيد جدًا لدرجة يصعب تصديقها
critical (adj) حرج / نقدي	motivate (v)(d) يحفز / يشجع	trust, but verify ثق، ولكن تأكد
curious (adj) فضولي	patience (n) صبر	trustworthy (adj) جدير بالثقة
damage (v) (d)(n) يضر / يفسد / ضرر	payment (n) دفع	victim (n) ضحية
deceive (v) (d) يخدع	perfection (n) كمال	violence (n) عنف
deception (n) خداع	platform (n) منصة	weapons (n) أسلحة
defense (n) دفاع / حماية	popular (adj) شائع / محبوب	wolves in sheep's clothing ذئاب في ثياب حملان
destroy (v)(ed) يدمر	practical (adj) عملي	workplace (n) مكان عمل
digital (adj) رقمي	pressure (n) (v) (d) ضغط / يضغط	

Unit (4)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الرابعة

achieve (v) (d)	يحقّق	energy (n)	طاقة	misuse (n)	إساءة استخدام
adopt (v) (ed)	يتبنّى / يتّخذ	essential (adj)	ضروري	natural resources (n)	موارد طبيعية
alternative (adj) (n)	بديل	expand (v) (ed)	يوسّع	notebook (n)	مفكرة / مذكرة
approach (n)	نهج / طريقة	fashionable (adj)	مساير للموضة / عصري	observation (n)	ملاحظة / متابعة
assembly (n)	مؤتمر / اجتماع	fill (v) (ed)	يملأ	outcome (n)	حصيلة / أثر
automobile (n)	سيارة	finding (n)	نتيجة / اكتشاف	overuse (n)	إفراط في الاستخدام
balance (v) (d) (n)	يوازن / توازن	forum (n)	منتدى	paper cup (n)	كوب ورقي
bright (adj)	مشرق / مضيء / لامع	fountain (n)	نافورة	practice (v) (ed) (n)	يمارس / ممارسة
check (v) (ed)	يفحص / يتأكد	global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	goods (n)	بضائع	products (n)	منتجات
commitment (n)	التزام / تعهد	harmful (adj)	ضار	promote (v) (d)	يرقي / يطور
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	impact (n)	تأثير / يؤثر على	purpose (n)	غرض
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل / بالكامل	include (v) (d)	يتضمن	renewable (adj)	متجدد
concept (n)	مفهوم / مصطلح	Industrial Revolution (n)	الثورة الصناعية	reusable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام
concerns (n)	اهتمامات / مخاوف	initiative (n)	مبادرة	slogan (n)	شعار
consultant (n)	مستشار / خبير	issue (n)	قضية / موضوع	sources (n)	مصادر
consumer (n)	مستهلك	landfill (n)	مقلب للنفايات	survey (n) (v) (ed)	استطلاع رأي / يستطلع
convince (v) (d)	يقنع	large-scale	على نطاق واسع / ضخم	sustainable (adj)	مستدام
costly (adj)	مكلف	leak (n) (v) (ed)	تسرب / يسرب	swap (v) (ped)	يبادل / يقيض
depletion (n)	استهلاك / نفاذ	long-term (adj)	طويل الأجل	tiny (adj)	ضئيل
discussion (n)	مناقشة	major (adj)	رئيسي	unique (adj)	فريد من نوعه / متفرد
drip (n)	قطرة (مياه)	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	unplug (v) (ged)	يسحب / يفصل القابس (الفيشة)
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	mission (n)	مهمة / مأمورية / بعثة	unwanted (adj)	غير مرغوب فيها

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

agree to	يوافق على	environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	limited to	محدد / مقتصر على
apply/put pressure on	يمارس / يضع ضغطاً على	exchange ... for	يبدل بـ	make a promise	يقدم وعداً
at a national level	على مستوى وطني	face-to-face interactions	التفاعلات وجهاً لوجه	make changes	يجري تغييرات
at a time	في المرة الواحدة	fight against	يحارب ضد	make quick money	يربح مائلاً سريعاً
at least	على الأقل	fight over	يتقاتل على	on social media	على وسائل التواصل
aware of	على علم بـ	give a truthful answer	يعطي إجابة صادقة	put on a friendly face	يتظاهر بالود
build/make strong friendships	يبني صداقات قوية	go green	اعتماد ممارسات صديقة للبيئة	refer to	يشير إلى
cause ... to stop	يتسبب في توقف	green practices	ممارسات للحفاظ على البيئة	rely on	يعتمد على
click an icon	ينقر على أيقونة	healthy boundaries	حدود صحية / سليمة	result from	ينتج من
combine ... with	يدمج ... مع	in fact	في الواقع	result in	يؤدي إلى
cut down	يقلل / يخفض	in return	في المقابل	take advantage of	يستغل (استغلالاً سلبياً)
do research	يجري بحثاً	in trouble	في مأزق	transform ... into	يحول إلى
do/conduct a survey	يجري مسحاً	keep his promises	يفي بوعوده	write down	يدون

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym	المضاد
betray	يخون	deceive/mislead/cheat		assist/support	يساعد / يدعم
confirm	يؤكد	verify/prove		deny/disprove	ينكر / يدحض
deception	خداع	trickery/fraud/deceit		truth/honesty	الحقيقة / الصدق
fake	مزيف	forged/false		authentic/genuine	أصيل / حقيقي
honesty	صدق / أمانة	integrity/truthfulness		dishonesty/deceit	عدم الصدق / الخداع
profit	ربح	gain/benefit		loss/debt	خسارة / دين

reliable	موثوق	dependable/trustworthy	unreliable/deceitful	غير موثوق / مخادع
suspicious	مريب	doubtful/distrustful	trusting/reliable	ثقة / موثوق
truthful	صاقد	honest/sincere	dishonest/deceptive	غير أمين / مخادع
valuable	قيّم / ثمين	precious/priceless	worthless/useless	عديم القيمة / عديم الفائدة
improve	يحسّن / يتحسن	develop/boost	worsen/decline	يزداد سوء / ينهار
popular	مشهور / محبوب	famous/admired	unpopular/unknown	غير معروف
invisible	غير مرأى	unseen/hidden	visible/obvious	مرئى / واضح
renewable	متجدد	sustainable/inexhaustible	nonrenewable/finite	غير متجدد / محدود
reduce	يقلل	lessen/decrease	increase/expand	يزيد / يتمدد
waste	يساء استخدام	misuse/drain	conserve/save	يحفظ
sustainable	مستدام	eco-friendly/lasting	harmful/destructive	ضار / مدمر
pollution	تلوث	contamination/dirtiness	cleanliness/purity	نظافة / نقاء
active	نشط	energetic/lively	lazy/inactive	كسول / غير نشيط
include	يحتوى	contain/involve	exclude/omit	يستبعد / يحذف
bright	مشرق / ذكى	shiny/intelligent	dull/dark	ممل / مظلم

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	boundary	حد (الخط الذى يحدد حافة منطقة من الأرض يملكها شخص ما، أو أحد أجزاء بلد ما).
	border	حد فاصل بين اتجاهين أو شعورين.
2	require	حد (الخط الرسمى الذى يفصل بين بلدين، أو المنطقة القريبة من هذا الخط. تقع المدينة على الحدود).
	acquire	يحتاج / يتطلب
	inquire	يكتسب / يحصل على
		يستفسر

3	battle	معركة أو قتال محدد بين مجموعتين أو جيشين في مكان وزمن معين.
	war	حرب طويلة بين دولتين أو أكثر وتشمل عدة معارك صغيرة.
	conflict	صراع بين شخصين، جماعات، أو دول، قد يكون مسلحاً أو غير مسلح.
4	respect	احترام / يحترم.
	respectable	شخص أو شيء جدير بالاحترام.
	respected	محترم من الآخرين.
	respectful	مهذب يظهر الاحترام.
5	sensational	مثير أو جذاب.
	sensitive	حساس، أي يتأثر بسهولة.
	sensible	عقلاني أو معقول.
6	effect	اسم بمعنى تأثير عادة في السياق الرسمي ويشير إلى النتيجة.
	impact	تأثير قوى أو مفاجئ (سواء كان سلبياً أو إيجابياً).
	affect	فعل بمعنى يؤثر على ولا يأتي بعده حرف جر.
7	adopt	يتبنى (طفلاً/ فكرة/ أسلوباً).
	adapt + (to)	يتكيف/ يُعدّل شيئاً ليتناسب مع وضع جديد.
8	process	عملية أو نشاط تؤدي إلى نتيجة ولها خطوات منطقية.
	operation	إجراء أو خطوة واحدة ضمن عملية (حسابي/ ميكانيكي/ وظيفي/ جراحي).
9	special	مميز (له قيمة/ أهمية).
	private	خاص/ شخصي (معلومات/ ممتلكات).
10	include	يشمل (قبلها الكل وبعدها الجزء).
	contain	يحتوي على شيء بداخله.
	consist of	يتكون من أجزاء/ يشتمل على ...
11	leak	تسريب/ ثقب يتسرب منه شيء ما (سائل/ غاز/ معلومة).
	hole	فتحة (على سطح).
	space	فراغ (بين شيئين).

Practice...

Module (2) Vocabulary Question Bank

Unit 3

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. He tried to betray me, but I was aware. The synonyms of the word "betray" are
a) hide b) face c) deceive d) avoid e) mislead
2. Some factors exploit children and make them work with low wages. The synonyms of the word "exploit" are
a) misuse b) repeat c) abuse d) trap e) imprison
3. Let's eat in this popular restaurant. The antonyms of the word "popular" are
a) invisible b) unaware c) unpopular d) polluted e) unknown
4. The boy escaped from the workhouse because of the violence he experienced. The synonyms of the word "violence" are
a) generosity b) cruelty c) compassion d) aggression e) carelessness
5. He gave a fake smile when he saw his boss. The antonyms of the word "fake" are
a) false b) artificial c) genuine d) clear e) authentic

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. He always tells the so people know they can count on him.
a) lies b) rumors c) secrets d) truth
7. The news story about the actor was full of which made him angry.
a) facts b) ideas c) lies d) truths
8. When you face a difficult problem, you on your friends to help you.
a) ignore b) rely on c) disagree with d) hide from
9. His and integrity were widely known, so he was elected to lead the team.
a) dishonesty b) appearance c) greed d) honesty
10. A simple act of can make a huge difference in someone's day.
a) negativity b) cruelty c) kindness d) intention
11. It's important to judge people by their actions, not just their stated
a) goals b) intentions c) habits d) deceptions
12. He was known for his often twisting the truth to get what he wanted.
a) honesty b) sincerity c) dishonesty d) reliability
13. The belief that pure exists in all people is a beautiful but sometimes naive idea.
a) goodness b) sadness c) anger d) selfishness

14. It's wise to be while dealing with electronic wallets.
 a) careless b) eager c) cautious d) trusting
15. A/An person is someone you can always count on to keep their promises.
 a) unreliable b) cautious c) trustworthy d) dishonest
16. The magic trick was a masterful act of fooling the entire audience.
 a) honesty b) truthfulness c) deception d) integrity
17. Osama asked me for a, and I agreed with pleasure.
 a) boundary b) favor c) truth d) contract
18. She's a very friend, always there for me when I need her.
 a) supportive b) lazy c) unreliable d) selfish
19. His was ruined after he took a bribe رشوة.
 a) luck b) reputation c) personality d) mood
20. He felt by his best friend after he left him alone in the desert.
 a) betrayed b) helped c) ignored d) amused
21. He felt after he tripped تعرقل and fell in front of the whole class.
 a) surprised b) excited c) hungry d) embarrassed
22. Be careful when you receive emails asking for personal information, as they could be part of online
 a) gifts b) sales c) scams d) surveys
23. The criminal used clever to trick his victims out of their money.
 a) signs b) tactics c) secrets d) intentions
24. He tried to his new employees by making them work extra hours.
 a) shine b) apply c) exploit d) encourage
25. The detective was certain the suspect would eventually get and confess to the crime.
 a) away with it b) caught in a trap c) a reward d) justice
26. The phrase means to be cautious even when you can trust someone.
 a) trust everyone b) believe everything
 c) trust, but verify d) trust no one
27. Establishing with others helps you maintain healthy relationships.
 a) strict rules b) healthy boundaries
 c) social obligations d) bad habits
28. He was always getting into with the school principal for breaking the rules.
 a) trouble b) goodness c) interaction d) reputation
29. He showed us a/an ID, but we were able to discover his lie.
 a) real b) new c) fake d) invisible
30. Her positive made her seem like a very happy and friendly person.
 a) disguise b) emotion c) appearance d) secret

Unit 4**Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:**

- The continued depletion of the ozone layer is a serious environmental concern. "Depletion" here means and
a) increase b) reduction c) exhaustion d) growth e) abundance
- We should reduce the use of plastic bags to protect the environment. The antonyms of "reduce" here are and
a) lessen b) decrease c) delete d) expand e) increase
- The stars became invisible because of the heavy clouds. The synonyms of the word "invisible" means are and
a) hidden b) unseen c) bright d) clear e) noticeable
- Schools try to improve the quality of education every year. The antonyms of "improve" here are and
a) worsen b) develop c) decline d) progress e) damage
- I trust the production of this factory. The antonyms of "production" are and
a) destruction b) creation c) contamination d) reduction e) benefit

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The of social media can lead to addiction and mental health problems.
a) misuse b) purpose c) concerns d) profit
- The rise of in the 20th century changed world transportation.
a) resources b) machines c) initiatives d) automobiles
- The of the Earth's natural resources is a major global issue.
a) process b) overuse c) discovery d) protection
- There are growing about the effects of climate change on our planet.
a) celebrations b) opportunities c) concerns d) agreements
- This new car is designed to be as friendly as possible, producing minimal emissions.
a) economically b) socially c) technologically d) environmentally
- The news of the discovery was reported across the world.
a) widely b) secretly c) renewably d) rarely
- The company's new is 'Go Green for a Cleaner Tomorrow'.
a) mission b) goal c) approach d) slogan
- The process of goods has changed dramatically since the Industrial Revolution.
a) buying b) selling c) transporting d) manufacturing

14. Water and forests are examples of natural that we need to protect.
a) products b) materials c) resources d) outcomes
15. Solar and wind power are examples of, which are a key part of our future energy plans.
a) fossil fuels b) non-renewable energy
c) nuclear energy d) renewable energy
16. One simple way to help the environment is by your water consumption.
a) reducing b) observing c) ignoring d) increasing
17. We need to find better ways to deal with plastic to prevent pollution.
a) products b) resources c) energy d) waste
18. The of natural resources can cause long-term environmental damage.
a) growth b) depletion c) restoration d) conservation
19. Most of the city's garbage is sent to, where it is buried underground.
a) initiatives b) parks c) factories d) landfills
20. As, we have the power to influence companies to be more eco-friendly.
a) producers b) manufacturers c) consumers d) suppliers
21. We need to against global warming to protect our planet for future generations.
a) fight b) accept c) support d) ignore
22. Using practices helps ensure that our resources are not used up too quickly.
a) major b) destructive c) short-term d) sustainable
23. It is to conserve water because we cannot live without it.
a) negative b) useless c) essential d) difficult
24. Building a new dam can be a/an project that takes years to complete.
a) alternative b) costly c) simple d) free
25. Our company's is to reduce its carbon footprint by 50% in the next five years.
a) campaign b) initiative c) slogan d) commitment
26. The new recycling aims to make it easier for people to recycle from home.
a) initiative b) forums c) mission d) slogan
27. The brought significant changes in technology and society.
a) Agricultural Age b) Stone Age
c) Recycling Revolution d) Industrial Revolution
28. The movement encourages everyone to live a more environmentally conscious life.
a) 'go green' b) 'buy now' c) 'go fast' d) 'stay home'
29. The melting of polar ice caps is a clear sign of
a) energy b) depletion c) global warming d) rainwater
30. The environmental online were full of ideas on how to reduce pollution.
a) markets b) stores c) concepts d) forums

B

Language

Unit 3

If Conditionals

- If + present simple present simple (حقيقة (حالة صفرية)

If you **boil** water, it **turns** into steam.

- If + present simple (will – can – may – should) + inf.

احتمال حدوث الفعل في الحاضر أو المستقبل (الحالة الأولى)

If he **comes** late, he **will (may) be** punished.

You **should sleep** early if you **want** to get up early.

- If + past simple (would – could – might) + inf.

عدم احتمال حدوث الفعل في الحاضر أو المستقبل (الحالة الثانية)

If they **told** me the truth, I **would (could) help** them.

If she **were** a doctor, she **could (would) examine** us.

- Unless = If + نفى

إذا لم (تعط معنى النفي)

Unless he **studied** hard, he **would fail**.

= If he **didn't study** hard, he **would fail**.

بدائل If

- without + noun/v.ing But for + noun

لولا

Ali will miss the bus **without running** fast.

But for teachers, we wouldn't be able to achieve progress.

- In case of + noun

في حالة

In case of fire, call the emergency number.

- If = provided = provided that = providing = as long as = on condition that في الحالة الأولى

You can take the car keys **provided** you get around the villa only.

- Should + فاعل + inf. (will – would) + inf.

الحالة الأولى والثانية

Should Hala do her best, she will **(would) come** first.

- Were + فاعل + to + inf. (would + inf.)

الحالة الثانية

Were he to go to school early, he **would meet** his friends.

- Were + فاعل + (صفة – وظيفة) + (would/could + inf.)

Were he a policeman, he could help us. = If he were a policeman, he could help us.

Unit 4

Verbs (to + inf. OR v-ing)

– أفعال تتبع بـ **to + inf.**

afford	deserve	mean	seem
agree	expect	offer	tend
arrange	fail	plan	threaten
attempt	hope	pretend	want
dare	learn	promise	choose
decide	manage	refuse	wish

– أفعال تتبع بـ **v-ing**

admit	deny	imagine	recommend
adore	dislike	involve	resist
avoid	enjoy	mind	risk
confess	fancy	miss	suggest
consider	finish	postpone	escape
delay	go	practise	understand

– أفعال يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم **to + inf.**

ask	get	persuade	teach
enable	invite	recommend	tell
force	order	remind	warn

– أفعال من الممكن أن يأتي بعدها **to + inf.** أو مفعول ثم **to + inf.**

ask	help	predict	would like
expect	mean	want	would prefer

-- أفعال يأتى بعدها (obj. + to + inf.) أو v-ing مع عدم وجود مفعول.

advise	allow	encourage	permit	recommend
--------	-------	-----------	--------	-----------

-- أفعال يأتى بعدها to + inf. أو v-ing بدون أى اختلاف فى المعنى:

start	begin	continue	intend
like	love	hate	prefer

ولكن عند وجود would أو 'd قبلها نستخدم to + inf.

would (like – love – prefer) to + inf.

-- أفعال يأتى بعدها to + inf. أو v-ing مع اختلاف واضح فى المعنى.

remember – forget	
to + inf.	v-ing
الحدث لم يتم	الحدث تم
stop	
to + inf.	v-ing
يتوقف لكى يقوم بالفعل	يتوقف عن القيام بالفعل

Practice...

Module (2) Language Question Bank

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. If we enough time, we would have the chance to win.
a) have b) had c) had had d) has
2. If there a fire, call the firemen at once.
a) is b) was c) had been d) are
3. more help, I could tell the teacher.
a) Needed b) Should I need c) Unless I need d) I should need
4. If you heat ice, it into water.
a) turned b) turns c) would turn d) would have turned
5. I will come to attend the meeting if
a) is necessary b) it necessary c) necessary d) was necessary
6. If we found a new company, we your help.
a) would need b) will need c) would have needed d) needed
7. We wouldn't get good marks if we didn't study hard, but we hard.
a) study b) studied c) will study d) didn't study
8. If he much time, he'll attend the party tonight.
a) has b) will have c) have d) had
9. Hurry up. If you run very fast, you the train.
a) would catch b) will catch c) won't catch d) would have caught
10. he to hurry, he would attend the first lecture ^{محاضرة}.
a) Had b) If c) Should d) Were
11. Sara seen us, she would have come and talked to us.
a) If b) Should c) Were d) Had
12. I had been with them, I wouldn't have enjoyed the beauty of the Red Sea.
a) Unless b) If c) Without d) In case
13. We the game if we'd had a few more minutes.
a) might have won b) could have been won c) would win d) will win
14. he studies hard, he'll be able to join the Faculty of Medicine.
a) Unless b) should c) If d) In case

15. If my watch right, I wouldn't have to fix it.
a) will be b) had been c) were d) is
16. Plants die if they enough water.
a) didn't get b) won't get c) wouldn't get d) don't get
17. Sara will phone me that is important for her.
a) on condition b) unless c) provide d) in case of
18. If there is a big problem, I usually for my teacher's advice.
a) will ask b) ask c) would ask d) asks
19. early to the company, the boss wouldn't be angry.
a) If he comes b) Unless he came
c) Had he come d) Were he to come
20. What she feel if she read this offensive email?
a) did b) does c) will d) would
21. If I enough money, I would buy a second-hand car.
a) has b) had c) have d) hadn't had
22. he to know the good news, he would jump to his feet.
a) Had b) Would c) Were d) If
23. Mona won't pass her exams being helped by her parents.
a) without b) in case of c) provided that d) unless
24. If I you a secret, would you promise not to tell anyone?
a) tell b) will tell c) told d) have told
25. If she were happy in her job, she looking for another one.
a) won't b) would be c) wouldn't be d) wasn't
26. I regret this used car. I need a lot of money to fix it.
a) buying b) to buy c) to buying d) buy
27. Rania plans her relatives next week.
a) to visit b) visiting c) to visiting d) visits
28. We'd really like on holiday, but we don't have enough money.
a) to going b) be going c) to go d) going
29. The criminal was seen to the man before disappearing.
a) talking b) to talking c) to talk d) talks
30. British Airways regrets the cancellation of Flight BA205 to Madrid.
a) announcing b) announce c) to announce d) announced

31. Students are recommended a lot before exams.
 a) revising b) to revising c) to revise d) that revise
32. I can't stand people loudly on the bus.
 a) chat b) chatting c) chatted d) to chat
33. My father doesn't allow anyone in his office.
 a) smoking b) smoke c) to smoking d) to smoke
34. I wouldn't recommend you at that hotel.
 a) stay b) staying c) to staying d) to stay
35. Ayman wishes he had studied for his exams. He regrets
 a) to study b) to studying c) studying d) not studying
36. When it is very hot, I suggest that we inside.
 a) stay b) to stay c) to staying d) staying
37. The joke was so funny that we couldn't help during the party.
 a) laugh b) laughs c) laughing d) to laugh
38. Would you like me to the club with you?
 a) going b) go c) to go d) to going
39. It is a holiday tomorrow, so we could go together.
 a) sailing b) to sailing c) to sail d) sail
40. Our national team is expected in the next World Cup finals.
 a) play b) playing c) to play d) to playing
41. Have you finished that book I lent you?
 a) read b) reads c) reading d) to read
42. Please, remember your friend before you sleep.
 a) to phone b) phone c) phoning d) phones
43. Moaaz felt exhausted as he has never been used to hard work.
 a) do b) did c) doing d) done
44. You'd better avoid friends with Ahmed whom you saw steal your money.
 a) to make b) making c) makes d) to making
45. I remember that man when I was nine.
 a) being met b) met c) to meet d) meeting
46. It's raining outside. Would you prefer in with us?
 a) to stay b) stay c) staying d) stays

47. If you feel faint, try your head between your knees.
 a) puts b) putting c) put d) to put
48. I always hope my students high marks.
 a) to get b) get c) got d) getting
49. The famous actor wore a cap and sunglasses to avoid by anyone.
 a) being recognized b) recognizing
 c) to recognize d) to be recognized
50. Nader wishes he had studied for his exams. He regrets
 a) to study b) to studying c) studying d) not studying

2 Rewrite the following sentences, using the words between brackets without changing the meaning of the sentences:

1. I advise you to find another job. (If)
2. Without playing well, they wouldn't win. (Unless)
3. If you come early, you will meet my brother. (coming)
4. He is poor, so he can't buy a house. (If ... rich)
5. Practice hard to win the match. (if)
6. She eats too much food. That's why she is very fat. (Unless)
7. If he stole the money, he would go to prison. (Were)
8. If she studied hard, she would get high marks. (Were)
9. But for his help, I wouldn't get high marks. (If it)
10. The more you study, the better marks you get. (If)
11. He mustn't repeat those mistakes. (avoid)
12. I'm looking forward to joining the Faculty of Engineering. (hope)
13. I didn't remember that I turned off the lights. (forgot)
14. Can you bring me that book? (Would you mind ...)
15. Alaa will help me carry my luggage. (promised)
16. Eman said she wouldn't eat anything. (refused)
17. Sara felt sorry that she failed the exam. (regretted)
18. Mona made a nice cheesecake. (finished)
19. Ali avoided answering the phone because he was busy working on his computer. (didn't want)
20. You shouldn't criticize your friends so much. (stop)

3 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. If water will boil, it turns into steam. (.....)
2. If people eats too much sugar, they get sick. (.....)
3. If it is raining tomorrow, we will stay home. (.....)
4. If she not studies hard, she won't pass the test. (.....)
5. If I be rich, I would buy a big house. (.....)
6. If he work more careful, he will finish the project. (.....)
7. If they studied harder, they will have passed the exam. (.....)
8. I would have seen him if I hurried. (.....)
9. Unless I am fit, I won't fail the tests. (.....)
10. Were she had more money, she would buy a new laptop. (.....)
11. I enjoy to watch documentaries about marine life. (.....)
12. The teacher made us to finish the assignment in class. (.....)
13. My parents don't let me to stay out late. (.....)
14. He stopped to smoke at work. It's forbidden there. (.....)
15. He promised helping me with my science project after school. (.....)
16. They decided not attending the optional lecture. (.....)
17. I miss to spend time with my friends from my old school. (.....)
18. She suggested to go to the new art exhibition on Friday. (.....)

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form (gerund or infinitive) of the verb in brackets:

1. She enjoys(read) novels in her free time.
2. They decided(travel) abroad next summer.
3. I can't stand(wait) in long lines.
4. He promised(help) me with my homework.
5. We finished(write) the report last night.
6. The teacher advised us(review) before the exam.
7. I suggested(go) to the museum on Friday.
8. She hopes(find) a good job after graduation.
9. They avoided(make) the same mistake again.
10. My parents encouraged me(join) the debate club.

Practice...

Module (2) Skills Question Bank

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Passage No. 1

It is a known fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of animals and their natural environment, and man's greed.

Industry has grown enormously, and it has become a common practice for factories to dispose of waste materials in streams and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modern agricultural methods include using pesticides, which control insects classified as pests but also destroy so many others that are not. An increase in population meant more buildings, resulting in the destruction of much of the countryside that provides shelter for wild animals. To satisfy man's selfish desires, the polar bear in North America is under threat, hunted by sportsmen.

Whales are killed for the oil and the food they yield. There are only a few species under threat. But the problem is receiving worldwide recognition, and some actions are being taken. For example, pollution in the River Thames has been greatly reduced, trading in some furs has been forbidden, and organizations like "Friends of the Earth" do valuable work in this field. We should take serious steps to conserve our environment and protect it from destruction.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Factories dispose of in streams and rivers.
a) gas b) waste c) oil d) animals
- The most suitable title for this passage would be ".....".
a) Wildlife in danger b) Increase in animal population
c) Agriculture d) Modern methods of hunting
- We should take serious steps to conserve our
a) polar bears b) food c) whales d) environment
- Pollution in the River Thames has greatly
a) increased b) developed c) decreased d) raised
- The increase in pollution leads to the of much of the countryside.
a) instruction b) ruin c) reconstruction d) construction

6. Pesticides can insects.

- a) kill b) fetch c) hide d) disappear

7. Now, trading in some furs has been

- a) allowed b) conserved c) banned d) demanded

Passage No. 2

Every year, about two million people visit Mount Rushmore, where the faces of four U.S. presidents were carved in granite by sculptor Gutzon Borglum and his son, the late Lincoln Borglum. The creation of the Rushmore Monument took 14 years—from 1927 to 1941—and nearly a million dollars. These were times when money was difficult to come by and many people were jobless. To move more than 40,000 tons of rock, Borglum hired laid-off workers from the closed-down mines in the Black Hills area. He taught these men to dynamite, drill, carve, and finish the granite. They were hanging in mid-air in specially devised chairs, which had many safety features. Borglum was proud of the fact that no workers were killed or severely injured during the years of blasting and carving.

During the carving, many changes in the original design had to be made to keep the carved heads free of large fissures that were uncovered. Borglum concocted a mixture of granite dust, white lead, and linseed oil to fill them. Every winter, water from melting snows gets into the fissures and expands as it freezes, making the fissures bigger. Consequently, every autumn maintenance work is done to refill the cracks. The repairers fix the monument with the same mixture that Borglum used to preserve this national monument for future generations.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This passage is mainly about

- a) the visitors to the Mount Rushmore Monument
b) the sculptor of the Mount Rushmore Monument
c) the creation of the Mount Rushmore Monument
d) how to repair national monuments

2. According to the passage, Borglum's son

- a) was a sculptor b) was a president
c) spent a million dollars d) was a miner

3. The underlined word "These" refers to the

- a) faces b) years c) workers d) dollars

4. The men who Borglum hired were
a) trained sculptors b) Black Hills volunteers
c) unemployed miners d) severely injured
5. The passage shows that
a) the heads are not as originally planned
b) the workers made mistakes when blasting
c) the cracks caused serious injuries
d) Borglum was not loyal to his presidents
6. Borglum's mixture for filling cracks was
a) very expensive b) bought by the Black Hills miners
c) invented by the sculptor himself d) not used after he died
7. Today, Mount Rushmore needs to be
a) polished for tourists b) restored during the winter
c) visited by people d) repaired periodically

Passage No. 3

Waking up early is like discovering a hidden treasure box full of benefits, and many people are attracted by the calm moments before the world wakes up. Early risers enjoy the peacefulness, using the time to plan their day, enjoy a good breakfast, and take a moment for personal thoughts. It's not just about quiet mornings; waking up early gives you extra time, perfect for finishing tasks, reading a favorite book, or playing outdoors before the day gets busy. But there's more magic to it!

Waking up early also gives you more energy. Imagine having a good night's sleep and waking up with the sunrise—it's like having a superhero boost for your day. Early morning became a special time for concentration and learning new things. In a way, waking up early reveals the beauty of nature; watching the sunrise, listening to the birds singing, and feeling the gentle morning breeze can make it a magical and inspiring experience. This choice isn't just about getting up early; it's about enjoying quiet moments, having extra time, feeling energized, being more focused, and feeling a strong connection with nature—a bit like having a superpower that makes every day a little brighter. Getting up with the sunrise is really cool.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. According to the passage, early rising is
a) useful b) harmful c) terrible d) horrible

2. What is the best time for learning new things?
 - a) Late afternoons.
 - b) Midnight.
 - c) Early mornings.
 - d) Midday.
3. From the passage, it is always when you get up early.
 - a) cold and wet
 - b) noisy and crowded
 - c) dark and depressing
 - d) quiet and cool
4. Early risers have time to finish their work.
 - a) no
 - b) less
 - c) much more
 - d) little
5. People who wake up early must have a lot of
 - a) meal
 - b) energy
 - c) books
 - d) birds
6. To get up early, you must
 - a) stay up all night
 - b) find a hidden treasure box
 - c) have a good night's sleep
 - d) reveal the beauty of nature
7. The main idea of the text is ".....".
 - a) Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise
 - b) Eating an early breakfast makes your body strong
 - c) Having a superpower makes every day a little brighter
 - d) All people have the habit of rising early in the morning

2 Translation:

1. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- We must reduce the environmental pollution by expanding the planting of trees and rationalizing the use of energy.

- (a) يجب أن نقلل من التلوث البيئي بالتوسع في زراعة الأشجار وترشيد استخدام الطاقة.
- (b) يستحسن أن نقلل من نسبة التلوث البيئي بالتوسع في زراعة الأشجار ومنع استخدام الطاقة.
- (c) يجب أن نحد من التلوث البيئي بالتوسع في زراعة النباتات وترشيد استخدام الطاقة.
- (d) يجب أن نقلل من نسبة التلوث البيئي بالتوسع في زراعة الأشجار وترشيد استخدام المياه.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يقوم العلماء بأبحاث عديدة للاستفادة القصوى من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة كالماء والرياح.

- a) Chemists do a lot of search to make full use of unrenovable power sources, like water and the wind.
- b) Scientists make lots of research to have a proper use of renewable sources, like water and the wind.
- c) Experts stand up with much research to make full use of renewable energy sources, like water and air.
- d) Scientists do a lot of research to make full use of renewable energy sources, like water and the wind.

2. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- It isn't impossible for a person to achieve their ambitions if they have patience and a strong will.

- (a) ليس مستحيلًا على المرء أن يحقق طموحاته إذا ما تحلى بالصبر والإرادة.
 (b) من المستحيل على الأفراد أن يحققوا آمالهم إذا ما تحلوا بالصبر والإرادة القوية.
 (c) ليس من المستحيل على المرء أن يحقق أهدافه إذا ما تحلى بالقوة والإرادة والعزيمة.
 (d) ليس من المستحيل على المرء أن يحقق طموحاته إذا ما تحلى بالصبر والإرادة القوية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- تهتم الدولة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بالطفل فهي تقدم له كل سبل الرعاية الممكنة لكي ينمو لائقًا صحيًا وعقليًا.

- a) The state is greatly interested in the child. It offers him all possible means of care so that he can grow healthily and mentally fat.
 b) The state is greatly interested at the child. It offers them all possible means of cure so that he can grow healthy and mentally fit.
 c) The state is greatly interested in the child. It offers them all possible means of care so that they can grow healthy and mentally fit.
 d) The government is greatly interested in the children. It serves them some probable means of care and that they able to grow healthily and mentally fit.

3. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The Egyptian satellite channels have achieved successes and achievements, which surpassed all expectations.

- (a) لم تحقق القنوات الفضائية المصرية نجاحات وإنجازات كما كان متوقعًا.
 (b) حققت القنوات الفضائية المصرية نجاحات وإنجازات فاقت كل التوقعات.
 (c) حققت القنوات الفضائية المصرية الناجحة إنجازات فاقت كل التنبؤات.
 (d) حققت القنوات الفضائية المصرية نجاحا وإنجازات تفوق كل الاعتقادات.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- زيادة الاستثمارات في مجالات النشاط الاقتصادي المختلفة هي مفتاح النمو والتقدم.

- a) The rise of investments in different fields economic activity is the key to wealth and progress.
 b) The increase of investments in different fields of economic activity is the key to growth and progress.
 c) Increase of investments in difference fields economic activity the key of growth and progress.
 d) The increase of investments in different fields of economic activity are the key of growth and stability.

3 Write an essay of about (120-150) words on the following:

- 1. With modern technology, life has become easier and more comfortable. Discuss and explain.**

- 2. A friend in need is a friend indeed. Do you have a friend who's ready to support you all the time?**

- 3. Ways to stop rumors from spreading.**

Practice...

Cumulative Test Units 3 & 4

Choose the **TWO (2)** correct answers from the **FIVE (5)** options:

1. I appreciate your honesty in this situation. The antonyms of the word "honesty" are
a) deceit b) smartness c) stupidity d) truthfulness e) dishonesty
2. This approach helps slow the depletion of natural resources. The antonyms of the word "depletion" are
a) exhaustion b) reduction c) increase d) growth e) pride

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. A/An person is someone you can always depend on.
a) unreliable b) foreign c) selfish d) reliable
4. Spreading can cause a lot of harm and misunderstandings.
a) truth b) facts c) misinformation d) news
5. He fell into a when he clicked on the malicious **ضار** link.
a) trick b) box c) trap d) hole
6. Water and forests are examples of natural that we need to protect.
a) products b) materials c) resources d) assets
7. Solar and wind power are examples of, which are a key part of our future energy plans.
a) fossil fuels b) non-renewable energy
c) nuclear energy d) renewable energy
8. The of natural resources can cause long-term environmental damage.
a) growth b) depletion c) restoration d) conservation
9. If he more free time, he would practice judo. It is his dream.
a) has b) had c) have d) had had
10. If I were a doctor, I would help you, but unfortunately, I
a) wasn't b) am not c) can't be d) haven't
11. your help, I wouldn't pass my exams.
a) If b) Unless c) Without d) In case of
12. It's time to go We need lots of things before the school starts.
a) shopping b) to shop c) shop d) to shopping
13. Although he is the weakest competitor, he managed the mountain in 43 minutes.
a) climbing b) to climb c) to climbing d) climbed
14. I imagine the coach of the team and I am setting the plan.
a) to be b) being c) to being d) that being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are still some scientists who doubt that there is a link between smoking and cancer. So, smokers shout loudly that people who don't smoke should keep quiet. They claim that smoking brings psychological benefit. It relieves the stresses of everyday life and provides constant consolation. For example, people smoke when taking exams, being worried, and being bereaved. It is also associated with good living, and it makes social contact easier. It is very enjoyable. You feel relaxed when you sit with a cup of coffee or after a meal. It's foolish to ban smoking after so many hundreds of years. Tobacco tax is a very important source of income to many countries, like the U.S.A., Rhodesia, Greece, and Turkey. People should be free to decide what they like and not be bullied by governments. Banning is undemocratic. The tobacco industry spends vast sums on medical research. Over and above, improved filters have been introduced by Columbia University. As a result, it is now possible to smoke and enjoy smoking without danger. This is nonsense and groundless باطل. All cigarette advertising should be banned, and anti-smoking campaigns should be conducted. As a beginning, smoking should be banned in public places like theaters, cinemas, and restaurants. Advertisements should warn people, especially young people, of the fatal consequences of smoking. Warning words and a death's head should be included in every packet that is sold. On TV, pictures of real smokers coughing up their lungs early in the morning should be shown. Governments should protect us from ourselves.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 15. The passage clearly shows that**
- a) all scientists acknowledge the harm of smoking
 - b) scientists differ about the effect of smoking
 - c) all scientists insist on anti-smoking measures
 - d) smoking brings psychological benefits
- 16. Governments should protect us from ourselves because**
- a) we are certainly too weak to uproot habits
 - b) the tobacco industry is honest and useful
 - c) tobacco should be banned altogether
 - d) banning smoking is undemocratic
- 17. The tobacco industry is only useful when**
- a) it encourages people to smoke
 - b) it spends vast sums on medical research
 - c) smoking brings psychological benefits
 - d) it protects us from ourselves

18. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
 a) smoking b) taking exams c) good living d) social contact
19. Smokers think that they can now enjoy smoking without danger because of
 a) smoking is very good for health b) the new improved filters
 c) the good social contact d) the medical research
20. According to smokers, it is to ban smoking.
 a) democratic b) sociable c) undemocratic d) legal
21. is considered a source of income to many countries.
 a) Smoke b) Improved filters c) Tobacco waste d) Tobacco tax
22. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:**

– يجب أن يتسلح الشباب بالعلم والصبر لكي يتمكنوا من تحقيق طموحاتهم وأحلامهم في المستقبل.

- a) Young people should be armed with science and patience to be able to believe their ambitions and dreams in the future.
 b) The youth should be armed by science and patience to be able to achieve their ambitions and dreams in the future.
 c) The youth should be armed with science and patience to be able to achieve their ambitions and dreams in the present.
 d) The youth should be armed with science and patience to be able to achieve their ambitions and hopes in the future.
23. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:**
 - The large-scale production of machines and automobiles has had harmful effects on the environment.

(a) إن الإنتاج واسع النطاق للآلات والناقلات قد خلف آثارًا ضارة على البيئة.

(b) إن الإنتاج واسع النطاق للآلات والسيارات قد خلف آثارًا ضارة على البيئة.

(c) إن الإنتاج محدود النطاق للآلات والسيارات قد خلف آثارًا صادمة على البيئة.

(d) إن الإنتاج واسع النطاق للأدوات والسيارات قد يتجنب آثارًا ضارة على البيئة.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think the fish did not jump out of the water?
2. What lessons about life and struggle can be learned from Santiago's experience?
3. How does Santiago find strength in memories and dreams?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

**"With modern technology, life has become easier and more comfortable."
 Discuss and explain.**

.....

.....

.....

A

Vocabulary

Unit (5)

أهم مفردات الوحدة الخامسة

ability (n)	القدرة	express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن	peer (n)	قرين / زميل
activities (n)	أنشطة	fluency (n)	فصاحة /طلاقة اللغة	perspective (n)	وجهة نظر
adjust (v) (ed)	يعدل / يتكيف	fluent (adj)	فصيح / طليق (في اللغة)	problem-solving	حل المشاكل
afraid (adj)	خائف	foreign (adj)	أجنبي	professional (adj)	محترف
anxious (adj)	قلق	global (adj)	عالمي	proficiency (n)	كفاءة / إتقان
appreciate (v) (d)	يقدر	greet (v) (ed)	يحيى	program (n)	برنامج
benefit (n) (ed)	فائدة	hesitate (v) (d)	يتردد	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم
broad (adj)	واسع / عريض	horizon (n)	أفق	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
collaborate (v) (d)	يتعاون	imaginary (adj)	خيالي	relatives (n)	أقارب
competition (n)	مسابقة	impatient (adj)	غير صبور	remain (v) (ed)	يظل
complicated (adj)	معقد	informal (adj)	غير رسمي	skills (n)	مهارات
confident (adj)	واثق	international (adj)	دولي	smile (v) (d)	يبتسم / ابتسامة
connected (adj)	متربط / متصل	leisure time	وقت الفراغ	solve (v) (d)	يحل
consistent (adj)	مستمر / متسق	locals (n)	السكان المحليين	struggle (v) (d) (n)	يكافح / كفاح
contraction (n)	اختصار	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى	subtitles (n)	ترجمة الشاشة (ترجمة الأفلام)
critical thinking	تفكير نقدي	memorize (v) (d)	يحفظ	target (n) (v) (ed)	هدف / يستهدف
dedicate (v) (d)	يكرس	memory (n)	ذاكرة	time-consuming (adj)	مستهلك للوقت
effective (adj)	فعال	multicultural (adj)	متعدد الثقافات	tolerance (n)	التسامح / تقبل الآخر
embarrassed (adj)	محرج	multiple (adj)	متعدد	useful (adj)	مفيد
enriching (adj)	مثمر / مفيد	native language	اللغة الأم	worldview (n)	نظرة عالمية
excited (adj)	مثار	nervous (adj)	متوتر	worldwide (adv) (adj)	عالمياً / عالمي
expand (v) (ed)	يتوسع / يتمدد	opportunity (n)	فرصة		
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح / يفسر	pass (v) (ed)	يمر		

Unit (6)

أهم مفردات الوحدة السادسة

analysis (n)	تحليل	employment (n)	توظيف	method (n)	طريقة
analytics (n)	تحليلات	engagement (n)	ارتباط / اشتباك	modify (v) (ied)	يعدل
application (n)	طلب توظيف	essential (adj)	أساسي / ضروري	monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب
approach (n)	مفهوم / نهج	event (n)	حدث	multiple (adj)	متعدد
assessment (n)	تقييم	examination (n)	اختبار	networking (n)	تواصل
assistant (n)	مساعد	experience (n)	خبرة	opportunity (n)	فرصة
association (n)	منظمة / جمعية	feature (n)	خاصية / ميزة	passion (n)	عاطفة
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	footprint (n)	بصمة	performance (n)	أداء
attitude (n)	اتجاه / شعور / موقف	format (n)	شكل / تنسيق	platform (n)	منصة
behavioral (adj)	سلوكي	former (adj)	سابق	polished (adj)	مصقول / مُتَقَن / جذاب
candidate (n)	مرشح	generic (adj)	عام	position (n)	وظيفة / منصب
challenging (adj)	صعب / متحدِّ	ground (n)	أرض / أرضية	presence (n)	حضور
channel (n)	قناة	highlight (v) (ed)	يظهر / يبرز	professional (adj)	محترف
check-ins (n)	اجتماعات متابعة	hire (v) (d)	يوظف	profile (n)	ملف الشخصي
clear-headed (adj)	صافي الذهن	hunt (n) (v) (ed)	بحث / يبحث	promotional (adj)	ترويجي
colleague (n)	زميل	illustrator (n)	رسام	recommendation (n)	توصية
combine (v) (d)	يخلط / يمزج	implementing (n)	تنفيذ / تطبيق	relationship (n)	علاقة
common ground (n)	أرضية مشتركة	impressive (adj)	مؤثر / مُبهر	relevant (adj)	ذات صلة
competitor (n)	منافس	independently (adv)	بشكل مستقل	response (n)	استجابة
connection (n)	علاقة	innovative (adj)	مبدع / مبتكر	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
content (n)	محتوى	internship (n)	فترة التدريب	resume (n)	سيرة ذاتية
coordinator (n)	منسق (شخص)	interview (n)	مقابلة / حوار	round (n)	جولة
crisis (n)	أزمة	involve (v) (d)	يُشرك	salary (n)	راتب شهري
customize (v) (d)	يخصص	keyword (n)	كلمة مفتاحية	sales (n)	مبيعات
deadline (n)	الموعد النهائي	long-term (adj)	طويل المدى	sample (n)	عينة / نموذج
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	maintain (v) (ed)	يحافظ على / يواصل	schedule (n)	جدول مواعيد
department (n)	قسم	management (n)	إدارة	section (n)	قسم
determine (v) (d)	يحدد	marketing (n)	التسويق	seek (v)	يبحث عن
employer (n)	صاحب / جهة العمل	mentor (n)	مرشد	self-reflection (n)	التأمل الذاتي

separate (adj) منفصل	strength (n) قوة / نقاط قوة	up-to-date (adj) حديث
silos (n) صوامع (فرق منفصلة)	submit (v) (ted) يرسل	updated (adj) مُحدَّث
specific (adj) محدد	traditional (adj) تقليدي	visual (adj) بصري
stakeholders (n) الجهات المعنية	transform (v) (ed) يحول / يتحول	weakness (n) ضعف / نقاط ضعف
strategy (n) استراتيجية	trends (n) اتجاهات	

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

أهم التعبيرات والمصطلحات وحروف الجر بالوحدتين

achieve goals يحقق الأهداف	give advice يعطي نصيحة	make friends يكون صداقات
adjust to يتأقلم / يتكيف مع	give advice about يعطي النصيحة بشأن	make or break your chances يُنجح أو يُفشل فرصك
afraid of خائف بشأن	give way to يفسح المجال لـ	meet a tight deadline يلتزم بموعد نهائي صعب
apply to يتقدم بطلب لـ	hesitate to يتردد أن	miss a flight يفوته رحلة طيران
assist with يساعد في	important for مهم لـ	open the door to يفتح مجاًلاً أمام
by% بنسبة	in short باختصار	participate in يشارك في
communicate with يتواصل مع	in the long run على المدى البعيد	perspective on وجهة نظر عن
connect with يتصل بـ	join a class يلتحق بصف دراسي	promote respect يعزز الاحترام
contact information معلومات الاتصال	join a competition يشارك في مسابقة	related to مرتبط بـ
contribute to يساهم في	keep a positive attitude يحافظ على موقف إيجابي	remain/stay motivated يبقى محفزاً
encourage ... to يشجع ... على	key to مفتاح لـ (عنصر ضروري / مهم لـ)	responsible for مسئول عن
feel sure of يتأكد من	kind to لطيف مع	turn into يتحول إلى
focus on يركز على	land the right opportunity يفتنم الفرصة المناسبة	work smoothly يعمل بسلاسة
gain a skill يكتسب مهارة	make contact يقوم بالتواصل	

Special job Collocations

career coach	مدرب / مستشار مهني	dream job	وظيفة الأحلام	job market	سوق العمل
career goals	أهداف مهنية	industry event	فعاليات في مجال العمل	job postings	إعلانات الوظائف
cross-department project	مشاريع مشتركة بين الأقسام	job description	وصف الوظيفة	job seekers	الباحثون عن عمل
digital footprint	البصمة الرقمية	job hunter	الباحث عن عمل	video interview	مقابلات فيديو

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
foreign	أجنبي	alien/offshore/strange		native/local/national	ساكن أصلي / محلي / وطني
hesitate	يتردد	balk/waffle		continue/persist	يستمر / يصبر
broad	واسع / عريض	wide/vast/immense		narrow/limited	ضيق / محدود
improvement	تحسين	development/enhancement		deterioration/decline	تدهور / انهيار
effective	فعال	effectual/efficient		ineffective/ineffectual	غير فعال
impatient	غير صبور	restless/hasty		patient/calm	صابور / هادئ
accidentally	بشكل عارض	unintentionally/by mistake/coincidentally		intentionally/deliberately	بشكل متعمد
worried	قلق	anxious/nervous		calm/relaxed/unworried	هادئ / مسترخ / غير قلق
joy	فرح / سعادة	happiness/delight/pleasure		sadness/sorrow/misery	حزن / أسف / بؤس
expand	يوسع	enlarge/extend		shrink/contract	يقلص
impressive	مؤثر / مبهّر	remarkable/awesome		ordinary/dull	عادي / مممل
innovative	مبتكر	pioneering/creative		conventional/traditional	تقليدي
professional	مهني	expert/skilled		amateur/unskilled	هاوي / غير ماهر
specific	محدد	precise/exact		vague/general	غامض / عام
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/customary		modern/innovative	حديث / مبتكر
updated	محدث	modernized/current		outdated/old	قديم
skilled	ماهر	talented/experienced		unskilled/inexperienced	غير موهوب / ليس لديه خبرة
achievements	إنجازات	success/accomplishments		failure/setback	فشل / تراجع

Notes

on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات التالية:

1	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
	gradually (adv)	تدريجياً
2	memory (n)	ذاكرة (اسم لا يعد)
	memorial (n)	ذكري (اسم يعد)
3	imaginary (adj)	خيالي (غير حقيقي)
	imaginative (adj)	مبدع
4	process	عملية (خطوات تنفيذ / عمل شيء)
	operation	عملية (جراحية أو عسكرية)
5	trip	رحلة قصيرة بغرض العمل أو المتعة
	journey	رحلة طويلة
	voyage	رحلة بحرية
	flight	رحلة طيران
	hike	رحلة سيراً على الأقدام
6	abroad	في الخارج / خارج البلاد
	aboard	على متن (طائرة / سفينة / قطار)
	broad	واسع / عريض
	board	- لوحة / لوح (خشب أو سطح) - مجلس / هيئة إدارية - يصعد (على متن وسيلة نقل) كفعل

My daughter studied **abroad** for two years.

All passengers are now **aboard** the plane.

The river is very **broad**, so it is dangerous to swim here.

- Our teacher wrote our names on the white **board**.

- Randa is a member of the school **board**.

- We will **board** the train after ten minutes only.

7	later	فيما بعد / لاحقًا
	latter	الأخير / الثاني
8	dream of	يحلم بـ (أمنية للمستقبل)
	dream about	يحلم بـ (أثناء النوم)
9	organization	منظمة (تضم مجموعة من الناس أو الشركات أو البلاد تم إنشاؤها لغرض محدد)
	association	منظمة / اتحاد (مجموعة من الأشخاص في مهنة أو رياضة أو نشاط لتمثيل الأعضاء) بشكل رسمي
10	department	قسم (جزء من مؤسسة كبيرة مثل الحكومة أو الأعمال أو الجامعة)
	section	قسم (جزء من شيء مختلف بشكل واضح ومنفصل عن الأجزاء الأخرى)
11	channel	قناة (تلفزيونية / مائية / اتصال)
	canal	قناة صناعية (من صنع الإنسان)
12	software	البرمجيات (برامج وتطبيقات التي تشغل الجهاز)
	hardware	الأجهزة المادية (شاشة / ماوس .. الخ)

Practice...

Module (3) Vocabulary Question Bank

Unit 5

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. I found some difficulties while dealing with the new app. The synonyms of word "difficulties" are and
a) facilities b) mistakes c) holes d) hardships e) complications
2. The management team is planning to promote public relations. The antonyms of the word "promote" are
a) advance b) hinder c) discourage d) advocate e) change
3. To improve your English, you should practice speaking regularly. The synonyms of "regularly" are and
a) never b) rarely c) seldom d) frequently e) routinely
4. She has an international team with colleagues from different countries. The opposites of the word "international" are and
a) national b) local c) foreign d) global e) worldwide
5. The price of the ticket will include lunch and drinks. The antonyms of "include" here are and
a) contain b) exclude c) involve d) omit e) cover

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. Learning languages is a great way to understand new cultures.
a) clear b) foreign c) regular d) national
7. It's important to be proud of your language and heritage.
a) subtitle b) foreign c) native d) horizon
8. She loves traveling to learn about different and traditions.
a) climates b) histories c) geographies d) cultures
9. The new job will give you many to grow your career.
a) opportunities b) relatives c) obstacles d) problems
10. The company is its business into new international markets.
a) changing b) closing c) making d) expanding
11. Successful teamwork requires of different opinions and working styles.
a) indifference b) hostility c) tolerance d) ignorance
12. She practices her piano skills to prepare for the concert.
a) rarely b) occasionally c) irregularly d) regularly

Unit 6

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. We live in a modern world where technology is constantly changing.
The opposites of "modern" are and
a) up-to-date b) ancient c) contemporary
d) old-fashioned e) new
2. She was worried about her final exam results. The antonyms of "worried" here are and
a) anxious b) calm c) concerned
d) relaxed e) nervous
3. The company expanded its business to many new countries. The synonyms of "expanded" here are and
a) shrunk b) enlarged c) reduced
d) limited e) extended
4. To be a good manager, you need to trust your team to work independently. The antonyms of "independently" are and
a) dependently b) separately c) autonomously
d) collaboratively e) alone
5. She wanted to make a good impression on her new boss. The synonyms of "impression" are and
a) effect b) impact c) disinterest
d) indifference e) neglect

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6. for a job can be a challenging process that requires a lot of effort and patience.
a) Avoiding b) Hunting c) Ignoring d) Hiring
7. technology has made communication faster and more convenient than ever before.
a) Modern b) Ancient c) Old-fashioned d) Past
8. She made a strong during her job interview.
a) opinion b) impression c) mistake d) feeling
9. I have a/an for a new job next Tuesday.
a) meeting b) assembly c) interview d) discussion
10. the job market requires you to understand current trends and opportunities.
a) Navigating b) Avoiding c) Escaping d) Researching
11. The market has become highly competitive, with many qualified candidates for each position.
a) entertainment b) employment c) sports d) production

12. The global job is becoming more competitive every year.
a) market b) scene c) environment d) landscape
13. The way companies hire has been dramatically over the past decade.
a) exchanged b) transformed c) stopped d) unchanged
14. A resume focuses on your work history and skills.
a) traditional b) modern c) digital d) report
15. His success was due to his hard work and determination.
a) rarely b) slightly c) hardly d) largely
16. Online job allow you to apply for jobs from anywhere in the world.
a) forums b) platforms c) websites d) groups
17. Job must be prepared to stand out from the crowd.
a) seekers b) viewers c) employers d) advisors
18. The lawyer gave a performance that impressed the judges.
a) polished b) rough c) weak d) careless
19. There were over 500 for the position.
a) candidates b) people c) seekers d) applications
20. Be careful what you post online, as your digital can be seen by potential employers.
a) impression b) assessment c) footprint d) image
21. She is a member of several professional to network with others.
a) groups b) associations c) societies d) clubs
22. Avoid sending a cover letter; you should customize it for each job.
a) unique b) specific c) generic d) special
23. You should always your resume to fit the requirements of the job you are applying for.
a) modify b) keep c) change d) apply
24. His to solving problems is very creative.
a) struggle b) solution c) network d) approach
25. The project will several departments working together.
a) include b) involve c) contain d) consist
26. Can you be more about what kind of books you like to read?
a) specific b) broad c) general d) unclear
27. A positive attitude is a/an part of finding a job.
a) unimportant b) non-essential c) essential d) trivial
28. He is a highly candidate for the position.
a) qualified b) updated c) positive d) challenging
29. She sent her resume to of companies before she got a job.
a) multiple b) many c) dozens d) much
30. Your towards your work can determine your success.
a) tradition b) feeling c) opportunity d) attitude

Unit 5

B

Language

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد

1. **Countable nouns:** a book, an egg, a camel → books, eggs, camels
2. **Uncountable nouns:** light, news, cloth, meat, soap, homework, petrol, music, advice, oil, food, information, luggage, bread, cake, time, experience, fish, etc.

- يجب حفظ الأسماء التي لا تُعد حفظًا جيدًا، مع ملاحظة أن الأسماء التي لا تُعد تعامل معاملة المفرد.

هناك تعبيرات للكمية يجب معرفتها جيدًا وهي كالتالي:

- في الجملة المثبتة نستخدم:

some – a lot of – a few – a little

some – a lot of

a few

a little

تأتي مع الاسم الذي يعد والذي لا يعد.

مع اسم يعد.

مع اسم لا يعد.

- أما في الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية فإننا نستخدم:

any – many – much

any

many

much

تأتي مع الاسم الذي يعد والذي لا يعد.

تأتي مع الاسم الذي يعد.

تأتي مع الاسم الذي لا يعد.

هناك تعبيرات للتجزئة يجب مراجعتها جيدًا:

a bit of/a piece of cloth/ a sheet of paper/ a slice of meat/ a loaf of bread/
a bottle of milk/ a jar of jam/ a tube of toothpaste/ a bar of chocolate/soap

Unit 6

Articles

1

A – An

- تُستخدم (a/an) مع الاسم المفرد الذي يعد (له مفرد وجمع) مع ملاحظة التالي:

• اسم مفرد يُعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن + a

• an + اسم مفرد يُعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك

- تُستخدم قبل وظيفة الشخص.

• My father is a teacher.

- تُستخدم قبل الجنسنيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد.

• I met an American boy.

- مع الأعداد الآتية والأجزاء.

a hundred – a thousand – a million – a half – a quarter – a fifth

تُستخدم **the** مع الحالات الآتية :

the sun

- مع الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها في الكون.

the oldest

- مع صفات التفضيل.

- مع أسماء البلاد إذا كانت تحتوي على هذه الكلمات **republic – state – union – kingdom** وإذا كانت مختصرة.

- **the Arab Republic of Egypt**
- **the U.S.A. – the U.K. – the A.R.E.**

- مع بعض الأماكن (عادة أماكن التسلية والترفيه) مثل **the cinema**.

- مع أسماء الأنهار والبحار والمحيطات وسلاسل الجبال الجمع، والكتب المقدسة والصحارى ومجموعة الجزر الجمع، والصحف.

- **the River Nile – the Red Sea – the Pacific Ocean – the Alps**

- مع الاسم الذى تم ذكره من قبل.

- I met a young boy in the street. **The boy** was crying.

- مع الآلات الموسيقية مع الأفعال (**play – listen to – learn – teach**).

- I like to play **the piano**.

the poor

- قبل الصفة للإشارة إلى الجمع (الفقراء مثلاً).

the head

- قبل أجزاء الجسم البشرى.

- **the future – in the morning**.

- قبل أجزاء الزمن واليوم.

- مع الاختراعات والاكتشافات.

- **The telephone** is so useful.

- عند التحدث عن فصيلة الحيوان.

- **The lion** is strong.

- مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والمناخ.

- **the government – the police – the United Nations – the climate – the weather**

- مع جمل المقارنة (كلما كلما).

- **The more you study, the better marks you will get.**

- قبل بعض الكلمات مثل :

- first – second – third – only – last
- Mohamed was **the last** one to arrive.

الحالات الآتية لا يأتي قبلها أى أداة:

- عند التحدث عن الجمع بوجه عام.

• **Children** are sometimes noisy.

- الأسماء التى لا تُعد والكميات ومنها:

• oil – water – milk – money – meat – juice

(١) أسماء الأطعمة والشراب

• English – Arabic – science – history – physics

(٢) المواد الدراسية

• glass – wood – gold – silver – paper

(٣) المواد الخام بوجه عام

• football – tennis – basketball – volleyball – swimming

(٤) الألعاب الرياضية مثل

• advice – freedom – love – sadness – happiness

(٥) الأسماء المعنوية بوجه عام

• breakfast – lunch – dinner – supper

(٦) الوجبات بوجه عام

• **Cairo** is the capital of **Egypt**.

- أسماء المدن والدول.

- أسماء الجزر المفردة والجبال المفردة والبحيرات المفردة.

• **Lake Nasser** – **Everest** – **Malta**

• **King Lear** – **Professor Zewail** – **President Nasser**

- الكلمات المتبوعة باسم علم.

- الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذى أنشئت من أجله.

• school – bed – hospital – prison – court – church – mosque – college – work

• I go to **work** every day.

Practice...

Module (3) Language Question Bank

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I'm making pasta, but I don't have olive oil. Can you buy some?
a) many b) any c) a few d) few
2. Although the movie was popular, people understood its confusing ending.
a) a little b) little c) few d) a few
3. We have time before the train arrives; let's get a coffee quickly.
a) a few b) a little c) few d) many
4. How students in your class have traveled abroad?
a) much b) many c) little d) a lot of
5. She has friends; she's very popular and sociable.
a) a little b) little c) a lot of d) any
6. I need information about the course schedule before I register.
a) a few b) some c) many d) few
7. There are too paintings in this gallery to see in one day.
a) much b) many c) a lot of d) little
8. He has patience for people who are always late.
a) many b) a few c) little d) a little
9. Would you like milk in your tea?
a) a few b) some c) any d) many
10. Unfortunately, help was available after the storm, so people had to manage on their own.
a) a little b) little c) a few d) few
11. I have books by that author if you'd like to borrow one.
a) a little b) a few c) any d) much
12. How money do you need to buy the new video game?
a) many b) much c) some d) a few
13. There are good restaurants in this town; I can't make up my mind!
a) a lot of b) a little c) much d) any
14. We had problems with the software, but the IT department fixed them quickly.
a) much b) a little c) a few d) any
15. Is there homework for tomorrow?
a) many b) any c) a few d) few

16. She speaks Spanish, so she can order the food in the restaurant.
 a) a few b) a little c) few d) many
17. of my classmates are planning to study medicine at university.
 a) A little b) A lot c) Lot d) Little
18. There's too noise in here; I can't concentrate on my work.
 a) many b) much c) a few d) few
19. We have vegetables. We need to go to the supermarket.
 a) a little b) little c) few d) any
20. Could I have water, please? I'm very thirsty.
 a) a few b) some c) any d) many
21. Math my favorite subject. I always love to solve problems.
 a) is b) are c) was d) were
22. There aren't opportunities for students in this small town.
 a) much b) many c) some d) few
23. Would you like help with your homework?
 a) some b) any c) few d) little
24. There isn't water left in the bottle.
 a) any b) some c) few d) a few
25. I met interesting people at the international conference.
 a) any b) a little c) a few d) much
26. When I was in Cairo, I always walked along Nile.
 a) the/a b) no article/a
 c) an/the d) no article/the
27. I'm teacher of English and I often listen to the radio in English.
 a) the/no article b) a/no article
 c) a/the d) no article/no article
28. What do you know about?
 a) an ant b) ants c) the ants d) ant
29. I hope exam we are going to have tomorrow will be easy.
 a) no article b) the c) an d) a
30. It is a fact that fear is universal weakness.
 a) an b) no article c) the d) a
31. have made traveling easier and more comfortable.
 a) The planes b) Planes
 c) The plane d) All mentioned
32. The best thing to drink when you are thirsty is water not fizzy drinks.
 a) no article b) a c) an d) the

33. They have a lovely house in El-Alamein. It's near coast.
a) the b) a c) an d) no article
34. There is a boy at the door. I think he is boy from the market.
a) the b) a c) an d) no article
35. Look at woman over there! She is a famous actress.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
36. Nasra was wearing amazing dress when she met him.
a) the b) no article c) an d) a
37. The judge sent the murderer to prison for 20 years.
a) a b) the c) an d) no article
38. My brother works as carpenter. He is very clever.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
39. house where I live was partly destroyed by an earthquake.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article
40. tourism is very important for all of us.
a) The b) A c) No article d) An
41. Laila graduated from University of Mansoura.
a) an b) a c) the d) no article
42. Secondary school students in some countries don't have to wear uniform.
a) some b) one c) a d) an
43. My father always tells me valuable information.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
44. Two hundred meters long distance for young swimmers.
a) are b) are a c) is d) is a
45. was an amazing invention for people who liked listening to music.
a) One radio b) Radios c) The radio d) This radio
46. There is black rug on the floor.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
47. Mr. Hassan is better of the two teachers.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
48. England and France are European countries.
a) a b) an c) the d) no article
49. lunch we had together was delicious.
a) The b) A c) No article d) An
50. I think lions are very dangerous and can't be domestic at all.
a) a b) an c) the d) no articles

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1. I don't have much friends in my class. (.....)
2. There isn't many water in the bottle. (.....)
3. She gave me an advice about studying. (.....)
4. Are there much chairs in the hall? (.....)
5. He doesn't have some money to buy the book. (.....)
6. We need to buy a bread from the shop. (.....)
7. There were much people waiting at the station. (.....)
8. She didn't do many homework last night. (.....)
9. Could I have some informations about the trip? (.....)
10. They don't have some furniture in their new house. (.....)
11. She bought an book from the bookstore yesterday. (.....)
12. We saw a elephants at the zoo. (.....)
13. I want to be the engineer when I grow up. (.....)
14. He is studying at an University of Oxford. (.....)
15. They went to the Mount Everest last year. (.....)
16. She always listens to the music when she studies. (.....)
17. We had a lunch at school yesterday. (.....)
18. My father works as an teacher in a secondary school. (.....)
19. There was the beautiful weather in Alexandria last week. (.....)
20. She doesn't usually drink a milk before bed. (.....)

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**Passage No. 1**

People like using plastic because they think it is great. Here's why: it is very adjustable; you can change its shape and it is very light. It is also very cheap. And it is attractive you can have it in any color. But it causes many problems. Because it's cheap, people throw plastic things away. On top of this, a lot of packaging contains plastic. Parts of your fast food meals and packets of certain types of potato chips are made from plastic. Why is this a problem? Well, it is homely; it is not nice to look at. However, one of the main problems is that the plastic is not biodegradable قابل للتحلل. It lives for many, many years. It's a particular problem in the seas and oceans. It breaks up into small pieces and marine life, from whales to the smallest fish, eats these plastic particles. It is poisonous to them. Besides, when humans eat fish and seafood, they are also ingesting these plastic particles. Bigger pieces of plastic, like bottles, can cause problems if larger fish, for example dolphins, swallow them. They block up the dolphin's stomach and this can kill the dolphins.

We must stop making so much plastic and putting it into our environment. Stop and think before you buy plastic and stop and think twice before you throw plastic things away!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**1. What do people think of plastic?**

- a) People hate plastic and they think it is nasty.
- b) People love plastic, they think it is great!
- c) People love plastic although it is ugly.
- d) People hate plastic as it isn't useful.

2. What does the underlined word "adjustable" mean?

- a) Cheap.
- b) Poisonous.
- c) Flexible.
- d) Expensive.

3. Why do people love plastic?

- a) It is very cheap.
- b) It is attractive.
- c) You can have it in any color.
- d) All of these.

4. Which one of the following isn't a problem caused by plastic?
- a) Plastic is very flexible and you can change its shape.
 - b) People throw plastic things away.
 - c) People don't re-use plastic things as it is cheap.
 - d) Plastic is not biodegradable.
5. Which problem can plastic bottles cause to the dolphins?
- a) The dolphins eat them and become fat.
 - b) They block up the dolphin's stomach.
 - c) The dolphins die after eating them.
 - d) The dolphins spend much time eating them.
6. What must we do to avoid the problem of plastic?
- a) We must stop making so much plastic.
 - b) We mustn't eat fish.
 - c) We should continue to buy plastic.
 - d) All of these.
7. What is the best title for the passage? - ".....".
- a) We can't live without plastic
 - b) The advantages of plastic
 - c) The ugly fact of plastic
 - d) Plastic is fantastic

Passage No. 2

We notice that there is a lot more violence against children nowadays. Violence is sometimes caused because people grow up seeing it openly displayed. A lot of children are bullied at school. Bullying is very negative and creates major problems for our society. In fact, it does destroy many people's lives. Even worse, kids could be hurt or seriously injured if the bullying gets extreme. It can lead to depression, isolation, suicide, emotional problems, low confidence and stress. Additionally, the bully can have a higher chance of joining in criminal activities. Bullying at the hands of students may make children afraid to go to school and can negatively affect their ability to learn. So, the best way to address bullying is to stop it before it starts. Also, schools need to apply more serious punishments for those who bully because maybe that will prevent it from happening as often. If you are being bullied and you feel safe to do so, ignore them, tell them to stop, pretend you don't care, and get support from your friends, parents, or teachers. If you see someone else being bullied and feel safe to do so, you can refuse to join in and tell the person doing the bullying to stop.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the main idea of this passage?
 - Bullying is a fun crime.
 - Bullying is a serious crime.
 - Bullying is a legal right.
 - Bullying isn't a crime.
- What are the best ways to stop someone bullying you?
 - Ignore them.
 - Tell them to stop.
 - Get support from your friends.
 - All of these.
- If you see a friend of you being bullied, you should the bully at once.
 - stop
 - help
 - pretend you don't care
 - ignore
- The underlined word "those" refers to
 - schools
 - bullies
 - hands
 - punishments
- Bullying sometimes causes
 - happiness
 - depression
 - satisfaction
 - ignorance
- If the bullying gets extreme,
 - someone may get depressed
 - victims are more powerful
 - friends should support it
 - victims should cry
- Schools can prevent bullying from happening by applying stricter for bullies.
 - depression
 - emotional problems
 - supports
 - punishments

Passage No. 3

Honeybees make buzzing sounds when they fly, but that is not the way they communicate. Instead, they do some amazing things to tell other bees things they need to know.

Dancing is an instrumental way of communication between bees, especially when needing to tell where to find flowers. When a bee locates those flowers, it returns to the hive and does a special "dance." For a bee, a dance means moving in a certain way as it crawls around. There are "round dances" that bees do when the flowers are close to the hive. There are also "waggle dances," which the bees do when the flowers are farther away.

Bees' dances are not the only way a bee communicates. Bees also produce chemicals called pheromones فيرومونات. If an animal like a bear approaches the beehive, the honeybees' bodies start to make these special chemicals. Other bees sense these pheromones and know that an animal is threatening the hive. They all start to fly out to try to sting the animal and scare it away.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the main topic of the passage?

- a) Why do bees dance?
- b) How do bees communicate?
- c) How can bees make honey?
- d) Bees live in hives.

2. According to the passage, bees communicate by

- a) singing
- b) dancing
- c) making buzzing sounds
- d) eating

3. The underlined word "beehive" means

- a) what bees eat
- b) how bees dance
- c) where bees live
- d) when bees die

4. "Round dances" means that the flowers are the hive.

- a) near
- b) far from
- c) remote to
- d) opposite to

5. Bees produce pheromones when they are

- a) happy
- b) in danger
- c) safe
- d) playing

6. The pattern a bee dances tells how the flowers are.

- a) much or little
- b) near or far
- c) high or low
- d) fast or slow

7. When there is an animal near the hive,

- a) the bees run away
- b) the bees try to keep it away
- c) the queen kills it
- d) the hive flies to a safer place

2 Translation:

1. (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The Olympic Games are held every four years in one of the competitive countries.

- (a) تُقام الألعاب الأولمبية مرة كل أربع سنوات في أحد البلاد المتنافسة.
- (b) تُقام الألعاب البارالمبية مرة كل أربع سنوات في أحد البلاد المتنافسة.
- (c) الألعاب العالمية تُقام مرة كل أربع سنوات في أحد البلاد المتنافسة.
- (d) أقيمت الألعاب الأولمبية أربع مرات كل سنة في أحد البلاد المتنافسة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

-- إن زيادة الإنتاج أصبحت واجباً وطنياً لأنها تمكننا من مواجهة مشكلة تزايد السكان والبطالة في مصر.

- a) Increasing production has become a national duty because it enables us to face the problems of overpopulation and unemployment in Egypt.
- b) Increasing consumption had become national duty, but it enables us to face the problems of growing population and unemployment in Egypt.
- c) The increase of production is a cultural duty because it enables us to face the problems of growing population and unemployment in Egypt.
- d) The increase of production has become global homework because we can face the problems of overpopulation and unemployment here.

2.(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Delivering the Nile water to the Egyptian desert means increasing production and creating job opportunities for a big number of the Egyptians.

- (a) إن عدم وصول مياه النيل إلى صحراء مصر يعني قلة الإنتاج وعدم إيجاد فرص عمل لعدد كبير من المصريين.
 (b) إن وصول مياه النيل إلى صحراء مصر يعني مضاعفة الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد كبير من الناس.
 (c) إن وصول مياه النيل إلى الصحراء المصرية يعني زيادة الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد كبير من المصريين.
 (d) إن وصول مياه النيل إلى صحراء مصر يعني زيادة الإنتاج وإيجاد فرص عمل لعدد ليس بقليل من الأفراد.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- الإنترنت عبارة عن شبكة عالمية تفيد مليارات الناس في العالم. فقد أصبحت الأنشطة اليومية التي كانت تستغرق وقتًا طويلاً ويصعب إدارتها بسيطة للغاية ويسهل إنجازها.

- a) The internet is a local network that benefits millions of people in Egypt. Daily activities that were time consuming and difficult to manage are now very simple and easy to accomplish.
 b) The internet are a global network that benefits billions of people in the world. Daily activities that were time consuming and difficult to manage aren't now very complex and easy to accomplish.
 c) The internet is a global network that benefits billions of people in the world. Daily activities that used to be time consuming and difficult to manage are now very simple and easy to accomplish.
 d) Internet is a global net that benefits most people in the world. Daily activities that used to be expensive and difficult to manage are now very simple and easy to accomplish.

3.(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Illiteracy is one of the most serious diseases of our society, so every citizen should play an effective part in eliminating illiteracy in their town or village.

- (a) الجهل من أخطر أمراض مجتمعا، ولكن يجب على كل مواطن أن يكون له دور فعال في محو الجهل في مدينته أو قريته.
 (b) الأمية من أخطر مشكلات مجتمعا، ولذا على كل مواطن أن يلعب دورًا فعالًا في إزالة الأمية في المدينة أو المجتمع.
 (c) الأمية من أخطر مشكلات مجتمعا، ولذا يجب على كل مواطن أن يلعب دورًا فعالًا في محو الأمية في مدينته أو قريته.
 (d) الأمية من أخطر مشاكل بلدنا، ولذا يجب على كل مواطن أن يلعب دورًا هامًا في محو الأمية في المدينة أو القرية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– لقد أثرت الحرب الروسية-الأوكرانية على أسعار السلع الضرورية والنفط في كل أنحاء العالم وخاصة الدول النامية.

- a) The Russian-Ukrainian war has affected the prices of essential commodities and energy all over the world, especially in the developed countries.
- b) The Russian-Ukrainian war had affected the prices of essential commodities and energy all over the world, especially in the developing countries.
- c) The Russian-Ukrainian war has affected the prices of essential commodities and oil all over the world, especially in the developing countries.
- d) The Russia-Ukraine battle has affected the prices of all goods and gas all over the world, especially in developing countries.

3 Write an essay of about (120-150) words on the following:

1. Reading reinforces the power of mind.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2. If we didn't have phones, how would communication be like?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. How people can develop their skills to be employable.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. My father worked hard for the improvement of his career. The antonyms of the word "improvement" are
 a) enhancement b) waste c) deterioration
 d) decline e) development
2. Can you help me customize my resume? The synonyms of the word "customize" are
 a) personalize b) modify c) standardize d) uniformize e) socialize

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. She was too to wait for the train to arrive.
 a) patient b) calm c) peaceful d) impatient
4. He was after he made a mistake in front of the whole class.
 a) proud b) thankful c) embarrassed d) excited
5. The class on global studies was very and taught me a lot.
 a) boring b) difficult c) uninteresting d) enriching
6. Your towards your work can determine your success.
 a) mentor b) footprint c) trend d) attitude
7. I am looking for a career path, not just a temporary job.
 a) short-term b) temporary c) quick d) long-term
8. He has a great relationship with his at work.
 a) friends b) colleagues c) family d) strangers
9. He spends time playing video games, and this too bad.
 a) very much b) too much c) too many d) a little
10. There is improvement in your essay, but you still need more practice.
 a) little b) few c) many d) much
11. She doesn't have patience when things go wrong.
 a) a few b) many c) some d) much
12. Every morning, I have breakfast with my daughter and take her to school.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
13. I prefer going to Red Sea because it's clearer and purer.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article
14. happiness is not measured from one side but from many perspectives.
 a) A b) The c) An d) No article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce **يرتد** when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake. Water and glass have a unique ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The thing that helps us understand what we see is the
a) light b) reflection c) eye d) brain
16. We can see when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.
a) the mirror b) ourselves c) the light wave d) our eyes
17. The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to
a) magnify, or make things larger b) see ourselves through glasses
c) to see mountains in water d) see things in the dark
18. We see objects because
a) the light waves can hit them
b) they are smooth and have shiny surface
c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time
d) light moves in straight waves
19. How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?
a) They bounce directly back to our faces.
b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
c) They cause eye's illness.
d) They make light

20. A lake filled with people boating and swimming doesn't act like a mirror because to create a reflection.

- a) the surface must be smooth and still
- b) the surface must be sharp and still
- c) a picture of an object must be sent to the brain from the eye
- d) anything shiny may act like a mirror

21. A good title for the passage is ".....".

- a) Light abilities
- b) Reflection of objects
- c) The sun shine
- d) Glass and water

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– توفر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة فرصًا جذابة للاستثمار لدعم الاقتصاد الوطني وتحقيق التنمية المستدامة.

- a) The New Administrative Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to support the international economy and achieve sustainable development.
- b) The New Administrative Capital saves attractive investment opportunities to support the national economy and achieve sustainable development.
- c) The New Administrative Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to support the national economy and achieve sustainable development.
- d) The New Administrative Capital provides attractive investment opportunities to report the national economy and achieve sustainable development.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Depression can happen to any of us as we age and it usually impacts your energy, appetite, sleep, and interest in work, hobbies and relationships.

- a) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأي منا مع المرض الشديد، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.
- b) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأي منا مع تقدمنا في العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وصحته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.
- c) لا يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأي منا مع تقدمنا في العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.
- d) يمكن أن يحدث الاكتئاب لأي منا مع تقدمنا في العمر، ويؤثر عادة على طاقة الشخص وشهيته ونومه واهتمامه بالعمل وهواياته وعلاقاته.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. How does the sea act like both a friend and an enemy?
2. Why doesn't Santiago give up after losing most of the marlin to sharks?
3. Why is Santiago still proud even after losing the fish?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"New jobs needed in the age of technology"

Vocabulary

أهم المفردات

ache	يؤلم	harpoon	حرية لصيد الحيتان	splash	ترش / يتخطط في الماء
admiration	إعجاب	hook	خطاف / يمسك بخطاف	splint	ينكسر
awe	رهبة	hut	كوخ	spur	مهماز (قطعة حادة من المعدن)
backbone	العمود الفقري	insistent	مصر / مصمم	stab	يطعن
bait	الطعم / يطعم	leap	ينط / يقفز	steadily	بثبات
battle	معركة	leathery	مدبوغ / مصبوغ	stiff	متيبس
bitter	مرير / مر	loyal	مخلص	strain	جهد / إجهاد
brace	يستجمع قواه	mako shark	قرش الماكو (صغير الزعانف وسريع جدا)	strike/struck	يضرب / يصيب
breeze	نسيم	marlin	سمكة كبيرة لها منقار يشبه السيف	surge	يندفع بقوة هائلة
chew	يمضغ	mast	الصارى / سارية القارب	surrender	يستسلم
coil	يلف / يلتف	palms	كف اليد	swallow	يبتلع
companion	صاحب / رفيق	patched	ممتلى بالرقع	sweat	العرق
companionship	الصحبة	pity	شفقة	swiftly	بسرعة
composure	رياسة جأش	predator	حيوان مفترس	tar	مادة القطران
determination	إصرار	row	يجدف	thrash	يتلوى من الألم
dignity	الكرامة	scarred	به أثر للجروح / يترك أثرا	tighten	يضيق / يشد
dock	رصيف الميناء / حوض السفينة	seaworthy	صالح للإبحار	tiller	ذراع دفة القارب
endurance	قوة التحمل	shadow	ظل	tow	يسحب / يجر
eternal	أبدى / خالدة	skeleton	هيكل عظمى	trail	أثر
flesh	لحم	skiff	قارب صغير للصيد (زورق)	tremble	يرتعش / يهتز
forehead	الجبهة (فى الوجه)	slap	صفعة / لكمة	unstoppable	لا تتوقف
gaff	عصا بخطاف تستخدم فى الصيد	slash	يشق	whisper	همس / يهمس
generous	كريم	sorrow	حزن	will	إرادة
grateful	شاكر / ممتن	sparingly	دون إسراف	wipe	يمسح
grin	يبتسم ابتسامة عريضة	spear	رمح		
harbor	مرفأ / ميناء	spirit	روح		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

التعابير والمصطلحات وحروف الجر

a faint smile	ابتسامة باهتة	far from	بعيدا عن	pain does not matter	لا يهم الألم
at his parents' order	تفقيدا لأوامر والديه	farther than others dare	أبعد مما يجرؤ عليه الآخرون (دليل على الشجاعة)	pour down	يصب / يتصبب
beyond words	لا يمكن التعبير عنه بالكلمات	feel fear	يشعر بالخوف	push ... away	يدفع ... بعيدا
come up	يظهر	feel pride	يشعر بالفخر	put on	يرتدى
crash into	يصطدم بـ	fishing gear	معدات الصيد	show himself	يظهر نفسه (يبين قوته الحقيقية)
cut into	يقطع في	go down	تغرب (الشمس) / ينزل	sink into depths	يغرق في الأعماق
dare to	يتجرأ على	have the right	لديه الحق	tear away	ينترع
dream of	يحلم بـ / يتمنى	in return	بالمقابل	the flag of defeat	تدل على تهالك الشراع
drive away	يبعد شيئاً عنه	keep his eyes on	يضع نصب عينيه	to be exact	يكون حريص ودقيق
eighty-five is my number	رقم ٨٥ هو رقم الحظ	lean against	يستند على	wait for	ينتظر
empty-handed	خالي اليدين	lean back	يتكى		
except for	ما عدا	look at his catch	ينظر إلى صيده		

Summary

- Santiago is an old fisherman who lives in a small village by the sea. 84 days have gone by without catching a fish, and people believe he is unlucky. A boy named Manolin, who used to fish with him, now works with other lucky fishermen (at the order of his parents), but he still cares deeply for Santiago. The boy helps him carry his supplies and brings him food.
- On the 85th day, Santiago wakes up early and decides to sail far into the sea. He sees a bird circling above and follows it, hoping it will lead him to fish. After some time, he feels a big fish take the bait. He doesn't pull too quickly. Instead, he waits, carefully letting the fish take the hook deep into its mouth.

- The fish is huge and powerful. It pulls the boat far out into the open sea. Santiago holds the line with his bare hands. The fish does not come up. It pulls and pulls, and the old man's hands bleed from the pressure. But Santiago does not give up. He thinks of Joe DiMaggio, the famous baseball player (who played with an injury), and reminds himself that pain can be endured.
- For two days and two nights, Santiago stays awake and continues to fight the marlin. He eats pieces of raw fish to stay strong. He talks to the fish, calling it his brother, because he respects its strength. At last, on the third day, the marlin begins to circle the boat. Santiago knows the fish is tired. He pulls it slowly, using every bit of strength he has left.
- Finally, the marlin comes to the surface. It is longer than the boat, glowing silver in the sunlight. Santiago kills it with a harpoon. He ties it to the side of the boat and begins the journey home. He feels proud but also sad because he had to kill such a noble creature.
- As he sails home, the smell of the marlin's blood attracts sharks. The first shark comes quickly, and Santiago kills it with his harpoon. But more sharks follow. They bite at the marlin and tear its flesh. Santiago fights with everything he has—his harpoon, then a knife tied to an oar, and then even broken wood.
- By the time he reaches shore, only the skeleton of the marlin remains. Santiago is exhausted, wounded, and heartbroken, but he still feels proud. He says, "They destroyed you, fish, but not my pride." He has lost the fish, but not his dignity or strength. He thinks of the boy and feels that he will not let him be alone again. Tomorrow, he will help him.
- The sea is quiet again, carrying the old man and the skeleton of the marlin slowly toward the shore.

Practice...

The Old Man and the Sea

1 Factual Questions:

1. How many days had Santiago gone without catching a fish at the beginning of the story?
2. Why did Manolin stop fishing with Santiago?
3. On which day does Santiago hook the big fish?
4. What type of fish does Santiago hook?
5. How does Santiago hold the line while fighting the fish?
6. What injury does Santiago get from the fishing line?
7. Who is the famous baseball player that Santiago admires?
8. How many days and nights does Santiago fight the marlin?
9. What does Santiago eat during the fight to stay strong?
10. What dream gives Santiago strength at sea?
11. How does Santiago finally kill the marlin?
12. How does Santiago bring the marlin back to shore?
13. What kind of shark attacks the marlin first?
14. What happens to Santiago's harpoon?
15. What does Santiago use as a weapon after the harpoon breaks?
16. By the time Santiago reaches the shore, what is left of the marlin?
17. What does Santiago say after the sharks destroy the marlin?
18. Where does Santiago live?
19. What kind of boat does Santiago use?
20. What does Santiago feel after killing the marlin?
21. What does Santiago lose during the fight with the sharks?
22. Why can't Santiago pull the fish into the boat?

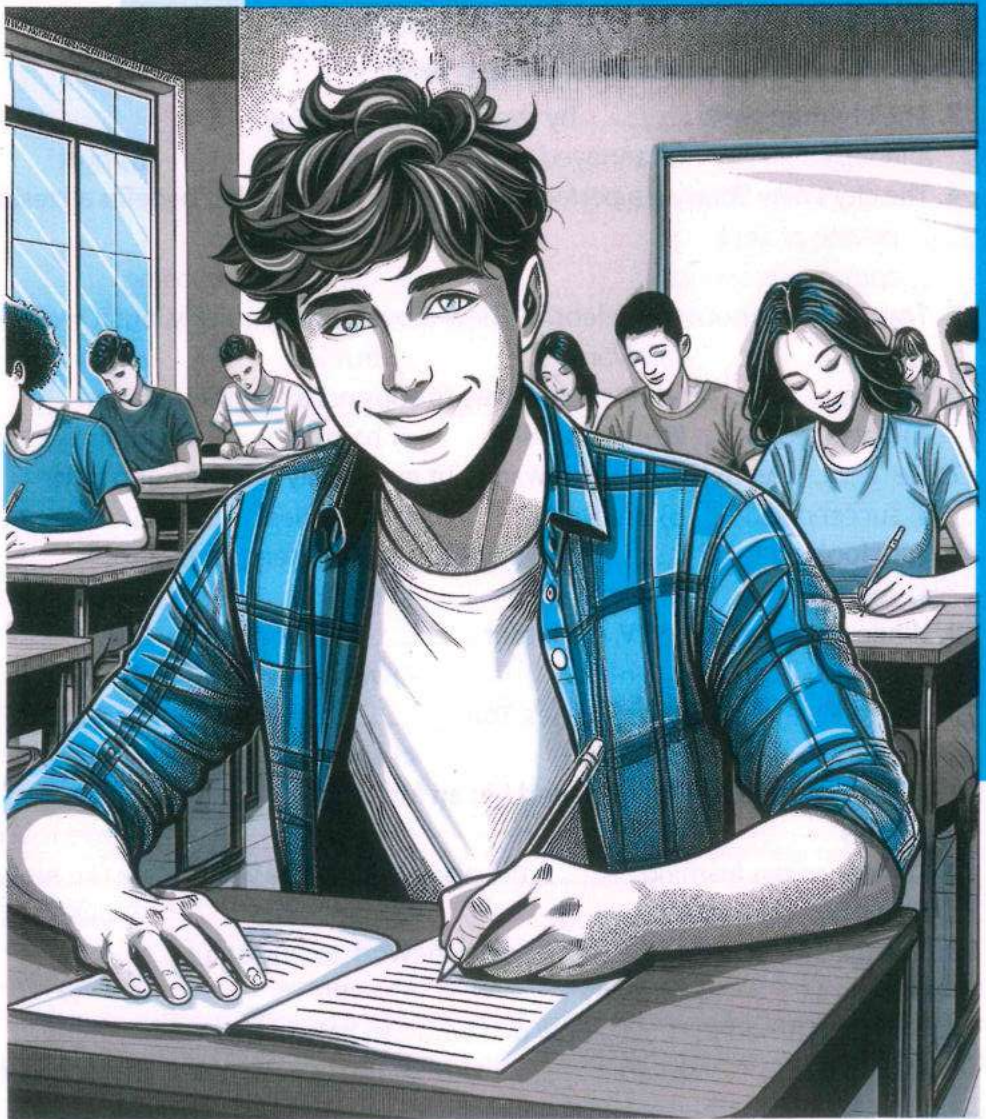
2 Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why does the boy still care for Santiago, even though he doesn't fish with him anymore?
2. What do you think the boy represents in Santiago's life?
3. In your opinion, should Manolin have gone with Santiago? Why or why not?
4. Why does Santiago miss the boy during the fight with the marlin?
5. Why does Santiago respect the marlin so much, even though he wants to kill it?

6. What does the marlin symbolize in the story?
7. Do you think Santiago is fighting the fish—or something bigger?
8. Why does Santiago call the marlin “brother”?
9. What do you think would have happened if Santiago had let the marlin go?
10. Why does Santiago keep fighting the sharks even when he knows he can’t win?
11. What do the sharks represent in the story?
12. Do the sharks spoil Santiago’s victory? Why or why not?
13. Should Santiago have left the marlin at sea after killing it? Why or why not?
14. Is the battle with the sharks more emotional or physical? Explain.
15. What does the story teach us about human strength and limits?
16. How does pain affect Santiago? Does it make him weaker or stronger?
17. Do you think Santiago is a hero? Why or why not?
18. What keeps Santiago going when he is tired and hurt?
19. Is Santiago’s journey more about the fish or about proving something to himself?
20. How is the sea both a friend and an enemy to Santiago?
21. What does the sea symbolize in the story?
22. Do you think Santiago feels lonely or connected to nature?
23. How does being alone at sea affect Santiago’s thoughts?
24. Is nature cruel in the story? Why or why not?
25. Why does Santiago dream about lions from his youth?
26. What do the lions symbolize for Santiago?
27. What does the marlin’s skeleton at the end represent?
28. How does the story show the idea of a “noble struggle”?
29. What do you think Hemingway wants readers to learn from Santiago’s journey?
30. Why does Santiago keep talking to himself and to the fish while at sea?
31. What lesson can young people learn from Santiago’s struggle?
32. Do you think Santiago regrets killing the marlin? Why or why not?
33. What does the story say about success and failure?
34. Do you think Santiago will go fishing again? Why or why not?
35. How does Hemingway use silence in the story to show emotion?

Part 3

Final Guiding Models



Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The workers tried to restore the old bridge. The synonyms of the word "restore" are
 a) fix b) renew c) destroy d) damage e) paint
2. His dedication to helping others was a true inspiration to the entire community. The antonyms of the word "inspiration" are
 a) encouragement b) enthusiasm c) sickness
 d) despair e) discouragement

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The children were by the puppets on stage.
 a) amazed b) annoyed c) bored d) hurt
4. The city's new library is a perfect example of a that benefits all residents.
 a) private project b) personal gain
 c) community service d) commercial building
5. The about the celebrity's new movie spread quickly, but it wasn't true.
 a) facts b) favors c) truths d) rumors
6. Buying products is one way to support a healthier planet.
 a) balanced b) eco-friendly c) harmful d) imported
7. He with the new software, but eventually got the hang of it.
 a) succeeded b) enjoyed c) struggled d) mastered
8. I am looking for a career path, not just a temporary job.
 a) short-term b) confident c) quick d) long-term
9. While I was watching TV, my father the room.
 a) enters b) entered c) was entering d) entering
10. You're always catching diseases. You to change your eating habits.
 a) should b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) need
11. If I her address, I'll send her an invitation.
 a) finds b) find c) found d) had found
12. Kareem enjoys learning the piano because he wants to be like his father.
 a) to play b) playing c) to playing d) play
13. The teacher gave us hard homework to punish us.
 a) a lot of b) many c) a little d) few
14. I'm sure Ahmed's only one who can help in this.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Waking up early is like discovering a hidden treasure box full of benefits, and many people are attracted by the calm moments before the world wakes up. Early risers enjoy the peacefulness, using their time to plan their day, enjoy a good breakfast, and take a moment for personal thoughts. It's not just about quiet mornings; waking up early gives you extra time which is perfect for finishing tasks, reading a favorite book, or playing outdoors before the day gets busy. But there's more magic to it!

Waking up early also gives you more energy. Imagine having a good night's sleep and waking up with the sunrise—it's like having a superhero boost for your day. Early morning became a special time for concentration and learning new things. In another way, waking up early reveals the beauty of nature; watching the sunrise, listening to the birds singing, and feeling the gentle morning breeze can make it a magical and inspiring experience. This choice isn't just about getting up early; it's about enjoying quiet moments, having extra time to feel energized, being more focused, and feeling a strong connection with nature—a bit like having a superpower that makes every day a little brighter. Getting up with the sunrise is really cool.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 15.** According to the passage, early rising is
a) useful b) harmful
c) terrible d) horrible
- 16.** What is the best time for learning new things?
a) Late afternoons. b) Midnight.
c) Early mornings. d) Midday.
- 17.** From the passage, it is always when you get up early.
a) cold and wet b) noisy and crowded
c) dark and depressing d) quiet and cool
- 18.** Early risers have time to finish their work.
a) no b) less c) much more d) little
- 19.** People who wake up early must have a lot of
a) meals b) energy c) books d) birds
- 20.** To get up early, you must
a) stay up all night b) find a hidden treasure box
c) have a good night's sleep d) reveal the beauty of nature

21. The main idea of the text is ".....".

- a) Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise
- b) Eating an early breakfast makes your body strong
- c) Having a superpower makes every day a little brighter
- d) All people have the habit of rising early in the morning

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– التعليم الجيد يساعدنا في إعداد أجيال من المواطنين القادرين على تحقيق أهداف مجتمعاتهم.

- a) Good education helps us to repair generations of citizens able to achieve their societies' aims.
- b) Well education helps us prepare generations of citizens capable of believing their societies' aims.
- c) Good education helps us to prepare generations of citizens who are able to achieve their societies' aims.
- d) Good Education helps us prepare generations of citizens able of achieve their society's dreams.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- When people enjoy freedom, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, this freedom is not absolute.

- (a) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم في بعض المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.
- (b) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم في كل المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.
- (c) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم في بعض المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مجردة.
- (d) عندما يتمتع الأشخاص بالحرية فإنهم لا يتمكنون من تحقيق التقدم في بعض المجالات ولكن هذه الحرية ليست مطلقة.

24. Answer the following questions:

- 1. Do you think Santiago is a hero? Why or why not?
- 2. What can the novel teach us about human dignity?
- 3. How do the other fishermen in the village view Santiago? What does this reveal about their values and perceptions of success?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Different ways to support your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (2)

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. We must preserve our cultural heritage. The synonyms of the word "preserve" are
 a) endanger b) neglect c) protect d) improve e) keep
2. This café is very convenient for students. The antonyms of the word "convenient" are
 a) narrow b) suitable c) inappropriate
 d) unsuitable e) hard

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The of forests helps to protect wild animals.
 a) covering b) pollution c) preservation d) destruction
4. The most important thing is not what you gain, but the you find in your work.
 a) wealth b) value c) worth d) price
5. His recent mistakes threatened to his career and reputation forever.
 a) ruin b) save c) build d) hide
6. The company launched a new to encourage consumers to recycle their old phones.
 a) campaign b) approach c) sign d) mission
7. The instructions for the new machine were too to understand.
 a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) clear
8. He has a great relationship with his at work.
 a) friends b) colleagues c) family d) strangers
9. I couldn't answer the phone because I a shower.
 a) had b) have had c) was having d) have
10. The exams are next week, I to relax and stop worrying about them.
 a) must b) shouldn't c) ought d) can
11. I all my friends if I had a house by the beach.
 a) will invite b) would invite c) had invited d) invited
12. Elderly people are experienced enough to teach us with all hardships and troubles.
 a) dealing b) to dealing c) to deal d) that dealing
13. We couldn't find empty chairs in the hall, so some people stood.
 a) some b) any c) much d) a little
14. Math my favorite subject. I always love to solve problems.
 a) is b) are c) was d) were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Trees are beautiful and useful gifts of nature. They are great friends of man. Trees give us flowers, fruits, timber, bamboo, fuel, etc. We can rest under the cool shade of a tree. We get wood from the trees to make furniture, doors, windows, etc. Trees are also a great source of materials for paper, rubber, gums, herbs, and medicinal plants. Forests bring clouds and cause rainfall. Trees prevent soil erosion. They protect us from severe weather.

Trees are a part and parcel of earthly life. All life directly or indirectly owes its existence to them. Trees release oxygen, which we need for our lives. They also absorb carbon dioxide gas. Many living species live in trees. Trees form the natural habitat of many animals, birds, and insects. Trees help make the land fertile. We get good crops out of fertile land. They are the sources of the fruits and flowers. They offer us cool shade during summer. During the rainy season, we take shelter under trees. Trees and plants are the sources of many life-saving drugs. They prevent land erosion and guard us against pollution. Thus, trees keep up the ecological balance. Trees protect us from inclement wind, too. Seeds, nuts, and fruits are food sources for humans and animals.

Trees protect the biodiversity of the ecosystem. Tree resins are used in producing varnishes. Essential oils derived from trees are used in the medicinal and aroma industries. Thus, trees play an important role in our lives. Felling of trees disturbs the ecosystem. We should preserve trees and plants with great care.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. Which of the following is not correct?

- a) Trees help keep ecological balance.
- b) Trees provide life-saving drugs.
- c) Trees take in oxygen.
- d) Trees protect the biodiversity.

16. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

- a) Trees.
- b) Plants.
- c) Insects.
- d) Trees and plants.

17. According to the passage, which of the following disturbs ecosystem?

- a) Planting of trees.
- b) Preserving of trees.
- c) Climbing trees.
- d) Felling of trees.

18. The best title for the passage is ".....".

- a) The beauty of trees
- b) How to plant a tree
- c) The importance of trees
- d) The drawback of trees

19. Trees are useful in medicine, how?

- a) They give us shade. b) They prevent soil erosion.
c) They are sources of many medical drugs. d) They keep the balance of nature.

20. Trees absorb carbon dioxide gas. The word "absorb" means

- a) give off b) give in c) take off d) take in

21. Cutting down trees has very bad effects on our

- a) rainy season b) ecosystem c) wind d) food source only

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمة البشرية لذلك فنحن مدينون لهم بالكثير من الفضل.

- a) Everyday scientists bring something new to serve people, so we owe them a lot of credit.
b) Every day experts bring something useful to serve humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.
c) Every day scientists bring something new to serve humanity, so we owe them a lot of credit.
d) Every day scholars provide something for humanity, so we own them a lot of credit.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Youth not only represent the future of their country, but they are also the main agents of change and progress.

- (a) لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدهم فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتعبير والتقدم.
(b) لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدهم فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتغيير والتقدم.
(c) لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدنا فحسب، بل هم العامل الرئيسي للتغيير والتقدم.
(d) لا يمثل الشباب مستقبل بلدهم فحسب، بل هم العامل المناسب للتغيير والتقدم.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Manolin, would you help Santiago? Why?
2. What do you think of Santiago's way of thinking towards others' perspectives on him?
3. If you are unlucky for 84 days, will you lose hope? Why?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Tourism is considered a main source of national income."

.....

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The ocean is very deep in that area. The antonyms of the word "deep" are
 a) forceful b) rooted c) superficial d) powerful e) shallow
2. She gave a strong speech about education. The synonyms of the word "strong" are
 a) forceful b) powerful c) weak d) powerless e) huge

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Shakespeare is one of the greatest English
 a) actors b) authors c) scientists d) engineers
4. They worked together to their belongings from the heavy rain.
 a) damage b) expose c) protect d) hide
5. He was completely by the unexpected change in the plans.
 a) calm b) confused c) happy d) relaxed
6. The of the car is responsible for all its maintenance.
 a) manufacturer b) rider c) owner d) driver
7. I pressed the wrong button and deleted the file. What a mistake!
 a) accidentally b) on purpose c) deliberately d) intentionally
8. She was to finish the project on time.
 a) progressing b) struggling c) succeeding d) achieving
9. The crowd cheered loudly the players came onto the field.
 a) just as b) during c) when d) since
10. He finish this project by tomorrow or he will miss the deadline.
 a) should b) don't have to c) shouldn't d) must
11. If I the chance to travel abroad, I might have chosen Europe.
 a) have b) would have c) should have d) had had
12. We regret you that your application was not accepted.
 a) tell b) telling c) told d) to tell
13. There is plenty of meat, but there is not bread.
 a) plenty b) many c) any d) a lot
14. It's rare to see honest person these days.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A supermarket is a large, mainly self-service retail store selling food and other household goods. This was originally an American idea that was introduced into Britain after the Second World War at the end of the 1950s. The biggest outlets are Tesco, Sainsbury, and Morrisons. There is a lot of competition between stores to encourage their customers to keep coming back. To encourage loyalty, they offer loyalty cards. With each visit points are added to the customer's account. At the entrance to the supermarket there are hand-held baskets or trolley baskets on wheels. If a lot of shopping is required, it is easier to put it in the trolley and push it along. Usually, the first display in the shop is the fruit and vegetable produce, then tobacco, cigarettes, and cigars. An assistant will serve you at this counter. To aid customers in finding the goods, the aisles need to be numbered. In addition, large signs hang overhead to tell the shopper where items can be found. As well as fresh foods that are displayed unwrapped, for example, cheese, fish, and cuts of meat, food is sold in sealed packs. The displays on the shelf units are cleverly set out to direct the eyes toward the product that the store hopes you will buy. In a store, goods are sold fresh, frozen, in tins, jars, and packets, while drinks are in bottles and boxes. In a large shop, customers can also buy electrical goods, kitchen goods, soft furnishings, and pharmacy products. After collecting everything, the customer pays at one of the numerous checkouts.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. When did supermarkets first open in Britain?

- a) It was 20 years ago.
- b) They opened in the 1950s.
- c) It was after the 1st World War.
- d) They opened 40 years ago.

16. Why do stores give loyalty cards?

- a) It is instead of a credit card.
- b) To encourage return visits to a chosen chain.
- c) They are identity cards.
- d) So you get to the front of the queue at the check-out.

17. Why are aisles numbered?

- a) So we can find the exit.
- b) So you do not get lost.
- c) It is a way of telling you how big the store is.
- d) To make it easier to find products.

18. What do customers take at the entrance if they need a lot of shopping?

- a) A trolley basket on wheels.
- b) A wheelbarrow.
- c) A customer will take a skateboard.
- d) A hand-held basket.

19. What kinds of goods are sold?

- a) Bad.
- b) Fresh.
- c) Not new.
- d) Rotten.

20. The underlined pronoun "their" refers to

- a) the biggest outlets
- b) Tesco store
- c) Sainsbury's store
- d) Morrisons store

21. What is the best title for this reading passage?

- a) Supermarkets' flaws.
- b) How to encourage supermarket chains.
- c) Supermarkets.
- d) Bad competition of supermarkets.

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– السياحة مصدر مهم لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر، لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر.

- a) Tourist is an important source of bringing hard currency to Egypt, so we have to provide all possible facilities to attract tourists to Cairo.
- b) Tourism is an important source of bringing hard currency to Egypt, so we have to provide all possible facilities to attract tourists to Egypt.
- c) Terrorism is an important source of bringing hard currency to Egypt, so we has to provide all possible facilities to attract tourists to Egypt.
- d) Tourism is an important source of bringing hard currency to Egypt, so we have to provide all possible facilities to move tourists to Egypt.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- The initiative "Decent Life" reflects the political leadership's keenness to boost the standard of living of low-income groups and provide them with a safe and human life.

- (a) إن مبادرة «حياة كريمة» تؤثر على حرص القيادة السياسية على تحسين مستوى معيشة محدودى الدخل وتوفير حياة آمنة وإنسانية لهم.
- (b) تعكس مبادرة «حياة كريمة» حرص القيادة السياسية على الاهتمام بمستوى معيشة محدودى الدخل وتزويدهم بحياة آمنة وإنسانية.
- (c) إن مبادرة «حياة كريمة» تعكس حرص القيادة السياسية على تحسين مستوى معيشة محدودى الدخل وتوفير حياة آمنة وإنسانية لهم.
- (d) تعكس مبادرة «حياة كريمة» حرص القيادة السياسية على تحسين تكاليف معيشة محدودى الدخل وتزويدهم بحياة آمنة وإنسانية.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. What motivates Santiago to keep going despite the sharks destroying his catch?
2. In what ways does the story explore the relationship between humans and nature?
3. What does the marlin symbolize in the novel?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"The importance of sport in our life"

.....

.....

.....

Model (4)

30

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. His attitude was very positive. The antonyms of the word "positive" are
 a) negative b) harmful c) effective d) confirmed e) useful
2. Parents always support their children. The synonyms of the word "support" are
 a) oppose b) neglect c) reinforce d) encourage e) attach

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The teacher encouraged the students to their culture.
 a) preserve b) destroy c) waste d) forget
4. His calm behavior during the proved that he was a reliable leader.
 a) emergency b) routine c) relaxation d) celebration
5. Activists campaign against using in Gaza.
 a) peace b) calm c) violence d) discussion
6. The process of old paper and plastic helps reduce trash in landfills.
 a) wasting b) burying c) recycling d) burning
7. He learned a few key to deal with foreigners on his trip.
 a) songs b) essays c) phrases d) paragraphs
8. Making good is a key skill in any profession.
 a) choices b) selections c) decisions d) options
9. I my phone while I was running to school.
 a) lose b) lost c) was losing d) was lost
10. I have two copies, and I will send you one; but you show it to anybody.
 a) should b) mustn't c) needn't d) oughtn't
11. She would spend a year in the USA if it easy to get a green card.
 a) were b) was c) will d) had
12. Don't forget the door from inside.
 a) to lock b) locking c) lock d) to locking
13. During my stay in Saudi Arabia, I got experience.
 a) many b) much c) an d) a lot
14. Dad bought me mp3 when I was 10.
 a) a b) an c) many d) no

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Learners of foreign languages are divided into three categories or types. Some learners are not aware of the correct structure of the sentence. They do not care about the parts of speech that constitute the sentence. They do not know what a noun, an adjective, an adverb, a verb, a pronoun, or a preposition is. Moreover, they do not know how to use them or where to put them in a sentence. For example, if you ask a student what part of speech "early" is in the following: "He has an early start." They may mistake a noun for a verb, an adjective for an adverb, or a pronoun for a preposition.

While some learners focus on memorizing vocabulary. They study them by heart, but they cannot use them in a context. Those learners do not pay attention to the derivatives that help them memorize new vocabulary easily and quickly. Using vocabulary in context and memorizing them with derivatives makes them last for a long time. The last category or type is the learners who learn a foreign language as a subject, not a language. They find great difficulty in learning it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The best title for this passage is ".....".

- a) The importance of learning foreign languages
- b) How to learn a sentence structure
- c) Learning foreign languages count on three factors
- d) Keeping vocabulary by heart

16. What part of speech is "early" in "He has an early start."?

- a) A noun.
- b) An adjective.
- c) An adverb.
- d) A pronoun.

17. To summarize how to learn vocabulary,

- a) use the derivatives and new words in context
- b) keep them by heart
- c) memorize the words solely
- d) sing them from time to time

18. There are sorts of learners in the passage.

- a) two
- b) five
- c) four
- d) three

19. Dealing with a foreign language as a/an is the best way to learn it.

- a) adjective
- b) subject
- c) category
- d) language

20. It's a disadvantage for a learner not to know the correct of a sentence.

- a) belief
- b) structure
- c) category
- d) idea

21. The underlined word "They" refers to

- a) students
- b) languages
- c) teachers
- d) learning

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– العمل التطوعي له مزايا عديدة للمتطوعين. فهو يعلمهم كيف يتعاملون مع الناس والمشكلات وكيف يكونون عمليين (واقعيين)، والمتطوعون صغار السن يكتشفون مهاراتهم ويدركون أنهم قادرون على فعل أشياء أكثر مما كانوا يفكرون.

- a) Voluntary work has many advantages for volunteers. It teaches them how to deal with people and problems and how to be practical (realistic) and young volunteers are discovering their skills and realizing that they can do more things than they thought.
- b) Volunteer work has many lessons for volunteers. It teaches them how to deal with people and problems and how to be imaginative and young voluntary are discovering their skills and realizing that they can do more things than they though.
- c) Voluntary work have many advantages for volunteers. It orders them how to deal with people and problems and how to be realistic and young volunteers are inventing their skulls and realizing that they can do more things than they brought.
- d) Voluntary work has many advantages for volunteers. It teaches them deal with people and problems and to be fictional and old volunteers are exploring their scales and realizing that they can do more things than they thought.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- You should be ambitious. You must always have some targets and a role model to motivate you to do your best to accomplish all your dreams in life.

- a) يجب أن تكون طموحا. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائما مجموعة من الأحلام ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أهدافك في الحياة.
- b) يجب أن تكون صالحا. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائما مجموعة من الأهداف ونموذج عالمي لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أحلامك في الحياة.
- c) يجب أن تكون طموحا. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائما كمية من الأموال ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق بعض أحلامك في الحياة.
- d) يجب أن تكون طموحا. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائما مجموعة من الأهداف ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أحلامك في الحياة.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. In what ways does Santiago demonstrate pride? Is it a strength or a weakness?
2. What does the struggle between Santiago and the marlin symbolize?
3. How do the sharks function as a symbol in the story?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Using technology in education"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. He felt very isolated after moving to a new city. The synonyms of the word "isolated" are

- a) remote b) detached c) connected
d) sociable e) surrounded

2. The view from the mountain was irresistible. The antonyms of the word "irresistible" are

- a) resistible b) avoidable c) unavoidable
d) charming e) certain

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The soldier protected his country bravely.

- a) mighty b) weak c) ordinary d) historical

4. A healthy society depends on the actions and behaviors of its

- a) visitors b) neighbors c) citizens d) tourists

5. The enemy submarine was to the radar, making it impossible to detect.

- a) visible b) present c) invisible d) reliable

6. Remember to all electronics when you leave the house to save electricity.

- a) unplug b) turn c) switch d) repair

7. She felt after practicing her speech many times.

- a) nervous b) hesitant c) scared d) confident

8. It is to have a good resume when applying for jobs.

- a) optional b) unnecessary c) necessary d) extra

9. They in the library during the break.

- a) studies b) were studied c) were studying d) was studying

10. Mutual respect is for any partnership in work.

- a) necessary b) banned c) inadvisable d) mustn't

11. If they do their best, the party be great.

- a) would b) had been c) could d) will

12. Amir began painting after taking his first art class.

- a) being loving b) to loving c) be loved d) to love

13. He has close friends, but they are very loyal.

- a) a few b) much c) little d) a lot

14. First, I need cup of coffee to think well.

- a) a b) an c) any d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

With the development of modern civilization, life has become more and more complicated. As a result, the car, which was once considered a luxury, is now looked upon as a necessity. Doctors, engineers, and businessmen cannot work without private cars. Moreover, the rapid growth of population in capitals and main cities has actually made the joy of possessing a car much less. Besides the problems of keeping a car in good condition and the lack of garages, there is the big problem of crowded streets.

Most people insist on having a private car to avoid the long wait at a bus stop. To get on or off the bus is a hard struggle. Going to places by taxi does not solve the problem, as taxi drivers take passengers according to the rules they set. They sometimes ask for more money than they should get for the trip.

Cars could be a source of trouble. Many people have to leave their cars in the streets because garages are expensive and crowded. This exposes them to rusting or robbery. In rush hours, streets are so blocked that it takes a driver ages to get to his destination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. Taking a public bus is a problem because
 - a) it is expensive
 - b) getting on and off the bus is difficult
 - c) it is very slow
 - d) bus drivers drive carelessly
16. The pronoun "they" refers
 - a) taxi drivers
 - b) taxis
 - c) buses
 - d) passengers
17. The synonym of the word "complicated" is
 - a) complex
 - b) simple
 - c) easy
 - d) non-complex
18. According to the writer, possessing a car can be trouble because
 - a) cars take a space in the garage
 - b) cars have to be left in the streets
 - c) drivers are careless
 - d) traffic is incredible
19. The best title for this passage is " ".
 - a) Traffic Rules
 - b) Types of Cars
 - c) Driving Carelessly
 - d) Transportation

20. According to the passage, it takes drivers a long time to reach their destination when

- a) the streets are empty
- b) it's the rush hour
- c) the drivers drive slowly
- d) the garages are full

21. The sentence "it takes a driver ages to get to his destination" shows that

- a) people don't know their destination
- b) GPS always misleads people
- c) drivers can't drive
- d) it takes long time

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يجب أن يتعاون كل أفراد المجتمع كافة لمحاربة التنمر فهو مشكلة اجتماعية سيئة منتشرة بين الشباب وتهدد الناس في كل مكان بالعالم.

- a) It is a must for all members of society to care to battle for bullying, as it is a bad social problem extended between youth and threatened people everywhere in the world.
- b) All members of society should cooperate to fight bullying, as it is a bad social problem that spreads among youth and threatens people everywhere in the world.
- c) All individuals of society can cooperate to battle against bullying, as it is a bad community problem published among youth and threatens people everywhere.
- d) All of society must come together to fight bullying. That's a social problem which spreads among young people and threatens people every in place in the world.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Education is the principle of progress and development for all peoples and countries of the world, both the advanced and the developing.

(a) إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لكل شعوب ودول المجتمع على حد سواء المتقدمة والنامية.

(b) إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لكل شعوب ودول العالم المتقدمة والنامية على حد سواء.

(c) إن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتطور لكل شعوب ودول العالم على حد سواء المتأخرة والنامية.

(d) أن التعليم هو أساس التقدم والتنمية لكل مجتمعات ودول العالم على حد سواء المتقدمة والنامية.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Santiago continues to fight the marlin even when he is exhausted?
2. What role does pride play in Santiago's journey?
3. What does Santiago's small boat symbolize compared to the vast ocean?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"The importance of charities in society"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Model (6)

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The colors of the painting began to fade. The antonyms of the word "fade" are
 a) vanish b) disappear c) brighten d) remove e) appear
2. Gold is a very valuable metal. The synonyms of the word "valuable" are
 a) important b) precious c) worthless d) useless e) cheap

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. He showed great by helping his friends in difficult times.
 a) fear b) weakness c) sadness d) strength
4. A person with high doesn't fear failure because they have a strong belief in their own abilities.
 a) doubt b) ignorance c) pride d) confidence
5. The campaign was designed to raise about the dangers of climate change.
 a) confusion b) ignorance c) unconcern d) awareness
6. We need to find new sources of clean to power our homes and cities.
 a) waste b) industry c) garbage d) energy
7. He his exams with high scores.
 a) failed b) passed c) ignored d) missed
8. at a non-profit organization can give you valuable experience.
 a) Seeking b) Volunteering c) Participating d) Working
9. I my best friend yesterday while I in the mall.
 a) see / shops b) was seeing / shop
 c) saw / was shopping d) was saw / shopped
10. She makes repeated mistakes, you make excuses for her.
 a) don't have to b) had to
 c) mustn't d) have to
11. Mom buy the grocery if someone helps her.
 a) would b) will c) have to d) does
12. It's no good the interview as they want an expert not a fresh graduate.
 a) attending b) to attend c) to be attending d) to attending
13. The company didn't make progress last year.
 a) some b) many c) much d) a few
14. USA is planning to control the world's economy.
 a) A b) An c) The d) No article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Pollution is one of the most serious environmental problems that the world is facing today. It affects the air, water, and soil and causes health risks to humans and wildlife. Air pollution, caused by the burning of fossil fuels, factories, and vehicles, releases harmful substances such as carbon dioxide. Water pollution is the result of chemicals and waste being dumped into rivers and oceans, while soil pollution comes from pesticides and industrial waste. Each type of pollution has its harmful effects on the environment and human health.

The consequences of pollution are widespread. For example, polluted air results in diseases, while dirty water leads to diseases like cholera. Soil pollution not only affects plant growth but also reduces agricultural productivity.

The government is applying plans to reduce it, such as encouraging clean energy sources and recycling. Additionally, individuals are encouraged to adopt eco-friendly practices like using public transportation, reducing waste, and planting trees.

To solve the problem of pollution, it is necessary to take action at both individual and collective levels. Educating people about the importance of sustainable living and enforcing strict environmental laws are vital steps. Protecting the environment ensures a healthier planet for future generations. Everyone has a role to play in reducing pollution, and it is only through cooperation and responsibility that a cleaner, safer environment can be achieved.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. What is the main idea of the passage?

- a) The importance of fossil fuels.
- b) Pollution and its harmful effects on the environment.
- c) The role of factories in society.
- d) Human reliance on soil.

16. What is the summary of the third paragraph?

- a) Governments and individuals take steps to reduce pollution.
- b) Pollution is only caused by factories.
- c) Soil pollution has no impact on agriculture.
- d) Recycling has no environmental benefits.

17. Which word is a synonym for "consequences"?

- a) Effects.
- b) Happiness.
- c) Success.
- d) Victory.

18. What is the antonym of "pollution"?

- a) Dirt.
- b) Cleanliness.
- c) Destruction.
- d) Toxicity.

19. The underlined pronoun "it" in the third paragraph refers to

- a) government
- b) environment
- c) pollution
- d) health

20. How can pollution be faced according to the passage?

- a) Only by factories.
- b) By producing more waste.
- c) By ignoring environmental issues.
- d) By supporting clean energy and recycling.

21. Why is reducing pollution important?

- a) To maintain factories' profit.
- b) To promote vehicle production.
- c) To support government policies.
- d) To ensure a cleaner environment for future generations.

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

- يعد الطعام الصحي أساس حياة متوازنة فهو يعزز مناعة الجسم ويحافظ على الوزن المثالي ويقلل من مخاطر الإصابة بالأمراض المزمنة.

- a) Healthy food is the basis of a balanced life, as it boosts immunity, helps maintain ideal weight, and reduces risks of chronic diseases.
- b) Healthy food is the base of balanced living, supporting immune function, keeping perfect weight, and avoiding chronic illnesses.
- c) Nutritious food ensures a healthy life by boosting immune system strength, achieving ideal weight, and preventing long-term health issues.
- d) Balanced nutrition is vital for life, enhancing immunity, controlling weight perfectly, and eliminating the chance of chronic illness.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Reading literature introduces us to other people's experiences and cultures, which are very different from our own.

- (a) قراءة الأدب تجعلنا نتجاهل تجارب الآخرين وثقافتهم التي تشبه ثقافتنا تمامًا.
- (b) قراءة الأدب تعرفنا على تجارب الآخرين وثقافتهم التي تختلف كثيرًا عن ثقافتنا.
- (c) قراءة الأدب تربطنا بتجاربنا الخاصة وثقافتنا دون الالتفات إلى تجارب وثقافات الآخرين.
- (d) عدم قراءة الأدب يمنحنا فهمًا أعمق لتجاربنا وثقافتنا الخاصة دون الحاجة لمعرفة الآخرين.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. How does the ending affect your understanding of Santiago's journey?
2. How does the story make you reflect on the value of hard work and persistence?
3. Why do you think Hemingway won the Nobel Prize soon after this book was published?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Spending your free time on useful things"

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. She always shows great optimism. The synonyms of the word "optimism" are
 a) pessimism b) despair c) hopefulness
 d) openness e) enthusiasm
2. We must always have trust in our closest friends. The antonyms of the word "trust" are
 a) faith b) confidence c) doubt
 d) distrust e) hesitation

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Tourists were by the beauty of the ancient temples.
 a) bored b) confused c) annoyed d) amazed
4. are young trees.
 a) Stems b) Saplings c) Trunks d) Roots
5. Cybercrime are tricked when they give away their personal information.
 a) heroes b) victims c) bullets d) criminals
6. The oceans are becoming filled with harmful waste that harms marine life.
 a) metal b) glass c) plastic d) paper
7. We the teacher's efforts to help us with the lesson.
 a) provided b) appreciated c) criticized d) forgot
8. This role both creative and technical skills.
 a) consists b) divides c) combines d) mixes
9. Just as I the street, a car past me.
 a) crossed / was speeding b) was crossing / was speeding
 c) cross / speeds d) crossing / was speed
10. Do I finish this task today?
 a) must b) need c) should d) have to
11. emergency, call me and I'll come in ten minutes.
 a) In case b) If c) as long as d) In case of
12. We'd prefer our breakfast at the beach at 9 a.m.
 a) having b) to have c) that having d) to having
13. Sadly, students passed the exam; most of them failed.
 a) few b) a plenty c) little d) many
14. The more you have sugar, faster you gain weight.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It's not only humans that travel from one place to another. Every year, millions of birds travel long distances across the world to find better living conditions. This is what we call "bird migration".

During migration, birds travel long distances between their breeding grounds, which are their homelands, and wintering habitats. Most birds migrate to warmer regions to find food and avoid the cold weather of winter. Some birds travel thousands of kilometers to reach their destinations. Birds use different methods to navigate during migration: هجرة. Some depend on the position of the sun and stars, while others follow the Earth's magnetic field. They also use landmarks like mountains, rivers, and coastlines to guide them. They travel in large groups called flocks. A famous example is the stork, which flies in V-shaped formations to save energy. Some birds, like the Arctic tern, migrate the longest distances. They travel between the Arctic and Antarctic regions, covering over 70,000 kilometers each year.

Migration is not easy for birds. It requires a lot of energy, and many birds face dangers along the way, such as bad weather, hunters, and exhaustion. Despite these challenges, migration is important for the survival of many bird species. Bird migration is truly one of nature's most wonderful journeys.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The main idea of the passage is
 - a) the benefits of travel
 - b) weather conditions
 - c) bird migration
 - d) nature's challenges
16. The main reason for bird migration is to
 - a) escape from cold weather
 - b) escape from hunters
 - c) rest and relax
 - d) enjoy flying
17. Birds use to guide them during migration.
 - a) their sense of smelling
 - b) their sense of hearing
 - c) the sounds of other birds
 - d) the sun and stars
18. The underlined word "requires" in the passage means
 - a) feels
 - b) needs
 - c) relaxes
 - d) eats
19. The wintering habitats are the homelands of the birds.
 - a) colder than
 - b) warmer than
 - c) the same as
 - d) similar to

20. The Arctic tern can travel kilometers each year.

- a) 60,000
- b) more than 60,000
- c) less than 60,000
- d) 20,000

21. According to the passage, why do birds travel in V-shaped groups?

- a) To find food.
- b) To keep warm.
- c) To save energy.
- d) To fly faster.

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

تعد الطاقة الشمسية واحدة من أفضل مصادر الطاقة المتجددة. فهي نظيفة، غير ملوثة، ويمكن استخدامها لتوليد الكهرباء.

- a) Solar energy is the best source of renewable energy. It is clean, non-polluting, and can be used to generate electricity.
- b) Solar energy is one of the best sources of non-renewable energy. It is clean, non-polluting, and can be used to generate electricity.
- c) Solar energy is one of the best sources of renewable energy. It is clean, non-polluting, and can be used to generate electricity.
- d) Solar energy is one of the best sources of renewable energy. It is clean, non-polluting, and can be used to increase electricity.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Education is the foundation of any nation's progress. Through it, an individual can achieve their ambitions and become an effective member of society.

- (a) التعليم هو أساس نجاح أي أمة، فمن خلاله يمكن للفرد أن يحقق طموحاته ويصبح عضواً منتجاً في المجتمع.
- (b) التعليم هو أساس تقدم أي أمة، فمن خلاله يستطيع الفرد أن يحقق طموحاته ويصبح عضواً فعالاً في المجتمع.
- (c) التعليم هو أساس تقدم أي أمة، ومن خلاله يمكن للفرد أن يحقق مكاسب ويصبح عضواً فعالاً في المجتمع.
- (d) التعليم هو أساس تقدم أي أمة، ومن خلاله يمكن للفرد أن يحقق طموحاته ويصبح رجلاً ناجحاً في المجتمع.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Is Santiago's desire to catch the marlin a sign of pride, perseverance, or foolishness? Explain your reasoning.
2. How does the setting—the sea—function as a character in the story? What role does it play in shaping the events and Santiago's journey?
3. Compare Santiago's struggle with a challenge you have faced in your own life. What lessons can be learned from his perseverance?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"The benefits of the internet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. Driving fast on wet roads is very risky. The antonyms of the word "risky" are
a) dangerous b) hazardous c) safe d) secure e) slow
2. Please confirm your booking before Friday. The synonyms of the word "confirm" are
a) deny b) prove c) verify d) disprove e) agree

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. To means to save someone from danger.
a) fade b) staring c) rescue d) prevent
4. The best against cyber-attacks is to use strong passwords and antivirus software.
a) defense b) attack c) offense d) awareness
5. Her painting style is truly, unlike anything I've seen before.
a) common b) ordinary c) unique d) required
6. When we send an email to our friends, it's a/an email.
a) informal b) complicated c) formal d) relaxed
7. means "delay or uncertainty".
a) Consideration b) Confidence c) Hesitation d) Decision
8. My for work has always been a key to my success.
a) passion b) position c) desire d) connection
9. The teacher in when the students loudly.
a) had come / was talked b) was coming / talk
c) comes / talked d) came / were talking
10. We have a lot of food in the fridge. I think we order fast food today.
a) need to b) needn't c) mustn't d) should
11. You drive on the wrong side of the road. It's illegal and dangerous.
a) have to b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) should
12. What you feel if you won the lottery?
a) did b) does c) will d) would
13. The new novel is fantastic. It's really worth
a) reading b) to read c) to be read d) that you read
14. Could you give me advice about writing essays?
a) few b) many c) some d) little
15. I bought bar which is made of iron.
a) a/an b) no article / no article c) some /an d) a / no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Deep in the heart of the countryside, there was a forest that no one dared to enter. The villagers believed it was enchanted, filled with magical creatures and hidden secrets. One day, a young girl named Lily decided to explore the forest. She was curious and brave, unlike anyone else in her village.

As Lily went deeper into the forest, she noticed the trees were taller and the air was cooler. She heard the soft rustling of leaves and the distant sound of a stream. Suddenly, she found a place which was a bit clear of trees where the sunlight streamed through the trees, illuminating **ياضى** a beautiful garden. In the center of the garden was a sparkling pond with crystal-clear water.

Lily approached the pond and saw her reflection. To her surprise, a small, glowing fairy appeared beside her reflection. The fairy introduced herself as Flora and explained that the forest was indeed magical. Flora told Lily that she had been chosen to protect the forest and its secrets.

From that day on, Lily visited the forest often, learning about its wonders and helping Flora keep it safe. The villagers eventually learned of Lily's adventures and began to respect the forest, no longer fearing it but appreciating its beauty and magic.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

16. Why did the villagers avoid the forest?

- a) It was too dark.
- b) They believed it was enchanted.
- c) It was too far away.
- d) They were afraid of wild animals.

17. Summarize Lily's adventure in the forest.

- a) Lily got lost and never returned.
- b) Lily found a treasure and became rich.
- c) Lily discovered the magical forest, met Flora, and helped protect it.
- d) Lily built a house in the forest and lived there.

18. Flora is a/an character in the story.

- a) wise and helpful
- b) unnecessary
- c) mysterious
- d) minor and foolish

19. The underlined word "sparkling" means

- a) glittering
- b) proving
- c) sunny
- d) foaming

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

- The story was full of deception. The antonyms of the word "deception" are
a) trickery b) fraud c) honesty d) trust e) smartness
- That necklace looks fake and cheap. The synonyms of the word "fake" are
a) real b) false c) authentic d) genuine e) forged

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- To means to believe in someone or something.
a) trust b) fade c) light d) confidence
- The USA calls for peace while they sell their to all countries.
a) impressions b) secrets c) weapons d) individuals
- The of the non-profit organization is to provide clean water to everyone.
a) slogan b) homework c) route d) outcome
- The company decided to its efforts on developing a new product.
a) exchange b) memorize c) hesitate d) dedicate
- The marketing team presented a detailed of the project.
a) review b) summary c) breakdown d) analysis
- means "a document that lists your work experience, education, and skills, used when applying for jobs".
a) A letter of recommendation b) A resume
c) A cover letter d) A transcript
- While she to music, she her homework.
a) listened / did b) was listening / was doing
c) listen / do d) listens / doing
- Students hand in their assignments by noon on Monday. It's a strict deadline.
a) should b) shouldn't c) have to d) must not
- he to be here right now, he would help us.
a) Had b) Would c) Were d) If
- I don't mind at home alone as long as I'll eat fast food.
a) stay b) staying c) to stay d) to staying
- Only fans attended the concert because of the war in Gaza.
a) many b) a few c) a little d) a lot of
- President Naser ruled Egypt For more than ten years.
a) A b) An c) The d) No article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Gold is a rare metal with a lovely, bright color. It is easy to shape, and it is not affected by air or water. As gold is so soft, it can be beaten into very thin sheets, and it can also be drawn out into very fine wires. Gold is, therefore, an excellent material for making beautiful objects such as jewelry. Moreover, the ancient Egyptians loved gold so much that they believed that gold belonged only to their kings, so they buried many precious gold objects in their pharaohs' tombs, and we can see many of them in museums today.

The Egyptians were very clever goldsmiths, as they could beat the gold into sheets. The gold which is used to make jewelry is usually mixed with other metals. This makes the gold jewelry not only cheaper but also harder. Because it was scarce and therefore valuable, gold was formerly used as money. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks. They can change this gold into money by selling it to other countries. About two-thirds of all the gold in the world is kept in this way. Gold is usually buried deep underground. It can also be found in rivers and seas, but it would cost far more money to be extracted than gold is worth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. Many countries keep bars of gold in banks so as to
 a) keep them away from thieves b) change them into money
 c) buy jewelry d) beat them
16. The pharaohs gold in their tombs.
 a) buried b) bullied c) purified d) disappeared
17. Gold can be beaten into sheets due to its
 a) rareness b) beauty c) shape d) softness
18. Why is gold considered an excellent material for making beautiful objects?
 a) Because it is a hard and expensive metal.
 b) Because it's rare and lovely with bright color.
 c) Because it was buried by the ancient Egyptians.
 d) Because countries can change it into money.
19. What did the ancient Egyptians do with gold? Why?
 a) They destroyed it to make harpoons.
 b) They avoided using it because it is harmful.
 c) They buried it because it belonged to the kings.
 d) They found it in their tombs to sell it.

20. Where is gold usually found?

- a) Deep underground.
- b) In seas and lakes.
- c) In all tombs.
- d) In art museums.

21. What sentence can summarize the passage?

- a) Gold is used for marriage and decorations.
- b) Gold was appreciated only by the pharaohs.
- c) Gold has been a valuable metal over the ages.
- d) The advantages and disadvantages of gold.

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– يعد التعليم إحدى أهم الركائز التي تقوم عليها نهضة الأمم، لذا لابد من تطويره ليواكب العصر الحالي.

- a) Science is one of the most important pillars on which the renaissance of nations is based, so it must be developed to keep pace with the current age.
- b) Education is one of the most important pillars which the renaissance of nations is based, so it must be developed to keep pace with the current age.
- c) Education is one of the most important pillars on which the renaissance of nations is based, so it's must be developed to keep pace with the current age.
- d) Education is one of the most important pillars which the renaissance of nations is based on, so it must be developed to keep pace with the current age.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Global trade leads to big economic growth in different regions all over the world. So, all the countries in the world aim to develop it greatly.

- a) التجارة المحلية تؤدي إلى نمو اقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- b) التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو استهلاكي ضخم في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- c) التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو اقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء البلد. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.
- d) التجارة العالمية تؤدي إلى نمو اقتصادي كبير في أقاليم مختلفة في كل أنحاء العالم. لذلك تهدف دول العالم لتنميتها بشكل كبير.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Santiago feel such a deep sense of brotherhood and guilt towards the marlin he kills? What does this conflict reveal about his character?
2. What is the significance of the skeletal marlin frame Santiago brings home? What does it truly prove to the villagers and to himself?
3. Why do you think Hemingway chose to set the story in the sea? How does this setting contribute to the story's themes?

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"Ways to celebrate and preserve our heritage"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. People admire his honesty. The synonyms of the word "honesty" are
 a) dishonesty b) deceit c) truth d) integrity e) trustfulness
2. He made a big profit from his business. The antonyms of the word "profit" are
 a) gain b) debt c) benefit d) loss e) disease

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Climbing without safety tools is an incredibly activity, as it can result in serious injury.
 a) safe b) slow c) risky d) easy
4. The belief that all people are inherently good in all cultures.
 a) disappears b) exists c) follows d) supports
5. The scientist conducted a to gather data on public opinion about climate change.
 a) survey b) forum c) practice d) concert
6. The of the new furniture took almost three hours.
 a) system b) issuing c) assembly d) planting
7. As a project, he is responsible for making sure everything is on track.
 a) applicant b) struggler c) coordinator d) employer
8. You should have a clear purpose when you are job
 a) seeking b) hunting c) searching d) looking
9. Which sentence is incorrect?
 a) She was reading when the phone rang.
 b) He was cooking dinner while I was setting the table.
 c) They played football when it rained heavily.
 d) I was studying as she was listening to music.
10. She apologize for her rude behavior. It's the right thing to do.
 a) must b) shouldn't
 c) should d) doesn't have to
11. Provided Sally lunch, Soha will set the table.
 a) cooks b) cooked c) cooking d) is cooking
12. My mother likes Indian series on TV.
 a) watch b) watching c) to watch d) b & c
13. The money not enough for buying fast food, so we cooked at home.
 a) was b) were c) has d) a & b
14. When I go home, I feel better.
 a) a b) an c) the d) no article

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm going to tell you a meaningful story. Once upon a time, two friends were traveling through a forest on foot. A bear appeared out of the blue and started to run after them. One of the two friends rushed to the forest tree and climbed as fast as he could to its top branches. The other threw himself to the ground and pretended he was dead, as he had information about bears that they never eat dead bodies. He stayed very still when the bear came close to him. He didn't move when the bear's nose touched his ear. Then it went away.

He waited for a while, and then he called his friend who was in the tree. "It's all right now; the bear has gone, and you can come down." His frightened friend came down slowly. "The bear was close to your ear," he said. "What did it say?" His friend laughed and said, "It told me to look for another friend because a friend who runs away when there is danger is not a real friend."

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

15. The bear didn't eat the friend who pretended to be dead because
a) he was brave
b) he smelt bad
c) he was thin
d) it doesn't eat dead creatures
16. A bear appeared "out of the blue". It means that it appeared
a) slowly
b) quickly
c) suddenly
d) regularly
17. One of the two friends climbed the tree when he saw
a) a dog
b) a lion
c) a bear
d) a donkey
18. We knew from the passage that a friend in is a friend indeed.
a) order
b) detail
c) harmony
d) need
19. Which one of the following means "escaped"?
a) Rushed.
b) Climbed.
c) Ran away.
d) Laughed.
20. A/An is a place covered with trees.
a) oasis
b) forest
c) desert
d) valley
21. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
a) the dog
b) the lion
c) the bear
d) the donkey

22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

– تهتم الدولة بالشباب لذا تحرص على تأهيلهم بشكل مناسب، فشباب اليوم هم قادة الغد.

- a) The country is careful about young boys, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately.
Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.
- b) The state cares for young people, so it is keen to employ them appropriately.
Today's youth is today's leaders.
- c) The state cares about young people, so it is keen to ready them appropriately.
Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.
- d) The state cares for young people, so it is keen to qualify them appropriately.
Today's youth are tomorrow's leaders.

23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Terroristic attacks are always headlines because they attract people's attention and affect people's lives badly.

- (a) الهجمات الإرهابية دائماً ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنها تجذب انتباه الناس وتؤثر في حياتهم بشدة.
- (b) الهجمات الإرهابية دائماً ما تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يشتتوا انتباه الناس ويؤثرون في حياة الناس بشدة.
- (c) الهجمات الإرهابية دائماً لا تكون العناوين الرئيسية لأنهم يجذبون انتباه الناس ويؤثرون في حياة الشباب بشدة.
- (d) الهجمات الإرهابية دائماً ما تكون العناوين الجانبية لأنهم يجذبون انتباه الناس ولا يؤثرون في حياة الناس بشدة.

24. Answer the following questions:

1. Santiago constantly references Joe DiMaggio, who played through a painful bone spur. What does DiMaggio symbolize to Santiago, and why is this important?
2. In what ways is this a story about aging and the passing of wisdom from one generation (Santiago) to the next (Manolin)?
3. Do you believe Santiago will ever go out to sea again? Justify your prediction based on evidence from the final pages.

25. Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:

"The job you would like to do in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....


1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

(2 marks)

Salem : Do you think it is a good or bad thing to move to a new school?

Sayed : (1)..... . What about you?

Salem : I agree with you. (2).....?

Sayed : I can contact them through emails and texting.

Salem : (3).....?

Sayed : If I have any difficulty in my new school, I will ask my teachers for help.

Salem : I wish you the best of luck. How about meeting at the club this afternoon?

Sayed : (4)..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. The is the people who live in the same area or have something in common.

- a) group b) community c) crowd d) audience

2. We installed new water in the park to provide clean drinking water.

- a) fountains b) sinks c) lakes d) rivers

3. A is a detailed document that summarizes your education and professional history.

- a) contact b) resume c) reference d) certificate

4. I the news at work. They told me an hour ago.

- a) didn't tell b) weren't told c) wasn't told d) haven't told

5. Visitors to the museum touch the artifacts. It's a strong prohibition.

- a) have to b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) should

6. There are reasons why students should learn a foreign language.

- a) little b) much c) many d) any

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(5 marks)

David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was usual for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money, or they could not pay their debts. Factories liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were so small that they could go under machines when they broke down. They were often miserable. They worked very long hours, and most of them had no opportunity to improve their lives. However, some children learned skills when they worked. They were the lucky ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How old was David Copperfield when he went to work?
2. Why did factories like to have children working for them?
3. How was children's life at work?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 a) parents b) children c) machines d) adults
5. In the 1800s, it was for children to work in England.
 a) usual b) unusual c) rarely d) abnormal

4 A) Answer the following questions:

(5 marks)

1. How do angels differ from humans?
2. What is the "Preserved Tablet"?

B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Belief in Allah (GBTH) is the central of the Islamic faith.
 a) tenant b) tent c) tenet d) rent
4. The straight is the shortest one to Allah (GBTH).
 a) line b) path c) religion d) person
5. Religion morals and social virtues.
 a) promotes b) discourages
 c) hinders d) unrelates to

5 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(3 marks)

"Modern inventions"

.....

.....

6 A) Translate into Arabic:

(1 mark)

Ecotourism aims to provide us with holidays to places which are endangered and isolated.

.....

.....

B) Translate into English:

(1 mark)

– هل سبق أن قضيت إجازة الصيف مع أصدقائك خارج القاهرة؟

.....

.....


1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

(2 marks)

Osama is at a bank. He wants to withdraw a sum of money.

Teller : Number 458. How can I help you?

Osama : (1).....

Teller : (2).....?

Osama : AS66232. Saving account.

Teller : May I have a photocopy of your ID?

Osama : I don't have a photocopy.

Teller : (3)..... Give me your ID.

Osama : Here it is.

Teller : (4).....?

Osama : 20000.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(3 marks)

1. The man's was hidden behind his friendly appearance.

- a) battle b) intention c) process d) presentation

2. You should be and to the point when writing an email to a potential employer.

- a) long b) common c) general d) concise

3. She with her colleagues to complete the report.

- a) maintained b) fought c) collaborated d) kept

4. walking is a good exercise, I will try my best to do this.

- a) If b) Unless c) Without d) In case of

5. I think it will rain. I'd rather now.

- a) leaving b) to leave c) than leaving d) leave

6. I want to go to hospital to visit my friend; he works there.

- a) a b) an c) the d) no article

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(5 marks)

A lot of people are against overweight in humans, which is considered unhealthy. They are fighting a battle to reduce it. Studies are being done concerning appetite and how it is controlled by both emotional and biochemical factors. Some of these studies have given us the ability to understand how to deal with overweight problems. They showed that fat people have a high sense of taste and love more flavored food than thin people. Some people react to stressful situations by eating. It has been found that mild exercise is a good way to lose weight. For example, using the stairs instead of the lift. Jogging is useful to lose weight as well; sports should be done daily for a healthy life.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why are a lot of people against overweight in humans?
2. According to the text, how is appetite controlled?
3. How do some people react to stressful situations?

B) Choose the correct answer:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 a) health b) overweight c) a battle d) appetite
5. Jogging is a kind of
 a) food b) flavor c) exercise d) stress

4 A) Answer the following questions:

(5 marks)

1. What were angels created for?
2. What is the central tenet of the Islamic faith?

B) Choose the correct answer:

3. Muslims believe that there is no God of worship, other than Allah.
 a) worthy b) fancy c) powerful d) mental
4. Angels record the of humans if they are on Earth.
 a) diaries b) deans c) dears d) deeds
5. The purpose of fasting is to make a Muslim
 a) pure b) bare c) brave d) coward

5 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(3 marks)

"How to help your community"

.....

.....

6 A) Translate into Arabic:

(1 mark)

The Decent Life Initiative is the best proof that the Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens.

.....

.....

B) Translate into English:

(1 mark)

– يعتبر ارتفاع الأسعار مشكلة معقدة ويمكن حلها في زيادة الإنتاج والصادرات.

.....

.....